# Numbers

## translationNotes

v10

# Copyrights & Licensing

**License:**

This work is made available under a Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License, which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: "Original work available at http://unfoldingword.org." Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from http://unfoldingword.org must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to help@door43.org

**Version:** 10

**Published:** 2017-10-03

# Table of Contents

**Copyrights & Licensing** . . . . . **1**
**translationNotes** . . . . . **27**
Introduction to Numbers . . . . . 27
Numbers 01 General Notes . . . . . 29
Numbers 1:1-3 . . . . . 30
Numbers 1:4-5 . . . . . 32
Numbers 1:7 . . . . . 34
Numbers 1:10 . . . . . 35
Numbers 1:12 . . . . . 36
Numbers 1:16 . . . . . 37
Numbers 1:17-19 . . . . . 38
Numbers 1:20 . . . . . 40
Numbers 1:22 . . . . . 41
Numbers 1:24 . . . . . 42
Numbers 1:26 . . . . . 43
Numbers 1:28 . . . . . 44
Numbers 1:30 . . . . . 45
Numbers 1:32 . . . . . 46
Numbers 1:34 . . . . . 47
Numbers 1:36 . . . . . 48
Numbers 1:38 . . . . . 49
Numbers 1:40 . . . . . 50
Numbers 1:42 . . . . . 51
Numbers 1:44-46 . . . . . 52
Numbers 1:47-49 . . . . . 53
Numbers 1:50 . . . . . 54
Numbers 1:51-52 . . . . . 56
Numbers 1:53-54 . . . . . 58
Numbers 02 General Notes . . . . . 60
Numbers 2:1-2 . . . . . 61
Numbers 2:3 . . . . . 62
Numbers 2:5 . . . . . 63
Numbers 2:7 . . . . . 64
Numbers 2:9 . . . . . 65
Numbers 2:10 . . . . . 66
Numbers 2:12 . . . . . 67
Numbers 2:14 . . . . . 68
Numbers 2:16 . . . . . 69
Numbers 2:17 . . . . . 70
Numbers 2:18 . . . . . 71
Numbers 2:20 . . . . . 72

Numbers 2:22 . . . 73
Numbers 2:24 . . . 74
Numbers 2:25 . . . 75
Numbers 2:27 . . . 76
Numbers 2:29 . . . 77
Numbers 2:31 . . . 78
Numbers 2:32-33 . . . 79
Numbers 2:34 . . . 80
Numbers 03 General Notes . . . 81
Numbers 3:1-2 . . . 82
Numbers 3:3-4 . . . 84
Numbers 3:5-6 . . . 86
Numbers 3:7-8 . . . 87
Numbers 3:9-10 . . . 89
Numbers 3:11-13 . . . 91
Numbers 3:14-16 . . . 92
Numbers 3:17-20 . . . 93
Numbers 3:21-23 . . . 94
Numbers 3:24-26 . . . 95
Numbers 3:27-29 . . . 97
Numbers 3:30-32 . . . 99
Numbers 3:33-35 . . . 100
Numbers 3:36-37 . . . 101
Numbers 3:38-39 . . . 103
Numbers 3:40-41 . . . 105
Numbers 3:42-43 . . . 106
Numbers 3:44-45 . . . 107
Numbers 3:46-47 . . . 108
Numbers 3:49-51 . . . 110
Numbers 04 General Notes . . . 112
Numbers 4:1-4 . . . 113
Numbers 4:5-6 . . . 115
Numbers 4:7-8 . . . 117
Numbers 4:9-11 . . . 119
Numbers 4:12-14 . . . 121
Numbers 4:15-16 . . . 123
Numbers 4:17-18 . . . 125
Numbers 4:21-23 . . . 127
Numbers 4:24-26 . . . 129
Numbers 4:27-28 . . . 131
Numbers 4:29-30 . . . 133
Numbers 4:31-32 . . . 135
Numbers 4:33 . . . 137

Numbers 4:34-36 . . . 138
Numbers 4:37 . . . 140
Numbers 4:38-40 . . . 141
Numbers 4:41 . . . 143
Numbers 4:42-44 . . . 144
Numbers 4:45 . . . 146
Numbers 4:46-48 . . . 147
Numbers 4:49 . . . 148
Numbers 05 General Notes . . . 150
Numbers 5:1-4 . . . 151
Numbers 5:5-7 . . . 153
Numbers 5:8-10 . . . 155
Numbers 5:11-12 . . . 157
Numbers 5:13-14 . . . 158
Numbers 5:15 . . . 160
Numbers 5:16-17 . . . 162
Numbers 5:18-19 . . . 163
Numbers 5:20-21 . . . 165
Numbers 5:23 . . . 167
Numbers 5:24-26 . . . 168
Numbers 5:27-28 . . . 170
Numbers 5:29-30 . . . 172
Numbers 5:31 . . . 174
Numbers 06 General Notes . . . 175
Numbers 6:1-4 . . . 176
Numbers 6:5 . . . 178
Numbers 6:6-8 . . . 180
Numbers 6:9 . . . 182
Numbers 6:10-11 . . . 183
Numbers 6:12 . . . 184
Numbers 6:13-15 . . . 186
Numbers 6:16-17 . . . 188
Numbers 6:18 . . . 189
Numbers 6:19-20 . . . 190
Numbers 6:21 . . . 192
Numbers 6:22-24 . . . 194
Numbers 6:25-27 . . . 196
Numbers 07 General Notes . . . 198
Numbers 7:1-3 . . . 199
Numbers 7:4-5 . . . 201
Numbers 7:6-8 . . . 202
Numbers 7:9 . . . 204
Numbers 7:10-11 . . . 205

Numbers 7:12-14 . . . . . 206
Numbers 7:15 . . . . . 208
Numbers 7:18 . . . . . 210
Numbers 7:20 . . . . . 212
Numbers 7:24 . . . . . 214
Numbers 7:27 . . . . . 216
Numbers 7:30 . . . . . 218
Numbers 7:33 . . . . . 220
Numbers 7:36 . . . . . 221
Numbers 7:39 . . . . . 223
Numbers 7:42 . . . . . 225
Numbers 7:45 . . . . . 227
Numbers 7:48 . . . . . 228
Numbers 7:51 . . . . . 230
Numbers 7:54 . . . . . 232
Numbers 7:57 . . . . . 234
Numbers 7:60 . . . . . 235
Numbers 7:63 . . . . . 237
Numbers 7:66 . . . . . 239
Numbers 7:69 . . . . . 241
Numbers 7:72 . . . . . 242
Numbers 7:75 . . . . . 244
Numbers 7:78 . . . . . 245
Numbers 7:81 . . . . . 247
Numbers 7:84 . . . . . 248
Numbers 7:87 . . . . . 250
Numbers 7:89 . . . . . 252
Numbers 08 General Notes . . . . . 254
Numbers 8:1-2 . . . . . 255
Numbers 8:3-4 . . . . . 256
Numbers 8:5-6 . . . . . 257
Numbers 8:7-8 . . . . . 258
Numbers 8:9-11 . . . . . 260
Numbers 8:12-13 . . . . . 262
Numbers 8:14-15 . . . . . 263
Numbers 8:16-17 . . . . . 264
Numbers 8:18-19 . . . . . 266
Numbers 8:20-21 . . . . . 268
Numbers 8:22 . . . . . 269
Numbers 8:23-24 . . . . . 270
Numbers 8:25-26 . . . . . 271
Numbers 09 General Notes . . . . . 272
Numbers 9:1-3 . . . . . 273

Numbers 9:4-5 . . . 275
Numbers 9:6-8 . . . 276
Numbers 9:9-10 . . . 278
Numbers 9:11-12 . . . 280
Numbers 9:13-14 . . . 282
Numbers 9:15-17 . . . 284
Numbers 9:18-19 . . . 286
Numbers 9:20-21 . . . 287
Numbers 9:22-23 . . . 289
Numbers 10 General Notes . . . 291
Numbers 10:1-2 . . . 292
Numbers 10:3-5 . . . 293
Numbers 10:6-8 . . . 295
Numbers 10:9 . . . 297
Numbers 10:10 . . . 299
Numbers 10:11-13 . . . 301
Numbers 10:14-16 . . . 303
Numbers 10:17-20 . . . 305
Numbers 10:21-24 . . . 307
Numbers 10:25-28 . . . 309
Numbers 10:29-30 . . . 311
Numbers 10:31-32 . . . 313
Numbers 10:33-34 . . . 314
Numbers 10:35-36 . . . 316
Numbers 11 General Notes . . . 318
Numbers 11:1-3 . . . 319
Numbers 11:4-6 . . . 320
Numbers 11:7-8 . . . 321
Numbers 11:9-10 . . . 322
Numbers 11:11-12 . . . 323
Numbers 11:13-15 . . . 325
Numbers 11:16-17 . . . 326
Numbers 11:18-20 . . . 328
Numbers 11:21-23 . . . 330
Numbers 11:24-25 . . . 332
Numbers 11:26-27 . . . 334
Numbers 11:28-30 . . . 335
Numbers 11:31-32 . . . 337
Numbers 11:33-35 . . . 339
Numbers 12 General Notes . . . 341
Numbers 12:1-3 . . . 342
Numbers 12:4-5 . . . 344
Numbers 12:6-8 . . . 345

Numbers 12:9-10 . . . . . 347
Numbers 12:11-12 . . . . . 348
Numbers 12:13-15 . . . . . 349
Numbers 12:16 . . . . . 351
Numbers 13 General Notes . . . . . 352
Numbers 13:1-2 . . . . . 353
Numbers 13:3-4 . . . . . 354
Numbers 13:5-8 . . . . . 355
Numbers 13:9-12 . . . . . 356
Numbers 13:13-16 . . . . . 357
Numbers 13:17-20 . . . . . 358
Numbers 13:21-22 . . . . . 360
Numbers 13:23-24 . . . . . 362
Numbers 13:25-26 . . . . . 363
Numbers 13:27-29 . . . . . 364
Numbers 13:30-31 . . . . . 366
Numbers 13:32-33 . . . . . 367
Numbers 14 General Notes . . . . . 369
Numbers 14:1-3 . . . . . 370
Numbers 14:4-5 . . . . . 372
Numbers 14:6-8 . . . . . 373
Numbers 14:9-10 . . . . . 375
Numbers 14:11-12 . . . . . 377
Numbers 14:13-14 . . . . . 379
Numbers 14:15-16 . . . . . 380
Numbers 14:17-19 . . . . . 381
Numbers 14:20-22 . . . . . 383
Numbers 14:23-25 . . . . . 385
Numbers 14:26-27 . . . . . 387
Numbers 14:28-30 . . . . . 388
Numbers 14:31-33 . . . . . 390
Numbers 14:34-35 . . . . . 392
Numbers 14:36-38 . . . . . 393
Numbers 14:39-40 . . . . . 394
Numbers 14:41-43 . . . . . 395
Numbers 14:44-45 . . . . . 397
Numbers 15 General Notes . . . . . 398
Numbers 15:1-3 . . . . . 399
Numbers 15:4-5 . . . . . 401
Numbers 15:6-7 . . . . . 403
Numbers 15:8-10 . . . . . 404
Numbers 15:11-13 . . . . . 406
Numbers 15:14-16 . . . . . 408

Numbers 15:17-19 . . . . . 410
Numbers 15:20-21 . . . . . 411
Numbers 15:22-24 . . . . . 413
Numbers 15:25-26 . . . . . 415
Numbers 15:27-29 . . . . . 417
Numbers 15:30-31 . . . . . 418
Numbers 15:32-34 . . . . . 420
Numbers 15:35-36 . . . . . 421
Numbers 15:37-39 . . . . . 422
Numbers 15:40-41 . . . . . 424
Numbers 16 General Notes . . . . . 425
Numbers 16:1-3 . . . . . 426
Numbers 16:4-5 . . . . . 428
Numbers 16:6-7 . . . . . 429
Numbers 16:8-11 . . . . . 431
Numbers 16:12-14 . . . . . 433
Numbers 16:15-17 . . . . . 435
Numbers 16:18-19 . . . . . 436
Numbers 16:20-22 . . . . . 437
Numbers 16:23-24 . . . . . 439
Numbers 16:25-27 . . . . . 440
Numbers 16:28-30 . . . . . 442
Numbers 16:31-32 . . . . . 444
Numbers 16:33-35 . . . . . 445
Numbers 16:36-38 . . . . . 447
Numbers 16:39 . . . . . 449
Numbers 16:41-43 . . . . . 450
Numbers 16:44-46 . . . . . 452
Numbers 16:47-48 . . . . . 454
Numbers 16:49-50 . . . . . 455
Numbers 17 General Notes . . . . . 456
Numbers 17:1-2 . . . . . 457
Numbers 17:3-5 . . . . . 458
Numbers 17:6-7 . . . . . 460
Numbers 17:8-9 . . . . . 461
Numbers 17:10-11 . . . . . 462
Numbers 17:12-13 . . . . . 464
Numbers 18 General Notes . . . . . 465
Numbers 18:1-2 . . . . . 466
Numbers 18:3-5 . . . . . 468
Numbers 18:6-7 . . . . . 470
Numbers 18:8-9 . . . . . 472
Numbers 18:10-11 . . . . . 474

Numbers 18:12-13 . . . . . 475
Numbers 18:14-16 . . . . . 476
Numbers 18:17-18 . . . . . 478
Numbers 18:19-20 . . . . . 480
Numbers 18:21-22 . . . . . 482
Numbers 18:23-24 . . . . . 483
Numbers 18:25-27 . . . . . 485
Numbers 18:28-29 . . . . . 487
Numbers 18:30-32 . . . . . 488
Numbers 19 General Notes . . . . . 490
Numbers 19:1-2 . . . . . 491
Numbers 19:3-6 . . . . . 493
Numbers 19:7-8 . . . . . 495
Numbers 19:9-10 . . . . . 496
Numbers 19:11-13 . . . . . 498
Numbers 19:14-16 . . . . . 500
Numbers 19:17-19 . . . . . 502
Numbers 19:20-22 . . . . . 504
Numbers 20 General Notes . . . . . 506
Numbers 20:1 . . . . . 507
Numbers 20:2-3 . . . . . 508
Numbers 20:4-5 . . . . . 509
Numbers 20:6 . . . . . 511
Numbers 20:7-9 . . . . . 512
Numbers 20:10-11 . . . . . 513
Numbers 20:12-13 . . . . . 514
Numbers 20:14-16 . . . . . 516
Numbers 20:17 . . . . . 518
Numbers 20:18-19 . . . . . 519
Numbers 20:20-21 . . . . . 521
Numbers 20:22-24 . . . . . 522
Numbers 20:25-26 . . . . . 524
Numbers 20:27-29 . . . . . 525
Numbers 21 General Notes . . . . . 526
Numbers 21:1-3 . . . . . 527
Numbers 21:4-5 . . . . . 529
Numbers 21:6-7 . . . . . 530
Numbers 21:8-9 . . . . . 531
Numbers 21:10-11 . . . . . 533
Numbers 21:12-13 . . . . . 534
Numbers 21:14-15 . . . . . 535
Numbers 21:16 . . . . . 536
Numbers 21:17-18 . . . . . 537

Numbers 21:19-20 . . . 539
Numbers 21:21-23 . . . 540
Numbers 21:24-26 . . . 542
Numbers 21:27-28 . . . 544
Numbers 21:29-30 . . . 546
Numbers 21:31-32 . . . 548
Numbers 21:33-35 . . . 549
Numbers 22 General Notes . . . 551
Numbers 22:1 . . . 552
Numbers 22:2-4 . . . 553
Numbers 22:5-6 . . . 555
Numbers 22:7-8 . . . 557
Numbers 22:9-11 . . . 559
Numbers 22:12-14 . . . 561
Numbers 22:15-17 . . . 562
Numbers 22:18-20 . . . 563
Numbers 22:21-23 . . . 565
Numbers 22:24-25 . . . 567
Numbers 22:26-27 . . . 568
Numbers 22:28-30 . . . 569
Numbers 22:31-33 . . . 571
Numbers 22:34-35 . . . 573
Numbers 22:36-37 . . . 574
Numbers 22:38-40 . . . 576
Numbers 22:41 . . . 578
Numbers 23 General Notes . . . 579
Numbers 23:1-3 . . . 580
Numbers 23:4-6 . . . 582
Numbers 23:7-8 . . . 584
Numbers 23:9 . . . 586
Numbers 23:10 . . . 588
Numbers 23:11-12 . . . 590
Numbers 23:13-15 . . . 592
Numbers 23:16-18 . . . 594
Numbers 23:19-20 . . . 596
Numbers 23:21-22 . . . 598
Numbers 23:23 . . . 600
Numbers 23:24 . . . 602
Numbers 23:25-27 . . . 603
Numbers 23:28-30 . . . 604
Numbers 24 General Notes . . . 605
Numbers 24:1 . . . 606
Numbers 24:2-3 . . . 607

Numbers 24:4-5 . . . 609
Numbers 24:6 . . . 611
Numbers 24:7 . . . 613
Numbers 24:8 . . . 615
Numbers 24:9 . . . 617
Numbers 24:10-11 . . . 619
Numbers 24:12-14 . . . 620
Numbers 24:15-16 . . . 622
Numbers 24:17 . . . 624
Numbers 24:18-19 . . . 626
Numbers 24:20 . . . 628
Numbers 24:21-22 . . . 629
Numbers 24:23-24 . . . 631
Numbers 24:25 . . . 633
Numbers 25 General Notes . . . 634
Numbers 25:1-3 . . . 635
Numbers 25:4-5 . . . 637
Numbers 25:6-7 . . . 639
Numbers 25:8-9 . . . 641
Numbers 25:10-11 . . . 642
Numbers 25:12-13 . . . 643
Numbers 25:14-15 . . . 644
Numbers 25:16-18 . . . 646
Numbers 26 General Notes . . . 648
Numbers 26:1-2 . . . 649
Numbers 26:3-4 . . . 651
Numbers 26:5 . . . 652
Numbers 26:8-9 . . . 654
Numbers 26:10-11 . . . 655
Numbers 26:12 . . . 657
Numbers 26:15 . . . 659
Numbers 26:19 . . . 661
Numbers 26:23 . . . 663
Numbers 26:26 . . . 664
Numbers 26:28 . . . 665
Numbers 26:30 . . . 666
Numbers 26:33 . . . 667
Numbers 26:35 . . . 668
Numbers 26:38 . . . 670
Numbers 26:42 . . . 672
Numbers 26:44 . . . 673
Numbers 26:48 . . . 675
Numbers 26:51 . . . 676

Numbers 26:52-53 . . . . . 677
Numbers 26:54 . . . . . 678
Numbers 26:57-59 . . . . . 680
Numbers 26:60-62 . . . . . 682
Numbers 26:63-64 . . . . . 684
Numbers 26:65 . . . . . 686
Numbers 27 General Notes . . . . . 687
Numbers 27:1 . . . . . 688
Numbers 27:2-3 . . . . . 689
Numbers 27:4-5 . . . . . 691
Numbers 27:6-8 . . . . . 692
Numbers 27:9-11 . . . . . 693
Numbers 27:12-14 . . . . . 695
Numbers 27:15-17 . . . . . 697
Numbers 27:18-19 . . . . . 699
Numbers 27:20-21 . . . . . 700
Numbers 27:22-23 . . . . . 702
Numbers 28 General Notes . . . . . 704
Numbers 28:1-2 . . . . . 705
Numbers 28:3-5 . . . . . 707
Numbers 28:6-8 . . . . . 709
Numbers 28:9-10 . . . . . 711
Numbers 28:11-13 . . . . . 713
Numbers 28:14-15 . . . . . 715
Numbers 28:16-18 . . . . . 717
Numbers 28:19-22 . . . . . 719
Numbers 28:23-25 . . . . . 721
Numbers 28:26-28 . . . . . 723
Numbers 28:29-31 . . . . . 725
Numbers 29 General Notes . . . . . 727
Numbers 29:1 . . . . . 728
Numbers 29:2 . . . . . 730
Numbers 29:3-5 . . . . . 731
Numbers 29:6 . . . . . 733
Numbers 29:7-8 . . . . . 735
Numbers 29:9-11 . . . . . 737
Numbers 29:12-13 . . . . . 739
Numbers 29:14-16 . . . . . 741
Numbers 29:17-19 . . . . . 743
Numbers 29:20-22 . . . . . 745
Numbers 29:23-25 . . . . . 747
Numbers 29:26-28 . . . . . 749
Numbers 29:29-31 . . . . . 751

Numbers 29:32-34 . . . . . 753
Numbers 29:35-36 . . . . . 755
Numbers 29:37-38 . . . . . 757
Numbers 29:39-40 . . . . . 759
Numbers 30 General Notes . . . . . 761
Numbers 30:1-2 . . . . . 762
Numbers 30:3-4 . . . . . 764
Numbers 30:5 . . . . . 766
Numbers 30:6-7 . . . . . 767
Numbers 30:8 . . . . . 769
Numbers 30:9-11 . . . . . 771
Numbers 30:12 . . . . . 773
Numbers 30:13-14 . . . . . 774
Numbers 30:15-16 . . . . . 776
Numbers 31 General Notes . . . . . 777
Numbers 31:1-2 . . . . . 778
Numbers 31:3-5 . . . . . 779
Numbers 31:6-8 . . . . . 781
Numbers 31:9-10 . . . . . 783
Numbers 31:11-12 . . . . . 784
Numbers 31:13-15 . . . . . 785
Numbers 31:16-17 . . . . . 786
Numbers 31:18-20 . . . . . 787
Numbers 31:21-24 . . . . . 789
Numbers 31:25-27 . . . . . 791
Numbers 31:28-29 . . . . . 792
Numbers 31:30-31 . . . . . 794
Numbers 31:32 . . . . . 795
Numbers 31:36-38 . . . . . 796
Numbers 31:39-41 . . . . . 798
Numbers 31:42 . . . . . 800
Numbers 31:47 . . . . . 802
Numbers 31:48-49 . . . . . 803
Numbers 31:50-51 . . . . . 805
Numbers 31:52-54 . . . . . 807
Numbers 32 General Notes . . . . . 809
Numbers 32:1-3 . . . . . 810
Numbers 32:4-5 . . . . . 812
Numbers 32:6-7 . . . . . 814
Numbers 32:8-9 . . . . . 815
Numbers 32:10-11 . . . . . 817
Numbers 32:13-15 . . . . . 819
Numbers 32:16-17 . . . . . 821

Numbers 32:18-19 . . . 822
Numbers 32:20-22 . . . 823
Numbers 32:23-25 . . . 825
Numbers 32:26-27 . . . 827
Numbers 32:28-30 . . . 828
Numbers 32:31-32 . . . 830
Numbers 32:33 . . . 831
Numbers 32:34-36 . . . 832
Numbers 32:37-39 . . . 833
Numbers 32:40-42 . . . 834
Numbers 33 General Notes . . . 835
Numbers 33:1-2 . . . 836
Numbers 33:3-4 . . . 838
Numbers 33:5-7 . . . 840
Numbers 33:8-10 . . . 841
Numbers 33:11-14 . . . 843
Numbers 33:15-18 . . . 844
Numbers 33:19-22 . . . 845
Numbers 33:23-26 . . . 846
Numbers 33:27-30 . . . 847
Numbers 33:31-34 . . . 848
Numbers 33:35-37 . . . 849
Numbers 33:38-39 . . . 850
Numbers 33:40 . . . 852
Numbers 33:41-43 . . . 853
Numbers 33:44-46 . . . 854
Numbers 33:47-49 . . . 855
Numbers 33:50-52 . . . 856
Numbers 33:53-54 . . . 857
Numbers 33:55-56 . . . 859
Numbers 34 General Notes . . . 860
Numbers 34:1-3 . . . 861
Numbers 34:4-5 . . . 862
Numbers 34:6 . . . 863
Numbers 34:7-9 . . . 864
Numbers 34:10-12 . . . 865
Numbers 34:13-15 . . . 866
Numbers 34:16-18 . . . 868
Numbers 34:19-20 . . . 869
Numbers 34:21-23 . . . 870
Numbers 34:24-26 . . . 871
Numbers 34:27-29 . . . 872
Numbers 35 General Notes . . . 873

Numbers 35:1-2 . . . 874
Numbers 35:3-4 . . . 876
Numbers 35:5 . . . 877
Numbers 35:6-7 . . . 878
Numbers 35:8 . . . 879
Numbers 35:9-11 . . . 880
Numbers 35:12-13 . . . 881
Numbers 35:14-15 . . . 882
Numbers 35:16 . . . 883
Numbers 35:19-21 . . . 884
Numbers 35:22-23 . . . 885
Numbers 35:24-25 . . . 886
Numbers 35:26-28 . . . 888
Numbers 35:29-30 . . . 889
Numbers 35:31-32 . . . 891
Numbers 35:33-34 . . . 892
Numbers 36 General Notes . . . 894
Numbers 36:1-2 . . . 895
Numbers 36:3-4 . . . 897
Numbers 36:5-6 . . . 899
Numbers 36:7 . . . 900
Numbers 36:8-9 . . . 901
Numbers 36:10-12 . . . 903
Numbers 36:13 . . . 904
**translationQuestions . . . 905**
Numbers 1 . . . 905
Numbers 2 . . . 907
Numbers 3 . . . 910
Numbers 4 . . . 914
Numbers 5 . . . 919
Numbers 6 . . . 922
Numbers 7 . . . 925
Numbers 8 . . . 928
Numbers 9 . . . 930
Numbers 10 . . . 932
Numbers 11 . . . 935
Numbers 12 . . . 937
Numbers 13 . . . 939
Numbers 14 . . . 941
Numbers 15 . . . 945
Numbers 16 . . . 948
Numbers 17 . . . 955
Numbers 18 . . . 957

Numbers 19 . . . 961
Numbers 20 . . . 964
Numbers 21 . . . 968
Numbers 22 . . . 971
Numbers 23 . . . 976
Numbers 24 . . . 979
Numbers 25 . . . 983
Numbers 26 . . . 985
Numbers 27 . . . 989
Numbers 28 . . . 991
Numbers 29 . . . 994
Numbers 30 . . . 999
Numbers 31 . . . 1002
Numbers 32 . . . 1006
Numbers 33 . . . 1009
Numbers 34 . . . 1011
Numbers 35 . . . 1012
Numbers 36 . . . 1015
**translationWords . . . 1017**
Aaron . . . 1018
Abraham, Abram . . . 1021
accuse, accuses, accused, accusing, accuser, accusers, accusation, accusations . . . 1023
adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies . . . 1024
alarm, alarms, alarmed . . . 1025
alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners . . . 1026
Almighty . . . 1028
altar, altars . . . 1029
Amalek, Amalekite, Amalekites . . . 1031
Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites . . . 1032
Amorite, Amorites . . . 1033
ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather 1035
angel, angels, archangel . . . 1037
anger, angered, angry . . . 1039
anoint, anointed, anointing . . . 1040
appoint, appoints, appointed . . . 1042
Aram, Aramean, Arameans, Aramaic . . . 1044
ark . . . 1045
ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh . . . 1046
ash, ashes, dust . . . 1047
Asher . . . 1048
assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled . . . 1049
assign, assigned, assigning, assignment, assignments, reassign . . . 1051
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrians, Assyrian Empire . . . 1052

astray, go astray, went astray, lead astray, led astray, stray, strayed, strays . . . . . 1053
atonement lid . . . . . 1054
atonement, atone, atones, atoned . . . . . 1055
authority, authorities . . . . . 1057
avenge, avenges, avenged, avenging, avenger, revenge, vengeance . . . . . 1059
Baal . . . . . 1061
Balaam . . . . . 1063
barley . . . . . 1065
Bashan . . . . . 1066
beg, begged, begging, beggar . . . . . 1067
Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites . . . . . 1068
bind, bond, bound . . . . . 1069
blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemed, blasphemous, blasphemies . . . . . 1071
blemish, blemishes, unblemished . . . . . 1072
bless, blessed, blessing . . . . . 1073
blood . . . . . 1075
body, bodies . . . . . 1077
bow and arrow, bows and arrows . . . . . 1079
bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down . . . . . 1080
bread . . . . . 1082
bronze . . . . . 1084
brother, brothers . . . . . 1085
burden, burdens, burdened, burdensome . . . . . 1087
burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire . . . . . 1088
bury, buries, buried, burying, burial . . . . . 1090
Caleb . . . . . 1091
call, calls, calling, called . . . . . 1093
Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites . . . . . 1095
captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity . . . . . 1097
cast out, casting out, driving out, throw out, throwing out . . . . . 1099
cedar, cedars, cedarwood . . . . . 1100
census . . . . . 1101
cherub, cherubim, cherubs . . . . . 1102
children, child . . . . . 1103
chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect . . . . . 1105
cistern, cisterns, well, wells . . . . . 1107
clan, clans . . . . . 1109
clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean . . . . . 1111
column, columns, pillar, pillars . . . . . 1114
command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments . . . . . 1115
commander, commanders . . . . . 1118
commit, commits, committed, committing, commitment . . . . . 1119

conceive, conceives, conceived, conception . . . . . 1120
confess, confessed, confesses, confession . . . . . 1121
consecrate, consecrated, consecration . . . . . 1122
consume, consumes, consumed, consuming . . . . . 1123
council, councils . . . . . 1125
court, courts, courtyard, courtyards . . . . . 1126
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love . . . . . 1128
covenant, covenants, new covenant . . . . . 1129
cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen . . . . . 1132
create, creates, created, creation, creator . . . . . 1134
crown, crowns, crowned . . . . . 1136
cure, cured, heal, heals, healed, healing, healings, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy . . . 1137
curse, cursed, curses, cursing . . . . . 1139
curtain, curtains . . . . . 1141
Cush . . . . . 1142
cut off, cuts off, cutting off . . . . . 1143
Dan . . . . . 1144
day, days . . . . . 1145
deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceptive . . . . . 1147
declare, declares, declared, declaring, declaration, declarations . . . . . 1149
decree, decrees, decreed . . . . . 1150
dedicate, dedicates, dedicated, dedication . . . . . 1152
defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled . . . . . 1153
descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants . . . . . 1155
desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses . . . . . 1158
devastate, devastated, devastating, devastation, devastations . . . . . 1160
devour, devours, devoured, devouring . . . . . 1161
die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly . . . . . 1162
disgrace, disgraces, disgraced, disgraceful . . . . . 1165
divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer . . . . . 1166
divorce . . . . . 1167
dominion . . . . . 1168
donkey, mule . . . . . 1169
dove, pigeon . . . . . 1170
dream . . . . . 1171
drink offering . . . . . 1173
dung, manure . . . . . 1175
earth, earthen, earthly . . . . . 1176
Edom, Edomite, Edomites, Idumea . . . . . 1178
Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians . . . . . 1179
elder, elders . . . . . 1181
Eleazar . . . . . 1182

enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants 1184
Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites . . . . . 1186
Esau . . . . . 1187
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever . . . . . 1188
Euphrates River, the River . . . . . 1190
evil, wicked, wickedness . . . . . 1191
ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins . . . . . 1193
face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown . . . . . 1195
faith . . . . . 1197
faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness . . . . . 1199
family, families . . . . . 1201
favor, favors, favorable, favoritism . . . . . 1203
fear, fears, afraid . . . . . 1205
feast, feasts, feasting . . . . . 1207
fellowship offering, fellowship offerings . . . . . 1208
festival, festivals . . . . . 1209
fig, figs . . . . . 1210
fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots . . . . . 1211
firstborn . . . . . 1213
firstfruits . . . . . 1215
flesh . . . . . 1216
flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds . . . . . 1218
fool, fools, foolish, folly . . . . . 1219
forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned . . . . . 1220
fountain, fountains, spring, springs, springing . . . . . 1222
frankincense . . . . . 1223
freewill offering, freewill offerings . . . . . 1224
fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful . . . . . 1225
fulfill, fulfilled . . . . . 1227
Gad . . . . . 1229
gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways . . . . . 1230
generation . . . . . 1231
giant, giants . . . . . 1233
gift, gifts . . . . . 1234
Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites . . . . . 1236
glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies . . . . . 1237
goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids . . . . . 1240
God . . . . . 1242
god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry . . . . . 1245
gold, golden . . . . . 1247
good, goodness . . . . . 1249
grace, gracious . . . . . 1251
grain offering, grain offerings . . . . . 1253

grain, grains, grainfields . . . . . 1255
grape, grapes, grapevine . . . . . 1256
grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place . . . . . 1257
guilt offering, guilt offerings . . . . . 1259
guilt, guilty . . . . . 1260
had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, sleeps with, slept with, sleeping with . . . . . 1262
Hades, Sheol . . . . . 1264
Hamath, Hamathites, Lebo Hamath . . . . . 1266
hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of . . . . . 1267
hang, hangs, hanged, hanging, hangings, hung . . . . . 1269
head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded 1270
heart, hearts . . . . . 1272
Hebron . . . . . 1274
high place, high places . . . . . 1275
high priest . . . . . 1276
Hittite, Hittites . . . . . 1278
holy place . . . . . 1279
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit . . . . . 1281
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred . . . . . 1283
honey, honeycomb . . . . . 1286
honor, honors . . . . . 1287
house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers . . . . . 1289
humble, humbles, humbled, humility . . . . . 1291
image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures . . . . . 1292
incense, incenses . . . . . 1293
inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir . . . . . 1295
iniquity, iniquities . . . . . 1298
Isaac . . . . . 1299
Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob . . . . . 1301
Israel, Israelites . . . . . 1303
Issachar . . . . . 1307
jealous, jealousy . . . . . 1308
Jebus, Jebusite, Jebusites . . . . . 1310
Jehoshaphat . . . . . 1311
Jericho . . . . . 1312
Jethro, Reuel . . . . . 1313
Jordan River, Jordan . . . . . 1314
Joseph (OT) . . . . . 1316
Joshua . . . . . 1318
Judah . . . . . 1320
judge, judges, judgment, judgments . . . . . 1321

just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification . . . . . 1323
Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh . . . . . 1326
kin, kinfolk, kindred, kinsfolk, kinsman, kinsmen . . . . . 1327
king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly . . . . . 1328
kingdom, kingdoms . . . . . 1330
know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge . . . . . 1332
Korah, Korahite, Korahites . . . . . 1334
lamb, Lamb of God . . . . . 1335
lamp, lamps . . . . . 1337
lampstand, lampstands . . . . . 1338
law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh . . . . . 1339
law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles . . . . . 1341
leper, lepers, leprosy, leprous . . . . . 1343
Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical . . . . . 1344
life, live, lived, lives, living, alive . . . . . 1346
light, lights, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten, enlightened . . . . . 1349
lions, lion, lioness, lionesses . . . . . 1351
livestock . . . . . 1352
lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs . . . . . 1353
lots, casting lots . . . . . 1356
Manasseh . . . . . 1357
manna . . . . . 1359
member, members . . . . . 1360
messenger, messengers . . . . . 1361
Midian, Midianite, Midianites . . . . . 1362
might, mighty, mightier, mightily . . . . . 1364
mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded . . . . . 1366
Miriam . . . . . 1368
Moab, Moabite, Moabitess . . . . . 1369
month, months, monthly . . . . . 1371
Moses . . . . . 1372
Most High . . . . . 1376
mourn, mourns, mourned, mourning, mourner, mourners, mournful, mournfully . . . . 1377
name, names, named . . . . . 1378
Naphtali . . . . . 1380
nation, nations . . . . . 1381
Nazirite, Nazirites, Nazirite vow . . . . . 1383
Negev . . . . . 1384
noble, nobles, nobleman, noblemen . . . . . 1385
oak, oaks . . . . . 1386

oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by . . . . . 1387
obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient . . . . . 1389
oil . . . . . 1391
olive, olives . . . . . 1393
oppress, oppresses, oppressed, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors 1394
ordain, ordained, ordinary, ordination . . . . . 1396
oversee, oversees, overseen, overseer, overseers . . . . . 1397
palace, palaces . . . . . 1398
palm, palms . . . . . 1399
Paran . . . . . 1400
Passover . . . . . 1401
peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers . . . . . 1403
Pentecost, Festival of Weeks . . . . . 1405
people group, peoples, the people, a people . . . . . 1406
people of God, my people . . . . . 1409
Peor, Mount Peor, Baal Peor . . . . . 1411
perish, perished, perishing, perishable . . . . . 1412
Pharisee, Pharisees . . . . . 1413
Philistines . . . . . 1414
Phinehas . . . . . 1415
plague, plagues . . . . . 1416
plea, pleas, plead, pleads, pleaded, pleading, pleadings . . . . . 1417
pomegranate, pomegranates . . . . . 1418
possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess . . . . . 1419
power, powers . . . . . 1421
pray, prayer, prayers, prayed . . . . . 1423
prey, prey on . . . . . 1425
priest, priests, priesthood . . . . . 1426
prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments . . . . . 1429
profane, profaned, profaning . . . . . 1431
promise, promises, promised . . . . . 1432
Promised Land . . . . . 1434
prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess . . . . . 1436
prostitute, prostituted, prostitutes, harlot, whored . . . . . 1438
proverb, proverbs . . . . . 1439
punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished . . . . . 1440
pure, purify, purification . . . . . 1442
rage, rages, raged, raging . . . . . 1444
raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose . . . . . 1445
ransom, ransomed . . . . . 1448
rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness . . . . . 1449

receive, receives, received, receiving, receiver . . . . . 1451
redeem, redeems, redemption, redeemer . . . . . 1453
refuge, refugee, refugees, shelter, shelters, sheltered, sheltering . . . . . 1455
reject, rejects, rejected, rejecting, rejection . . . . . 1457
report, reports, reported . . . . . 1458
rest, rests, rested, resting, restless . . . . . 1459
Reuben . . . . . 1461
reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation . . . . . 1462
reward, rewards, rewarded, rewarding, rewarder . . . . . 1463
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness . . . . . 1464
rod, rods . . . . . 1467
Rome, Roman . . . . . 1468
ruin, ruins, ruined . . . . . 1469
rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled . . . . . 1470
Sabbath . . . . . 1471
sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings . . . . . 1473
Salt Sea, Dead Sea . . . . . 1476
Samuel . . . . . 1477
sanctuary . . . . . 1478
Saul (OT) . . . . . 1480
save, saves, saved, safe, salvation . . . . . 1481
scepter, scepters . . . . . 1483
scroll, scrolls . . . . . 1484
sea cow . . . . . 1485
Sea of Galilee, Sea of Kinnereth, lake of Gennesaret, Sea of Tiberias . . . . . 1486
Sea of Reeds, Red Sea . . . . . 1487
seal, seals, sealed, sealing, unsealed . . . . . 1488
seed, semen . . . . . 1489
self-control, self-controlled, controlled self . . . . . 1491
send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out . . . . . 1492
serpent, serpents, snake, snakes, viper, vipers . . . . . 1494
serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice . . . . . 1495
set apart . . . . . 1497
Seth . . . . . 1499
shepherd, shepherds, shepherded, shepherding . . . . . 1500
sign, signs, proof, reminder . . . . . 1502
silver . . . . . 1504
Simeon . . . . . 1506
sin offering, sin offerings . . . . . 1507
sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning . . . . . 1509
Sinai, Mount Sinai . . . . . 1512
soldier, soldiers, warrior, warriors . . . . . 1514
Solomon . . . . . 1515

son, sons . . . . . 1516
sorcerer, sorcerers, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft . . . . . 1519
spear, spears, spearmen . . . . . 1520
spirit, spirits, spiritual . . . . . 1521
staff, staffs . . . . . 1523
statute, statutes . . . . . 1524
stone, stones, stoning . . . . . 1525
strength, strengthen, strengthens, strengthened, strengthening . . . . . 1526
strong drink, strong drinks . . . . . 1528
stronghold, strongholds, fortifications, fortified, fortress, fortresses . . . . . 1529
Succoth . . . . . 1531
sword, swords, swordsmen . . . . . 1532
synagogue . . . . . 1534
Syria . . . . . 1535
tabernacle . . . . . 1536
tax, taxes, taxed, taxation, taxpayers . . . . . 1538
temple . . . . . 1539
tempt, temptation . . . . . 1541
tent of meeting . . . . . 1543
tent, tents, tentmakers . . . . . 1545
tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes . . . . . 1547
terror, terrorize, terrorized, terrors, terrify, terrified, terrifying . . . . . 1548
test, tests, tested . . . . . 1549
testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses . . . . . 1551
the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea . . . . . 1554
thorn, thornbush, thornbushes, thorns, thistle, thistles . . . . . 1555
thresh, threshes, threshed, threshing . . . . . 1556
Tirzah . . . . . 1557
transgress, transgresses, transgression . . . . . 1558
tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen . . . . . 1559
trouble, troubles, troubled, troubling, troublemaker, troublesome . . . . . 1561
true, truth, truths . . . . . 1563
trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters . . . . . 1565
trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness . . . . . 1566
turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back 1568
twelve tribes of Israel, twelve tribes of the children of Israel, twelve tribes . . . . . 1570
unleavened bread . . . . . 1571
vine, vines . . . . . 1572
vineyard, vineyards . . . . . 1573
vision, visions, envision . . . . . 1574
voice, voices . . . . . 1575
vow, vows, vowed . . . . . 1576

waste, wastes, wasted, wasting, wasteland, wastelands . . . 1578
water, waters, watered, watering . . . 1579
will of God . . . 1581
wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine . . . 1582
winepress . . . 1584
wise, wisdom . . . 1585
woe . . . 1587
womb, wombs . . . 1589
word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures . . . 1590
word, words . . . 1592
works, deeds, work, acts . . . 1594
worship . . . 1596
wrong, wrongs, wronged, wrongly, wrongfully, wrongdoer, wrongdoing, mistreat, mistreated, hurt, hurts, hurting, hurtful . . . 1598
Yahweh . . . 1599
year, years . . . 1604
yeast, leaven, leavens, leavened, unleavened . . . 1606
yoke, yokes, yoked . . . 1608
zeal, zealous . . . 1609
Zebulun . . . 1610
**translationAcademy . . . 1611**
Abstract Nouns . . . 1612
Active or Passive . . . 1615
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information . . . 1624
Background Information . . . 1630
Biblical Distance . . . 1633
Biblical Money . . . 1636
Biblical Volume . . . 1638
Biblical Weight . . . 1642
Copy or Borrow Words . . . 1646
Direct and Indirect Quotations . . . 1648
Double Negatives . . . 1650
Doublet . . . 1653
Ellipsis . . . 1655
Euphemism . . . 1657
Exclusive and Inclusive “We” . . . 1659
First, Second, or Third Person . . . 1661
Forms of You . . . 1663
Fractions . . . 1665
Go and Come . . . 1668
Hebrew Months . . . 1671
How to Translate Names . . . 1675

Hyperbole and Generalization . . . . . 1681
Hypothetical Situations . . . . . 1685
Idiom . . . . . 1688
Litotes . . . . . 1692
Merism . . . . . 1694
Metaphor . . . . . 1696
Metonymy . . . . . 1706
Numbers . . . . . 1710
Ordinal Numbers . . . . . 1717
Parallelism . . . . . 1721
Personification . . . . . 1725
Possession . . . . . 1727
Predictive Past . . . . . 1731
Pronouns . . . . . 1733
Quotes Within Quotes . . . . . 1735
Rhetorical Question . . . . . 1738
Simile . . . . . 1743
Symbolic Action . . . . . 1746
Symbolic Language . . . . . 1749
Synecdoche . . . . . 1752
Translate Unknowns . . . . . 1754

# translationNotes

## Introduction to Numbers

### Part 1: General Introduction

#### Outline of Numbers

1. Preparing to leave Sinai (1:1–10:10)
    - Census and calling the tribes together (1:1–4:49)
    - Regulations (5:1–6:27)
    - Dedication of the Altar (7:1-89)
    - Candlestick, setting apart the Levites (8:1–29);
    - Second Passover, the cloud to lead them, trumpets (9:1–10:10)
2. Sinai to Moab, through the wilderness (10:11–17:13)
    - Complaining and murmuring (10:11–11:15); the quails (11:16–35)
    - Miriam's leprosy (12:1–16)
    - The spies selected and sent (13:1–14:45)
    - Commands (15:1-41)
    - Korah's rebellion (16:1–17:13);
3. The Priests and purification (18:1-19:22)
    - Priests and Levites (18:1–32)
    - The law of purification (19:1–22)
4. Conflicts (20:1–21:35)
    - Miriam's death (20:1–13)
    - Edom's refusal and Aaron's death (20:14–29)
    - Journey to Moab (21:1–35)
5. The Plains of Moab (22–36)
    - Balaam (22:1–24:25)
    - Baal Peor (25:1–18)
    - Second census (26:1-65)
    - Inheritance rights for daughters, and Joshua's succession to Moses' place (27:1–23)
    - Offerings and women's vows (28:1–30:16)
    - Midianite war (31:1–54)
    - Across the Jordan (32:1–42)
    - The people set up camp (33:1–56)
    - Territory of West Jordan; Levitical cities and cities of refuge (34:1–35:34)
    - Marriage of female heirs (36)

### What is the Book of Numbers about?

Numbers tells about the people of Israel as they traveled from Mount Sinai in the wilderness to the Jordan River. While traveling, the Israelites became very discouraged. Therefore, they rebelled against the leaders whom God had given them. It was at the Jordan River that the people of Israel refused to enter the Promised Land. Because the Israelites were afraid and did not trust God to protect them in the Promised Land, he delayed Israel's entry for forty years (13:1–14:45). (See: Promised Land)

### How should the title of this book be translated?

The title of this book, "Numbers," refers to the census that was to be taken of the Israelites. The people of the project language may already familiar with the name "Numbers" from other Bible versions. If not, the translator could consider a clearer name for the book, such as "The Counting of the People of Israel." (See: census)

### Who wrote the Book of Numbers?

The writers of both the Old and New Testament present Moses as being very involved with writing the Book of Numbers. However, at a later time, scribes and priests probably put the book into its present form. They included material from other sources such as eyewitness accounts and books of history. One such book was "the scroll of the Wars of Yahweh" (21:14). This book may have been completed after Moses' death. Scribes may have used it when they worked on the Book of Numbers.

## Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

### How does Numbers present the idea of the whole community being responsible when only a few people sinned?

The people understood and assumed that God would punish the entire community of Israel if some of the people rebelled against him. And, often, God did punish the entire nation when some of them sinned. All of the people in the Ancient Near East would have understood and expected this. However, Moses and Aaron, the leaders of Israel, are shown as praying to God for him to punish only those who are guilty.

## Part 3: Important Translation Issues

### Why does Moses speak using third person pronouns about himself?

When an author wrote about something he was involved in, it was common for him to use the pronoun "he" instead of "I," or "they" instead of "we." The translator may decide to use the project's normal pronouns instead.

## Numbers 01 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The ULB indents the lines in 1:5-15 because they are long lists.

### Census

They counted how many men of military age were in each tribe of Israel. These men would also become the heads of families. It is possible the numbers in this chapter are rounded to the nearest 100.

### Links:

- **Numbers 01:01 Notes**
- **Numbers intro**

## Numbers 1:1-3

### UDB:

[1] In the second month of the year after the Israelite people had left Egypt, Yahweh spoke to Moses while he was in the sacred tent, in the wilderness of Sinai. Yahweh said to him, [2] "Count how many Israelite men, from each family in Israel, and count them by name. [3] You and Aaron must count the men who are at least twenty years old, those who can serve as soldiers in the army. Write down the number of the men, along with the names of their clans and families.

### ULB:

[1] Yahweh spoke to Moses in the tent of meeting in the wilderness of Sinai. This happened on the first day of the second month during the second year after the people of Israel had come out from the land of Egypt. Yahweh said, [2] "Conduct a census of all the men of Israel in each clan, in their fathers' families. Count them by name. Count every male, each man [3] who is twenty years old or older. Count all who can fight as soldiers for Israel. You and Aaron must record the number of men in their armed groups.

### translationNotes

#### Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

#### the first day of the second month

This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day is near the middle of April on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

#### the second year

"year 2" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

#### Count them by name

This means to count the men by recording their names. AT: "Count them, recording each man's name" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### twenty years old

"20 years old" (See: Numbers)

#### record the number of men in their armed groups

This refers to assigning the men to their military divisions.

#### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- tent of meeting
- Sinai, Mount Sinai
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- day, days
- year, years
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- census
- clan, clans
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- family, families
- name, names, named
- Aaron

#### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 01 General Notes
- Numbers 1 translationQuestions

## Numbers 1:4-5

### UDB:

[4] I have chosen one man from each of the tribes to help you to do this. Each one must be a leader of his clan.

[5-6] Their names are:

Elizur son of Shedeur, from the tribe of Reuben;

Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai, from the tribe of Simeon;

### ULB:

[4] A man from each tribe, a clan head, must serve with you as his tribe's leader. Each leader must lead the men who will fight for his tribe. [5] These are the names of the leaders who must fight with you:

From the tribe of Reuben, Elizur son of Shedeur;

[6] from the tribe of Simeon, Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai;

### translationNotes

#### a clan head

"a leader of a clan"

#### serve with you

"help you"

#### Elizur ... Shedeur ... Shelumiel ... Zurishaddai

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- Reuben
- son, sons
- Simeon

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 01 General Notes
- Numbers 1 translationQuestions

## Numbers 1:7

### UDB:

[7-9] Nahshon son of Amminadab, from the tribe of Judah;

Nethanel son of Zuar, from the tribe of Issachar;

Eliab son of Helon, from the tribe of Zebulun;

### ULB:

[7] from the tribe of Judah, Nahshon son of Amminadab;

[8] from the tribe of Issachar, Nethanel son of Zuar;

[9] from the tribe of Zebulun, Eliab son of Helon;

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues to list the leaders of the tribes to Moses. (See: How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- Judah
- Issachar
- Zebulun

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 01 General Notes
- Numbers 1 translationQuestions

## Numbers 1:10

### UDB:

[10-11] Elishama son of Ammihud, from the tribe of Joseph's son Ephraim;

Gamaliel son of Pedahzur, from the tribe of Joseph's son Manasseh;

Abidan son of Gideoni, from the tribe of Benjamin;

### ULB:

[10] from the tribe of Ephraim son of Joseph, Elishama son of Ammihud;

from the tribe of Manasseh, Gamaliel son of Pedahzur;

[11] from the tribe of Benjamin, Abidan son of Gideoni;

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues to list the leaders of the tribes to Moses. (See: How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites
- Joseph (OT)
- Manasseh
- Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 01 General Notes
- Numbers 1 translationQuestions

## Numbers 1:12

### UDB:

[12-15] Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai, from the tribe of Dan;

Pagiel son of Ocran, from the tribe of Asher;

Eliasaph son of Deuel, from the tribe of Gad;

Ahira son of Enan, from the tribe of Naphtali."

### ULB:

[12] from the tribe of Dan, Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai;

[13] from the tribe of Asher, Pagiel son of Okran;

[14] from the tribe of Gad, Eliasaph son of Deuel;

[15] and from the tribe of Naphtali, Ahira son of Enan."

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues to list the leaders of the tribes to Moses. (See: How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- Dan
- Asher
- Gad
- Naphtali

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 01 General Notes
- Numbers 1 translationQuestions

## Numbers 1:16

### UDB:

[16] These were the men whom Yahweh chose from the people. They were leaders of their tribes. They were the chief men of the clans of the Israelite people.

### ULB:

[16] These were the men appointed from the people. They led their ancestors' tribes. They were the leaders of the clans in Israel.

### translationNotes

#### the men appointed

This can be stated in active form. AT: "the men whom Yahweh appointed" (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- appoint, appoints, appointed
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- clan, clans
- Israel, Israelites

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 01 General Notes
- Numbers 1 translationQuestions

## Numbers 1:17-19

### UDB:

17 Aaron and Moses summoned all these leaders, 18 and they gathered all of the people on that same day. They listed the names of all the men who were at least 20 years old, and with their names they wrote the names of their clans and their family groups 19 just as Moses had commanded. They wrote the names while the Israelites were there in the wilderness of Sinai.

### ULB:

17 Moses and Aaron took these men, who were recorded by name, 18 and along with these men they assembled all the men of Israel on the first day of the second month. Then each man twenty years old and older identified his ancestry. He had to name the clans and families descended from his ancestors. 19 Then Moses recorded their numbers in the wilderness of Sinai, as Yahweh had commanded him to do.

### translationNotes

#### took these men

"gathered these men together"

#### who were recorded by name

This can be stated in active form. AT: "whose names they had recorded" (See: Active or Passive)

#### the first day of the second month

This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day is near the middle of April on Western calendars. See how you translated this in Numbers 1:1. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

#### Then each man ... identified his ancestry. He had to name the clans and families descended from his ancestors

The second sentence means basically the same thing as the first and is added for clarification. (See: Parallelism)

#### He had to name

Here "name" means to "say." AT: "Each man had to say" (See: Idiom)

**translationWords**

- Moses
- Aaron
- name, names, named
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled
- family, families
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- Sinai, Mount Sinai
- Yahweh
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 01 General Notes
- Numbers 1 translationQuestions

## Numbers 1:20

### UDB:

[20-21] There were 46,500 men from the tribe of Reuben (who was Jacob's oldest son) who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

### ULB:

[20] From the descendants of Reuben, Israel's firstborn, were counted all the names of each and every man twenty years old or older able to go to war, from the records of their ancestor's clans and families. [21] They counted 46,500 men from the tribe of Reuben.

### translationNotes

#### were counted all the names

This can be stated in active form. AT: "they counted all the names" (See: Active or Passive)

#### able to go to war

"who was able to go to war"

#### 46,500 men

"forty-six thousand five hundred men" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Reuben
- Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob
- firstborn

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 01 General Notes
- Numbers 1 translationQuestions

## Numbers 1:22

### UDB:

[22-23] There were 59,300 men from the tribe of Simeon who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

### ULB:

[22] From the descendants of Simeon were counted all the names of each and every man twenty years old or older able to go to war, from the records of their ancestor's clans and families. [23] They counted 59,300 men from the tribe of Simeon.

### translationNotes

#### were counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families

The phrase "were counted" can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in Numbers 1:20. AT: "they counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families" (See: Active or Passive)

#### 59,300 men

"fifty-nine thousand three hundred men" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- Simeon
- clan, clans
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 01 General Notes
- Numbers 1 translationQuestions

## Numbers 1:24

### UDB:

[24-25] There were 45,650 men from the tribe of Gad who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

### ULB:

[24] From the descendants of Gad were counted all the names of each and every man twenty years old or older able to go to war, from the records of their ancestor's clans and families. [25] They counted 45,650 men from the tribe of Gad.

### translationNotes

#### were counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families

The phrase "were counted" can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in Numbers 1:20. AT: "they counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families" (See: Active or Passive)

#### 45,650 men

"forty-five thousand six hundred and fifty men" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- Gad
- family, families

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 01 General Notes
- Numbers 1 translationQuestions

## Numbers 1:26

### UDB:

[26-27] There were 74,600 men from the tribe of Judah who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

### ULB:

[26] From the descendants of Judah were counted all the names of each and every man twenty years old or older able to go to war, from the records of their ancestor's clans and families. [27] They counted 74,600 men from the tribe of Judah.

### translationNotes

#### were counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families

The phrase "were counted" can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in Numbers 1:20. AT: "they counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families" (See: Active or Passive)

#### 74,600 men

"seventy-four thousand six hundred men" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Judah

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 01 General Notes
- Numbers 1 translationQuestions

## Numbers 1:28

### UDB:

[28-29] There were 54,400 men from the tribe of Issachar who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

### ULB:

[28] From the descendants of Issachar were counted all the names of each and every man twenty years old or older able to go to war, from the records of their ancestor's clans and families. [29] They counted 54,400 men from the tribe of Issachar.

### translationNotes

#### were counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families

The phrase "were counted" can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in Numbers 1:20. AT: "they counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families" (See: Active or Passive)

#### 54,400 men

"fifty-four thousand four hundred men" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- Issachar
- clan, clans
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 01 General Notes
- Numbers 1 translationQuestions

## Numbers 1:30

### UDB:

[30-31] There were 57,400 men from the tribe of Zebulun who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

### ULB:

[30] From the descendants of Zebulun were counted all the names of each and every man twenty years old or older able to go to war, from the records of their ancestor's clans and families. [31] They counted 57,400 men from the tribe of Zebulun.

### translationNotes

#### were counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families

The phrase "were counted" can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in Numbers 1:20. AT: "they counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families" (See: Active or Passive)

#### 57,400 men

"fifty-seven thousand four hundred men" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- Zebulun
- family, families

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 01 General Notes
- Numbers 1 translationQuestions

## Numbers 1:32

### UDB:

[32-33] There were 40,500 men from the tribe of Ephraim who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

### ULB:

[32] From the descendants of Ephraim son of Joseph were counted all the names of each and every man twenty years old or older able to go to war, from the records of their ancestor's clans and families. [33] They counted 40,500 men from the tribe of Ephraim.

### translationNotes

#### were counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families

The phrase "were counted" can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in Numbers 1:20. AT: "they counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families" (See: Active or Passive)

#### 40,500 men

"forty thousand five hundred men" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites
- Joseph (OT)

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 01 General Notes
- Numbers 1 translationQuestions

## Numbers 1:34

### UDB:

[34-35] There were 32,200 men from the tribe of Manasseh who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

### ULB:

[34] From the descendants of Manasseh son of Joseph were counted all the names of each and every man twenty years old or older able to go to war, from the records of their ancestor's clans and families. [35] They counted 32,200 men from the tribe of Manasseh.

### translationNotes

#### were counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families

The phrase "were counted" can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in Numbers 1:20. AT: "they counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families" (See: Active or Passive)

#### 32,200 men

"thirty-two thousand two hundred men" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- Manasseh
- clan, clans
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 01 General Notes
- Numbers 1 translationQuestions

## Numbers 1:36

### UDB:

[36-37] There were 35,400 men from the tribe of Benjamin who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

### ULB:

[36] From the descendants of Benjamin were counted all the names of each and every man twenty years old or older able to go to war, from the records of their ancestor's clans and families. [37] They counted 35,400 men from the tribe of Benjamin.

### translationNotes

#### were counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families

The phrase "were counted" can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in Numbers 1:20. AT: "they counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families" (See: Active or Passive)

#### 35,400 men

"thirty-five thousand four hundred men" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites
- family, families

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 01 General Notes
- Numbers 1 translationQuestions

## Numbers 1:38

### UDB:

[38-39] There were 62,700 men from the tribe of Dan who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

### ULB:

[38] From the descendants of Dan were counted all the names of each and every man twenty years old or older able to go to war, from the records of their ancestor's clans and families. [39] They counted 62,700 from the tribe of Dan.

### translationNotes

#### were counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families

The phrase "were counted" can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in Numbers 1:20. AT: "they counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families" (See: Active or Passive)

#### They counted 62,700

"They counted sixty-two thousand seven hundred" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Dan

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 01 General Notes
- Numbers 1 translationQuestions

## Numbers 1:40

### UDB:

[40-41] There were 41,500 men from the tribe of Asher who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

### ULB:

[40] From the descendants of Asher were counted all the names of each and every man twenty years old or older able to go to war, from the records of their ancestor's clans and families. [41] They counted 41,500 men from the tribe of Asher.

### translationNotes

#### were counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families

The phrase "were counted" can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in Numbers 1:20. AT: "they counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families" (See: Active or Passive)

#### They counted 41,500

"They counted forty-one thousand five hundred" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- Asher
- clan, clans
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 01 General Notes
- Numbers 1 translationQuestions

## Numbers 1:42

### UDB:

[42-43] There were 53,400 men from the tribe of Naphtali who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

### ULB:

[42] From the descendants of Naphtali were counted all the names of each and every man twenty years old or older able to go to war, from the records of their ancestor's clans and families. [43] They counted 53,400 from the tribe of Naphtali.

### translationNotes

#### were counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families

The phrase "were counted" can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in Numbers 1:20. AT: "they counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families" (See: Active or Passive)

#### They counted 53,400

"They counted fifty-three thousand four hundred" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- Naphtali
- family, families

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 01 General Notes
- Numbers 1 translationQuestions

## Numbers 1:44-46

### UDB:

44-45 That was the number of men from each tribe that Aaron and Moses and the twelve leaders of the tribes of Israel listed, along with the names of their clans. 46 The total was 603,550 men.

### ULB:

44 Moses and Aaron counted all these men, together with the twelve men who were leading the twelve tribes of Israel. 45 So all the men of Israel from twenty years old and older, all who could fight in war, were counted in each of their families. 46 They counted 603,550 men.

### translationNotes

#### So all the men of Israel ... were counted in each of their families

The phrase "were counted" can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in Numbers 1:20. AT: "So they counted all the men of Israel ... in each of their families" (See: Active or Passive)

#### 603,550 men

"six hundred and three thousand five hundred and fifty men" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- Moses
- Aaron
- twelve tribes of Israel, twelve tribes of the children of Israel, twelve tribes
- Israel, Israelites

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 01 General Notes
- Numbers 1 translationQuestions

## Numbers 1:47-49

### UDB:

47 But this number did not include the names of the men of the tribe of Levi, 48 because Yahweh had said to Moses, 49 "When you count the men of the tribes of Israel, do not count the men in the tribe of Levi.

### ULB:

47 But the men who were descended from Levi were not counted, 48 because Yahweh had said to Moses, 49 "You must not count the tribe of Levi or include them in the total of the people of Israel.

### translationNotes

#### the men who were descended from Levi were not counted

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Moses and Aaron did not count the men who were descended from Levi" (See: Active or Passive)

#### who were descended from Levi

In some languages this is a passive verb. If needed, this can be written differently. AT: "who were from the tribe of Levi" (See: Active or Passive)

#### must not count the tribe of Levi

Here the "tribe of Levi" refers to all of the men in the tribe of Levi. AT: "must not count the men of the tribe of Levi" (See: Synecdoche)

### translationWords

- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- Yahweh
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 01 General Notes
- Numbers 1 translationQuestions

## Numbers 1:50

### UDB:

50 Appoint the male descendants of Levi to take care of the sacred tent and the chest inside it that contains the tablets on which are written the Ten Commandments. They must also take care of the other things that are inside the tent. When you travel, they are the ones who must carry the sacred tent and all the things that are inside it, and they must take care of it and set up their tents around it.

### ULB:

50 Instead, assign the Levites to care for the tabernacle of the covenant decrees, and to care for all the furnishings in the tabernacle and for everything in it. The Levites must carry the tabernacle, and they must carry the tabernacle's furnishings. They must care for the tabernacle and make their camp around it.

### translationNotes

#### the tabernacle of the covenant decrees

The tabernacle was also called by this longer name because the ark with the law of God was placed inside it.

#### everything in it

Here "it" refers to the tabernacle.

#### The Levites must carry the tabernacle

It was their job to carry the tabernacle when they traveled. AT: "When you travel, the Levites must carry the tabernacle" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### make their camp around it

This means that they were to set up their tents around the tabernacle. AT: "set up their tents around it" (See: Idiom)

### translationWords

- assign, assigned, assigning, assignment, assignments, reassign
- tabernacle
- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- decree, decrees, decreed

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 01 General Notes
- Numbers 1 translationQuestions

## Numbers 1:51-52

### UDB:

51 Whenever it is time for all of you to move to another location, the descendants of Levi are the ones who must dismantle the sacred tent. And when it is time to stop traveling, they are the ones who must set it up again. Any other person who goes near the sacred tent to do this work must be executed. 52 The people of each Israelite tribe must set up their tents in their own area, and they must set up a flag that represents their tribe.

### ULB:

51 When the tabernacle is to move to another place, the Levites must take it down. When the tabernacle is to be set up, the Levites must set it up. Any stranger who comes near the tabernacle must be killed. 52 When the people of Israel set up their tents, each man must do so near the banner that belongs to his armed group.

### translationNotes

#### When the tabernacle is to be set up

This can be stated in active form. AT: “When it is time to set up the tabernacle” (See: Active or Passive)

#### Any stranger ... must be killed

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Any stranger ... must die” or “You must kill any stranger who comes near the tabernacle” (See: Active or Passive)

#### the banner

a large flag

#### his armed group

“his military division”

### translationWords

- Israel, Israelites
- tent, tents, tentmakers

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 01 General Notes
- Numbers 1 translationQuestions

## Numbers 1:53-54

### UDB:

53 But the male descendants of Levi must set up their tents around the sacred tent in order to protect the other Israelite people from being punished by Yahweh for coming close to the sacred tent. The descendants of Levi are the ones who must stand around the sacred tent to guard it."

54 So the Israelite people did everything just like Yahweh had commanded Moses.

### ULB:

53 However, the Levites must set up their tents around the tabernacle of the covenant decrees so that my anger does not come upon the people of Israel. The Levites must care for the tabernacle of the covenant decrees." 54 The people of Israel did all these things. They did everything that Yahweh commanded through Moses.

### translationNotes

#### the tabernacle of the covenant decrees

The tabernacle was also called by this longer name because the ark with the law of God was placed inside it. See how you translated this in Numbers 1:50.

#### so that my anger does not come upon the people of Israel

Here Yahweh speaks of not punishing the Israelites as his anger not coming upon them. The phrase "come upon" refers to his anger being applied to them. AT: "so that in my anger I do not punish the people of Israel" (See: Metaphor)

#### Yahweh commanded through Moses

Yahweh had commanded Moses everything that the Israelites were to do, and then Moses had commanded the Israelites. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- anger, angered, angry
- Yahweh
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Moses

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 01 General Notes
- Numbers 1 translationQuestions

## Numbers 02 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

### Camping

Moses told each tribe where to camp. They were each given a specific area in which to stay.

### Links:

- **Numbers 02:01 Notes**

## Numbers 2:1-2

### UDB:

[1] Then Yahweh said this to Aaron and Moses, [2] "When the Israelites set up their tents, they are to set them up in areas that surround the sacred tent, but not close to it. The people of each tribe must set up their tents in a different area. Each tribe must put up a flag in that area that identifies their tribe.

### ULB:

[1] Yahweh spoke again to Moses and Aaron. He said, [2] "Each one of the Israelites must camp around his standard, with the banners of their fathers' houses. They will camp around the tent of meeting on every side.

### translationNotes

#### around his standard

The "standards" were four larger groups that the tribes were divided into. Each standard was commanded to camp together. The standards was represented by a banner.

#### with the banners of their fathers' houses

Each extended family also had a banner under with the camp, which was within the area designated for their standard.

#### banners

A banner is a large flag.

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Aaron
- Israel, Israelites
- tent of meeting

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 02 General Notes
- Numbers 2 translationQuestions

## Numbers 2:3

### UDB:

### ULB:

[3] Those will be camping on the east of the tent of meeting, where the sun rises, they are the camp of Judah and they are camping under their standard. Nahshon son of Amminadab is the leader of the people of Judah. [4] The number of the people of Judah is 74,600.

### translationNotes

#### under their standard

The “standards” were four larger groups that the tribes were divided into. Each standard was commanded to camp together, and was represented by a banner. See how you translated “standards” in Numbers 2:2.

#### Nahshon son of Amminadab

See how you translated this man’s name in Numbers 1:7.

#### 74,600

“seventy-four thousand six hundred” (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- Judah

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 02 General Notes
- Numbers 2 translationQuestions

## Numbers 2:5

### UDB:

### ULB:

[5] The tribe of Issachar must camp next to Judah. Nethanel son of Zuar must lead the army of Issachar. [6] The number in his division is 54,400 men.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: Numbers)

#### Nethanel son of Zuar

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:8.

#### division

This is a military term for a large group of soldiers. Each tribe was its own "division."

#### 54,400 men

"fifty-four thousand four hundred men" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- Issachar

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 02 General Notes
- Numbers 2 translationQuestions

## Numbers 2:7

### UDB:

### ULB:

[7] The tribe of Zebulun must camp next to Issachar. Eliab son of Helon must lead the army of Zebulun. [8] The number in his division is 57,400.

### translationNotes

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: Numbers)

### Eliab son of Helon

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:9.

### 57,400

"fifty-seven thousand four hundred." This refers to the number of men. AT: "57,400 men" (See: Numbers and Ellipsis)

### translationWords

- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- Zebulun

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 02 General Notes
- Numbers 2 translationQuestions

## Numbers 2:9

### UDB:

[9] So there will be 186,400 troops on the east side of the sacred tent. Whenever the Israelites move to a new location, those three tribes must go in front of the others.

### ULB:

[9] All the number of the camp of Judah is 186,400. They will set out first.

### translationNotes

#### All the number ... is 186,400

"All the number ... is one hundred and eighty-six thousand four hundred." This number includes all of the men in the tribes that camped under the standard of Judah. AT: "The number of the men camped under the standard of Judah is 186,400" (See: Numbers and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### the camp of Judah

This refers to the three tribes that camp east of the tent of meeting: the tribes of Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun.

#### They will set out first

This means that when the Israelite camp moves, the camp of Judah will start walking out before the other tribes do. AT: "When travelling, the camp of Judah will start walking first" or "When the Israelites leave, those tribes will leave first" (See: Ordinal Numbers and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- Judah

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 02 General Notes
- Numbers 2 translationQuestions

## Numbers 2:10

### UDB:

### ULB:

[10] On the south side will be the camp of Reuben under their standard. The leader of the camp of Reuben is Elizur son of Shedeur. [11] The number in his division is 46,500.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: Numbers)

#### under their standard

The "standards" were four larger groups that the tribes were divided into. Each standard was commanded to camp together. The standards were represented by a banner. See how you translated "standards" in Numbers 2:2.

#### Elizur son of Shedeur

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:5.

#### 46,500

"forty-six thousand five hundred." This refers to the number of men. AT: "46,500 men" (See: Numbers and Ellipsis)

### translationWords

- Reuben

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 02 General Notes
- Numbers 2 translationQuestions

## Numbers 2:12

### UDB:

### ULB:

[12] Simeon is camping next to Reuben. The leader of the people of Simeon is Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai. [13] The number in his division is 59,300.

### translationNotes

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: Numbers)

### Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:6.

### 59,300

"Fifty-nine thousand three hundred." This refers to the number of men. AT: "59,300 men" (See: Numbers and Ellipsis)

### translationWords

- Simeon

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 02 General Notes
- Numbers 2 translationQuestions

## Numbers 2:14

### UDB:

### ULB:

[14] The tribe of Gad is next. The leader of the people of Gad is Eliasaph son of Deuel. [15] The number in his division is 45,650.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: Numbers)

#### Eliasaph son of Deuel

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:14.

#### 45,650

"forty-five thousand six hundred and fifty." This refers to the number of men. AT: "45,650 men" (See: Numbers and Ellipsis)

### translationWords

- Gad

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 02 General Notes
- Numbers 2 translationQuestions

## Numbers 2:16

### UDB:

16 So there will be 151,450 troops on the south side of the sacred tent. Those three tribes will follow the first group when the Israelites travel.

### ULB:

16 The number of all the men assigned to the camp of Reuben, according to their divisions, is 151,450. They will set out second.

### translationNotes

#### The number of all the men ... is 151,450

“The number of all the men ... is one hundred and fifty-one thousand four hundred and fifty.” This number includes all of the men in the tribes that camped under the standard of Reuben. AT: “The number of all the men camped under the standard of Reuben, according to their divisions, is 151,450” (See: Numbers and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### They will set out second

This means that when the Israelite camp moves, the camp of Reuben will start walking out after the camp of Judah goes out. AT: “When travelling, the camp of Reuben will start walking second” or “When the Israelites leave, those tribes will leave next” (See: Ordinal Numbers and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- Reuben

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 02 General Notes
- Numbers 2 translationQuestions

## Numbers 2:17

### UDB:

17 Behind that group will walk the descendants of Levi, who will carry the sacred tent. The Israelites will march in the same order that they always set up their tents. Each tribe will carry its own flag.

### ULB:

17 Next, the tent of meeting must go out from the camp with the Levites in the middle of all the camps. They must go out from the camp in the same order as they come into the camp. Every man must be in his place, by his banner.

### translationNotes

#### the tent of meeting must go out ... in the middle of all the camps

This means that the tent of meeting must be carried by the Levites in the middle of the tribes as they travel.

#### They must go out

"They" refers to the twelve tribes.

#### by his banner

Each man does not have his own personal banner; rather, this refers to the banner belonging to his tribe. AT: "by his tribe's banner" (See: Synecdoche)

### translationWords

- tent of meeting
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 02 General Notes
- Numbers 2 translationQuestions

## Numbers 2:18

### UDB:

### ULB:

[18] The divisions of the camp of Ephraim under their standard. The leader of the people of Ephraim is Elishama son of Ammihud. [19] The number in his division is 40,500.

### translationNotes

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: How to Translate Names and Numbers)

### under their standard

The "standards" were four larger groups that the tribes were divided into. Each standard was commanded to camp together. The standards were represented by a banner. See how you translated "standards" in Numbers 2:2.

### 40,500

"Forty thousand five hundred." This refers to the number of men. AT: "40,500 men" (See: Numbers and Ellipsis)

### translationWords

- Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 02 General Notes
- Numbers 2 translationQuestions

## Numbers 2:20

### UDB:

### ULB:

[20] Next to them is the tribe of Manasseh. The leader of Manasseh is Gamaliel son of Pedahzur. [21] The number in his division is 32,200.

### translationNotes

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: How to Translate Names and Numbers)

### Next to them

This means that the tribe of Manasseh will set out next, after the tribe of Ephraim.

### 32,200

"Thirty-two thousand two hundred." This refers to the number of men. AT: "32,200 men" (See: Numbers and Ellipsis)

### translationWords

- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- Manasseh

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 02 General Notes
- Numbers 2 translationQuestions

## Numbers 2:22

### UDB:

### ULB:

[22] Next will be the tribe of Benjamin. The leader of Benjamin is Abidan son of Gideoni. [23] The number in his division is 35,400.

### translationNotes

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: Numbers)

### Abidan son of Gideoni

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:11.

### 35,400

"Thirty-five thousand four hundred." This refers to the number of men. AT: "35,400 men" (See: Numbers and Ellipsis)

### translationWords

- Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 02 General Notes
- Numbers 2 translationQuestions

## Numbers 2:24

### UDB:

[24] So there will be 108,100 troops on the west side of the sacred tent. Those three tribes will follow the second group, behind the descendants of Levi.

### ULB:

[24] All those numbered in the camp of Ephraim is 108,100. They will set out third.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: How to Translate Names and Numbers)

#### All those numbered ... 108,100

"All those numbered ... one hundred and eight thousand one hundred." This number includes all of the men in the tribes that camped under the standard of Ephraim. AT: "The number of the men camped under the standard of Ephraim is 108,100" (See: Numbers and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### They will set out third

This means that when the Israelite camp moves, the camp of Ephraim will start walking out after the camp of Judah and the camp of Reuben go out. AT: "When travelling, the camp of Ephraim will start walking third" or "When the Israelites leave, those tribes will leave next" (See: Ordinal Numbers and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 02 General Notes
- Numbers 2 translationQuestions

## Numbers 2:25

### UDB:

### ULB:

[25] On the north will be the divisions of the camp of Dan. The leader of the people of Dan is Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai. [26] The number in his division is 62,700.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: How to Translate Names and Numbers)

#### the divisions of the camp of Dan

The this refers to the divisions of Dan, Asher, and Naphthali that are under the standard of Dan. AT: “the divisions that camp under the standard of Dan” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai

See how you translated this man’s name in Numbers 1:12.

#### 62,700

“Sixty-two thousand seven hundred.” This refers to the number of men. AT: “62,700 men” (See: Numbers and Ellipsis)

### translationWords

- Dan

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 02 General Notes
- Numbers 2 translationQuestions

## Numbers 2:27

### UDB:

### ULB:

[27] The people of the tribe of Asher camp next to Dan. The leader of Asher is Pagiel son of Okran. [28] The number in his division is 41,500.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: Numbers)

#### Pagiel son of Okran

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:13.

#### 41,500

"forty-one thousand five hundred." This refers to the number of men. AT: "41,500 men" (See: Numbers and Ellipsis)

### translationWords

- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- Asher

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 02 General Notes
- Numbers 2 translationQuestions

## Numbers 2:29

### UDB:

### ULB:

[29] The tribe of Naphtali is next. The leader of Naphthali is Ahira son of Enan. [30] The mnumber in his division is 53,400.

### translationNotes

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: How to Translate Names and Numbers)

### Ahira son of Enan

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:15.

### 53,400

"fifty-three thousand four hundred." This refers to the number of men. AT: "53,400 men" (See: Numbers and Ellipsis)

### translationWords

- Naphtali

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 02 General Notes
- Numbers 2 translationQuestions

## Numbers 2:31

### UDB:

[31] So there will be 157,600 troops on the north side of the sacred tent. Those three tribes will be last. They must carry their own flags when the Israelites travel."

### ULB:

[31] All those numbered in the camp with Dan is 157,600. They will go out from the camp last, under their banner."

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: How to Translate Names and Numbers)

#### All those numbered ... 157,600

"All those numbered ... one hundred and fifty-seven thousand six hundred." This number includes all of the men in the tribes that camped under the standard of Dan. AT: "The number of the men camped under the standard of Dan is 157,600" (See: Numbers and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- Dan

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 02 General Notes
- Numbers 2 translationQuestions

## Numbers 2:32-33

### UDB:

[32] So there were 603,550 Israelite men who were able to fight who were listed according to their families' ancestors. [33] But just as Yahweh had commanded, the names of the descendants of Levi were not included.

### ULB:

[32] These are the Israelites, numbered according to their families. All those counted in their camps, by their divisions, are 603,550. [33] But Moses and Aaron did not count the Levites among the people of Israel. This was as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

### translationNotes

#### All those counted

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Moses and Aaron counted them all" (See: Active or Passive)

#### by their divisions

Here "their" refers to the people of Israel.

#### are 603,550

"are six hundred and three thousand five hundred and fifty" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Aaron
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Yahweh
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 02 General Notes
- Numbers 2 translationQuestions

## Numbers 2:34

### UDB:

[34] The Israelites did everything that Yahweh had told Moses. They set up their tents close to their tribal flags, and when they traveled to a new location, they walked with their own clans and family groups.

### ULB:

[34] The people of Israel did everything that Yahweh commanded Moses. They camped by their banners. They went out from the camp by their clans, in the order of their ancestor's families.

### translationNotes

#### They went out from the camp

This refers to when they would travel to another place. AT: "When they traveled, they went out from the camp" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- clan, clans
- family, families

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 02 General Notes
- Numbers 2 translationQuestions

# Numbers 03 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

### The tribe of Levi

The Levites were given a special function in Israel. They belonged to or were specially dedicated to serve Yahweh. They were to be priests and because of this were held to a higher standard than the rest of Israel. Only one of Aaron's sons survived because the others offered improper sacrifices. This tribe had a lot of responsibility during this time. (See: priest, priests, priesthood)

### Links:

- **Numbers 03:01 Notes**

## Numbers 3:1-2

### UDB:

[1] These are some of the things that happened to Aaron and Moses when Yahweh spoke to Moses on Mount Sinai.

[2] Aaron had four sons. They were Nadab the oldest, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar.

### ULB:

[1] Now this is the history of the descendants of Aaron and Moses when Yahweh spoke with Moses on Mount Sinai. [2] The names of Aaron's sons were Nadab the firstborn, and Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar.

### translationNotes

#### Now

Here the author uses the word "now" to shift to telling a new historical account.

#### Nadab the firstborn

"Nadab, who was the firstborn"

#### Nadab ... Abihu ... Ithamar

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Aaron
- Moses
- Yahweh
- Sinai, Mount Sinai
- name, names, named
- son, sons
- firstborn
- Eleazar

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 03 General Notes
- Numbers 3 translationQuestions

## Numbers 3:3-4

### UDB:

[3] These are the names of Aaron's sons who were anointed priests and set apart as priests and whom he ordained to serve as priests. [4] But, while Yahweh was watching, Nadab and Abihu died in the wilderness of Sinai because they burned incense in a manner that was disobedient to what Yahweh had commanded. They had no sons, so Eleazar and Ithamar were the only sons of Aaron who were left to be priests, along with their father Aaron.

### ULB:

[3] These are the names of the sons of Aaron, the priests who were anointed and who were ordained to serve as priests. [4] But Nadab and Abihu fell dead before Yahweh when they offered to him unacceptable fire in the wilderness of Sinai. Nadab and Abihu had no children, so just Eleazar and Ithamar served as priests with Aaron their father.

### translationNotes

#### the priests who were anointed and who were ordained

This can be stated in active form AT: "the priests whom Moses anointed and ordained" (See: Active or Passive)

#### Nadab ... Abihu ... Ithamar

See how you translated these men's names in Numbers 3:2.

#### fell dead before Yahweh

The phrase "fell dead" means to suddenly die. AT: "suddenly died before Yahweh" (See: Idiom)

#### before Yahweh

This refers to Yahweh's presence, meaning that Yahweh saw everything that happened. AT: "in Yahweh's presence" (See: Metonymy)

#### they offered to him unacceptable fire

Here the word "fire" is used to refer to "burning incense." AT: "they burned an incense offering in a way that Yahweh did not approve of" (See: Metonymy)

**translationWords**

- priest, priests, priesthood
- anoint, anointed, anointing
- ordain, ordained, ordinary, ordination
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 03 General Notes
- Numbers 3 translationQuestions

## Numbers 3:5-6

### UDB:

[5] Then Yahweh said to Moses, [6] "Bring the men of the tribe of Levi and present them to Aaron, in order that they may assist him.

### ULB:

[5] Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said, [6] "Bring the tribe of Levi and present them to Aaron the priest for them to help him.

### translationNotes

#### Bring the tribe of Levi

Here the word "tribe" refers to the men in the tribe. AT: "Bring the men of the tribe of Levi" (See: Metonymy)

### translationWords

- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 03 General Notes
- Numbers 3 translationQuestions

## Numbers 3:7-8

### UDB:

[7] They will serve Aaron and all the other Israelite people, while they do their work inside the sacred tent and outside it. [8] They must serve all the Israelite people by taking care of all the things that are inside the sacred tent.

### ULB:

[7] They must perform the duties on behalf of Aaron and the whole community before the tent of meeting. They must serve in the tabernacle. [8] They must care for all the furnishings in the tent of meeting, and they must help the tribes of Israel to carry out the tabernacle service.

### translationNotes

#### on behalf of

"for." This means to do something for someone else, as a representative for them.

#### help the tribes of Israel

Here the "tribes of Israel" refer to the people of Israel. AT: "help the people of Israel" (See: Metonymy)

#### they must help the tribes of Israel to carry out the tabernacle service

The phrase "carry out" means to "serve." AT: "they must help the tribes of Israel by serving in the tabernacle" (See: Idiom)

#### tabernacle service

"work of the tabernacle"

### translationWords

- tent of meeting
- tabernacle
- Israel, Israelites

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 03 General Notes
- Numbers 3 translationQuestions

## Numbers 3:9-10

### UDB:

[9] Appoint them to help Aaron and his two sons. I have chosen them from all the Israelite people to do that. [10] Appoint Aaron and his two sons to do the work that priests do. But anyone else who comes close to the sacred tent to do that work must be executed."

### ULB:

[9] You must give the Levites to Aaron and his sons. They are wholly given to help him serve the people of Israel. [10] You must appoint Aaron and his sons as priests, but any foreigner who comes near must be put to death."

### translationNotes

#### You must give

"You" refers to Moses.

#### They are wholly given

This can be stated in active form. AT: "I have given them entirely" (See: Active or Passive)

#### any foreigner who comes near must be put to death

This can be stated in active form. AT: "you must kill any foreigner who comes near" or "any foreigner who comes near must die" (See: Active or Passive)

#### but any foreigner who comes near

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "but any foreigner who comes near the tabernacle" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- Aaron
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- appoint, appoints, appointed
- priest, priests, priesthood
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 03 General Notes
- Numbers 3 translationQuestions

## Numbers 3:11-13

### UDB:

[11] Yahweh also told Moses, [12] "Note that from all the Israelites I have chosen the men of the tribe of Levi to take the places of all the firstborn sons of the Israelite people. The male descendants of Levi belong to me, [13] because truly all the firstborn males belong to me. That is because on the day that I killed all the firstborn sons of the people of Egypt, I spared all the firstborn sons of the Israelites and set them apart for myself. I also set apart the firstborn males of your domestic animals. They belong to me, Yahweh."

### ULB:

[11] Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said, [12] "Look, I have taken the Levites from among the people of Israel. I have done this instead of taking each firstborn male who is born among the people of Israel. The Levites belong to me. [13] All the firstborn belong to me. On the day that I attacked all the firstborn in the land of Egypt, I set apart for myself all the firstborn in Israel, both people and animals. They belong to me. I am Yahweh."

### translationNotes

#### Look

"Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

#### I have taken the Levites

"I have chosen the Levites"

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- firstborn
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- set apart

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 03 General Notes
- Numbers 3 translationQuestions

## Numbers 3:14-16

### UDB:

[14] Yahweh spoke to Moses again in the wilderness of Sinai. He said, [15] "Count the male members of the tribe of Levi. Write down their names and the names of their clans and family groups. Count all the males who are at least one month old." [16] So Moses counted them, just as Yahweh commanded.

### ULB:

[14] Yahweh spoke to Moses in the wilderness of Sinai. He said, [15] "Count the descendants of Levi in each family, in their clans. Count every male who is one month old and older." [16] Moses counted them, following the word of Yahweh, just as he was commanded to do.

### translationNotes

#### Count the descendants

Yahweh was commanding Moses to only count the male descendants. AT: "Count the male descendants" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### following the word of Yahweh, just as he was commanded to do

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are used together to emphasize that he obeyed Yahweh. (See: Parallelism)

### translationWords

- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- Sinai, Mount Sinai
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- family, families
- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers
- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 03 General Notes
- Numbers 3 translationQuestions

## Numbers 3:17-20

### UDB:

[17] Levi had three sons, whose names were Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.

[18] Gershon had two sons, Libni and Shimei. The clans who were descended from them had the same names as those two sons.

[19] Kohath had four sons, Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel. The clans who were descended from them had the same names as those four sons.

[20] Merari had two sons, Mahli and Mushi. The clans who were descended from them had the same names as those two sons.

Those are the clans who were descended from Levi.

### ULB:

[17] The names of Levi's sons were Gershon, Kohath, and Merari. [18] The clans coming from Gershon's sons were Libni and Shimei. [19] The clans coming from Kohath's sons were Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel. [20] The clans coming from Merari's sons were Mahli and Mushi. These are the clans of the Levites, listed clan by clan.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

This is a list of the descendants of Levi. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### The clans coming from

Here the author speaks of "descending" as if it were "coming." AT: "The clans descending from" (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- clan, clans

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 03 General Notes
- Numbers 3 translationQuestions

## Numbers 3:21-23

### UDB:

21 The two clans descended from Gershon are those that were descended from his sons Libni and Shimei. 22 In those two clans there were 7,500 males who were at least one month old. 23 They were told to set up their tents on the west side of the sacred tent.

### ULB:

21 The clans of the Libnites and the Shimeites come from Gershon. These are the clans of the Gershonites. 22 All the males from a month old and older were counted, totaling 7,500. 23 The clans of the Gershonites must camp on the west side of the tabernacle.

### translationNotes

#### come from Gershon

Here the author speaks of "descending" as if it were "coming." AT: "descend from Gershon" (See: Metaphor)

#### Libnites ... Shimeites ... Gershonites

"Libnites" and "Shimeites" are the name of clans, named after the head of their family. The "Gershonites" is the name of people who descended from Gershon. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### All the males from a month old and older were counted

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Moses counted all the males from a month old and older" (See: Active or Passive)

#### 7,500

"seventy-five hundred" or "seven thousand five hundred" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- tabernacle

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 03 General Notes
- Numbers 3 translationQuestions

## Numbers 3:24-26

### UDB:

[24] The leader of those two clans was Eliasaph son of Lael. [25] Their work was to take care of the sacred tent, including its curtains and coverings and the curtain at its entrance, [26] the curtains that formed the walls around the courtyard that is around the tent and around the altar, the curtains that were at the entrance of the courtyard, and the ropes for fastening the tent. They also did all the work of taking care of the things outside the sacred tent.

### ULB:

[24] Eliasaph son of Lael must lead the clans of the descendants of the Gershonites. [25] The family of Gershon must care for the tent of meeting including the tabernacle. They must care for the tent, its covering, and the curtain used as the entrance to the tent of meeting. [26] They must care for the courtyard hangings, the curtain at the courtyard entrance—the courtyard that surrounds the sanctuary and the altar. They must care for the ropes of the tent of meeting and for everything in it.

### translationNotes

#### Eliasaph ... Lael

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### the courtyard hangings

“the curtains in the courtyard”

#### the courtyard that surrounds the sanctuary and the altar

“that is, the courtyard that surrounds the sanctuary and the altar”

### translationWords

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- family, families
- curtain, curtains
- tent of meeting
- tent, tents, tentmakers
- court, courts, courtyard, courtyards
- sanctuary
- altar, altars

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 03 General Notes
- Numbers 3 translationQuestions

## Numbers 3:27-29

### UDB:

[27] The clans that were descended from Kohath were those descended from his sons Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel. [28] In those four clans there were 8,600 males who were at least one month old. The work of the men of the clans was to take care of the things that are inside the sacred tent. [29] They set up their tents on the south side of the sacred tent.

### ULB:

[27] These clans come from Kohath: the clan of the Amramites, the clan of the Izharites, the clan of the Hebronites, and the clan of the Uzzielites. These clans belong to the Kohathites. [28] 8,600 males have been counted aged one month old and older to take care of the things that belong to Yahweh. [29] The Kohath clans must camp on the south side of the tabernacle.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

This is a list of clans that descended from Kohath. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### Kohath

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 3:17.

#### 8,600 males have been counted

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Moses counted 8,600 males" (See: Active or Passive)

#### 8,600 males

"eight thousand six hundred males" (See: Numbers)

#### aged one month old and older

"from a month old and older"

### translationWords

- clan, clans

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 03 General Notes
- Numbers 3 translationQuestions

## Numbers 3:30-32

### UDB:

30 The leader of those four clans was Elizaphan son of Uzziel. 31 The work of the men of those clans was to take care of the sacred chest, the table on which the priest put the sacred bread, the lampstand, the altars, all the items that the priest used in the sacred tent, and the curtain that is inside the tent. Their work was also to take care of the things inside the tent.

32 Aaron's son Eleazar was the leader of all the male descendants of Levi. He supervised all the work that was done at the sacred tent.

### ULB:

30 Elizaphan son of Uzziel must lead the clans of the Kohathites. 31 They must care for the ark, the table, the lampstand, the altars, the holy things that are used in their service, the curtain, and all the work around it. 32 Eleazar son of Aaron the priest must lead the men who lead the Levites. He must supervise the men who care for the holy place.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

These verses give us information about the clans that descended from Kohath. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### the holy things that are used in their service

This can be stated in active form. AT: "the holy things which the priests use for service" (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh
- lampstand, lampstands
- Eleazar
- Aaron
- priest, priests, priesthood

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 03 General Notes
- Numbers 3 translationQuestions

## Numbers 3:33-35

### UDB:

[33] The clans that were descended from Merari were those descended from his sons Mahli and Mushi. [34] In those two clans there were 6,200 males who were at least one month old. [35] They were told to set up their tents on the north side of the sacred tent. The leader of those two clans was Zuriel son of Abihail.

### ULB:

[33] Two clans have come from Merari: the clan of the Mahlites and the clan of the Mushites. These clans have come from Merari. [34] 6,200 males have been counted aged one month old and older. [35] Zuriel son of Abihail must lead the clans of Merari. They must camp on the north side of the tabernacle.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

This is a list of clans that descended from Merari. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### 6,200 males have been counted

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Moses counted 6,200 males” (See: Active or Passive)

#### 6,200 males

“six thousand two hundred males” (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- tabernacle

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 03 General Notes
- Numbers 3 translationQuestions

## Numbers 3:36-37

**UDB:**

[36] The work of the men of those two clans was to take care of the frames that held up the tent, the crossbars, the pillars, and the bases. They also did all the work that was connected with those items. [37] Their work was also to take care of the posts that held up the curtains that formed the walls of the courtyard, and all the bases, tent pegs, and ropes that fastened those curtains.

**ULB:**

[36] The descendants of Merari must care for the framing of the tabernacle, the crossbars, posts, bases, all the hardware, and everything related to them, including [37] the pillars and posts of the courtyard that surround the tabernacle, with their sockets, pegs, and ropes.

**translationNotes**

**the framing**

This to the panels that they made by joining together smaller pieces of wood.

**crossbars**

These are support beams that give stability to the structure.

**posts**

A post is a strong piece of wood set upright and used as a support.

**bases**

The bases held the posts in place.

**hardware**

This means everything used to join the crossbars, posts, and bases together.

**with their sockets**

Here “their” refers to the “pillars and posts.”

**sockets, pegs, and ropes**

These are all items used secure the pillars and posts into place.

**translationWords**

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- column, columns, pillar, pillars
- court, courts, courtyard, courtyards

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 03 General Notes
- Numbers 3 translationQuestions

## Numbers 3:38-39

### UDB:

[38] Aaron and Moses and Aaron's sons were told to set up their tents in the area in front of the sacred tent, on the east side. Their work was to supervise the work that would be done in and around the sacred tent, for the benefit of the Israelite people. Only the priests were permitted to do that. Yahweh declared that anyone else who went near the tent to do the work that the priests do must be executed.

[39] When Aaron and Moses counted all the males who were at least one month old, who belonged to the clans descended from Levi, the total was twenty-two thousand.

### ULB:

[38] Moses and Aaron and his sons must camp on the east side of the tabernacle, in front of the tent of meeting, toward the sunrise. They are responsible for the fulfillment of the duties of the sanctuary and the duties of the people of Israel. Any foreigner who approaches the sanctuary must be put to death. [39] Moses and Aaron counted all the males in the clans of Levi who were aged one month old and older, just as Yahweh commanded. They counted twenty-two thousand men.

### translationNotes

#### his sons

Here "his" refers to Aaron

#### toward the sunrise

This is the east side of the tabernacle. AT: "on the east side, where the sun rises" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### for the fulfillment of the duties

The word "fulfilment" is an abstract noun that can be expressed as a verb. AT: "to perform the duties" (See: Abstract Nouns)

#### Any foreigner who approaches the sanctuary must be put to death

This can be stated in active form. AT: "You must kill any foreigner who approaches the sanctuary" or "Any foreigner who approaches the sanctuary must die" (See: Active or Passive)

#### twenty-two thousand men

"22,000 men" or "22,000 males" (See: Numbers)

**translationWords**

- Moses
- Aaron
- tent of meeting
- fulfill, fulfilled
- sanctuary
- Israel, Israelites
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- clan, clans
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- Yahweh
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 03 General Notes
- Numbers 3 translationQuestions

## Numbers 3:40-41

### UDB:

40 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Now count all the other firstborn males in Israel who are at least one month old, and write down their names. 41 Also, set apart for me the descendants of Levi to be substitutes for the firstborn males of the other Israelites. And set apart for me the livestock of the descendants of Levi to be substitutes for the firstborn livestock of the other Israelite people."

### ULB:

40 Yahweh said to Moses, "Count all the firstborn males of the people of Israel who are aged one month old and older. List their names. 41 You must take the Levites for me—I am Yahweh—instead of all the firstborn of the people of Israel, and the livestock of the Levites instead of the firstborn of the livestock of the descendants of Israel."

### translationNotes

#### the livestock of the Levites

This refers to all the Levites' livestock. AT: "you must take all the Levites' livestock" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- firstborn
- livestock
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 03 General Notes
- Numbers 3 translationQuestions

## Numbers 3:42-43

### UDB:

[42] So Moses did that. He counted the firstborn males of all the Israelite people, as Yahweh had commanded. [43] The total of those who were at least one month old was 22,273.

### ULB:

[42] Moses counted all the firstborn people of Israel as Yahweh had commanded him to do. [43] He counted all the firstborn males by name, aged one month old and older. He counted 22,273 men.

### translationNotes

#### all the firstborn people

“all the firstborn sons”

#### 22,273 men

“twenty-two thousand two hundred and seventy-three men” (See: Numbers)

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 03 General Notes
- Numbers 3 translationQuestions

## Numbers 3:44-45

### UDB:

44 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 45 "Set apart the descendants of Levi to be substitutes for the first-born males of the other Israelite people. The descendants of Levi belong to me, Yahweh.

### ULB:

44 Again, Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said, 45 "Take the Levites instead of all the firstborn among the people of Israel, and take the Levites' livestock instead of the people's livestock. The Levites belong to me—I am Yahweh.

### translationNotes

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- Israel, Israelites

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 03 General Notes
- Numbers 3 translationQuestions

## Numbers 3:46-47

### UDB:

[46] There are 273 more firstborn males of the other Israelite people than of the descendants of Levi.
[47-48] To pay for these 273 males, collect five pieces of silver for each of them. Each of those pieces of silver must weigh the same as each of the silver pieces that are stored in the sacred tent. Give this silver to Aaron and his sons."

### ULB:

[46] You must collect five shekels for the redemption of each of the 273 firstborn people of Israel who exceed the number of the Levites. [47] You must use the shekel of the sanctuary as your standard weight. The shekel equals twenty gerahs. [48] You must give the price of redemption that you paid to Aaron and his sons."

### translationNotes

#### for the redemption of

The noun "redemption" can be translated with the verb "redeem." AT: "to redeem" (See: Abstract Nouns)

#### 273 firstborn

"two hundred and seventy-three firstborn" (See: Numbers)

#### firstborn people of Israel

"firstborn sons of Israel"

#### five shekels

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. AT: "about 55 grams of silver" (See: Biblical Weight and Biblical Money)

#### who exceed the number of the Levites

This means that there are 273 more firstborn males among the other tribes of the Israelites than there are total number of Levite males.

#### You must use the shekel of the sanctuary as your standard weight

This means that the shekel must weight the same as those in the sanctuary. AT: "You must use the weight of the shekels in the sanctuary as your stand weight" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### twenty gerahs

"20 gerahs." A gerah is a unit of weight equal to about .57 kilograms. (See: Numbers and Biblical Weight)

#### the price of redemption that you paid

Here the word "price" refers to the shekels that Moses collected. AT: "the money that you collected for their redemption" (See: Metonymy)

#### translationWords

- redeem, redeems, redemption, redeemer
- firstborn
- sanctuary
- Aaron
- son, sons

#### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 03 General Notes
- Numbers 3 translationQuestions

## Numbers 3:49-51

### UDB:

[49] So Moses did that. He collected the silver from those 273 males. [50] The total was 1,365 pieces of silver. Each silver piece weighed the same as each of the silver pieces stored in the sacred tent. [51] Moses gave these silver pieces to Aaron and his sons, as Yahweh had commanded.

### ULB:

[49] So Moses collected the payment of redemption from those who exceeded the number of those redeemed by the Levites. [50] Moses collected the money from the firstborn of the people of Israel. He collected 1,365 shekels, weighing with the shekel of the sanctuary. [51] Moses gave the redemption money to Aaron and to his sons. Moses did everything he was told to do by Yahweh's word, as Yahweh had commanded him.

### translationNotes

#### of redemption from

The noun "redemption" can be translated with the verb "redeem." AT: "to redeem" (See: Abstract Nouns)

#### 1,365 shekels

"one thousand three hundred and sixty-five shekels." A shekel is 11 grams. AT: "about 15 kilograms of silver" (See: Numbers and Biblical Money)

#### the redemption money

This refers to the money that Moses collected.

#### to his sons

Here "his" refers to Aaron

#### he was told to do by Yahweh's word, as Yahweh had commanded him

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: Parallelism)

#### he was told to do by Yahweh's word

Here "Yahweh's word" refers to Yahweh who spoke to Moses. This can be stated in active form. AT: "that Yahweh had told him to do" (See: Active or Passive and Metonymy)

**translationWords**

- redeem, redeems, redemption, redeemer
- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 03 General Notes
- Numbers 3 translationQuestions

# Numbers 04 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

### Counting the Levites by clans

Moses gave special instructions for each of the families of the tribes of Levi. Each family was given a special role in the ministry of the tabernacle. (See: tabernacle)

### Links:

- **Numbers 04:01 Notes**

## Numbers 4:1-4

### UDB:

[1] Then Yahweh said to Moses, [2] "Write down the names of the men who belong to the clans descended from Kohath. [3] Write the names of the men who are between 30 and 50 years old. These will be men who will do work at the sacred tent.

[4] The work of these descendants of Kohath will be to take care of the sacred items that are used when the people worship at the sacred tent.

### ULB:

[1] Yahweh spoke to Moses and to Aaron. He said, [2] "Conduct a census of the male descendants of Kohath from among the Levites, by their clans and families. [3] Count all the men who are thirty to fifty years old. These men must join the company to serve in the tent of meeting. [4] The descendants of Kohath must take care of the most holy things reserved for me in the tent of meeting.

### translationNotes

#### Kohath

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 3:17.

#### thirty to fifty years old

"30 to 50 years old" (See: Numbers)

#### join the company

The word "company" refers to the rest of the people working in the tent of meeting.

#### reserved for me

This can be stated in active form. AT: "that I have specially selected for myself" (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Aaron
- census
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants

- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- clan, clans
- family, families
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- tent of meeting
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 04 General Notes
- Numbers 4 translationQuestions

## Numbers 4:5-6

### UDB:

5 When you Israelites move to another location, Aaron and his sons must enter the tent to take down the curtain that separates the very holy place from the holy place in the sacred tent. They must cover the sacred chest with that curtain. 6 Then they must cover that with a covering made from sea cow skins. Over that they must spread a blue cloth. Then they must insert into the rings on the chest the poles for carrying it.

### ULB:

5 When the camp prepares to move forward, Aaron and his sons must go into the tent, take down the curtain that separates the most holy place from the holy place and cover the ark of the testimony with it. 6 They must cover the ark with sea cow skins. They must spread a blue cloth over it. They must insert the poles to carry it.

### translationNotes

#### When the camp prepares

Here "camp" refers to all of the people in the camp. AT: "When the people prepare" (See: Metonymy)

#### to move forward

This refers to the people moving to another location. AT: "to move to another location" (See: Idiom)

#### cover the ark of the testimony with it

The word "it" refers to the curtain that separated the most holy place from the holy place.

#### insert the poles

The poles were inserted into rings on the sides of the ark so that the poles could be used to carry the ark. This can be stated clearly. AT: "insert the poles into the rings on the ark's sides" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- son, sons
- tent, tents, tentmakers
- curtain, curtains

- holy place
- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh
- sea cow

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 04 General Notes
- Numbers 4 translationQuestions

## Numbers 4:7-8

### UDB:

[7] Then they must put a blue cloth over the table on which the priests will put the bread to display before God. On top of the cloth they must put the bowls for incense, the pans, the other dishes, the jars for the wine that will be offered as a sacrifice, and the sacred bread. [8] Over all of this they must spread a scarlet cloth. Finally, they must put on top a covering made from sea cow skins. Then they must insert into the rings at the corners of the tables the poles for carrying it.

### ULB:

[7] They are to spread a blue cloth on the table of the bread of the presence. On it they must put the dishes, spoons, bowls, and jars for pouring. Bread must always continue to be on the table. [8] They must cover them with a scarlet cloth and again with sea cow skins. They must insert poles to carry the table.

### translationNotes

#### the bread of the presence

This bread represents the presence of Yahweh. AT: “the bread of Yahweh’s presence” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### On it they must put

Here “it” refers to the blue cloth.

#### bowls, and jars for pouring

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: “bowls and jars used to pour out drink offerings” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### They must cover them

Here them refers to “the dishes, spoons, bowls, and jars.”

#### Bread must always continue to be

There must always be bread”

#### scarlet cloth

“red cloth”

### insert poles

The poles were inserted into rings on the corners of the table so that the poles could be used to carry the table. This can be stated clearly. AT: “insert poles into the rings at the corners of the table” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- bread
- sea cow

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 04 General Notes
- Numbers 4 translationQuestions

## Numbers 4:9-11

### UDB:

9 Then with another blue cloth they must cover the lampstand, the lamps, the lamp snuffers, the trays, and the special jars of olive oil to burn in the lamps. 10 They must cover the lampstand and all the other items with a covering made from sea cow skins. They must place all these things on a frame for carrying them.

11 Then they must spread another blue cloth over the gold altar which is used for burning incense. Over this they must spread a covering made from sea cow skins. Then they must insert into the rings of that altar the poles for carrying it.

### ULB:

9 They must take a blue cloth and cover the lampstand, along with its lamps, tongs, trays, and all the jars of oil for the lamps. 10 They must put the lampstand and all its accessories into a covering of sea cow skins, and they must put it on a carrying frame. 11 They must spread a cloth of blue on the gold altar. They must cover it with a covering of sea cow skins, and then insert the carrying poles.

### translationNotes

#### They must put ... into a covering of sea cow skins

“They must cover ... with sea cow skins”

#### they must put it on a carrying frame

“they must place all of these things on a frame for carrying them”

#### insert the carrying poles

The poles were inserted into rings on the sides of the altar so theys could be used to carry it. This can be stated clearly. AT: “insert the carrying poles into the rings one the sides of the altar” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- lampstand, lampstands
- lamp, lamps
- oil
- sea cow
- gold, golden
- altar, altars

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 04 General Notes
- Numbers 4 translationQuestions

## Numbers 4:12-14

### UDB:

12 They must take all the other items that are inside the sacred tent and wrap them in a blue cloth, cover that with a covering made from sea cow skins, and place all that on a frame for carrying it.

13 Then they must remove the ashes from the altar on which they have burned sacrifices. Then they must cover the altar with a purple cloth. 14 Then they must spread on top of the cloth all the items used at the altar—the pans for carrying the hot coals, the meat forks, the shovels, the bowls that hold the blood to sprinkle on the people, and all the other containers. Then they must spread over all those things a covering made from sea cow skins. Then they must insert into the rings at the sides of the altar the poles for carrying it.

### ULB:

12 They must take all the equipment for the work in the holy place and wrap it in a blue cloth. They must cover it with sea cow skins and put the equipment on the carrying frame. 13 They must remove the ashes from the altar and spread a purple cloth on the altar. 14 They must put on the carrying frame all the equipment that they use in the work of the altar. These objects are the firepans, forks, shovels, bowls, and all the other equipment for the altar. They must cover the altar with sea cow skins and then insert the carrying poles.

### translationNotes

#### the carrying frame

a wooden rectangle made with poles used to carry things

#### for the work in the holy place

The word “work” is an abstract noun that can be expressed with the verb “serving.” AT: “used when serving Yahweh in the holy place” (See: Abstract Nouns)

#### in the work of the altar

The word “work” is an abstract noun that can be expressed with the verb “serving.” AT: “when serving at the altar” (See: Abstract Nouns)

#### insert the carrying poles

The poles were inserted into rings on the sides of the altar so they could be used to carry it. This can be stated clearly. AT: “insert the carrying poles into the rings on the sides of the altar” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**translationWords**

- holy place
- sea cow

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 04 General Notes
- Numbers 4 translationQuestions

## Numbers 4:15-16

### UDB:

15 When Aaron and his sons have finished covering all these sacred things, the Israelite people will be ready to move to a new location. The descendants of Kohath must come and carry all the sacred things to the next place where the Israelites will set up their tents. But the descendants of Kohath must not touch any of these sacred items, because they will immediately die if they touch them. They are the ones who will carry these things, but they must not touch them.

16 Aaron's son Eleazar will have the work of taking care of the olive oil for the lamps, the sweet smelling incense, the flour that will be burned on the altar each day, and the olive oil for anointing the priests. Eleazar is the one who will supervise the work that is done at the sacred tent and the men who take care of everything that is in it."

### ULB:

15 When Aaron and his sons have completely covered the holy place and all its equipment, and when the camp moves forward, then the descendants of Kohath must come to carry the holy place. If they touch the holy instruments, they must die. This is the work of the descendants of Kohath, to carry the furnishings in the tent of meeting. 16 Eleazar son of Aaron the priest oversees the care of the oil for the light, the sweet incense, the regular grain offering, and the anointing oil. He oversees the care of the entire tabernacle and all that is in it, the holy place and its equipment."

### translationNotes

#### to carry the holy place

Here the holy place refers to all the items that make up the holy place that Aaron and his sons covered in cloth and skins. AT: "to carry all of the items of the holy place" (See: Synecdoche)

#### when the camp moves forward

Here the word "camp" refers to all of the people in the camp. AT: "when the people move forward" (See: Metonymy)

#### Kohath

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 3:17.

#### the holy instruments

"the holy equipment"

### the oil for the light

Here the word “light” is used to refer to the “lamps.” AT: “the oil for the lamps” (See: Metonymy)

### the care of

Here the abstract noun “care” can be expressed as a verb. AT: “those who care for” (See: Abstract Nouns)

### translationWords

- Aaron
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- tent of meeting
- Eleazar
- priest, priests, priesthood
- incense, incenses
- grain offering, grain offerings
- anoint, anointed, anointing
- tabernacle
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 04 General Notes
- Numbers 4 translationQuestions

## Numbers 4:17-18

### UDB:

17 Then Yahweh said to Aaron and Moses, 18-20 "When the descendants of Kohath approach the sacred items in the sacred tent to take them to another location, Aaron and his sons must always go in with them and show each of them what work to do and what things to carry. But the descendants of Kohath must not enter the sacred tent at any other time and look at the things that are in it. If they do that, I will get rid of all the descendants of Kohath."

### ULB:

17 Yahweh spoke to Moses and to Aaron. He said, 18 "Do not allow the Kohathite tribal clans to be removed from among the Levites. 19 Protect them, that they may live and not die, by doing this. When they approach the most holy things 20 they must not go in to see the holy place even for a moment, or they must die. Aaron and his sons must go in, and then Aaron and his sons must assign each of the Kohathites to his work, to his special tasks."

### translationNotes

#### Kohathites

This refers to the descendants of Kohath. See how you translated this in Numbers 3:27.

#### to be removed from among the Levites

This phrase refers to the death of the Kohathites. This can be stated in active form. AT: "to do anything that will cause me to completely remove them from among the Levites" (See: Active or Passive and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### by doing this

This phrase refers to what Yahweh says next. Moses will protect the Kohathites by not allowing them to go in and see the holy place.

#### to his work, to his special tasks

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: Parallelism)

### translationWords

- Yahweh

- Moses
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- clan, clans
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- assign, assigned, assigning, assignment, assignments, reassign

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 04 General Notes
- Numbers 4 translationQuestions

## Numbers 4:21-23

### UDB:

[21] Yahweh also said to Moses, [22] "Write down the names of all the men who belong to the clans descended from Gershon. [23] Write the names of the men who are between thirty and fifty years old. They will be men who will also do work at the sacred tent.

### ULB:

[21] Yahweh spoke again to Moses. He said, [22] "Conduct a census of the descendants of Gershon also, by their ancestor's families and by their clans. [23] Count those who are thirty years old to fifty years old. Count all of them who will join the company to serve in the tent of meeting.

### translationNotes

#### of the descendants of Gershon

This refers only to men. AT: "of the male descendants of Gershon" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### Gershon

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 3:17.

#### thirty years old to fifty years old

"30 years old to 50 years old" (See: Numbers)

#### join the company to serve in the tent of meeting

The word "company" refers to the rest of the people working in the tent of meeting. See how you translated this phrase in Numbers 4:3.

### translationWords

- census
- family, families
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 04 General Notes
- Numbers 4 translationQuestions

## Numbers 4:24-26

### UDB:

24 This is the work that they must do and the things that they must carry when you move to a new location: 25 They must carry the curtains of the sacred tent. They must carry the sacred tent and all the things that cover it, including the outer covering made from sea cow skins, and the curtain which is at the entrance of the sacred tent. 26 They must also carry the curtains that form the wall that surrounds the courtyard that surrounds the sacred tent and the altar, the curtain that is at the entrance to the courtyard, and the ropes that fasten the curtains. They must also do the packing and loading of these things.

### ULB:

24 This is the work of the clans of the Gershonites, when they serve and what they carry. 25 They must carry the curtains of the tabernacle, the tent of meeting, its covering, the covering of sea cow skin that is on it, and the curtains for the entrance to the tent of meeting. 26 They must carry the curtains of the court, the curtain for the doorway of the court's gate, which is near the tabernacle and near the altar, their ropes, and all the instruments for their service. Whatever should be done with these things, they must do it.

### translationNotes

#### This is the work of the clans ... when they serve and what they carry

This sentence is a description that tells us what the following verses are about.

#### Gershonites

This refers to the descendants of Gershon. See how you translated this in Numbers 3:21.

#### the covering of sea cow skin that is on it

This is an outer covering that is placed on top of the tent of meeting's covering. AT: "the covering of sea cow skin that is placed on top of that" or "the outer covering made of sea cow skin" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### Whatever should be done with these things

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Whatever work that these things require" (See: Active or Passive)

**translationWords**

- curtain, curtains
- tabernacle
- tent of meeting
- sea cow
- court, courts, courtyard, courtyards
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- altar, altars

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 04 General Notes
- Numbers 4 translationQuestions

## Numbers 4:27-28

### UDB:

[27] Aaron and his sons will supervise the work of all the descendants of Gershom. That work includes carrying those things and doing other work that is necessary for moving them. They must tell each of the descendants of Gershom what things they must carry. [28] Those are the tasks that you must give to the men who belong to the clans descended from Gershom. Aaron's son Ithamar is the one who will supervise their work.

### ULB:

[27] Aaron and his sons must direct all the service of the descendants of the Gershonites, in everything that they transport, and in all their service. You must assign them to all their responsibilities. [28] This is the service of the clans of the descendants of the Gershonites for the tent of meeting. Ithamar son of Aaron the priest must lead them in their service.

### translationNotes

#### direct

"supervise"

#### This is the service of the clans of the descendants of the Gershonites for the tent of meeting

Here the word "service" is an abstract noun that can be expressed by a verb. Here the word "This" refers to what Yahweh just said. AT: "This is how the clans of the descendants of the Gershonites will serve in the tent of meeting" (See: Abstract Nouns)

#### Ithamar

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:2.

### translationWords

- Aaron
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- assign, assigned, assigning, assignment, assignments, reassign
- clan, clans
- priest, priests, priesthood

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 04 General Notes
- Numbers 4 translationQuestions

## Numbers 4:29-30

### UDB:

29 Count also the men who belong to the clans descended from Merari. 30 Write the names of the men who are between thirty and fifty years old. They will be men who will also work at the sacred tent.

### ULB:

29 You must count the descendants of Merari by their clans, and order them by their ancestor's families, 30 from thirty years old and older up to fifty years old. Count everyone who is going to join the company and serve in the tent of meeting.

### translationNotes

#### the descendants of Merari

This refers only to men. AT: "the male descendants of Merari" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### Merari

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 3:17.

#### order them

"list them"

#### thirty years old ... fifty years old

"30 years old ... 50 years old" (See: Numbers)

#### join the company and serve in the tent of meeting

The word "company" refers to the rest of the people working in the tent of meeting. See how you translated this phrase in Numbers 4:3.

### translationWords

- family, families

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 04 General Notes
- Numbers 4 translationQuestions

## Numbers 4:31-32

### UDB:

[31] Their work will be to carry the frames that hold up the sacred tent, the crossbars, the posts that hold up the curtains, and the bases. [32] They must also carry the posts for the curtains that form the walls of the courtyard and the bases for the posts, the tent pegs, and the ropes to fasten the curtains. Tell each man what things he must carry.

### ULB:

[31] This is their responsibility and their work in all their service for the tent of meeting. They must care for the framing of the tabernacle, its crossbars, posts, and sockets, [32] along with the posts of the courtyard around the tabernacle, their sockets, pegs, and their ropes, with all their hardware. List by name the articles they must carry.

### translationNotes

#### This is their responsibility

“This” refers to what Yahweh says next.

#### their sockets, pegs, and their ropes, with all their hardware

Here “their” refers to the posts of the court.

#### crossbars, posts, and sockets ... and their ropes

These are all parts of the framing of the tabernacle. See how you translated all of these parts in Numbers 4:31-32.

#### List by name the articles they must carry

“List by each man’s name the articles he must carry”

### translationWords

- tent of meeting
- tabernacle
- court, courts, courtyard, courtyards

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 04 General Notes
- Numbers 4 translationQuestions

## Numbers 4:33

### UDB:

[33] Those are the tasks that the descendants of Merari must do at the sacred tent. Aaron's son Ithamar is the one who will supervise them."

### ULB:

[33] This is the service of the clans of the descendants of Merari, what they are to do for the tent of meeting, under the direction of Ithamar son of Aaron the priest."

### translationNotes

#### under the direction of Ithamar son of Aaron the priest

The word "direction" is an abstract noun that is expressed by a verb. AT: "as Ithamar son of Aaron the priest directs them" (See: Abstract Nouns)

#### Ithamar

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:2.

### translationWords

- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- clan, clans
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Aaron
- priest, priests, priesthood

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 04 General Notes
- Numbers 4 translationQuestions

## Numbers 4:34-36

### UDB:

[34] So Aaron and Moses and the Israelite leaders counted the descendants of Kohath, writing also the names of their clans and family groups. [35] They counted all the men who were between thirty and fifty years old who were able to work at the sacred tent. [36] The total was 2,750 men.

### ULB:

[34] Moses and Aaron and the leaders of the community counted the descendants of the Kohathites by the clans of their ancestor's families. [35] They counted them from thirty years old and older up to fifty years old. They counted everyone who would join the company to serve in the tent of meeting. [36] They counted 2,750 men by their clans.

### translationNotes

#### the descendants of the Kohathites

The refers to men. AT: "the male descendants of the Kohathites" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### Kohathites

This refers to the descendants of Kohath. See how you translated this in Numbers 3:27.

#### thirty years old ... fifty years old

"30 years old ... 50 years old" (See: Numbers)

#### everyone who would join the company

Here the word "would" does not mean that the men "chose" to join the company but rather that they were "assigned" to the company. AT: "everyone who was assigned to join the company" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### join the company to serve in the tent of meeting

The word "company" refers to the rest of the people working in the tent of meeting. See how you translated this phrase in Numbers 4:3.

#### 2,750 men

"two thousand seven hundred and fifty men" (See: Numbers)

**translationWords**

- Moses
- family, families

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 04 General Notes
- Numbers 4 translationQuestions

## Numbers 4:37

### UDB:

37 They were the descendants of Kohath who were able to work at the sacred tent. Aaron and Moses counted them just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

### ULB:

37 Moses and Aaron counted all the men in the clans and families of the Kohathites who serve in the tent of meeting. In doing this, they obeyed what Yahweh had commanded them to do through Moses.

### translationNotes

### translationWords

- tent of meeting
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- Yahweh
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 04 General Notes
- Numbers 4 translationQuestions

## Numbers 4:38-40

### UDB:

38 They also counted the descendants of Gershon, writing also the names of their clans and family groups. 39 They counted all the men who were between thirty and fifty years old who were able to work at the sacred tent. 40 The total was 2,630 men.

### ULB:

38 The descendants of Gershon were counted in their clans, by their ancestor's families, 39 from thirty to fifty years old, everyone who would join the company to serve in the tent of meeting. 40 All the men, counted by their clans and their ancestor's families, numbered 2,630.

### translationNotes

#### The descendants of Gershon

This refers to the men. AT: "The male descendants of Gershon" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### The descendants of Gershon were counted

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Moses and Aaron counted the descendants of Gershon" (See: Active or Passive)

#### from thirty to fifty years old

"from 30 to 50 years old" (See: Numbers)

#### everyone who would join the company

Here the word "would" does not mean that the men "chose" to join the company but rather that they were "assigned" to the company. AT: "everyone who was assigned to join the company" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### join the company to serve in the tent of meeting

The word "company" refers to the rest of the people working in the tent of meeting. See how you translated this phrase in Numbers 4:3.

#### counted by their clans

This can be stated in active form. AT: "whom Moses and Aaron counted by their clans" (See: Active or Passive)

### 2,630

“two thousand six hundred and thirty.” This refers to 2,630 men. (See: Numbers and Ellipsis)

### translationWords

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- clan, clans

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 04 General Notes
- Numbers 4 translationQuestions

## Numbers 4:41

### UDB:

41 They were the descendants of Gershon who were able to work at the sacred tent. Aaron and Moses counted them as Yahweh had commanded.

### ULB:

41 Moses and Aaron counted the clans of the descendants of Gershon who would serve in the tent of meeting. In doing this, they obeyed what Yahweh had commanded them to do through Moses.

### translationNotes

#### they obeyed

The word “they” refers to Moses and Aaron.

### translationWords

- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 04 General Notes
- Numbers 4 translationQuestions

## Numbers 4:42-44

### UDB:

42 They also counted the descendants of Merari, writing also the names of their clans and family
groups. 43 They counted all the men who were between thirty and fifty years old who were able to
work at the sacred tent. 44 The total was 3,200 men.

### ULB:

42 The descendants of Merari were counted in their clans by their ancestor's families, 43 from thirty
to fifty years old, everyone who would join the company to serve in the tent of meeting. 44 All the
men, counted by their clans and their ancestor's families, numbered 3,200.

### translationNotes

#### The descendants of Merari were counted

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Moses and Aaron counted the descendants of Merari" (See: Active or Passive)

#### from thirty to fifty years old

"from 30 to 50 years old" (See: Numbers)

#### everyone who would join the company

Here the word "would" does not mean that the men "chose" to join the company but rather that they were "assigned" to the company. AT: "everyone who was assigned to join the company" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### join the company to serve in the tent of meeting

The word "company" refers to the rest of the people working in the tent of meeting. See how you translated this phrase in Numbers 4:3.

#### counted by their clans

This can be stated in active form. AT: "whom Moses and Aaron counted by their clans" (See: Active or Passive)

#### numbered 3,200

"numbered three thousand two hundred" (See: Numbers)

**translationWords**

- family, families

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 04 General Notes
- Numbers 4 translationQuestions

## Numbers 4:45

### UDB:

45 They were the descendants of Merari who were able to work. Aaron and Moses counted them as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

### ULB:

45 Moses and Aaron counted all these men, the descendants of Merari. In doing this, they obeyed what Yahweh had commanded them to do through Moses.

### translationNotes

#### they obeyed

The word “they” refers to Moses and Aaron.

### translationWords

- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 04 General Notes
- Numbers 4 translationQuestions

## Numbers 4:46-48

### UDB:

[46] So Aaron and Moses and the Israelite leaders counted all the descendants of Levi, writing also the names of their clans and family groups. [47] They counted all the men who were between thirty and fifty years old. They were ones who were able to work at the sacred tent and who carried the tent and everything that was connected with it. [48] The total was 8,580 men.

### ULB:

[46] So Moses, Aaron, and the leaders of Israel counted all the Levites by their clans in their ancestral families [47] from thirty to fifty years old. They counted everyone who would do work in the tabernacle, and who would carry and care for the items in the tent of meeting. [48] They counted 8,580 men.

### translationNotes

#### from thirty to fifty

This refers to men. AT: “men from thirty to fifty” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### from thirty to fifty

“from 30 to 50” (See: Numbers)

#### 8,580 men

“eight thousand five hundred and eighty men” (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- clan, clans
- tabernacle
- tent of meeting

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 04 General Notes
- Numbers 4 translationQuestions

## Numbers 4:49

### UDB:

49 They completed the counting of all the descendants of Levi, as Yahweh had commanded Moses. And they told each man what work he was to do and what things he must carry when they moved to a new location.

### ULB:

49 At Yahweh's command, Moses counted each man, keeping count of each by the type of work he was assigned to do. He counted each man by the kind of responsibility he would bear. In doing this, they obeyed what Yahweh had commanded them to do through Moses.

### translationNotes

#### At Yahweh's command

"As Yahweh commanded"

#### keeping count of each by the type ... He counted each man by the kind of responsibility he would bear

These two phrase have similar meaning and are used together to emphasize how Moses counted all the men.

#### by the type of work he was assigned to do

This can be stated in active form. AT: "by his type of work assignment" or "by the type of work he had assigned each man to do" (See: Active or Passive)

#### he would bear

"he would have"

#### they obeyed what Yahweh had commanded them

Here "they" and "them" refer to Moses and Aaron.

### translationWords

- assign, assigned, assigning, assignment, assignments, reassign

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 04 General Notes
- Numbers 4 translationQuestions

# Numbers 05 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

== Israel's camp==

Israel's entire camp was to be a "clean" place. This meant that people who could not be made acceptable to God were not allowed inside the camp. (See: clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean and )

### Vengeance

There are several laws in this chapter regarding restitution. These laws were meant to limit the ways in which people who had been wronged could seek to be compensated. These laws were intended to make it difficult for such people to avenge a wrong when they were angry. (See: avenge, avenges, avenged, avenging, avenger, revenge, vengeance and jealous, jealousy)

### Links:

- **Numbers 05:01 Notes**

## Numbers 5:1-4

### UDB:

[1] Yahweh said to Moses, [2] "Tell this to the Israelite people: 'You must send away from your camp where you have your tents any man or woman who has leprosy and anyone who has a discharge of some fluid from his body, and anyone who has become unacceptable to God because of having touched a corpse. [3] Send them away in order that they will not touch people in the camp area where I live among you and cause them to become unacceptable to me.'" [4] So the Israelite people obeyed what Yahweh commanded Moses.

### ULB:

[1] Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said, [2] "Command the people of Israel to send away from the camp everyone with an infectious skin disease, and everyone who has an oozing sore, and whoever is unclean through touching a dead body. [3] Whether male or female, you must send them out of the camp. They must not defile the camp, because I live in it." [4] The people of Israel did so. They sent them out of the camp, as Yahweh commanded Moses. The people of Israel obeyed Yahweh.

### translationNotes

#### infectious skin disease

This refers to leprosy, which is a sickness that affects the skin and easily spreads to other people.

#### oozing sore

This refers to an open cut that is leaking fluids.

#### whoever is unclean through touching a dead body

If a person touched a dead body they were considered unclean. A person who is not acceptable for God's purposes is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: Metaphor)

#### you must send

Here "you" is plural and refers to the people of Israel. (See: Forms of You)

#### The people of Israel did so

This means that they sent the unclean people away. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "The people of Israel sent those who were unclean out of the camp" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**translationWords**

- Yahweh
- Moses
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- body, bodies
- defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 05 General Notes
- Numbers 5 translationQuestions

## Numbers 5:5-7

### UDB:

5 Yahweh also told Moses, 6 "Tell this to the Israelite people: 'If someone commits a crime against another person, I consider that that person has done wrong to me. 7 That person must confess that he or she is guilty, and he or she must pay to the person to whom wrong was done what others consider to be a suitable payment for what he has done, and he must pay an extra 20 percent.

### ULB:

5 Again Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said, 6 "Speak to the people of Israel. When a man or woman commits any sin such as people do to one another, and is unfaithful to me, that person is guilty. 7 Then he must confess the sin that he has done. He must completely pay back the price of his guilt and add to the price one-fifth more. He must give this to the one he has wronged.

### translationNotes

#### any sin such as people do to one another

"any sin that people usually commit against one another"

#### is unfaithful to me

If someone sins against another person, it means that they have also sinned against Yahweh and Yahweh considers that person as unfaithful to him. AT: "they have also wronged me" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### the price of his guilt

Here the person's "sin" is referred to as his "guilt." AT: "what is considered a suitable amount of money for the wrong that he has done" (See: Metonymy)

#### add to the price one-fifth more

This means the person must pay an extra one-fifth of the price that he owes.

#### one-fifth

This is one part out of five equal parts. (See: Fractions)

**translationWords**

- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness
- guilt, guilty
- confess, confessed, confesses, confession
- wrong, wrongs, wronged, wrongly, wrongfully, wrongdoer, wrongdoing, mistreat, mistreated, hurt, hurts, hurting, hurtful

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 05 General Notes
- Numbers 5 translationQuestions

## Numbers 5:8-10

### UDB:

[8] If the person against whom the wrong was done has died and there is no relative to whom the money can be paid, then the money belongs to me, and it must be paid to the priest. In addition, the one who did the wrong must give a male sheep to the priest to sacrifice in order that that person's sin may be forgiven. [9] All the sacred offerings that the Israelites present to me by bringing them to the priest will belong to the priest. [10] The priest can keep those gifts.'"

### ULB:

[8] But if the wronged person has no close relative to receive the payment, he must pay the price for his guilt to me through a priest, along with a ram to atone for himself. [9] Every offering of the people of Israel, the things that are set aside and brought to the priest by the people of Israel, will belong to him. [10] The offerings of every person will be for the priest; if anyone gives anything to the priest, it will belong to him."

### translationNotes

#### But if the wronged person has no close relative to receive the payment

Usually the wronged person would receive the payment but if that person has died the payment goes to the closest relative. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "But if the wronged person has died and has no close relative to receive the payment" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### if the wronged person

This can be stated in active form. AT: "if the person whom the guilty person has wronged" (See: Active or Passive)

#### he must pay the price for his guilt to me through a priest

If a person made a payment to a priest to pay for his guilt it was the same as if the person had made the payment to Yahweh.

#### to atone for himself

The atonement is made for the man's sin. Here Yahweh refers to the man's sin as the man who committed it. AT: "to atone for his sin" (See: Metonymy)

**the things that are set aside and brought to the priest by the people of Israel**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the things that the people of Israel set aside and bring to the priest” (See: Active or Passive)

**The offerings of every person will be for the priest; if anyone gives anything to the priest, it will belong to him**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and may be combined to state that the offerings that someone gives belong to the priest to whom they have been given. (See: Parallelism)

**translationWords**

- receive, receives, received, receiving, receiver
- priest, priests, priesthood
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- atonement, atone, atones, atoned
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 05 General Notes
- Numbers 5 translationQuestions

## Numbers 5:11-12

### UDB:

11 Yahweh also said this to Moses: 12 "Tell this to the Israelite people: 'Suppose a man thinks that his wife has not always slept faithfully only with him.

### ULB:

11 Again, Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said, 12 "Speak to the people of Israel. Say to them, 'Suppose that a man's wife turns away and sins against her husband.

### translationNotes

#### Suppose that a man's wife turns away and sins against her husband

This is something that could possibly happen. Yahweh is telling Moses what to do if it does happen. (See: Hypothetical Situations)

#### a man's wife turns away

This means that she goes away from him and is unfaithful to him. AT: "a man's wife is unfaithful" (See: Idiom)

#### sins against her husband

This means that she is unfaithful to her husband and and sins against him by sleeping with another man. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "sins against her husband by sleeping with another man" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Israel, Israelites
- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 05 General Notes
- Numbers 5 translationQuestions

## Numbers 5:13-14

### UDB:

[13] Suppose he thinks that she has slept with another man, but he does not know if this is true or not, because he did not see her do it. She was not caught in the act and the fact that she broke her vow to her husband could not be proved because no one saw her doing that. [14] But if the woman's husband is jealous, and if he suspects that she has committed adultery, and he would want to know whether that is true or not, and so there is a test whether she had been impure.

### ULB:

[13] Then suppose that another man sleeps with her. In that case, she is defiled. Even if her husband does not see it or know about it, and even if no one catches her in the act and there is no one to testify against her, [14] nevertheless, a spirit of jealousy might still inform the husband that his wife is defiled. However, a spirit of jealousy might falsely come on a man when his wife is not defiled.

### translationNotes

#### Then suppose that another man sleeps with her

"and another man sleeps with her." This sentence can be written as part of the previous sentence. This explains how she sinned against her husband. This is something that could possibly happen. Yahweh is telling Moses what to do if it does happen. (See: Hypothetical Situations)

#### she is defiled ... his wife is defiled ... his wife is not defiled

These phrases can be stated in active form. AT: "she has defiled herself ... his wife has defiled herself ... his wife has not defiled herself" (See: Active or Passive)

#### in the act

This refers to the act of adultery. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "in the act of adultery" or "sleeping with him" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### a spirit of jealousy might still inform the husband

Here the word "spirit" refers to a person's attitude and emotions. His "jealously" is spoken of as if it were a person who spoke to him. AT: "the husband might feel jealous and become suspicious" (See: Metonymy and Personification)

### a spirit of jealousy might falsely come on a man

Here the word "spirit" refers to a person's attitude and emotions. The idea of the spirit "coming on him" means that he began to have these jealous feelings. AT: "a man might feel jealous for no reason" (See: Metonymy and Idiom)

### translationWords

- had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, sleeps with, slept with, sleeping with
- defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled
- know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge
- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- spirit, spirits, spiritual
- jealous, jealousy

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 05 General Notes
- Numbers 5 translationQuestions

## Numbers 5:15

### UDB:

15 To test whether she had committed adultery he should take his wife to the priest. He must take along as an offering two liters of barley flour. The priest must not pour olive oil or incense on it, because this is an offering that the man has brought because he is jealous. It is an offering to find out if she is guilty or not.

### ULB:

15 In such cases, the man must bring his wife to the priest. The husband must take an offering required on her behalf, a tenth of an ephah of barley flour. He must pour no oil on it and put no frankincense on it, because it is a grain offering of jealousy, a grain offering for remembering, as a reminder of the iniquity.

### translationNotes

#### a tenth

This is one part out of ten equal parts. (See: Fractions)

#### a tenth of an ephah

This can be written in modern measurements. AT: “a tenth of an ephah (which is about 2 liters)” or “2 liters” (See: Biblical Volume)

#### a grain offering of jealousy

“a grain offering for jealousy”

#### a reminder of the iniquity

A “reminder” is something that shows evidence that something had occurred that required justice. In this case, he made the offering to determine whether his wife had committed adultery or not.

### translationWords

- priest, priests, priesthood
- drink offering
- tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes
- barley
- oil

- frankincense
- grain offering, grain offerings
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 05 General Notes
- Numbers 5 translationQuestions

## Numbers 5:16-17

### UDB:

[16] The priest must tell the woman to stand in front of the altar in my presence. [17] He must put some sacred water in a clay jar, and then he must put some dirt from the floor of the sacred tent into the water.

### ULB:

[16] The priest must bring her near and place her before Yahweh. [17] The priest must take a jar of holy water and take dust from the floor of the tabernacle. He must put the dust into the water.

### translationNotes

#### near and place her before Yahweh

"in the presence of Yahweh." The priest would bring her near the altar. AT: "near the altar and place her in the presence of Yahweh" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- tabernacle

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 05 General Notes
- Numbers 5 translationQuestions

## Numbers 5:18-19

### UDB:

18 He must untie the woman's hair. Then he must put in her hands the flour offering that her jealous husband is offering to determine whether she has committed adultery or not. The priest must hold the bowl that contains bitter water that will cause the woman to be cursed if she is guilty.
19 The priest must require her to solemnly declare that she will tell the truth. He must say to her, "Has another man slept with you? Have you faithfully slept only with your husband or not? If you have not slept with another man, nothing bad will happen to you if you drink the water.

### ULB:

18 The priest will set the woman before Yahweh and he will untie the hair on the woman's head. He will put into her hands the grain offering of remembrance, which is the grain offering of suspicion. The priest will hold in his hand the bitter water that can bring a curse. 19 The priest will put the woman under an oath and say to her, 'If no other man had sexual relations with you, and if you have not gone astray and committed impurity, then you will be free from this bitter water that can bring a curse.

### translationNotes

#### before Yahweh

"in the presence of Yahweh"

#### grain offering of suspicion

See how you translated this phrase in Numbers 5:15.

#### if you have not gone astray

The words "gone astray" is an idiom that means "to be unfaithful." AT: "if you have not been unfaithful to your husband" (See: Idiom)

#### and committed impurity

"by committing impurity." This phrase refers to "committing adultery."

#### you will be free from this bitter water

The phrase to "be free" from something means to not be harmed by it. AT: "this bitter water will not harm you, though it is able to" (See: Idiom)

### this bitter water that can bring a curse

Here the bitter water is described as being able to bring a curse. This means that when the woman drinks the water it cause her to be unable to bear children, if she is guilty. AT: “this bitter water can be a curse to you” (See: Personification)

### translationWords

- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, sleeps with, slept with, sleeping with
- astray, go astray, went astray, lead astray, led astray, stray, strayed, strays

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 05 General Notes
- Numbers 5 translationQuestions

## Numbers 5:20-21

### UDB:

[20] But if you have slept with another man, Yahweh will curse you. [21-22] Your womb will shrivel up and your stomach will swell up. You will never be able to give birth to children, and as a result, everyone will curse you and avoid you. If you have committed adultery, when you drink this water, that is what will happen to you." Then the woman must answer, "If I am guilty, I will not object if that happens."

### ULB:

[20] But if you, a woman under her husband, have gone astray, if you are defiled, and if some other man has slept with you, [21] then, (the priest must cause the woman to swear an oath that can bring down a curse on her, and then he must continue speaking to the woman) 'Yahweh will make you into a curse that will be shown to your people to be such. This will happen if Yahweh causes your thigh to waste away and your abdomen to swell. [22] This water that brings the curse will go into your stomach and make your abdomen swell and your thighs waste away.' The woman is to reply, 'Yes, let that happen if I am guilty.'

### translationNotes

#### under her husband

This phrase means that she is under her husband's authority. AT: "under her husband's authority" (See: Metonymy)

#### have gone astray

The words "gone astray" is an idiom that means "to be unfaithful." AT: "have been unfaithful to your husband" (See: Idiom)

#### you are defiled

This can be stated in active form. AT: "you have defiled yourself" (See: Active or Passive)

#### that can bring down a curse on her

The phrase "bring down a curse" is an idiom meaning for a curse to come upon her. AT: "that can cause a curse to come upon her" (See: Idiom)

#### Yahweh will make you into a curse ... your people to be such

Here the author speaks about the woman bearing the curse that Yahweh gives her, which causes other people to curse her. This is spoken of as if the woman herself becomes a curse. AT: "Because Yahweh curses you, other people will curse you as well, and Yahweh will show people that you are truly cursed" (See: Metaphor)

#### that will be shown to your people to be such

This can be stated in active form. AT: "that he will show to your people as a curse" (See: Active or Passive)

#### your thigh to waste away and your abdomen to swell

Possible meanings are 1) that the woman will become unable to have children or 2) that the woman's pregnancy will end too early and the baby will die.

#### your thigh to waste away

Here the word "thigh" is a polite way of referring to the woman's womb or her private parts. AT: "your womb to be useless" (See: Euphemism)

#### translationWords

- defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled
- priest, priests, priesthood
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- waste, wastes, wasted, wasting, wasteland, wastelands

#### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 05 General Notes
- Numbers 5 translationQuestions

## Numbers 5:23

### UDB:

[23] Then the priest must write with ink on a small scroll these curses and then wash the ink off into the bitter water.

### ULB:

[23] The priest must write these curses on a scroll, and then he must wash away the written curses into the bitter water.

### translationNotes

#### he must wash away the written curses

This means that he is to wash the ink off of the scroll.

#### the written curses

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the curses he has written” (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- scroll, scrolls

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 05 General Notes
- Numbers 5 translationQuestions

## Numbers 5:24-26

### UDB:

[24-25] The priest must take from her the offering of barley flour that she is holding; he must lift it up to dedicate it to me. Then he must put it on the altar [26] and burn part of it as a sacrifice. Then the woman must drink the bitter water.

### ULB:

[24] The priest must make the woman drink the bitter water that brings the curse. The water that brings the curse will enter her and become bitter. [25] The priest must take the grain offering of jealousy out of the woman's hand. He must hold up the grain offering before Yahweh and bring it to the altar. [26] The priest must take a handful of the grain offering as a representative offering, and burn it on the altar. Then he must give the woman the bitter water to drink.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Verse 24 explains in a general way what the priest must do and what is expected to happen when the woman drinks the water. Verse 25 and 26 explains in detail how the priest is to do this work. The priest gives the water to the woman and she drinks it only once.

#### a representative offering

The handful of the grain offering represents the whole grain offering. This means the whole offering belongs to Yahweh.

#### grain offering of jealousy

"a grain offering for jealousy." See how you translated this in Numbers 5:15.

### translationWords

- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- grain offering, grain offerings
- jealous, jealousy
- Yahweh
- altar, altars

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 05 General Notes
- Numbers 5 translationQuestions

## Numbers 5:27-28

### UDB:

[27] If the woman has committed adultery instead of faithfully sleeping only with her husband, the water will cause her to suffer greatly. Her stomach will swell up and her womb will shrink, and she will be unable to give birth to children. And then her relatives will curse her. [28] But if she is innocent, her body will not be harmed, and she will still be able to give birth to children.

### ULB:

[27] When he gives her the water to drink, if she is defiled because she has committed a sin against her husband, then the water that brings the curse will enter her and become bitter. Her abdomen will swell and her thigh will waste away. The woman will be cursed among her people. [28] But if the woman is not defiled and if she is clean, then she must be free. She will be able to conceive children.

### translationNotes

#### if she is defiled because she has committed

This can be written in active form. AT: “if she has defined herself by committing” (See: Active or Passive)

#### committed a sin

Here the “sin” refers specifically to committing adultery. The meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: “committed adultery” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### Her abdomen will swell and her thigh will waste away

Possible meanings are 1) that the woman will become unable to have children or 2) that the woman’s pregnancy will end too early and the baby will die. Here the word “thigh” is a polite way of referring to the woman’s womb or her private parts. (See: Euphemism) See how you translated these concepts in Numbers 5:21.

#### The woman will be cursed among her people

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Her people will curse her” (See: Active or Passive)

#### is not defiled

This can be stated in active form. AT: “has not defiled herself” (See: Active or Passive)

### if she is clean

Here “being innocent” is spoken of as “being clean.” (See: Metaphor)

### then she must be free

Possible meanings are 1) “then she will not be cursed” or 2) “then she is free from guilt.” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### conceive children

“become pregnant”

### translationWords

- defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 05 General Notes
- Numbers 5 translationQuestions

## Numbers 5:29-30

### UDB:

[29] That is the ritual that must be performed when a woman who is married has sinned by committing adultery, [30] or when a man is jealous and suspects that his wife has slept with another man. The priest must tell that woman to stand at the altar in my presence and obey these instructions.

### ULB:

[29] This is the law of jealousy. It is the law for a woman who strays away from her husband and is defiled. [30] It is the law for a man with a spirit of jealousy when he is jealous of his wife. He must bring the woman before Yahweh, and the priest must do to her everything that this law of jealousy describes.

### translationNotes

#### the law of jealousy

"the law for dealing with jealousy"

#### who strays away from her husband

The words "strays away" is an idiom that means "to be unfaithful." AT: "who is unfaithful to her husband" (See: Idiom)

#### is defiled

This can be stated in active form. AT: "defiles herself" (See: Active or Passive)

#### a spirit of jealousy

This phrase refers to the man's attitude and emotions of jealousy. See how you translated this in Numbers 5:14. AT: "who is jealous" (See: Metonymy)

#### when he is jealous of his wife

This is an idiom that means that he suspects that his wife has been unfaithful to him by sleeping with another man. AT: "and suspects that his wife has been unfaithful to him" or "and suspects that his wife has slept with another man" (See: Idiom)

#### before Yahweh

"in the presence of Yahweh"

**translationWords**

- law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
- astray, go astray, went astray, lead astray, led astray, stray, strayed, strays
- spirit, spirits, spiritual
- priest, priests, priesthood

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 05 General Notes
- Numbers 5 translationQuestions

## Numbers 5:31

### UDB:

[31] Even if the woman has not done what the husband suspected, he will not be punished for doing something wrong by bringing his wife to the priest. But if his wife is guilty, she will suffer as a result.'"

### ULB:

[31] The man will be free from guilt for bringing his wife to the priest. The woman must bear any guilt she might have."

### translationNotes

#### will be free from guilt for bringing his wife to the priest

"will not be guilty of doing something wrong by bringing his wife to the priest"

#### must bear

"must endure"

### translationWords

- guilt, guilty

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 05 General Notes
- Numbers 5 translationQuestions

# Numbers 06 General Notes

## Special concepts in this chapter

### Nazirite vow

The Nazirite vow was a special type of vow between a person and Yahweh. This chapter gives the rules for people to be consecrated to God as Nazirites. (See: vow, vows, vowed and consecrate, consecrated, consecration)

### Links:

- **Numbers 06:01 Notes**

## Numbers 6:1-4

### UDB:

[1] Yahweh also said this to Moses: [2] "Tell this to the Israelite people: If any of you wants to make a solemn promise to dedicate himself to belong to me in a special way, after you obey these instructions, you will be called a Nazir, which means 'a dedicated person.' [3] You must not drink any wine or other alcoholic drink. You must not drink grape juice or eat grapes or raisins. [4] You must not eat anything that comes from grapevines, not even the skins or seeds of grapes, during the time that you are a Nazir.

### ULB:

[1] Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said, [2] "Speak to the people of Israel. Say to them, 'When a man or a woman separates himself to Yahweh with a special vow of a Nazirite, [3] he must keep himself from wine and strong drink. He must not drink vinegar made from wine or from strong drink. He must not drink any grape juice or eat fresh grapes or raisins. [4] In all the days that he is separate to me, he must eat nothing that is made from grapes, including everything made from the seeds to their skins.

### translationNotes

#### separates himself ... he is separate

"To separate yourself to someone" means to "dedicate yourself" to that person. AT: "dedicates himself ... he dedicates himself" (See: Idiom)

#### he must keep himself from

This idiom means that he must not eat or drink them. AT: "he must not consume" (See: Idiom)

#### vinegar made from wine

This can be stated in active form. AT: "vinegar that people make from wine" (See: Active or Passive)

#### vinegar

a drink produced when wine and other strong drinks fermented too long and became sour

#### or from strong drink

You can make clear the understood information. AT: "or vinegar that people make from strong drink" (See: Ellipsis)

### raisins

“dried grapes”

### he is separate to me

This can be stated in active form. AT: “he separates himself to me” (See: Active or Passive)

### nothing that is made from grapes

This can be stated in active form. AT: “nothing that people make from grapes” (See: Active or Passive)

### from the seeds to their skins

These two extremes are given to emphasize the entire grape may not be eaten. AT: “from any part of a grape” (See: Merism)

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- Nazirite, Nazirites, Nazirite vow
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- strong drink, strong drinks
- grape, grapes, grapevine

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 06 General Notes
- Numbers 6 translationQuestions

## Numbers 6:5

### UDB:

5 Even your hair will be dedicated to me during the time that you are a Nazir, so you must never allow anyone to cut your hair. Until the time that your solemn promise to dedicate yourself to me is ended, you must allow your hair to grow long.

### ULB:

5 During all the time of his vow of separation, no razor is to be used on his head until the days of his separation to Yahweh are fulfilled. He must be set apart to Yahweh. He must let the hair grow long on his head.

### translationNotes

#### vow of separation

This is an idiom. Here “separation” means “dedication” AT: “vow of dedication” (See: Idiom)

#### no razor is to be used on his head

This can be stated in active form. AT: “no one is to use a razor on his head” (See: Active or Passive)

#### the days of his separation to Yahweh

The word “separation” is an abstract noun that can be expressed as a verb. Here “separation” is an idiom that means “dedication.” AT: “the days that he has separated himself to Yahweh” or “the days that he has dedicated himself to Yahweh” (See: Abstract Nouns and Idiom)

#### to Yahweh are fulfilled

This can be stated in active form. AT: “to Yahweh are complete” (See: Active or Passive)

#### He must be set apart to Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. AT: “He must set himself apart to Yahweh” (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- vow, vows, vowed
- fulfill, fulfilled
- set apart

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 06 General Notes
- Numbers 6 translationQuestions

## Numbers 6:6-8

### UDB:

[6] And you must not go near a corpse during the time that you are a Nazir. [7] Even if the person who died is your father or your mother or your brother or your sister, you must not cause yourself to become unacceptable to me by coming close to the corpse. Your long hair shows that you belong to me in a special way, so you must do what you have solemnly promised and not cut your hair. [8] You are required to keep doing this all the time that you are dedicated to me in this special way.

### ULB:

[6] During all the time that he separates himself to Yahweh, he must not come near a dead body. [7] He must not make himself unclean even for his father, mother, brother, or sister, if they die. This is because he is separated to God, as everyone can see by his long hair. [8] During all the time of his separation he is holy, reserved for Yahweh.

### translationNotes

#### separates ... separated ... separation

Here "separation" means "dedication." AT: "dedicates ... dedicated ... dedication" (See: Idiom)

#### unclean

A person who is not acceptable for God's purposes is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: Metaphor)

#### he is separated

This can be stated in active form. AT: "he has separated himself" (See: Active or Passive)

#### of his separation

The abstract noun "separation" can be expressed as a verb. AT: "that he has separated himself"

#### reserved for Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. AT: "he has reserved himself for Yahweh" or "set apart for Yahweh" (See: Active or Passive)

**translationWords**

- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- body, bodies
- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 06 General Notes
- Numbers 6 translationQuestions

## Numbers 6:9

### UDB:

[9] If anyone dies very suddenly when he is near you, then your hair that you have dedicated to me is no longer sacred. So you must wait seven days and then shave it all off. Then you must perform a special ritual to cause yourself to become acceptable to me again.

### ULB:

[9] If someone very suddenly dies beside him and defiles his consecrated head, then he must shave his head on the day of his purification—on the seventh day he must shave it.

### translationNotes

#### defiles his consecrated head

Here “head” represents the Nazirite man’s hair, which symbolizes his vow. AT: “defiles his long hair which shows everyone he is separated to God” or “he becomes defiled” (See: Metonymy)

#### on the day of his purification

The abstract noun “purification” can be stated as the verbal phrase. AT: “on the day when he makes himself acceptable to God” (See: Abstract Nouns)

#### the seventh day

“day 7” (See: Ordinal Numbers)

### translationWords

- defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled
- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 06 General Notes
- Numbers 6 translationQuestions

## Numbers 6:10-11

### UDB:

10 The next day you must bring two doves or two pigeons to the priest at the entrance of the sacred
tent. 11 The priest must kill the birds and offer them as sacrifices. One of them will be an offering
to take away the guilt of your sin, and the other will be an offering that is burned completely to
please me. After the priests burns them on the altar, I will forgive you for having come close to a
corpse, and when your hair grows again it will be dedicated to me again.

### ULB:

10 On the eighth day he must bring two doves or two young pigeons to the priest at the entrance to
the tent of meeting. 11 The priest must offer one bird as a sin offering and the other as a burnt offer-
ing. These will atone for him because he sinned by being near the dead body. He must consecrate
his head again on that day.

### translationNotes

#### the eighth day

"day 8" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

### translationWords

- dove, pigeon
- priest, priests, priesthood
- tent of meeting
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- sin offering, sin offerings
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- atonement, atone, atones, atoned
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- consecrate, consecrated, consecration

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 06 General Notes
- Numbers 6 translationQuestions

## Numbers 6:12

### UDB:

12 The amount of time that you were set apart for me the previous time does not count, because you had become unacceptable to me by coming close to a corpse during the time that you were a Nazir. So you must again make a solemn promise to dedicate yourself to me for the entire amount of time that you indicated the previous time. And you must also sacrifice a one year old lamb to take away your guilt.

### ULB:

12 He must set himself apart to Yahweh for the days of his consecration. He must bring a male lamb one year old as a guilt offering. The days before he defiled himself must not be counted, because his consecration was defiled.

### translationNotes

#### for the days of his consecration

“during the time he is being set apart again”

#### He must bring a male lamb ... as a guilt offering

The man is to bring the lamb to the priest so that it can be sacrificed. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: “He must bring a male lamb one year old to the priest as a guilt offering” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### The days before he defiled himself must not be counted

This can be stated in active form. AT: “He must not count the days before he defiled himself” (See: Active or Passive)

#### his consecration was defiled

This can be stated in active form. AT: “he defiled himself” or “he made himself unacceptable” (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- lamb, Lamb of God
- guilt offering, guilt offerings

- defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled
- God

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 06 General Notes
- Numbers 6 translationQuestions

## Numbers 6:13-15

### UDB:

13 When the time that you promised to dedicate yourself to me is ended, go to the entrance of the sacred tent 14 and offer as sacrifices to me three animals that have no defects. Offer a one year old ram that will be burned completely, a one year old female lamb as a sacrifice to take away the guilt of your sin, and one full-grown ram as a sacrifice to restore fellowship with me.

15 When you bring those animals, you must also bring some wine to offer as a sacrifice. And you must also bring a basket of bread that you have made with very good flour and olive oil. But you must not put any yeast in the bread. Also brush some olive oil on some thin wafers and bring them to the priest.

### ULB:

13 This is the law about the Nazirite for when the time of his separation is complete. He must be brought to the entrance of the tent of meeting. 14 He must present his offering to Yahweh. He must offer as a burnt offering a male lamb one year old and without blemish. He must bring as a sin offering a female lamb one year old and without blemish. He must bring a ram as a fellowship offering that is without blemish. 15 He must also bring a basket of bread made without yeast, loaves of fine flour mixed with oil, wafers without yeast rubbed with oil, together with their grain offering and drink offerings.

### translationNotes

#### of his separation

Here “separation” means “dedication.” Also, this abstract noun can be expressed as a verb. AT: “of his dedication” or “that he has dedicated himself” (See: Idiom or Abstract Nouns)

#### He must be brought

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Someone must bring him” or “He must go” (See: Active or Passive)

#### He must present his offering to Yahweh

He must bring his offering to the priest to be sacrificed to Yahweh. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: “He must present his offering to Yahweh by bringing it to the priest to be sacrificed” or “He must present his offering to Yahweh by bringing it to the priest who will sacrifice it” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### bread made without yeast

This can be stated in active form. AT: “bread he made without yeast” (See: Active or Passive)

### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. AT: “fine flour that he mixed with oil” (See: Active or Passive)

### wafers without yeast rubbed with oil

This can be stated in active form. AT: “wafers without yeast which he rubbed with oil” (See: Active or Passive)

### wafers without yeast

small pieces of flat bread

### together with their grain offering and drink offerings

The word “their” refers to the other offerings that the Nazirite man was told to bring. Often grain offerings and drink offerings were required to accompany other types of sacrifices. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: “together with the grain offering and drink offering that Yahweh required to accompany the other offerings” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
- Nazirite, Nazirites, Nazirite vow
- blemish, blemishes, unblemished
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- fellowship offering, fellowship offerings
- bread
- yeast, leaven, leavens, leavened, unleavened
- oil
- grain offering, grain offerings
- drink offering

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 06 General Notes
- Numbers 6 translationQuestions

## Numbers 6:16-17

### UDB:

16 The priest will put the young lamb and the young ram on the altar and completely burn them, in order that I will be pleased and will forgive you. 17 Then he will kill the full-grown ram as an offering to restore fellowship with me, and he will also burn on the altar some of the bread and the flour and wine.

### ULB:

16 The priest must present them before Yahweh. He must offer his sin offering and burnt offering. 17 With the basket of unleavened bread, he must present the ram as a sacrifice, the fellowship offering to Yahweh. The priest must present also the grain offering and the drink offering.

### translationNotes

#### He must offer his sin offering

"He" refers to the priest and "his" refers to the man who took a vow.

#### the fellowship offering

"as the fellowship offering"

#### The priest must present also ... drink offering

You can make clear the understood information. AT: "The priest must present also ... the drink offering to Yahweh" (See: Ellipsis)

### translationWords

- priest, priests, priesthood
- sin offering, sin offerings
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- unleavened bread
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 06 General Notes
- Numbers 6 translationQuestions

## Numbers 6:18

### UDB:

18 After that, you must stand at the entrance of the sacred tent and shave off your hair. Then you must put that hair in the fire that is under the animal that has been sacrificed on the altar to restore fellowship with me.

### ULB:

18 The Nazirite must shave his head indicating his separation to God at the entrance to the tent of meeting. He must take the hair from his head and put it on the fire that is under the sacrifice of fellowship offerings.

### translationNotes

#### indicating his separation

Here “separation” means “dedication.” Also, this abstract noun may be written as a verb. AT: “indicating his dedication” or “indicating how he has separated himself” (See: Idiom and Abstract Nouns)

### translationWords

- God
- tent of meeting
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 06 General Notes
- Numbers 6 translationQuestions

## Numbers 6:19-20

### UDB:

[19] The meat from the ram's shoulder must be boiled. After it is cooked, the priest will take it along with one of the loaves of bread and one wafer which has been brushed with olive oil, and he will put them in your hands. [20] Then the priest will take them back and lift them up high to dedicate them to me. They now belong to the priest, and he is permitted to eat some of the meat from the ram's shoulder and from its ribs and from one of its thighs, because that meat is his share of the sacrifice. After that, you will no longer be a Nazir, and you will again be permitted to drink wine.

### ULB:

[19] The priest must take the boiled shoulder of the ram, one loaf of bread without yeast out of the basket, and one wafer without yeast. He must place them into the hands of the Nazirite after he has shaved his head indicating separation. [20] The priest must wave them as an offering before Yahweh, a holy portion for the priest, together with the breast that was waved and the thigh that was presented for the priest. After that, the Nazirite may drink wine.

### translationNotes

#### the boiled shoulder of the ram

This means that he had boiled the ram's shoulder. This can be stated in active form. AT: "the shoulder of the ram that he boiled" (See: Active or Passive)

#### indicating separation

Here "separation" means "dedication." Also, this abstract noun can be expressed with the verb "separated." AT: "indicating dedication" or "indicating that he has dedicated himself to Yahweh" (See: Idiom and Abstract Nouns)

#### The priest must wave them

After handing the items to the Nazirite, the priest takes them back to offer them to Yahweh. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: "Then the priest must take them back and wave them" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### together with

"as well as"

#### that was waved

This can be stated in active form. AT: "that the priest waved" (See: Active or Passive)

### that was presented

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that he presented” (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- bread
- yeast, leaven, leavens, leavened, unleavened
- Nazirite, Nazirites, Nazirite vow
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- Yahweh
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 06 General Notes
- Numbers 6 translationQuestions

## Numbers 6:21

### UDB:

[21] Those are the regulations about the offerings that Nazir solemnly promise to bring to me to end their time of being dedicated to me. They must bring these offerings, but if they want to, they may bring additional offerings. And they must do everything that they solemnly promised to do when they dedicated themselves to me."

### ULB:

[21] This is the law for the Nazirite who vows his offering to Yahweh for his separation. Whatever else he may give, he must keep the obligations of the vow he has taken, to keep the promise indicated by the law for the Nazirite.'"

### translationNotes

### his separation

- Here "separation" means "dedication." Also, this abstract noun may be written as a verb. AT: "his dedication" or "for having dedicated himself to Yahweh" (See: Idiom and Abstract Nouns)

### Whatever else he may give

This refers to the Nazirite deciding to give other offering beyond what he has been commanded to give. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: "If he decides to give any additional offerings" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### he must keep the obligations of the vow he has taken

"he must still obey the requirements of the vow he has taken"

### he must keep the obligations ... to keep the promise indicated by the law for the Nazirite

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined to emphasize that he must obey the obligations of his vow. (See: Parallelism)

### the promise indicated by the law for the Nazirite

This can be stated in active form. AT: "the promise that the law for the Nazirite indicates" (See: Active or Passive)

**translationWords**

- law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
- vow, vows, vowed
- promise, promises, promised

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 06 General Notes
- Numbers 6 translationQuestions

## Numbers 6:22-24

### UDB:

[22] Yahweh also said to Moses, [23] "Tell Aaron and his sons that when they ask me to bless the people, they must say,

[24] 'Yahweh bless you

and protect you.

### ULB:

[22] Again Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said, [23] "Speak to Aaron and to his sons. Say, 'You must bless the people of Israel in this way. You must say to them,

[24] "May Yahweh bless you and keep you.

### translationNotes

#### You must bless the people of Israel

"You" is plural. (See: Forms of You)

#### May Yahweh bless you and keep you

Here "you" is singular. (See: Forms of You)

#### keep you

This is an idiom. Here "keep" means to "protect." (See: Idiom)

### translationWords

- Moses
- Aaron
- son, sons
- bless, blessed, blessing
- Israel, Israelites

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 06 General Notes
- Numbers 6 translationQuestions

## Numbers 6:25-27

### UDB:

25 May he smile on you

and act kindly toward you.

26 May he be good to you

and cause things to go well for you.'"

27 Then Yahweh said, "If Aaron and his sons ask me to bless the Israelite people, truly I will bless them."

### ULB:

25 May Yahweh make his face shine on you and be gracious to you.

26 May Yahweh look on you with favor and give you peace."'

27 It is in this way that they must give my name to the people of Israel. Then I will bless them."

### translationNotes

#### make his face shine on you

This is an idiom which means to have kind intentions towards someone. It can also be expressed by smiling. AT: "smile at you" or "look at you with kindness" (See: Idiom)

#### look on you with favor

Here the phrase "look on" means to show a certain attitude towards that person. AT: "show you favor" (See: Idiom)

#### May Yahweh make his face shine on you ... and give you peace

Here "you" is singular. (See: Forms of You)

#### they must give my name

Here Yahweh speaks about claiming the Israelites as his own by saying that he is giving them "his name." AT: "they must let the people of Israel know that they are mine" (See: Metaphor)

**translationWords**

- Yahweh
- light, lights, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten, enlightened
- grace, gracious
- favor, favors, favorable, favoritism
- peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers
- name, names, named

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 06 General Notes
- Numbers 6 translationQuestions

# Numbers 07 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

### Consecrating the altar

When the tabernacle was completed, they consecrated the altar. Each tribe brought an offering to consecrate the altar. (See: tabernacle and consecrate, consecrated, consecration)

### Links:

- **Numbers 07:01 Notes**

## Numbers 7:1-3

### UDB:

[1] When Moses had finished setting up the sacred tent, he poured oil on it, and set it apart for the honor of Yahweh. He also dedicated the things that are inside the sacred tent, and the altar for burning sacrifices, and all the things that would be used at the altar. [2] Then the leaders of the twelve Israelite tribes, the same men who had helped Aaron and Moses to count the men who could fight in battles, [3] came to the sacred tent, bringing gifts to Yahweh. They brought six sturdy carts and twelve oxen, one ox from each of the leaders and a cart from each of the two leaders.

### ULB:

[1] On the day that Moses completed the tabernacle, he anointed it and set it apart to Yahweh, together with all of its furnishings. He did the same for the altar and all its utensils. He anointed them and set them apart to Yahweh. [2] On that day, the leaders of Israel, the heads of their ancestor's families, offered sacrifices. These men were leading the tribes. They had overseen the counting of the men in the census. [3] They brought their offerings before Yahweh. They brought six covered carts and twelve oxen. They brought one cart for every two leaders, and each leader brought one ox. They presented these things in front of the tabernacle.

### translationNotes

#### Moses completed the tabernacle

"Moses finished setting up the tabernacle"

#### the leaders of Israel ... the heads of their ancestor's families

These two phrases describe the same group of people two different ways. AT: "the leaders of Israel who are also the heads of their ancestors families" (See: Parallelism)

#### the heads of their ancestor's families

Here the leaders of the families are referred to as "heads." AT: "the leaders of their ancestor's families" (See: Metonymy)

#### had overseen the counting of the men

The abstract noun "counting" can be stated as a verb. AT: "had helped Aaron and Moses to count the men" (See: Abstract Nouns)

**They brought their offerings before Yahweh ... They presented these things in front of the tabernacle**

This means that they gave their offerings to Yahweh and brought them to the tabernacle. These phrases may be combined to add clarity. AT: "They brought their offerings to Yahweh and presented them to him in front of the tabernacle" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**six covered carts and twelve oxen**

"6 covered carts and 12 oxen" (See: Numbers)

**translationWords**

- Moses
- tabernacle
- anoint, anointed, anointing
- set apart
- Yahweh
- altar, altars
- Israel, Israelites
- head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded
- family, families
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- oversee, oversees, overseen, overseer, overseers
- census
-

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:4-5

### UDB:

[4] Then Yahweh said to Moses, [5] "Accept these gifts, in order that the descendants of Levi can use them for carrying the sacred items that are here at the sacred tent."

### ULB:

[4] Then Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said, [5] "Accept the offerings from them and use the offerings for the work in the tent of meeting. Give the offerings to the Levites, to each one as his work needs them."

### translationNotes

#### to each one as his work needs them

"to each man as he needs them for his work"

### translationWords

- works, deeds, work, acts
- tent of meeting
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:6-8

### UDB:

[6] So Moses took the carts and oxen and gave them to the descendants of Levi. [7] He gave two carts and four oxen to the descendants of Gershon for their work, [8] and he gave four carts and eight oxen to the descendants of Merari for their work. Aaron's son Ithamar was the supervisor of all their work.

### ULB:

[6] Moses took the carts and the oxen, and he gave them to the Levites. [7] He gave two carts and four oxen to the descendants of Gershon, because of what their work needed. [8] He gave four carts and eight oxen to the descendants of Merari, in the care of Ithamar son of Aaron the priest. He did this because of what their work required.

### translationNotes

#### Gershon ... Merari

See how you translated these men's names in Numbers 3:17.

#### because of what their work needed

"because it was what they needed to do their work"

#### in the care of Ithamar son of Aaron the priest

"under the supervision of Ithamar son of Aaron the priest" or "Ithamar son of Aaron the priest oversaw their work"

#### Ithamar

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:2.

#### He did this because

The word "he" refers to Moses.

#### because of what their work required

"because it was what they needed to do their work"

**translationWords**

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Aaron
- priest, priests, priesthood

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:9

### UDB:

[9] But he did not give any carts or oxen to the descendants of Kohath, because they took care of the sacred items that were to be carried on their shoulders, not on carts.

### ULB:

[9] But he gave none of those things to the descendants of Kohath, because theirs would be the work related to the things that belong to Yahweh that they would carry on their own shoulders.

### translationNotes

#### none of those things

This refers to the carts and oxen.

#### Kohath

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 3:17.

#### theirs would be the work

"their work would be"

#### the things that belong to Yahweh

You can make explicit the implicit meaning of what belongs to Yahweh. AT: "the things that Yahweh reserved for the tabernacle" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:10-11

### UDB:

10 On the day that the altar was dedicated, the twelve leaders brought other gifts to be dedicated and put them in front of the altar. 11 Yahweh said to Moses, “On each of the next twelve days one leader should bring his gifts for the dedication of the altar.”

### ULB:

10 The leaders offered their goods for the dedication of the altar on the day that Moses anointed the altar. The leaders offered their sacrifices in front of the altar. 11 Yahweh said to Moses, “Each leader must offer on his own day his sacrifice for the dedication of the altar.”

### translationNotes

#### offered their goods

“offered gifts”

#### Each leader must offer on his own day his sacrifice

“Each day, one leader must offer his sacrifice”

### translationWords

- dedicate, dedicates, dedicated, dedication
- altar, altars
- Moses
- anoint, anointed, anointing
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- Yahweh

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:12-14

### UDB:

[12-13] On the first day, Nahshon son of Amminadab, from the tribe of Judah brought his gifts:

### ULB:

[12] On the first day, Nahshon son of Amminadab, of the tribe of Judah, offered his sacrifice. [13] His sacrifice was one silver platter weighing 130 shekels and one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels, by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel. Both of these objects were full of fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering. [14] He gave one gold dish that weighed ten shekels and was full of incense.

### translationNotes

#### the first day

"day 1" or "day number 1" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

#### Nahshon son of Amminadab

These are the names of men. See how you translated these names in Numbers 1:7

#### weighing 130 shekels

"weighing one hundred and thirty shekels." If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. AT: "weighing nearly one and a half kilograms" or "weighing one kilogram and 430 grams" (See: Numbers and Biblical Weight)

#### one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

"one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels." If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. AT: "one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram" or "one silver bowl weighting 770 grams" (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

#### by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. If you are converting the weights to modern measures, here is another way to translate this phrase. AT: "measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary" (See: Biblical Weight)

### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. AT: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: Active or Passive)

### one gold dish that weighed ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. AT: “one gold dish that weighed one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish that weighed 110 grams” (See: Biblical Weight)

### translationWords

- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- Judah
- silver
- sanctuary
- oil
- grain offering, grain offerings
- gold, golden
- incense, incenses

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:15

### UDB:

15-17 They also brought the gifts of a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people's guilt for their sins,

### ULB:

15 He gave as a burnt offering one young bull, one ram, and a one-year-old male lamb. 16 He gave one male goat as a sin offering. 17 He gave two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were a year old, as the sacrifice for a fellowship offering. This was the sacrifice of Nahshon son of Amminadab.

### translationNotes

#### that were a year old

"that were each one year old"

#### This was the sacrifice of Nahshon son of Amminadab

"This was what Nahshon son of Amminadab presented"

#### Nahshon son of Amminadab

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:7.

### translationWords

- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- lamb, Lamb of God
- year, years
- goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids
- sin offering, sin offerings
- 
- fellowship offering, fellowship offerings

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:18

### UDB:

[18-19] On the second day, Nethanel son of Zuar, the leader of Issachar, brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram. Both of these were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They were both weighed using the standard scales,

### ULB:

[18] On the second day, Nethanel son of Zuar, leader of Issachar, offered his sacrifice. [19] He offered as his sacrifice one silver platter weighing 130 shekels and one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels, by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel. Both of these objects were full of fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering.

### translationNotes

#### the second day

"day 2" or "day number 2" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

#### Nethanel son of Zuar

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:8.

#### one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:13. AT: "one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms" or "one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams" (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

#### one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

"one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels." If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:13. AT: "one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram" or "one silver bowl weighting 770 grams" (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

#### by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in Numbers 7:13. AT: "measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary" (See: Biblical Weight)

### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. AT: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- day, days
- Issachar
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- silver

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:20

### UDB:

[20-23] Nethanel also brought the gifts of a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people's guilt for their sins,

### ULB:

[20] He also gave one gold dish weighing ten shekels, full of incense. [21] He gave as a burnt offering one young bull, one ram, and a one-year-old male lamb. [22] He gave one male goat as a sin offering. [23] He gave two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were a year old, as the sacrifice for a fellowship offering. This was the sacrifice of Nethanel son of Zuar.

### translationNotes

#### one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:14. AT: "one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram" or "one gold dish weighting 110 grams" (See: Biblical Weight)

#### that were a year old

"that were each one year old"

#### This was the sacrifice of Nethanel son of Zuar

"This was what Nethanel son of Zuar presented"

#### Nethanel son of Zuar

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:8.

### translationWords

- gold, golden
- incense, incenses

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:24

### UDB:

[24-26] On the third day, Eliab son of Helon, leader of the tribe of Zebulun brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offering. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

### ULB:

[24] On the third day, Eliab son of Helon, leader of the descendants of Zebulun, offered his sacrifice. [25] His sacrifice was one silver platter weighing 130 shekels, and one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel. Both of these objects were full of fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering. [26] He also gave one gold dish weighing ten shekels, full of incense.

### translationNotes

#### the third day

"day 3" or "day number 3" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

#### Eliab son of Helon

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:9.

#### one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:13. AT: "one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms" or "one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams" (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

#### one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

"one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels." If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:13. AT: "one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram" or "one silver bowl weighting 770 grams" (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

#### by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in Numbers 7:13. AT: "measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary" (See: Biblical Weight)

### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. AT: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: Active or Passive)

### one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:14. AT: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: Biblical Weight)

### translationWords

- day, days
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Zebulun
- silver
- sanctuary
- oil
- grain offering, grain offerings
- gold, golden
- incense, incenses

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:27

### UDB:

27-29 Eliab also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people's guilt for their sins,

### ULB:

27 He gave as a burnt offering one young bull, one ram, and a one-year-old male lamb. 28 He gave one male goat as a sin offering. 29 He gave two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were a year old, as the sacrifice for a fellowship offering. This was the sacrifice of Eliab son of Helon.

### translationNotes

#### that were a year old

"that were each one year old"

#### This was the sacrifice of Eliab son of Helon

"This was what Eliab son of Helon gave as a sacrifice"

#### Eliab son of Helon

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:9.

### translationWords

- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- lamb, Lamb of God
- year, years
- goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids
- sin offering, sin offerings
-
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- fellowship offering, fellowship offerings

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:30

### UDB:

[30-32] On the fourth day, Elizur son of Shedeur, leader of the tribe of Reuben brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

### ULB:

[30] On the fourth day, Elizur son of Shedeur, leader of the descendants of Reuben, offered his sacrifice. [31] His sacrifice was one silver platter weighing 130 shekels and one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels, by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel. Both of these objects were full of fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering. [32] He also gave one gold dish weighing ten shekels, full of incense.

### translationNotes

#### the fourth day

"day 4" or "day number 4" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

#### Elizur son of Shedeur

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:5.

#### one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:13. AT: "one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms" or "one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams" (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

#### one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

"one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels." If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:13. AT: "one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram" or "one silver bowl weighting 770 grams" (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

#### by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in Numbers 7:13. AT: "measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary" (See: Biblical Weight)

### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. AT: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: Active or Passive)

### one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:14. AT: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: Biblical Weight)

### translationWords

- day, days
- Reuben
- gold, golden
- incense, incenses

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:33

### UDB:

[33-35] Elizur also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people's guilt for their sins,

### ULB:

[33] He gave as a burnt offering one young bull, one ram, and a one-year-old male lamb. [34] He gave one male goat as a sin offering. [35] He gave two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were a year old, as the sacrifice for a fellowship offering. This was the sacrifice of Elizur son of Shedeur.

### translationNotes

#### that were a year old

"that were each one year old"

#### This was the sacrifice of Elizur son of Shedeur

"This was what Elizur son of Shedeur gave as a sacrifice"

#### Elizur son of Shedeur

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:5.

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:36

### UDB:

[36-38] On the fifth day, Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai, leader of the tribe of Simeon brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings; they both were weighed using the standard scales,

### ULB:

[36] On the fifth day, Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai, leader of the descendants of Simeon, offered his sacrifice. [37] His sacrifice was one silver platter weighing 130 shekels and one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels, by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel. Both of these objects were full of fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering. [38] He also gave one gold dish weighing ten shekels, full of incense.

### translationNotes

#### the fifth day

"day 5" or "day number 5" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

#### Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:6.

#### one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:13. AT: "one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms" or "one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams" (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

#### one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

"one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels." If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:13. AT: "one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram" or "one silver bowl weighting 770 grams" (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

### by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in Numbers 7:13. AT: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: Biblical Weight)

### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. AT: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: Active or Passive)

### one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:14. AT: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: Biblical Weight)

### translationWords

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Simeon
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- silver
- sanctuary
- oil
- grain offering, grain offerings
- gold, golden
- incense, incenses

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:39

### UDB:

39-41 Shelumiel also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people's guilt for their sins,

### ULB:

39 He gave as a burnt offering one young bull, one ram, and a one-year-old male lamb. 40 He gave one male goat as a sin offering. 41 He gave two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were a year old, as the sacrifice for a fellowship offering. This was the sacrifice of Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai.

### translationNotes

#### that were a year old

"that were each one year old"

#### This was the sacrifice of Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai

"This was what Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai gave as a sacrifice." "Shelumiel" and "Zurishaddai" are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:6.

### translationWords

- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- lamb, Lamb of God
- year, years
- goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids
- sin offering, sin offerings
- 
- fellowship offering, fellowship offerings

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:42

### UDB:

[42-44] On the sixth day, Eliasaph son of Deuel, leader of the tribe of Gad brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

### ULB:

[42] On the sixth day, Eliasaph son of Deuel, leader of the descendants of Gad, offered his sacrifice. [43] His sacrifice was one silver platter weighing 130 shekels and one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels, by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel. Both of these objects were full of fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering. [44] He also gave one gold dish weighing ten shekels, full of incense.

### translationNotes

#### the sixth day

"day 6" or "day number 6" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

#### Eliasaph son of Deuel

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:14.

#### one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:13. AT: "one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms" or "one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams" (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

#### one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

"one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels." If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:13. AT: "one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram" or "one silver bowl weighting 770 grams" (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

#### by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in Numbers 7:13. AT: "measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary" (See: Biblical Weight)

### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. AT: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: Active or Passive)

### one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:14. AT: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: Biblical Weight)

### translationWords

- day, days
- Gad
- silver
- gold, golden
- incense, incenses

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:45

### UDB:

[45-47] Eliasaph also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people's guilt for their sins,

### ULB:

[45] He gave as a burnt offering one young bull, one ram, and a one-year-old male lamb. [46] He gave one male goat as a sin offering. [47] He gave two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were a year old, as the sacrifice for a fellowship offering. This was the sacrifice of Eliasaph son of Deuel.

### translationNotes

#### that were a year old

"that were each one year old"

#### This was the sacrifice of Eliasaph son of Deuel

"This was what Eliasaph son of Deuel gave as a sacrifice"

#### Eliasaph son of Deuel

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:14.

### translationWords

- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:48

### UDB:

[48-50] On the seventh day, Elishama son of Ammihud, leader of the tribe of Ephraim brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

### ULB:

[48] On the seventh day, Elishama son of Ammihud, leader of the descendants of Ephraim, offered his sacrifice. [49] His sacrifice was one silver platter weighing 130 shekels and one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels, by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel. Both of these objects were full of fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering. [50] He also gave one gold dish weighing ten shekels, full of incense.

### translationNotes

#### the seventh day

"day 7" or "day number 7" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

#### Elishama son of Ammihud

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:10.

#### one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:13. AT: "one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms" or "one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams" (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

#### one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

"one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels." If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:13. AT: "one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram" or "one silver bowl weighting 770 grams" (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

### by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in Numbers 7:13. AT: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: Biblical Weight)

### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. AT: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: Active or Passive)

### one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:14. AT: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: Biblical Weight)

### translationWords

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites
- silver
- sanctuary
- oil
- grain offering, grain offerings
- gold, golden
- incense, incenses

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:51

### UDB:

51-53 Elishama also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people's guilt for their sins,

### ULB:

51 He gave as a burnt offering one young bull, one ram, and a one-year-old male lamb. 52 He gave one male goat as a sin offering. 53 He gave two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were a year old, as the sacrifice for a fellowship offering. This was the sacrifice of Elishama son of Ammihud.

### translationNotes

#### that were a year old

"that were each one year old"

#### This was the sacrifice of Elishama son of Ammihud

"This was what Elishama son of Ammihud presented"

#### Elishama son of Ammihud

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:10.

### translationWords

- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- lamb, Lamb of God
- year, years
- goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids
- sin offering, sin offerings
- 
- fellowship offering, fellowship offerings

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:54

### UDB:

54-56 On the eighth day, Gamaliel son of Pedahzur, leader of the tribe of Manasseh brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

### ULB:

54 On the eighth day, Gamaliel son of Pedahzur, leader of the descendants of Manasseh, offered his sacrifice. 55 His sacrifice was one silver platter weighing 130 shekels and one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels, by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel. Both of these objects were full of fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering. 56 He also gave one gold dish weighing ten shekels, full of incense.

### translationNotes

#### the eighth day

"day 8" or "day number 8" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

#### Gamaliel son of Pedahzur

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:10.

#### one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:13. AT: "one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms" or "one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams" (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

#### one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

"one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels." If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:13. AT: "one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram" or "one silver bowl weighting 770 grams" (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

### by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in Numbers 7:13. AT: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: Biblical Weight)

### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. AT: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: Active or Passive)

### one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:14. AT: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: Biblical Weight)

### translationWords

- Manasseh
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:57

### UDB:

[57-59] Gamaliel also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people's guilt for their sins,

### ULB:

[57] He gave as a burnt offering one young bull, one ram, and a one-year-old male lamb. [58] He gave one male goat as a sin offering. [59] He gave two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were a year old, as the sacrifice for a fellowship offering. This was the sacrifice of Gamaliel son of Pedahzur.

### translationNotes

#### that were a year old

"that were each one year old"

#### This was the sacrifice of Gamaliel son of Pedahzur

"This was what Gamaliel son of Pedahzur gave as a sacrifice"

#### Gamaliel son of Pedahzur

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:10.

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:60

### UDB:

[60-62] On the ninth day, Abidan son of Gideoni, leader of the tribe of Benjamin brought his gifts: a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

### ULB:

[60] On the ninth day, Abidan son of Gideoni, leader of the descendants of Benjamin, offered his sacrifice. [61] His sacrifice was one silver platter weighing 130 shekels and one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels, by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel. Both of these objects were full of fine flour mingled with oil for a grain offering. [62] He also gave one gold dish weighing ten shekels, full of incense.

### translationNotes

#### the ninth day

"day 9" or "day number 9" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

#### Abidan son of Gideoni

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:11.

#### one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:13. AT: "one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms" or "one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams" (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

#### one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

"one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels." If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:13. AT: "one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram" or "one silver bowl weighting 770 grams" (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

#### by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in Numbers 7:13. AT: "measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary" (See: Biblical Weight)

### fine flour mingled with oil

This can be stated in active form. AT: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: Active or Passive)

### one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:14. AT: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: Biblical Weight)

### translationWords

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites
- silver
- sanctuary
- oil
- grain offering, grain offerings
- gold, golden
- incense, incenses

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:63

### UDB:

63-65 Adiban also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people's guilt for their sins,

### ULB:

63 He gave as a burnt offering one young bull, one ram, and a one-year-old male lamb. 64 He gave one male goat as a sin offering. 65 He gave two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were a year old, as the sacrifice for a fellowship offering. This was the sacrifice of Abidan son of Gideoni.

### translationNotes

#### that were a year old

"that were each one year old"

#### This was the sacrifice of Abidan son of Gideoni

"This was what Abidan son of Gideoni gave as a sacrifice"

#### Abidan son of Gideoni

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:11.

### translationWords

- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- lamb, Lamb of God
- year, years
- goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids
- sin offering, sin offerings
-
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- fellowship offering, fellowship offerings

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:66

### UDB:

[66-68] On the tenth day, Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai, leader of the tribe of Dan brought his gifts: a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

### ULB:

[66] On the tenth day, Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai, leader of the descendants of Dan, offered his sacrifice. [67] His sacrifice was one silver platter weighing 130 shekels and one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels, by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel. Both of these objects were full of fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering. [68] He also gave one gold dish weighing ten shekels, full of incense.

### translationNotes

#### the tenth day

"day 10" or "day number 10" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

#### Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:12.

#### one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:13. AT: "one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms" or "one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams" (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

#### one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

"one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels." If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:13. AT: "one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram" or "one silver bowl weighting 770 grams" (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

#### by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in Numbers 7:13. AT: "measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary" (See: Biblical Weight)

### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. AT: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: Active or Passive)

### one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:14. AT: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: Biblical Weight)

### translationWords

- Dan

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:69

### UDB:

[69-71] Ahiezer also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people's guilt for their sins,

### ULB:

[69] He gave as a burnt offering one young bull, one ram, and a one-year-old male lamb.. [70] He gave one male goat as a sin offering. [71] He gave two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were a year old, as the sacrifice for a fellowship offering. This was the sacrifice of Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai.

### translationNotes

#### that were a year old

"that were each one year old"

#### This was the sacrifice of Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai

"This was what Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai gave as a sacrifice"

#### Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:12.

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:72

### UDB:

[72-74] On the eleventh day, Pagiel son of Okran, leader of the tribe of Asher brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

### ULB:

[72] On the eleventh day, Pagiel son of Okran, leader of the descendants of Asher, offered his sacrifice. [73] His sacrifice was one silver platter weighing 130 shekels and one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels, by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel. Both of these objects were full of fine flour mingled with oil for a grain offering. [74] He also gave one gold dish weighing ten shekels, full of incense.

### translationNotes

#### the eleventh day

"day 11" or "day number 11" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

#### Pagiel son of Okran

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:13.

#### one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:13. AT: "one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms" or "one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams" (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

#### one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

"one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels." If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:13. AT: "one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram" or "one silver bowl weighting 770 grams" (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

#### by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in Numbers 7:13. AT: "measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary" (See: Biblical Weight)

### fine flour mingled with oil

This can be stated in active form. AT: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: Active or Passive)

### one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:14. AT: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: Biblical Weight)

### translationWords

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Asher
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- silver
- sanctuary
- oil
- grain offering, grain offerings
- gold, golden
- incense, incenses

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:75

### UDB:

[75-77] Pagiel also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people's guilt for their sins,

### ULB:

[75] He gave as a burnt offering one young bull, one ram, and a one-year-old male lamb. [76] He gave one male goat as a sin offering. [77] He gave two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were a year old, as the sacrifice for a fellowship offering. This was the sacrifice of Pagiel son of Okran.

### translationNotes

#### that were a year old

"that were each one year old"

#### This was the sacrifice of Pagiel son of Okran

"This was what Pagiel son of Okran gave as a sacrifice." "Pagiel" and "Okran" were names of men. See how you translated their names in Numbers 1:13. (See: How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- lamb, Lamb of God
- year, years
- goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids
- sin offering, sin offerings
- 
- fellowship offering, fellowship offerings

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:78

### UDB:

[78-80] On the twelveth day, Ahira son of Enan, leader of the tribe of Naphtali brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

### ULB:

[78] On the twelfth day, Ahira son of Enan, leader of the descendants of Naphtali, offered his sacrifice. [79] His sacrifice was one silver platter weighing 130 shekels and one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels, by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel. Both of these objects were full of fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering. [80] He also gave one gold dish weighing ten shekels, full of incense.

### translationNotes

#### the twelfth day

“day 12” or ”day number 12) (See: Ordinal Numbers)

#### Ahira son of Enan

See how you translated this man’s name in Numbers 1:15.

#### one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:13. AT: “one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms” or “one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

#### one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

“one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:13. AT: “one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “one silver bowl weighting 770 grams” (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

#### by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in Numbers 7:13. AT: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: Biblical Weight)

### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. AT: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: Active or Passive)

### one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:14. AT: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: Biblical Weight)

### translationWords

- Naphtali

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:81

### UDB:

81-83 Ahira also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people's guilt for their sins,

### ULB:

81 He gave as a burnt offering one young bull, one ram, and a one-year-old male lamb. 82 He gave one male goat as a sin offering. 83 He gave two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were a year old, as the sacrifice for a fellowship offering. This was the sacrifice of Ahira son of Enan.

### translationNotes

#### that were a year old

"that were each one year old"

#### This was the sacrifice of Ahira son of Enan

"This was what Ahira son of Enan gave as a sacrifice"

#### Ahira son of Enan

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:15.

### translationWords

- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:84

### UDB:

[84-86] When the altar was dedicated to Yahweh, those twelve leaders brought these gifts:

twelve silver plates and twelve silver bowls, weighing a total of twenty-six and one-half kilograms, each of them weighed on the scales kept in the sacred tent,

### ULB:

[84] The leaders of Israel set all these apart on the day that Moses anointed the altar. They set apart the twelve silver platters, twelve silver bowls, and twelve gold dishes. [85] Each silver platter weighed 130 shekels and each bowl weighed seventy shekels. All the silver vessels weighed 2,400 shekels, by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel. [86] Each of the twelve gold dishes, full of incense, weighed ten shekels by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel. All the gold dishes weighed 120 shekels.

### translationNotes

#### set all these apart

The phrase “set apart” means to be dedicated to a specific purpose. In this case, the offerings were dedicated to Yahweh. (See: Idiom)

#### on the day that Moses anointed the altar

Here the word “day” refers to a general period of time. The leaders of Israel dedicated these things over the course of 12 days. AT: “when Moses anointed the altar”

#### Each silver platter weighed 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated this same weight in Numbers 7:13. AT: “each silver platter weighed nearly one and a half kilograms” or “each silver platter weighed one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

#### each bowl weighed seventy shekels

“each bowl weighted 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weight can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated this same weight in Numbers 7:13. AT: “each bowl weighed nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “each bowl weighed 770 grams” (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

#### 2,400 shekels

“two thousand four hundred shekels” or “twenty-four hundred shekels” (See: Numbers)

### by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in Numbers 7:13. AT: "measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary" (See: Biblical Weight)

### All the silver vessels weighed ... All the gold dishes weighed

"All the silver vessels together weighed ... All the gold dishes together weighed"

### the silver vessels

This refers to all of the offerings that were made of silver, both the platters and the bowls.

### Each of the twelve gold dishes ... weighed ten shekels

"Each of the 12 gold dishes ... weighed 10 shekels." If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in Numbers 7:14. AT: "Each of the 12 gold dishes ... weighed one tenth of a kilogram" or "Each of the 12 gold dishes ... weighed 110 grams" (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

### 120 shekels

"one hundred and twenty shekels" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- Israel, Israelites
- day, days
- Moses
- anoint, anointed, anointing
- altar, altars
- silver
- gold, golden
- sanctuary
- incense, incenses

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:87

### UDB:

87-88 The twelve leaders also brought twelve bulls, twelve rams, and twelve one-year-old male lambs to be sacrificed completely by being burned along with the flour offerings,

twelve goats to be sacrificed to take away the guilt of the people's sins,

### ULB:

87 They set apart all the animals for the burnt offerings, twelve bulls, twelve rams, and twelve year-old male lambs. They gave their grain offering. They gave twelve male goats as a sin offering. 88 From all their cattle, they gave twenty-four bulls, sixty rams, sixty male goats, and sixty male lambs a year old, as the sacrifice for the fellowship offering. This was for the dedication of the altar after it was anointed.

### translationNotes

#### twelve ... twenty-four ... sixty

"12 ... 24 ... 60." These numbers may be written with numerals instead of with words. (See: Numbers)

#### a year old

"that were one year old"

#### after it was anointed

This can be stated in active form. AT: "after Moses had anointed it" (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- lamb, Lamb of God
- year, years
- grain offering, grain offerings
- goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids
- sin offering, sin offerings
- fellowship offering, fellowship offerings
- altar, altars

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 7:89

### UDB:

89 Whenever Moses entered the sacred tent to talk with Yahweh, he heard Yahweh's voice speaking between the two images of creatures with wings that were above the lid of the sacred chest.

### ULB:

89 When Moses went into the tent of meeting to speak with Yahweh, he heard his voice speaking to him. Yahweh spoke to him from above the atonement lid on the ark of the testimony, from between the two cherubim. He spoke to him.

### translationNotes

#### he heard his voice speaking to him

Here "his voice" refers to Yahweh. AT: "he heard Yahweh speaking to him" (See: Synecdoche)

#### from above the atonement lid ... from between the two cherubim

These two phrases describe the same location. (See: Parallelism)

#### ark of the testimony

See how you translated this phrase in Numbers 4:5.

#### He spoke to him

"Yahweh spoke to Moses"

### translationWords

- tent of meeting
- Yahweh
- voice, voices
- atonement lid
- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh
- cherub, cherubim, cherubs

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7 translationQuestions

## Numbers 08 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The consecration of the tabernacle continues in this chapter. The people obeyed Yahweh's exact instructions. (See: consecrate, consecrated, consecration and tabernacle)

### Links:

- **Numbers 08:01 Notes**

## Numbers 8:1-2

### UDB:

[1] Yahweh said to Moses, [2] "Tell Aaron to put the seven lamps on the lampstand and place them in such a way that they shine toward the front of the lampstand."

### ULB:

[1] Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said, [2] "Speak to Aaron. Say to him, 'The seven lamps must give light in front of the lampstand when you light them.' "

### translationNotes

#### must give light in front

"must shine towards the front"

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Aaron
- lamp, lamps
- light, lights, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten, enlightened
- lampstand, lampstands

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 08 General Notes
- Numbers 8 translationQuestions

## Numbers 8:3-4

### UDB:

[3] So Moses told him what Yahweh said, and he did that. [4] The lampstand had been made from gold that had been hammered from one large lump of gold, from its base to the decorations at the top that resembled flowers. The lampstand was made exactly as Yahweh had told Moses that it should be made.

### ULB:

[3] Aaron did this. He lit the lamps on the lampstand to give light toward the front of it, as Yahweh had commanded Moses. [4] The lampstand was made in this way and Yahweh showed Moses the pattern for it. It was to be hammered gold from its base to its top, with hammered cups like blossoms.

### translationNotes

#### to give light

"to shine"

#### The lampstand was made

This can be stated in active form. AT: "They had made the lampstand" (See: Active or Passive)

#### with hammered cups like blossoms

They were commanded to form the hammered cups so that they resembled flower blossoms. AT: "with hammered cups that resemble flower blossoms" (See: Simile)

### translationWords

- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- gold, golden

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 08 General Notes
- Numbers 8 translationQuestions

## Numbers 8:5-6

### UDB:

5 Yahweh also said to Moses, 6 "You must cause the descendants of Levi to be acceptable to me by setting them apart from the other Israelite people.

### ULB:

5 Again, Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said, 6 "Take the Levites from among the people of Israel and purify them.

### translationNotes

### translationWords

- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- pure, purify, purification

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 08 General Notes
- Numbers 8 translationQuestions

## Numbers 8:7-8

### UDB:

7 Do that by sprinkling them with water which will symbolize their being freed from the guilt of their sins. Then they must shave off all the hair of their bodies and wash their clothes. 8 Then they must bring one bull and some flour mixed with olive oil. Those things will be burned as sacrifices. They must also bring another bull that will be sacrificed to take away the guilt of their sins.

### ULB:

7 Do this to them to purify them: Sprinkle the water of atonement on them. Make them shave their entire body, wash their clothes, and in this way purify themselves. 8 Then have them take a young bull and its grain offering of fine flour mingled with oil. Let them take another young bull as a sin offering.

### translationNotes

#### to purify them

Here “them” refers to the Levites.

#### Sprinkle the water of atonement on them

Moses sprinkling water on them was symbolic of their atonement. AT: “Sprinkle on their the water that symbolizes atonement” (See: Symbolic Action)

#### wash their clothes

The Levites are supposed to wash their own clothes. You can make clear the understood information. AT: “then make them wash their clothes” (See: Ellipsis)

#### a young bull and its grain offering

When offering a young bull, a grain offering was usually required to accompany it.

#### of fine flour mingled with oil

This can be stated in active form. AT: “of fine flour that they have mingled with oil” (See: Active or Passive)

**translationWords**

- atonement, atone, atones, atoned
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- grain offering, grain offerings
- oil
- sin offering, sin offerings

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 08 General Notes
- Numbers 8 translationQuestions

## Numbers 8:9-11

### UDB:

[9] Then you must summon all the Israelite people to come together in front of the sacred tent, to gather around the descendants of Levi. [10] Then the Israelite people must lay their hands on the descendants of Levi. [11] Aaron must then present them to me to be a gift from the Israelite people, as if he had lifted them up to me, in order that they can work for me at the sacred tent.

### ULB:

[9] You will bring the Levites in front of the tent of meeting and assemble the whole community of the people of Israel. [10] When you bring the Levites before Yahweh, the people of Israel must lay their hands on the Levites. [11] Aaron must offer the Levites before Yahweh, as a wave offering from the people of Israel so that they may do the service of Yahweh.

### translationNotes

#### assemble the whole community

"gather the whole community"

#### before Yahweh

Here Yahweh refers to himself by his own name.

#### the people of Israel must lay their hands on the Levites

The action "laying on hands" on someone was often done to dedicate them to Yahweh's work or service. AT: "The people Israel must lay their hands on the Levites, dedicating them to me" (See: Symbolic Action)

#### as a wave offering

Aaron was to present the Levites to Yahweh with the same amount of dedication as if they were a sacrifice given to him. AT: "if they were a wave offering" (See: Simile)

### translationWords

- tent of meeting
- Yahweh
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 08 General Notes
- Numbers 8 translationQuestions

## Numbers 8:12-13

### UDB:

12 After that, the descendants of Levi must place their hands on the heads of the two bulls. Then the bulls will be killed and burned on the altar. One will be an offering to take away the guilt of their sins, and the other will be completely burned to please me. 13 The descendants of Levi must stand at the altar in front of Aaron and his sons, and you must then dedicate them to me, as if you had lifted them up to me.

### ULB:

12 The Levites must place their hands on the heads of the bulls. You must offer one bull for a sin offering and the other bull for a burnt offering to me, to atone for the Levites. 13 Present the Levites before Aaron and before his sons, and lift them up as a wave offering to me.

### translationNotes

#### The Levites must place their hands on the heads of the bulls

This is a symbolic action that identifies the Levites with the animals being offered. In this way the person is offering himself through the animal to Yahweh. (See: Symbolic Action)

#### lift them up as a wave offering to me

Aaron was to present the Levites to Yahweh as if he were lifting up an offering to Yahweh. AT: “dedicate them to me, as if you were lifting them up a wave offering to me” (See: Simile)

### translationWords

- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- son, sons
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 08 General Notes
- Numbers 8 translationQuestions

## Numbers 8:14-15

### UDB:

14 This ritual will show that the descendants of Levi are set apart from the other Israelites and that they belong to me.

15 After the descendants of Levi have been made acceptable to me, and presented to me like a special offering as if they had been lifted up to me, they may start to work at the sacred tent.

### ULB:

14 In this way you must separate the Levites from among the people of Israel. The Levites will belong to me. 15 After that, the Levites must go in to serve in the tent of meeting. You must purify them. You must offer them as a wave offering.

### translationNotes

#### You must purify them. You must offer them as a wave offering

Yahweh repeats these things to emphasize their importance. This must happen before the Levites go to serve at the tent of meeting. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: “But first, you must purify them. You must offer them as a wave offering” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### You must offer them as a wave offering

Aaron was to present the Levites to Yahweh as if they were a wave offering to him. AT: “You must dedicate them to me, as if you were presenting a wave offering to me” (See: Simile)

### translationWords

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- pure, purify, purification

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 08 General Notes
- Numbers 8 translationQuestions

## Numbers 8:16-17

### UDB:

16 They will belong to me. They will work for me as substitutes for the firstborn males of all the Israelites, who also belong to me. 17 All the firstborn males in Israel, both the people and the animals, are mine. When I caused all the firstborn sons of the people of Egypt to die, I set them apart for myself. But I spared the firstborn of all males of the Israelites, of people and animals, because they are mine.

### ULB:

16 Do this, because they are entirely mine from among the people of Israel. They will take the place of each male child who opens the womb, the firstborn of all the descendants of Israel. I have taken the Levites for myself. 17 All the firstborn from among the people of Israel are mine, both of people and of animals. On the day that I took the lives of all the firstborn in the land of Egypt, I set them apart for myself.

### translationNotes

#### each male child who opens the womb, the firstborn

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasize the firstborn sons. (See: Parallelism)

#### male child who opens the womb

This is an idiom. “To open the womb” means to give birth for the first time. Here this refers to the first male child to which a mother gives birth. AT: “child who is the firstborn son of his mother” (See: Idiom)

#### I took the lives

This is a polite way of referring to when a person kills someone. AT: “I killed” (See: Euphemism)

#### I set them apart

Here “them” refers to “the firstborn from among the people of Israel.”

### translationWords

- womb, wombs
- firstborn

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- set apart

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 08 General Notes
- Numbers 8 translationQuestions

## Numbers 8:18-19

### UDB:

[18] But now I have chosen the descendants of Levi to take the places of the firsborn male sons of the other Israelites. [19] I have appointed the descendants of Levi to help Aaron and his sons at the sacred tent, as Aaron and his sons offer the sacrifices to take away the guilt of the Israelite people's sins, and to prevent the Israelites from coming close to the tent with the result that a plague would cause many of them to become sick and die."

### ULB:

[18] I have taken the Levites from among the people of Israel instead of all the firstborn. [19] I have given the Levites as a gift to Aaron and his sons. I have taken them from among the people of Israel to do the work of the people of Israel in the tent of meeting. I have given them to atone for the people of Israel so that no plague will harm the people when they come near to the holy place."

### translationNotes

#### I have taken the Levites ... instead of all the firstborn

The idea of "taking" is understood from the first part of the sentence and can be repeated in the second. AT: "I have taken the Levites .. instead taking all of the firstborn" (See: Ellipsis)

#### I have given the Levites as a gift to Aaron and his sons

Yahweh appointing the Levites to help Aaron and his sons is spoken of as if they were a gift that Yahweh were giving to Aaron and his sons. (See: Metaphor)

#### I have taken them ... I have given them

Here "them" refers to the Levites.

#### when they come near

Here "they" refers to the people of Israel.

### translationWords

- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- gift, gifts
- Aaron
- son, sons

- tent of meeting
- atonement, atone, atones, atoned
- plague, plagues
- holy place

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 08 General Notes
- Numbers 8 translationQuestions

## Numbers 8:20-21

### UDB:

[20] Aaron and Moses and the other Israelites helped the descendants of Levi to do everything that Yahweh had commanded. [21] The descendants of Levi sprinkled themselves with water to symbolize that they had been freed from the guilt of their sins, and they washed their clothes. Then Aaron brought them to the altar to present them to Yahweh, just as if he had lifted them up to him, and he offered sacrifices to take away the guilt of their sins and cause them to become acceptable to Yahweh.

### ULB:

[20] Moses, Aaron, and the whole community of the people of Israel did this with the Levites. They did everything that Yahweh had commanded Moses concerning the Levites. The people of Israel did this with them. [21] The Levites purified themselves and washed their clothing, and Aaron presented them as a wave offering to Yahweh and he made atonement for them to cleanse them.

### translationNotes

#### Moses, Aaron, and the whole community of the people of Israel ... The people of Israel did this with them

Here there are three parallel sentences that give the same information. It is repeated to emphasize that the people did to the Levites as Yahweh had commanded. AT: “Moses, Aaron, and the whole community of the people of Israel did with the Levites everything that Yahweh had commanded Moses concerning the Levites” (See: Parallelism)

### translationWords

- Moses
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- pure, purify, purification
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 08 General Notes
- Numbers 8 translationQuestions

## Numbers 8:22

### UDB:

[22] After that, the descendants of Levi started to work at the sacred tent to assist Aaron and his sons. They did that just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

### ULB:

[22] After that, the Levites went in to do their service in the tent of meeting before Aaron and before Aaron's sons. This was as Yahweh had commanded Moses about the Levites. They treated all the Levites in this way.

### translationNotes

#### to do their service

The word "service," an abstract noun, can be expressed as a verb. AT: "to serve" (See: Abstract Nouns)

#### before Aaron and before Aaron's sons

"in the presence of Aaron and his sons"

#### This was

"What they did was"

#### They treated all the Levites in this way

"They did to the Levites what Yahweh commanded." The word "They" refers to the people of Israel.

### translationWords

- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 08 General Notes
- Numbers 8 translationQuestions

## Numbers 8:23-24

### UDB:

[23] Yahweh also said this to Moses: [24] "The descendants of Levi who are between twenty-five years and fifty years old will work at the sacred tent.

### ULB:

[23] Yahweh spoke again to Moses. He said, [24] "All of this is for the Levites who are twenty-five years old and more. They must join the company to serve in the tent of meeting.

### translationNotes

#### All of this is for the Levites

"All of these commandments are for the Levites"

#### twenty-five years old

"25 years old" (See: Numbers)

#### must join the company to serve in the tent of meeting

The word "company" refers to the rest of the people working in the tent of meeting. See how you translated this phrase in Numbers 4:3.

### translationWords

- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- tent of meeting

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 08 General Notes
- Numbers 8 translationQuestions

## Numbers 8:25-26

### UDB:

25 But after they become fifty years old, they must retire. 26 They may help their fellow descendants of Levi do their work at the sacred tent, but they must not do the work themselves. That is what you must tell them about the work they will do."

### ULB:

25 They must stop serving in this way at the age of fifty years. At that age they must not serve any longer. 26 They may help their brothers who continue to work at the tent of meeting, but they must serve no more. You must direct the Levites in all these matters."

### translationNotes

#### at the age of fifty years

"at 50 years old" or "when they become 50 years old" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- brother, brothers
- tent of meeting
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 08 General Notes
- Numbers 8 translationQuestions

# Numbers 09 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

==Passover ==

This chapter records the celebration of the Passover for the first time since it began. The people kept the Passover as directed by the Lord. (See: Passover)

### Links:

- **Numbers 09:01 Notes**

## Numbers 9:1-3

### UDB:

[1] One year after the Israelites left Egypt, on the first month of the second year, while they were in the wilderness of Sinai, Yahweh said to Moses, [2] "Tell the Israelite people that they must celebrate the Passover festival again. [3] They must do it on the fourteenth day of this month, early in the evening, and they must obey all the instructions about it that I gave you previously."

### ULB:

[1] Yahweh spoke to Moses in the wilderness of Sinai, in the first month of the second year after they came out from the land of Egypt. He said, [2] "Let the people of Israel keep the Passover at its fixed time of year. [3] On the fourteenth day of this month, at evening, you must keep the Passover at its fixed time of year. You must keep it, follow all the regulations, and obey all the decrees that are related to it."

### translationNotes

#### in the first month of the second year after they came out from the land of Egypt

This means that they had come out of Egypt a year earlier. They were beginning their second year in the wilderness. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

#### in the first month

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

#### after they came out from the land of Egypt

Here "they" refers to the people of Israel. The phrase "came out" means to leave. AT: "after they left the land of Egypt" (See: Idiom)

#### Let the people ... at its fixed time of year

The word "fixed" means "previously set." This means that this is when the observe it every year. AT: "Let the people ... at the time of year they currently observe it" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### On the fourteenth day ... at its fixed time of year

This is the set time of year that they celebrate the Passover. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: "On the fourteenth day ... and observe it, for this is the time you do celebrate it every year" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### the fourteenth day

"day 14" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

### follow all the regulations, and obey all the decrees

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined to emphasize that they needed to obey the commands. (See: Parallelism)

### You must keep it

Here the phrase "keep it" is an idiom which means to observe it. AT: "You must observe it" or "You must celebrate it" (See: Idiom)

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- Sinai, Mount Sinai
- year, years
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- Passover
- day, days
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- decree, decrees, decreed

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 09 General Notes
- Numbers 9 translationQuestions

## Numbers 9:4-5

### UDB:

[4] So Moses told the people what Yahweh had said about celebrating the Passover. [5] The people celebrated it there in the wilderness of Sinai, in the evening of the fourteenth day of the month, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

### ULB:

[4] So, Moses told the people of Israel that they should keep the Festival of the Passover. [5] So they kept the Passover in the first month, on the fourteenth day of the month, at evening, in the wilderness of Sinai. The people of Israel obeyed everything that Yahweh commanded Moses to do.

### translationNotes

#### keep the Festival of the Passover

Here the word "keep" means to observe. AT: "observe the Festival of the Passover" or "celebrate the Festival of the Passover" (See: Idiom)

#### in the first month, on the fourteenth day of the month

"on day 14 of the first month." This refers to time in the Jewish calendar. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

### translationWords

- festival, festivals
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 09 General Notes
- Numbers 9 translationQuestions

## Numbers 9:6-8

### UDB:

[6] But some of the Israelite people had touched a corpse, and as a result they had become unfit to celebrate the Passover. So they asked Aaron and Moses, [7] "It is true that we have touched a corpse. But why should that prevent us from celebrating the Passover festival and offering sacrifices to Yahweh like everyone else?"

[8] Moses replied, "Wait here until I go into the sacred tent and find out what Yahweh says about it."

### ULB:

[6] There were certain men who became unclean by the body of a dead man. They could not keep the Passover on that day. They went before Moses and Aaron on that same day. [7] Those men said to Moses, "We are unclean because of the dead body of a man. Why do you keep us from offering the sacrifice to Yahweh at the fixed time of year among the people of Israel?" [8] Moses said to them, "Wait for me to hear what Yahweh will instruct about you."

### translationNotes

#### became unclean by the body of a dead man

This implies that they touched the dead man, which made them unclean. You can make clear the full meaning of this statement. AT: "became unclean because they touched the body of a dead man" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### unclean

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: Metaphor)

#### keep the Passover

Here the word "keep" means to observe. AT: "observe the Passover" or "celebrate the Passover" (See: Idiom)

#### because of the dead body of a man

This means that they had touched a dead man's body. You can make the full meaning of this statement clear. AT: "because we have touched the body of a dead man" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Why do you keep us from offering the sacrifice ... among the people of Israel?**

The men ask this question in order to complain that they are not allowed to participate in celebrating the Passover. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "It is not fair that you keep us away from offering the sacrifice ... among the people of Israel." (See: Rhetorical Question)

**fixed**

set or predetermined

**translationWords**

- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
- body, bodies
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- Aaron
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 09 General Notes
- Numbers 9 translationQuestions

## Numbers 9:9-10

### UDB:

[9] So Moses went into the tent and asked Yahweh what he should tell the people, and this is what Yahweh said: [10] "Tell this to the Israelite people: 'If any of you or your descendants touch a corpse and as a result become unacceptable to me, or if you are away from home on a long trip at the time to celebrate the Passover, you will still be permitted to celebrate it.

### ULB:

[9] Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said, [10] "Speak to the people of Israel. Say, 'If any of you or your descendants are unclean because of a dead body, or are on a long journey, he may still keep the Passover to Yahweh.'

### translationNotes

#### unclean

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: Metaphor)

#### because of a dead body

This refers to someone touching a dead body. AT: "because you have touched a dead body" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### keep the Passover

Here the word "keep" means to observe. AT: "observe the Passover" or "celebrate the Passover" (See: Idiom)

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Passover

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 09 General Notes
- Numbers 9 translationQuestions

## Numbers 9:11-12

### UDB:

[11] But you must celebrate it exactly one month later, early in the evening of the fourteenth day of that month. Eat the meat of the lamb for the Passover festival with bread that is baked without yeast, and eat bitter herbs. [12] Do not leave any of it until the next morning. And do not break any of the lamb's bones. Obey all the regulations about celebrating the Passover.

### ULB:

[11] In the second month on the fourteenth day at evening, they will eat the Passover meal. They must eat the Passover lamb with bread that is made without yeast and with bitter herbs. [12] They must not leave any of it until the morning, or break any of its bones. They must follow all the regulations for the Passover.

### translationNotes

#### eat the Passover

Here the word "eat" means to observe. AT: "observe the Passover" or "celebrate the Passover" (See: Idiom)

#### the second month on the fourteenth day

"day 14 of month 2." This refers to time in the Jewish calendar. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

#### at evening

"at sunset"

#### with bread that is made without yeast

"with bread that contains no yeast"

#### bitter herbs

These are small plants that have a strong and usually bad taste.

#### or break any of its bones

"and they must not break any of its bones"

**translationWords**

- day, days
- bread
- yeast, leaven, leavens, leavened, unleavened

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 09 General Notes
- Numbers 9 translationQuestions

## Numbers 9:13-14

### UDB:

[13] But if any of you has not done anything that would make you unfit to celebrate the Passover festival, and you are not away from home on a long trip, and you do not sacrifice to me at the proper time, you will no longer belong to my people. You will be punished.

[14] Settled foreigners who live among you must also celebrate the Passover festival and obey all my commands concerning it.'"

### ULB:

[13] But any person who is clean and is not on a journey, but who fails to keep the Passover, that person must be cut off from his people because he did not offer the sacrifice that Yahweh requires at the fixed time of year. That man must carry his sin. [14] If a stranger lives among you and keeps the Passover in Yahweh's honor, he must keep it and do all he commands, keeping the rules of the Passover, and obeying the laws for it. You must have the same law for the foreigner and for all who have been born in the land."

### translationNotes

#### any person who is clean

A person who God considers spiritually acceptable is spoken of as if the person were physically clean. (See: Metaphor)

#### keep the Passover

Here the word "keep" means to observe. AT: "observe the Passover" or "celebrate the Passover" (See: Idiom)

#### that person must be cut off

Here the phrase "cut off" means to be disowned and sent away. AT: "that person must be sent away" or "you must send that person away" (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

#### fixed

set or predetermined

#### That man must carry his sin

Here the concept of the man having to bear the consequences of his sin is spoken of as if his sin were a heavy object object that he had to carry. AT: "That man must bear the punishment for his sin" (See: Metaphor)

### lives among you

Here “you” is plural and refers to the people of Israel. (See: Forms of You)

### he must keep it and do all he commands

“that stranger must keep it and do all that Yahweh commands”

### keeping the rules of the Passover, and obeying the laws for it

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are used together to emphasize that the stranger must obey all of the rules about the Passover. (See: Parallelism)

### in the land

“in the land of Israel”

### translationWords

- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
- cut off, cuts off, cutting off
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- honor, honors
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 09 General Notes
- Numbers 9 translationQuestions

## Numbers 9:15-17

### UDB:

15-16 On the day that the sacred tent was set up, a cloud covered it. But from the time that the sun set until the time that the sun rose the next day, the cloud resembled a huge fire. And that is what happened every day that the Israelites were in the wilderness. 17 When the cloud rose up and started to move to a new location, the Israelites followed it. When the cloud stopped, the Israelites stopped there and set up their tents.

### ULB:

15 On the day that the tabernacle was set up, the cloud covered the tabernacle, the tent of the covenant decrees. At evening the cloud was over the tabernacle. It appeared like fire until morning. 16 It continued that way. The cloud covered the tabernacle and appeared like fire at night. 17 Whenever the cloud was taken up from over the tent, the people of Israel would set out on their journey. Wherever the cloud stopped, the people would camp.

### translationNotes

#### the tabernacle was set up

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the Levites set up the tabernacle” (See: Active or Passive)

#### the tent of the covenant decrees

This is another name for the tabernacle. See how you translated the phrase “the tabernacle of the covenant decrees” in Numbers 1:50.

#### It appeared like fire until morning

This refers to the cloud’s appearance during the night. Here the cloud is compared to looking like a fire. AT: “During the night the cloud looked like a huge fire until morning” (See: Simile)

#### It continued that way

It may be helpful to explain that this refers to the cloud being over the tabernacle. AT: “The cloud remained this way over the tabernacle” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### appeared like fire at night

The cloud’s appearance is compared to a huge fire. AT: “it looked like a huge fire at night” (See: Simile)

#### the cloud was taken up

This can be stated in active form. AT: “moved” or “Yahweh took up the cloud” (See: Active or Passive)

#### the cloud stopped

“the cloud stopped moving”

#### translationWords

- tabernacle
- tent, tents, tentmakers
- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- decree, decrees, decreed
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites

#### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 09 General Notes
- Numbers 9 translationQuestions

## Numbers 9:18-19

### UDB:

[18] The Israelites moved when Yahweh told them to move and stopped when Yahweh told them to stop by causing the cloud to move or stop. When the cloud stayed over the sacred tent, the Israelites stayed at that place. [19] Sometimes the cloud stayed over the sacred tent for a long time, so when that happened, the Israelites did not move.

### ULB:

[18] At Yahweh's command, the people of Israel would travel, and at his command, they would camp. While the cloud stopped over the tabernacle, they would stay in their camp. [19] When the cloud remained on the tabernacle for many days, then the people of Israel would obey Yahweh's instructions and not travel.

### translationNotes

#### At Yahweh's command

The word "command" can be expressed as a verb. AT: "When Yahweh commanded" (See: Abstract Nouns)

### translationWords

- Yahweh

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 09 General Notes
- Numbers 9 translationQuestions

## Numbers 9:20-21

### UDB:

[20] Sometimes the cloud remained over the sacred tent for only a few days. The people stopped and set up their tents as Yahweh commanded them, and they moved to a new location when Yahweh commanded them to do that. [21] Sometimes the cloud stayed in one place for only one day. When that happened, when the cloud rose up into the sky the next morning, then the people moved. Whenever the cloud moved, during the day or during the night, the people moved.

### ULB:

[20] Sometimes the cloud remained a few days on the tabernacle. In that case, they would obey Yahweh's command—they would make camp and then travel on again at his command. [21] Sometimes the cloud was present in camp from evening until morning. When the cloud lifted in the morning, they journeyed. If it continued for a day and for a night, only when the cloud lifted would they journey on.

### translationNotes

#### on the tabernacle

"over the tabernacle"

#### make camp

Here the word "make" means to "set up." AT: "set up their camp" (See: Idiom)

#### from evening until morning

This means that the cloud only stayed over the tabernacle for one night. You make make clear the full meaning of this statement. AT: "only from evening until morning" or "over the tabernacle for only one night" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### If it continued

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. "If the cloud stayed over the tabernacle" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### only when the cloud lifted would they journey on

"then after the cloud moved they would travel"

**translationWords**

- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 09 General Notes
- Numbers 9 translationQuestions

## Numbers 9:22-23

### UDB:

22 If the cloud stayed over the sacred tent for two days, or for a month, or for a year, during that time the people stayed where they were. But when the cloud rose up into the sky, they started to move. 23 When Yahweh commanded them to stop and set up their tents, they did that. When he told them to move, they moved. They did whatever Yahweh told Moses they should do.

### ULB:

22 Whether the cloud stayed on the tabernacle for two days, a month, or a year, for as long as it stayed there, the people of Israel would stay in their camp and not travel. But whenever the cloud was taken up, they would set out on their journey. 23 They would camp at Yahweh's command, and they would travel at his command. They obeyed Yahweh's command given through Moses.

### translationNotes

#### the cloud was taken up

This can be stated in active form. AT: "the cloud rose up" or "Yahweh took up the cloud" (See: Active or Passive)

#### at Yahweh's command

The word "command" can be expressed as a verb. AT: "what Yahweh commanded" (See: Abstract Nouns)

#### Yahweh's command given through Moses

This can be stated in active form. AT: "the command that Yahweh had given through Moses" (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- tabernacle
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 09 General Notes
- Numbers 9 translationQuestions

## Numbers 10 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Trumpets

In the ancient Near East, trumpets were used for many purposes. They were used to call people together. They were also used to lead people into battle.

#### Israel starts to move

Each tribe had its place in line as did the tabernacle. Their movements through the desert were very deliberate and ordered. (See: tabernacle)

#### Links:

- **Numbers 10:01 Notes**

## Numbers 10:1-2

### UDB:

[1] Yahweh also told Moses, [2] "Tell someone to make two trumpets by hammering each one from one lump of silver. Blow the trumpets to summon the people to come together and also to signal that they must move their tents to a new location.

### ULB:

[1] Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said, [2] "Make two silver trumpets. Hammer the silver to make them. You must use the trumpets to call the community together and to call the community to move their camps.

### translationNotes

#### Make two silver trumpets

This means that Yahweh commanded Moses to have someone make the trumpet. He did not make them himself. AT: "Tell someone to make two silver trumpets" (See: Metonymy)

#### You must use the trumpets

Moses will not blow the trumpets himself, but he will command the priests to blow them. (See: Metonymy)

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- silver
- trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters
- call, calls, calling, called

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 10 General Notes
- Numbers 10 translationQuestions

## Numbers 10:3-5

### UDB:

[3] If both trumpets are blown, it means that everyone must gather together at the entrance of the sacred tent. [4] If only one trumpet is blown, it means that only the twelve leaders of the tribes must gather together. [5] If the trumpets are blown loudly, the tribes that are to the east of the sacred tent should start to move.

### ULB:

[3] The priests must blow the trumpets to call all the community together in front of you at the entrance to the tent of meeting. [4] If the priests blow only one trumpet, then the leaders, the heads of the clans of Israel, must gather to you. [5] When you blow a loud signal, the camps on the east side must begin their journey.

### translationNotes

#### in front of you

"while you are present." This means that Moses was to be there with the priest when he blew the trumpets.

#### the leaders, the heads of the clans of Israel

These two phrases refer to the same group of people. Here the second phrase is used to describe the first phrase. AT: "the leaders, who are the heads of the clans of Israel" (See: Parallelism)

#### When you blow a loud signal

Here the word "you" is plural. Yahweh is speaking to Moses, but he his referring to the priests. The priests will blow the trumpets, Moses will not. AT: "When they blow a loud signal" (See: Forms of You and Metonymy)

### translationWords

- priest, priests, priesthood
- tent of meeting
- head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded
- clan, clans
- Israel, Israelites

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 10 General Notes
- Numbers 10 translationQuestions

## Numbers 10:6-8

### UDB:

[6] When the trumpets are blown loudly the second time, the tribes that are to the south should start to move. The loud blasts on the trumpet will signal that they should start to move. [7] When you want only to gather the people together, blow the trumpets, but do not blow them as loudly.

[8] The priests who are descended from Aaron are the ones who should blow the trumpets. That is a regulation that will never be changed.

### ULB:

[6] When you blow a loud signal the second time, the camps on the south side must begin their journey. They must blow a loud signal for their journeys. [7] When the community gathers together, blow the trumpets, but not loudly. [8] The sons of Aaron, the priests, must blow the trumpets. This will always be a regulation for you throughout your people's generations.

### translationNotes

#### When you blow a loud signal

Here the word "you" is plural. Yahweh is speaking to Moses, but he is referring to the priests. The priests will blow the trumpets, Moses will not. AT: "When they blow a loud signal" (See: Forms of You and Metonymy)

#### the second time

"time number 2" or "again" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

#### When the community gathers together

"To gather the community together"

#### They must blow a loud signal for their journeys

"They" refers to the priests and the word "their" refers to the people of Israel.

#### be a regulation for you

"be a rule for you." Here "you" is plural and refers to the people of Israel. (See: Forms of You)

**translationWords**

- son, sons
- Aaron
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- generation

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 10 General Notes
- Numbers 10 translationQuestions

## Numbers 10:9

### UDB:

9 When you fight against enemies who attack you in your own land, tell the priests to blow the trumpets loudly. I, Yahweh, your God, will hear that, and I will rescue you from your enemies.

### ULB:

9 When you go to war in your land against an adversary who oppresses you, then you must sound an alarm with the trumpets. I, Yahweh your God, will call you to mind and save you from your enemies.

### translationNotes

#### When you go to war ... oppresses you

Yahweh is speaking to Moses and uses the word "you," but he is actually referring the people of Israel going to war. AT: "When the people of Israel to war ... oppresses Israel" (See: Synecdoche)

#### then you must sound an alarm with the trumpets

Here Yahweh again speaks to Moses using the word "you" but actually wants Moses to have the priests blow the trumpets. AT: "then you must command the priests to sound an alarm with the trumpets" (See: Metonymy)

#### call you to mind

This phrase "call to mind" means to remember. AT: "remember you" (See: Idiom)

### translationWords

- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies
- oppress, oppresses, oppressed, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors
- alarm, alarms, alarmed
- trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters
- Yahweh
- God
- mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded
- save, saves, saved, safe, salvation

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 10 General Notes
- Numbers 10 translationQuestions

## Numbers 10:10

### UDB:

10 Also tell the priests to blow the trumpets when the people are happy, and at the festivals each year, and at the times when they celebrate the new moon each month. Tell them to blow the trumpets when the people bring offerings that will be completely burned, and when they bring offerings to restore fellowship with me. If they do that, it will help you to think about me. You must do that, because I am Yahweh your God."

### ULB:

10 Also, at the times of celebration, both your regular festivals and at the beginnings of the months, you must blow the trumpets in honor of your burnt offerings and over the sacrifices for your fellowship offerings. These will act as a reminder of you to me, your God. I am Yahweh your God."

### translationNotes

#### of celebration

The noun "celebration" can be expressed with the verb "celebrate." AT: "when you celebrate" (See: Abstract Nouns)

#### you must blow the trumpets

Here Yahweh again speaks to Moses using the word "you," but actually wants him to have the priests blow the trumpets. AT: "you must command the priests to blow the trumpets" (See: Metonymy),

#### at the beginnings of the months

There are 12 months on the Hebrew calendar. The beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light marked the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar. (See: Hebrew Months)

#### your burnt offerings ... your fellowship offerings ... you to me

In these phrases the words "your" and "you" are plural and refer to the people of Israel. (See: Forms of You)

#### over the sacrifices

"in honor of the sacrifices"

#### will act as a reminder of you to me

"will act as a memorial for you of me." The word "reminder" can be expressed with the verb "remind." AT: "will always remind you of me" (See: Abstract Nouns)

#### These will act

The word "these" refers to the trumpets and the sacrifices.

#### translationWords

- festival, festivals
- month, months, monthly
- honor, honors
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- fellowship offering, fellowship offerings

#### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 10 General Notes
- Numbers 10 translationQuestions

## Numbers 10:11-13

### UDB:

[11] In the second year after the Israelites left Egypt, on the twentieth day of the second month, the cloud rose up from above the sacred tent. [12] So the Israelites moved from the wilderness of Sinai, and they continued traveling north until the cloud stopped in the wilderness of Paran. [13] That was the first time they moved, obeying the instructions that Yahweh had given to Moses to tell them.

### ULB:

[11] In the second year, in the second month, on the twentieth day of the month, the cloud was lifted from the tabernacle of the covenant decrees. [12] The people of Israel then went on their journey from the wilderness of Sinai. The cloud stopped in the wilderness of Paran. [13] They made their first journey, following Yahweh's command given through Moses.

### translationNotes

#### In the second year

"In year 2." This refers to the second year after Yahweh brought the Israelites out of Egypt. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

#### in the second month, on the twentieth day of the month

"on day 20 of month 2." This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

#### the cloud was lifted

This can be stated in active form. AT: "the cloud rose up" or "Yahweh lifted the cloud" (See: Active or Passive)

#### the tabernacle of the covenant decrees

The tabernacle was also called by this longer name because the ark with the law of God was placed inside it. See how you translated this in Numbers 1:50.

#### Yahweh's command given through Moses

This can be stated in active form. AT: "the commands that Yahweh had given through Moses" (See: Active or Passive)

**translationWords**

- year, years
- day, days
- tabernacle
- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- decree, decrees, decreed
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- Sinai, Mount Sinai
- Paran
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Moses

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 10 General Notes
- Numbers 10 translationQuestions

## Numbers 10:14-16

### UDB:

[14] The group that went first, carrying their flag, was the group from the tribe of Judah. Nahshon son of Amminadab, was their leader. [15] The group from the tribe of Issachar followed them. Nethanel son of Zuar, was their leader. [16] The group from the tribe of Zebulun went next. Eliab son of Helon, was their leader.

### ULB:

[14] The camp under the banner of Judah's descendants went out first, moving out their individual armies. Nahshon son of Amminadab led Judah's army. [15] Nethanel son of Zuar led the army of the tribe of Issachar's descendants. [16] Eliab son of Helon led the army of the tribe of Zebulun's descendants.

### translationNotes

#### The camp under the banner of Judah's descendants

This camp includes the three tribes under the division of Judah: Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun.

#### went out first

They packed up their camp and they left that place before all the others left. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

#### Nahshon son of Amminadab

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:7.

#### Nethanel son of Zuar

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:8.

#### Eliab son of Helon

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:9.

### translationWords

- Judah
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants

- son, sons
- Issachar
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- Zebulun

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 10 General Notes
- Numbers 10 translationQuestions

## Numbers 10:17-20

### UDB:

17 Then they dismantled the sacred tent, and the descendants of Gershon and Merari carried it, and they went next.

18 The group from the tribe of Reuben went next, carrying their flag. Elizur son of Shedeur was their leader. 19 The group from the tribe of Simeon was next. Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai was their leader. 20 The group from the tribe of Gad was next. Eliasaph son of Deuel was their leader.

### ULB:

17 The descendants of Gershon and of Merari, who cared for the tabernacle, took down the tabernacle and then set out on their journey. 18 Next, the armies under the banner of Reuben's camp set out on their journey. Elizur son of Shedeur led Reuben's army. 19 Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai led the army of the tribe of Simeon's descendants. 20 Eliasaph son of Deuel led the army of the tribe of Gad's descendants.

### translationNotes

#### Gershon ... Merari

See how you translated these men's names in Numbers 3:17.

#### the armies under the banner of Reuben's camp

This refers to the armies of the tribes under the division of Reuben: Reuben, Simeon, and Gad.

#### Elizur son of Shedeur

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:5.

#### Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai

See how you translated this man's name Numbers 1:6.

#### Eliasaph son of Deuel

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:14.

**translationWords**

- tabernacle
- Reuben
- Simeon
- Gad

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 10 General Notes
- Numbers 10 translationQuestions

## Numbers 10:21-24

### UDB:

[21] The group descended from Kohath was next. They carried the sacred items from the sacred tent. The sacred tent was set up at the new location before they arrived there.

[22] The group from the tribe of Ephraim was next, carrying their flag. Elishama son of Ammihud, was their leader. [23] The group from the tribe of Manasseh went next. Gamaliel son of Pedahzur, was their leader. [24] The group from the tribe of Benjamin was next. Abidan son of Gideoni, was their leader.

### ULB:

[21] The Kohathites set out. They carried the sanctuary's holy equipment. Others would set up the tabernacle before the Kohathites arrived at the next camp. [22] The armies under the banner of Ephraim's descendants set out next. Elishama son of Ammihud led Ephraim's army. [23] Gamaliel son of Pedahzur led the army of the tribe of Manasseh's descendants. [24] Abidan son of Gideoni led the army of the tribe of Benjamin's descendants.

### translationNotes

#### Kohathites

This refers to the descendants of Kohath. See how you translated this in Numbers 3:27.

#### The armies under the banner of Ephraim's descendants

This refers to the armies of the tribes under the division of Ephraim: Ephraim, Manasseh, and Benjamin.

#### Elishama son of Ammihud

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:10.

#### Gamaliel son of Pedahzur

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:10.

#### Abidan son of Gideoni

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:11.

**translationWords**

- sanctuary
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites
- Manasseh
- Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 10 General Notes
- Numbers 10 translationQuestions

## Numbers 10:25-28

### UDB:

25 The ones who went last were the groups from the tribe of Dan, carrying their flag. Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai, was their leader. 26 The group from the tribe of Asher went next. Pagiel son of Ocran, was their leader. 27 The group from the tribe of Naphtali went last. Ahira son of Enan, was their leader. 28 That was the order in which the groups of Israelite tribes traveled.

### ULB:

25 The armies that camped under the banner of Dan's descendants set out last. Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai led Dan's army. 26 Pagiel son of Okran led the army of the tribe of Asher's descendants. 27 Ahira son of Enan led the army of the tribe of Naphtali's descendants. 28 This is the way that the armies of the people of Israel set out on their journey.

### translationNotes

#### The armies that camped under the banner of Dan's descendants

This refers to the armies of the tribes under the division of Dan: Dan, Asher, and Naphtali.

#### Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:12.

#### Pagiel son of Okran

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:13.

#### Ahira son of Enan

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 1:15.

### translationWords

- Dan
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- son, sons
- Asher
- Naphtali
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 10 General Notes
- Numbers 10 translationQuestions

## Numbers 10:29-30

### UDB:

[29] One day Moses said to his brother-in-law Hobab son of Reuel from the Midian people group, “We are on the way to the place that Yahweh promised to give to us. Come with us, and we will take good care of you, because Yahweh has promised to do good things for us Israelite people.”

[30] But Hobab replied, “No, I will not go with you. I want to return to my own land and to my own family.”

### ULB:

[29] Moses spoke to Hobab son of Reuel the Midianite. Reuel was the father of Moses’ wife. Moses spoke to Hobab and said, “We are traveling to a place that Yahweh described. Yahweh said, ‘I will give it to you.’ Come with us and we will do you good. Yahweh has promised to do good for Israel.”
[30] But Hobab said to Moses, “I will not go with you. I will go to my own land and my own people.”

### translationNotes

#### Hobab son of Reuel

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### that Yahweh described

“that Yahweh described to us”

#### we will do you good

“we will treat you well”

### translationWords

- Moses
- Jethro, Reuel
- Midian, Midianite, Midianites
- Yahweh
- good, goodness
- promise, promises, promised

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 10 General Notes
- Numbers 10 translationQuestions

## Numbers 10:31-32

### UDB:

[31] But Moses said, "Please do not leave us. You know the places where we can set up our tents in this desert, and you can guide us. [32] Come with us. We will share with you all the good things that Yahweh gives to us."

### ULB:

[31] Then Moses replied, "Please do not leave us. You know how to camp in the wilderness. You must watch out for us. [32] If you go with us, we will do for you the same good that Yahweh does to us."

### translationNotes

#### You must watch out for us

The phrase "watch out" means to guide and to take care of. AT: "You can guide us and show us how to live in the desert" (See: Idiom)

### translationWords

- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 10 General Notes
- Numbers 10 translationQuestions

## Numbers 10:33-34

### UDB:

[33] So Hobab agreed to go with them. The Israelites left Mount Sinai, which they called the Mountain of Yahweh, and they walked for three days. The men carrying the sacred chest went in front of the other people for those three days, and they kept looking for a place to set up their tents. [34] The cloud sent by Yahweh was over them every day.

### ULB:

[33] They journeyed from the mountain of Yahweh for three days. The ark of the covenant of Yahweh went before them for three days to find a place for them to rest. [34] Yahweh's cloud was over them by daylight as they journeyed.

### translationNotes

#### They journeyed

"They" refers to the people of Israel.

#### the mountain of Yahweh

This refers to Mount Sinai. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "Mount Sinai, the mountain of Yahweh" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### The ark of the covenant of Yahweh went before them

The group of Levites carrying the ark of the covenant went before the people of Israel as the traveled. AT: "Men carried the ark of the covenant of Yahweh before them as they traveled" (See: Personification)

#### by daylight

"every day" or "during the day"

### translationWords

- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh
- rest, rests, rested, resting, restless

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 10 General Notes
- Numbers 10 translationQuestions

## Numbers 10:35-36

### UDB:

[35] Each morning when the men who were carrying the sacred chest started to walk, Moses said,

”Yahweh, arise!

Scatter your enemies!

Cause those who hate you to run away from you!”

[36] And each time the men stopped to set down the sacred chest, Moses said,

“Yahweh, stay close to the multiplied thousands of us Israelites!”

### ULB:

[35] Whenever the ark set out, Moses would say, “Rise up, Yahweh. Scatter your enemies. Make those who hate you run from you.” [36] Whenever the ark stopped, Moses would say, “Return, Yahweh, to Israel’s many tens of thousands.”

### translationNotes

#### Whenever the ark set out

Here the ark is spoken of as if were a person traveling. The ark was really being carried by men. AT: “Whenever the people carrying the ark set out” (See: Personification)

#### Rise up, Yahweh

Here the phrase “rise up” is a request for Yahweh to act, in this case Moses is asking him to scatter their enemies. (See: Metaphor)

#### Make those who hate you run from you

Here Moses speaks about Yahweh causing their enemies to flee from the people of Israel as if they were fleeing from Yahweh himself. AT: “Make those who hate you run away from your ark and your people” (See: Metaphor)

#### Whenever the ark stopped

Here the ark is spoken of as if were a person traveling. The ark was really being carried by men. AT: “Whenever the people carrying the ark stopped” (See: Personification)

### many tens of thousands

This refers to people. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: “many tens of thousands of people” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- ark
- Moses
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- Yahweh
- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies
- Israel, Israelites

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 10 General Notes
- Numbers 10 translationQuestions

## Numbers 11 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

### Complaining

Moses complained about having too much responsibility. Therefore, God gave seventy men the spirit of prophecy to help Moses. The people complained about food, even though Yahweh was miraculously providing them with their food. The people complained because they did not have meat or fish to eat. God sent them quail. He punished some of the people, but it does not say why God did this. (See: spirit, spirits, spiritual and prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)

### Links:

- **Numbers 11:01 Notes**

## Numbers 11:1-3

### UDB:

[1] One day the people complained to Yahweh about their troubles. When Yahweh heard what they were saying, he became angry. So he sent a fire which burned among the people at the edge of their camp. [2] Then the people cried out to Moses, and he prayed to Yahweh. Then the fire stopped burning. [3] So they called that place Taberah, which means 'Burning,' because the fire from Yahweh had burned among them.

### ULB:

[1] Now the people complained about their troubles as Yahweh listened. Yahweh heard the people and became angry. Fire from Yahweh burned among them and consumed some of the camp on its edges. [2] Then people called out to Moses, so Moses prayed to Yahweh, and the fire stopped. [3] That place was named Taberah, because Yahweh's fire burned among them.

### translationNotes

#### Fire from Yahweh burned

"Yahweh sent fire that burned"

#### That place was named

This can be stated in the active form. AT: "They named that place" (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- trouble, troubles, troubled, troubling, troublemaker, troublesome
- Yahweh
- anger, angered, angry
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- consume, consumes, consumed, consuming
- call, calls, calling, called
- Moses
- pray, prayer, prayers, prayed

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 11 General Notes
- Numbers 11 translationQuestions

## Numbers 11:4-6

### UDB:

[4] Then some troublemakers from other people groups who were traveling with the Israelites began to want better food. And when they started complaining the Israelite people also started to complain. They said, "We wish we had some meat to eat! [5] We remember the fish that we ate while we were in Egypt, fish that was given to us without cost. And we had all the cucumbers, melons, leeks, onions, and garlic we could eat. [6] But now we have lost our appetite, because all we have to eat is this manna!"

### ULB:

[4] Some foreign people began to camp with Israel's descendants. They wanted better food to eat. Then the people of Israel began to weep and say, "Who will give us meat to eat? [5] We remember the fish that we ate freely in Egypt, the cucumbers, the melons, the leeks, the onions, and the garlic. [6] Now our appetite is gone, because all we can see is this manna."

### translationNotes

#### Who will give us meat to eat?

The Israelites ask this question in order to complain and to express their desire for something other than manna to eat. This can be expressed as a statement. AT: "We wish that we had meat to eat." (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### our appetite is gone

"we do not want to eat" or "we cannot eat"

### translationWords

- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners
- Israel, Israelites
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- manna

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 11 General Notes
- Numbers 11 translationQuestions

## Numbers 11:7-8

### UDB:

[7] The manna resembled small white seeds. [8] Each morning the people would go out and gather some from the surface of the ground. Then they made flour by grinding it or pounding it with stones. Then they added water and boiled it in a pot, or they made flat cakes with it and baked them. The cakes tasted like bread that was baked with olive oil.

### ULB:

[7] Manna was like coriander seed. It looked like resin. [8] The people walked around and gathered it. They ground it in mills, beat it in mortars, boiled it in pots, and made it into cakes. It tasted like fresh olive oil.

### translationNotes

#### coriander seed

Coriander is also known as cilantro. This seed serves as a spice when dried.

#### resin

This is a sticky substance with a pale yellow color.

### translationWords

- olive, olives
- oil

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 11 General Notes
- Numbers 11 translationQuestions

## Numbers 11:9-10

### UDB:

[9] Each night the manna came down on the ground where their tents were, like dew from the sky.

[10] Moses heard all the Israelite people complaining as they were standing in the entrances of their tents. Yahweh became very angry, and Moses was also very perturbed.

### ULB:

[9] When the dew fell on the camp in the night, the manna also fell. [10] Moses heard the people weeping in their families, and every man was at the entrance to his tent. Yahweh was very angry, and in Moses' eyes their complaining was wrong.

### translationNotes

#### in Moses' eyes

he eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. AT: "in Moses' opinion" or "in Moses' judgement" (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- Moses
- family, families
- tent, tents, tentmakers
- Yahweh
- anger, angered, angry

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 11 General Notes
- Numbers 11 translationQuestions

## Numbers 11:11-12

### UDB:

[11] He went into the sacred tent and asked Yahweh, "Why have you brought this trouble on me, your servant? Act mercifully to me! What wrong have I done, with the result that you have appointed me to take care of all of these people? [12] I am not their father. Why have you told me to take care of them like a woman carries around her baby and nurses it? How can I take them to the land that you promised to give to our ancestors?

### ULB:

[11] Moses said to Yahweh, "Why have you treated your servant so badly? Why are you not pleased with me? You make me carry the load of all these people. [12] Did I conceive all these people? Have I given them birth so that you should say to me, 'Carry them closely to your chest as a father carries a baby?' Should I carry them to the land that you swore to their ancestors to give them?

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Moses complains to Yahweh using several rhetorical questions. (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### Why have you treated your servant so badly? Why are you not pleased with me?

Moses used these questions to complain about the way God was treating him. They can be expressed as statements. Moses speaks of himself in the third person. AT: "You should not treat me, your servant, so badly. You should not be angry with me!" or "I, your servant, have done nothing wrong for you to treat me so badly!" (See: Rhetorical Question and First, Second, or Third Person)

#### You make me carry the load of all these people

Moses complains and speaks of leading the people and providing for them as if he were carrying a heavy load. AT: "You make me responsible for all these people, but it's too hard for me" (See: Metaphor)

#### Did I conceive all these people?

Moses used this question to remind God that Moses was not their father. AT: "I am not the father of all these people." (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### Have I given them birth so that you should say to me, 'Carry ... baby?'

Moses wants God to remember that God told him to take care of the Israelites even though Moses was not their father. AT: "I have not given them birth, so you have no right to say to me, 'Carry ... baby'!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### Carry them closely to your chest

To take care of the Israelites is spoken of as if it were to carry a helpless newborn baby. (See: Metaphor)

#### Should I carry them ... to give them?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "You should not expect me to carry them ... to give them!" or "I am not able to carry them ... to give them!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### translationWords

- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- conceive, conceives, conceived, conception
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by

#### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 11 General Notes
- Numbers 11 translationQuestions

## Numbers 11:13-15

### UDB:

[13] Where can I get meat to feed to all these people? They keep complaining to me, saying, 'Give us some meat to eat!' [14] I cannot carry all these people's burdens by myself! They are like a heavy load to me, and I cannot carry this very heavy load anymore. [15] If you intend to act like this toward me, kill me now. If you are really concerned about me, be kind to me and kill me to end my misery of trying to take care of them!"

### ULB:

[13] Where can I find meat to give to all this people? They are weeping in front of me and are saying, 'Give us meat to eat.' [14] I cannot bear all these people alone. They are too much for me. [15] Since you are treating me this way, kill me now—if I find favor in your eyes—do not let me see my misery."

### translationNotes

#### Where can I find meat to give to all this people?

Moses used this question to complain that it was impossible for him to give meat to all the people. AT: "I cannot possibly find enough meat to give to all these people." (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### I cannot bear all these people alone

Moses speaks of leading and providing for the people as if he were carrying them. AT: "I cannot provide for all these people alone" (See: Metaphor)

#### They are too much for me

This is an idiom. AT: "This responsibility is too difficult for me" (See: Idiom)

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 11 General Notes
- Numbers 11 translationQuestions

## Numbers 11:16-17

### UDB:

16 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Summon seventy men whom you know are leaders among the Israelite people. Tell them to stand with you in front of the sacred tent. 17 I will come down and talk with you there. Then I will take some of the power of my Spirit that you have, and I will put that power on them also. They will help you to take care of some of the things that the people are concerned about, in order that you will not need to do it alone.

### ULB:

16 Yahweh said to Moses, "Bring to me seventy of Israel's elders. Be sure that they are elders and officers of the people. Bring them to the tent of meeting to stand there with you. 17 I will come down and talk with you there. I will take some of the Spirit that is on you and put it on them. They will bear the burden of the people with you. You will not have to bear it alone.

### translationNotes

#### some of the Spirit that is on you

The "Spirit" here represents the power that God's Spirit had given to Moses so that Moses could do what God told him to do. AT: "some of the power that the Spirit has given you" (See: Metonymy)

#### They will bear the burden of the people with you

God speaks of the responsibility of leading and providing for the people as if it were a burden that Moses and the leaders would carry. AT: "They will help you care for the people" (See: Metaphor)

#### You will not have to bear it alone

God speaks of the responsibility of leading and providing for the people as if it were a burden that Moses and the leaders would carry. AT: "You will not care for them alone" (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Israel, Israelites
- elder, elders
- tent of meeting
- spirit, spirits, spiritual
- burden, burdens, burdened, burdensome

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 11 General Notes
- Numbers 11 translationQuestions

## Numbers 11:18-20

### UDB:

[18] Furthermore, say to the people, 'Make yourselves acceptable to me, and tomorrow you will have meat to eat. You were complaining, and Yahweh heard you when you were saying, "We want some meat to eat. We had better food in Egypt!" Now Yahweh will give you some meat, and you will eat it. [19] You will eat meat not only for one or two days, or only for five or ten or twenty days. [20] You will eat meat every day for one month, and then you will loathe it, and it will cause you to want to vomit. This will happen because you have rejected Yahweh who is here among you, and you have wailed in his presence, saying "We would have had better food to eat if we had not left Egypt.""

### ULB:

[18] Say to the people, 'Consecrate yourselves, for tomorrow and you will indeed eat meat, for you have wept and Yahweh has heard. You said, "Who will give us meat to eat? It was good for us in Egypt." Therefore Yahweh will give you meat, and you will eat it. [19] You will not eat meat for only one day, two days, five days, ten days, or twenty days, [20] but you will eat meat for a whole month until it comes out of your nostrils. It will disgust you because you have rejected Yahweh, who is among you. You have wept before him. You said, "Why did we leave Egypt?""

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

#### Who will give us meat to eat?

The Israelites had asked this question in order to complain and to express their desire for something other than manna to eat. It can be expressed as a statement. AT: "We wish that we had meat to eat." (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### until it comes out of your nostrils

Possible meanings are 1) God speaks of vomiting as if the food would come out through their nostrils. AT: "until you are sick and vomit" or 2) they would eat so much meat that it would be as if it would come out of their nostrils. AT: "until it feels like it would have to come out of your nostrils" (See: Metaphor)

#### Why did we leave Egypt?

The people had used this question to express regret and to complain. AT: "We never should have left Egypt." (See: Rhetorical Question)

**translationWords**

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- reject, rejects, rejected, rejecting, rejection

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 11 General Notes
- Numbers 11 translationQuestions

## Numbers 11:21-23

### UDB:

[21] But Moses replied to Yahweh, "There are six hundred thousand men plus women and children here with me, so why do you say 'I will give them plenty of meat every day for a month!'? [22] Even if we killed all the sheep and cattle, that would not be enough to provide meat for all of them! Even if we caught all the fish in the sea and gave it to them, that would not be enough!" [23] But Yahweh said to Moses, "Do you think that I have no power? You will now see if I can do what I say I will do."

### ULB:

[21] Then Moses said, "I am with 600,000 people, and you have said, 'I will give them meat to eat for a whole month.' [22] Should we kill flocks and herds to satisfy them? Should we catch all the fish in the sea to satisfy them?" [23] Yahweh said to Moses, "Is my hand short? Now you will see whether or not my word is true."

### translationNotes

#### 600,000 people

"six hundred thousand people" (See: Numbers)

#### Should we kill flocks and herds to satisfy them? Should we catch all the fish in the sea to satisfy them?

Moses uses these questions to express his doubt that there could be enough meat to feed all of the people. AT: "We would have to kill entire flocks and herds and catch all the fish in the sea to satisfy them!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### flocks and herds

These two words mean basically the same thing. Together they emphasize a great number of animals. (See: Doublet)

#### all the fish in the sea

The word "all" is an exaggeration to show how impossible it was to provide food for all the people of Israel. (See: Hyperbole and Generalization)

#### to satisfy them

"to satisfy their hunger"

### Is my hand short?

Here the word “hand” represents God’s power. God uses this question to rebuke Moses for thinking that God did not have the power to provide enough meat for the people. AT: “Do you think that I am not powerful enough to do this?” or “You should know I am more than strong enough to do this.” (See: Metonymy and Rhetorical Question)

### translationWords

- flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures
- true, truth, truths

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 11 General Notes
- Numbers 11 translationQuestions

## Numbers 11:24-25

### UDB:

[24] So Moses went out from the sacred tent and told the people what Yahweh had said. Then he gathered together the seventy leaders and told them to stand around the sacred tent.

[25] Then Yahweh came down in the cloud that was above the tent and spoke to Moses. He took some of the power of the Spirit that he had given to Moses and gave it to the seventy leaders. By means of the power of the Spirit within them, they prophesied, but they did that only once.

### ULB:

[24] Moses went out and told the people Yahweh's words. He gathered seventy of the people's elders and positioned them around the tent. [25] Yahweh came down in the cloud and spoke to Moses. Yahweh took some of the Spirit that was on Moses and put it on the seventy elders. When the Spirit rested on them, they prophesied, but only on that occasion and not again.

### translationNotes

#### Yahweh's words

"what Yahweh had said"

#### some of the Spirit that was on Moses

The "Spirit" here represents the power that God's Spirit had given to Moses. See how you translated a similar phrase in Numbers 11:17. AT: "some of the power that the Spirit had given to Moses" (See: Metonymy)

#### put it on the seventy elders

Giving power to the elders is spoken of as putting the Spirit on them. See how you translated a similar phrase in Numbers 11:17. AT: "gave it to the seventy elders" (See: Metaphor)

#### When the Spirit rested on them

Having power from the Spirit is spoken of as if the Spirit rested on them. AT: "When they had power from the Spirit" (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- Moses
- Yahweh

- elder, elders
- tent, tents, tentmakers
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 11 General Notes
- Numbers 11 translationQuestions

## Numbers 11:26-27

### UDB:

[26] Two of the leaders whom Moses appointed, Eldad and Medad, were not there when the rest of them gathered together. They had not left their tents to go and stand around the sacred tent. But Yahweh's Spirit came on them also, and they started to prophesy. [27] So a young man ran and told Moses, "Eldad and Medad are prophesying where all their tents are!"

### ULB:

[26] Two men remained in the camp, named Eldad and Medad. The Spirit also rested on them. Their names were written on the list, but they had not gone out to the tent. Nevertheless, they prophesied in the camp. [27] A young man in the camp ran and told Moses, "Eldad and Medad are prophesying in the camp."

### translationNotes

#### The Spirit also rested on them

The Spirit giving them power is spoken of as if the Spirit rested on them. AT: "The Spirit also gave them power" (See: Metaphor)

#### Their names were written on the list

This can be written in active form. AT: "Moses had written their names on the list" (See: Active or Passive)

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 11 General Notes
- Numbers 11 translationQuestions

## Numbers 11:28-30

### UDB:

[28] Joshua, who had helped Moses since he was a young man, said, “Sir, tell them to stop doing that!”
[29] But Moses replied, “Are you worried that they might injure my reputation? I wish that all Yahweh’s people could prophesy. I wish that Yahweh would give the power of his Spirit to all of them!”
[30] Then Moses and all the leaders went back to their tents.

### ULB:

[28] Joshua son of Nun, Moses’ assistant, one of his chosen men, said to Moses, “My master Moses, stop them.” [29] Moses said to him, “Are you jealous for my sake? I wish that all of Yahweh’s people were prophets and that he would put his Spirit on them all!” [30] Then Moses and the elders of Israel went back to the camp.

### translationNotes

#### stop them

“tell them to stop prophesying”

#### Are you jealous for my sake?

Moses uses this question to rebuke Joshua. It can be translated as a statement, if necessary. AT: “You should not be jealous for my sake.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### Are you jealous for my sake?

What Joshua might have been jealous about can be stated clearly if needed. AT: “Are you concerned that they might be taking away something that belongs to me?” or “Are you concerned that people will not respect my authority?” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### that he would put his Spirit on them all

Moses speaks of God’s Spirit giving people power as if God were to put his Spirit on them. AT: “that God’s Spirit would give them all power” (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- Joshua
- lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs
- jealous, jealousy
- Israel, Israelites

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 11 General Notes
- Numbers 11 translationQuestions

## Numbers 11:31-32

### UDB:

[31] Then Yahweh sent a strong wind from the sea. It blew quail into the area all around the camp, and caused the quail to fall onto the ground. They were piled up on the ground a meter high! [32] So the people went out and gathered up the quail all that day, and all that night, and all of the following day. It seemed as though each person gathered two cubic meters! They spread the quail out on the ground all around the camp, so that the quail would lose their moisture.

### ULB:

[31] Then a wind came from Yahweh and brought quail from the sea. They fell near the camp, about a day's journey on one side and a day's journey on the other side. The quail surrounded the camp about two cubits above the ground. [32] The people were busy gathering quail all that day, all the night, and all the next day. No one gathered less than ten homers of quail. They shared the quail all through the camp.

### translationNotes

#### quail

a small bird (See: Translate Unknowns)

#### about a day's journey on one side and a day's journey on the other side

"in each direction for as far as a person could walk in one day"

#### about two cubits

A cubit is a unit of measurement equal to about 46 centimeters. AT: "about 92 centimeters" or "about 1 meter" (See: Biblical Distance and Numbers)

#### No one gathered less than ten homers of quail

This is a double negative which can be expressed as a positive statement. AT: "Everyone gathered at least ten homers of quail" (See: Double Negatives)

#### ten homers

A homer is a unit of volume equal to about 220 liters. AT: "2,200 liters" (See: Biblical Volume)

**translationWords**

- Yahweh

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 11 General Notes
- Numbers 11 translationQuestions

## Numbers 11:33-35

### UDB:

[33] Then they cooked them and started to eat them. But while they were still eating the meat, Yahweh showed that he was very angry with them. He sent a severe plague on them, and many people died.
[34] The people who died and were buried were the ones who had said they wanted to eat meat like they had formerly eaten in Egypt. So they called that place Kibroth Hattaavah, which means 'graves of those who craved.'

[35] From there, the Israelites continued walking east until they arrived at Hazeroth, where they stopped and stayed for a long time.

### ULB:

[33] While the meat was still between their teeth, while they were chewing it, Yahweh became angry at them. He attacked the people with a very great disease. [34] That place was named Kibroth Hattaavah, because there they buried the people who had craved meat. [35] From Kibroth Hattaavah the people traveled to Hazeroth, where they stayed.

### translationNotes

#### While the meat was still between their teeth, while they were chewing it

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Together they emphasize that God punished them immediately, even while they were eating the meat. AT: "While they were still eating the meat" (See: Parallelism)

#### That place was named Kibroth Hattaavah

This can be stated in active form. AT: "They named that place Kibroth Hattaavah" (See: Active or Passive and How to Translate Names)

#### Hazeroth

This is the name of a place in the desert. (See: How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- anger, angered, angry
- bury, buries, buried, burying, burial

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 11 General Notes
- Numbers 11 translationQuestions

## Numbers 12 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations indent each line of poetry to make it easier to read. The ULB does this with the poetry in 12:6-8.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Idiom

God used the idiom “mouth to mouth” meaning “speaking directly with both people present.” This indicated that Moses was more than just a prophet and greater than other prophets. (See: Idiom and prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)

### Links:

- **Numbers 12:01 Notes**

## Numbers 12:1-3

### UDB:

[1-2] Moses' older sister Miriam and his older brother Aaron were jealous of Moses and said, "Is Moses the only one to whom Yahweh has spoken messages to tell to us? Does Yahweh not speak messages through us two also?" They also criticized Moses because he had married a woman who was a descendant of the Cush people group. And Yahweh heard Miriam and Aaron complaining about Moses.

[3] The truth was that Moses was a very humble person. He was more humble than anyone else on the earth.

### ULB:

[1] Then Miriam and Aaron spoke against Moses because of the Cushite woman whom he had married. [2] They said, "Has Yahweh spoken only with Moses? Has he not spoken also with us?" Now Yahweh heard what they said. [3] Now the man Moses was very humble, humbler than anyone else on earth.

### translationNotes

#### Has Yahweh spoken only with Moses? Has he not spoken also with us?

Miriam and Aaron use these questions to complain that Moses had so much authority and they did not. This can be expressed as a statement. AT: "Yahweh has not spoken only with Moses. He has also spoken with us." (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### Now Yahweh heard

The word "Now" hear draws attention to the important point that follows.

#### Now the man Moses

"Now" is used to mark a break in the main story line. The narrator tells background information about Moses' character. (See: Background Information)

### translationWords

- Miriam
- Aaron
- Moses
- Cush
- Yahweh

- humble, humbles, humbled, humility
- earth, earthen, earthly

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 12 General Notes
- Numbers 12 translationQuestions

## Numbers 12:4-5

### UDB:

[4] So immediately Yahweh spoke to Moses and to Aaron and Miriam. He said, “All three of you must go and stand at the sacred tent.” So they did that. [5] Then Yahweh descended to the entrance of the tent in a cloud that resembled a huge white pillar. He told Aaron and Miriam to step forward, so they did.

### ULB:

[4] Right away Yahweh spoke to Moses, Aaron, and Miriam: “Come out, you three, to the tent of meeting.” So the three of them went out. [5] Then Yahweh came down in a pillar of cloud. He stood at the entrance to the tent and called Aaron and Miriam. They both came forward.

### translationNotes

#### a pillar of cloud

The shape of the cloud is spoken of as if it were a pillar. AT: “a cloud shaped like a pillar” or “a tall cloud” (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- tent of meeting
- column, columns, pillar, pillars
- tent, tents, tentmakers
- call, calls, calling, called

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 12 General Notes
- Numbers 12 translationQuestions

## Numbers 12:6-8

#### UDB:

[6] Then he said to them,

”Listen to me!

When a prophet is among you,

I usually reveal myself to him by allowing him to see visions,

and I speak to him in dreams.

[7] But that is not the way I speak to my servant Moses.

I trust that he will lead my people well.

[8] So I talk to him face to face.

I speak to him clearly, not using parables.

He has even seen what I look like.

So you should be afraid to criticize my servant Moses!”

#### ULB:

[6] Yahweh said, ”Now listen to my words.

When a prophet of mine is with you,

I will reveal myself to him in visions

and speak to him in dreams.

[7] My servant Moses is not like that.

He is faithful in all my house.

[8] I speak to Moses directly, not with visions or riddles.

He sees my form.

So why are you unafraid

to speak against my servant, against Moses?”

#### translationNotes

#### My servant Moses is not like that

“I do not speak to Moses like that”

### He is faithful in all my house

Here “my house” represents the nation of Israel. Being faithful in God’s house represents being faithful in leading Israel. AT: “Moses leads my people faithfully” or “Moses is the one whom I trust to lead my people Israel” (See: Metonymy)

### So why are you unafraid to speak against my servant, against Moses?

Yahweh asks this question to rebuke Miriam and Aaron. It can be translated as a statement. AT: “You should be afraid to speak against my servant, against Moses.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

### against my servant, against Moses

The phrase “against Moses” clarifies that he is the “servant” of whom Yahweh speaks. AT: “against my servant, Moses” (See: Parallelism)

### translationWords

- word, words
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation
- vision, visions, envision
- dream
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness
- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 12 General Notes
- Numbers 12 translationQuestions

## Numbers 12:9-10

### UDB:

[9] Yahweh was very angry with Miriam and Aaron, and he left.

[10] When the cloud rose up from the sacred tent, Aaron looked at Miriam, and he saw that her skin was as white as snow, because she now had leprosy.

### ULB:

[9] Yahweh's anger burned against them, and then he left them. [10] The cloud rose from over the tent, and Miriam was suddenly leprous—she was as white as snow. When Aaron turned toward Miriam, he saw that she had leprosy.

### translationNotes

#### Yahweh's anger burned against them

Yahweh's anger is spoken of as if it were a fire. AT: "Yahweh became very angry with them" (See: Metaphor)

#### was as white as snow

Leprosy turned Miriam's skin white. AT: "became very white" (See: Simile)

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- anger, angered, angry
- Miriam
- leper, lepers, leprosy, leprous
- Aaron

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 12 General Notes
- Numbers 12 translationQuestions

## Numbers 12:11-12

### UDB:

[11] Aaron said to Moses, "My master, please do not punish us for this sin that we have foolishly committed. [12] Do not allow Miriam to be like a baby that is already dead when it is born, whose flesh is already half decayed!"

### ULB:

[11] Aaron said to Moses, "Oh, my master, please do not hold this sin against us. We have spoken foolishly, and we have sinned. [12] Please do not let her be like a dead newborn whose flesh is half consumed when it emerges from its mother's womb."

### translationNotes

#### do not hold this sin against us

To hold people's sin against them is to say that they are guilty for their sin. Here it represents punishing them for their sin. (See: Metonymy)

#### Please do not let her be like a dead newborn whose flesh is half consumed

Miriam's leprosy would cause her body to decay until she died. The flesh being decayed is spoken of as if it were eaten. AT: "Please do not let her be like a dead newborn baby whose flesh is half decayed" (See: Simile and Metaphor)

### translationWords

- Moses
- lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- fool, fools, foolish, folly
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- flesh
- consume, consumes, consumed, consuming
- womb, wombs

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 12 General Notes
- Numbers 12 translationQuestions

## Numbers 12:13-15

### UDB:

13 So Moses cried out to Yahweh, saying, “God, I plead with you to heal her!”

14 But Yahweh replied, “If her father had rebuked her for doing something wrong by spitting in her face, she would have been ashamed for seven days. She should be ashamed because of what she has done. So send her outside the camp for seven days. Then she will not have leprosy anymore, and she may return to the camp.” 15 So they sent her outside the camp for seven days. The people did not move to another location until she returned.

### ULB:

13 So Moses called out to Yahweh. He said, “Please heal her, God, please.” 14 Yahweh said to Moses, “If her father had spit in her face, she would be disgraced for seven days. Shut her outside the camp for seven days. After that bring her in again.” 15 So Miriam was shut outside the camp for seven days. The people did not journey until she had returned to the camp.

### translationNotes

#### Please heal her, God, please

Here “please” is repeated for emphasis.

#### If her father had spit in her face

This describes something that could have happened but did not. Spitting in someone’s face was a terrible insult. (See: Hypothetical Situationsand Symbolic Action)

#### Miriam was shut outside the camp

Being sent out of the camp and not being allowed to go back in is spoken of as if there were a door that was closed behind her. AT: “Miriam was sent outside the camp” or “Miriam was kept outside the camp” (See: Metaphor)

#### Miriam was shut outside the camp

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Moses shut Miriam outside the camp” or “Moses sent Miriam outside the camp” (See: Active or Passive)

**translationWords**

- cure, cured, heal, heals, healed, healing, healings, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy
- God
- disgrace, disgraces, disgraced, disgraceful

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 12 General Notes
- Numbers 12 translationQuestions

## Numbers 12:16

### UDB:

[16] But after she returned, they left Hazeroth and moved north in the Paran Desert and set up their tents there.

### ULB:

[16] After that, the people journeyed from Hazeroth and camped in the wilderness of Paran.

### translationNotes

#### Hazeroth

This is the name of a place in the desert. See how you translated it in Numbers 11:35.

### translationWords

- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- Paran

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 12 General Notes
- Numbers 12 translationQuestions

## Numbers 13 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

### Spies

Leaders from each of the tribes went to spy on the Promised Land in Canaan. Yahweh was not concerned with how many people were there, because he could defeat them. It appears that he is testing the faith of the people. The people were supposed to be excited to enter this wonderful land, instead they were afraid. (See: Promised Land, test, tests, tested and faith)

### Links:

- **Numbers 13:01 Notes**

## Numbers 13:1-2

### UDB:

[1] Yahweh said to Moses, [2] "Send some men to Canaan to explore it. That is the land that I will give to you Israelites. Send men who are leaders in their tribes."

### ULB:

[1] Then Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said, [2] "Send some men to examine the land of Canaan, which I have given to the people of Israel. Send a man from every tribe of their ancestors. Each man must be a leader among them."

### translationNotes

#### which I have given

God had decided that the land of Canaan would belong to the people of Israel, but they had not yet moved into it. AT: "which I have decided to give" or "which I will soon give" (See: Predictive Past)

#### Each man must be a leader among them

"Each man whom you send must be a leader among his tribe"

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out
- Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 13 General Notes
- Numbers 13 translationQuestions

## Numbers 13:3-4

### UDB:

[3] So Moses did what Yahweh commanded him. He sent out twelve Israelite men who were all leaders of their tribes. He sent them from their camp at Paran in the desert. [4] These are the names of the men and the tribes they belonged to:

Shammua son of Zaccur, from the tribe of Reuben;

### ULB:

[3] Moses sent them from the wilderness of Paran, so that they might obey Yahweh's command. All of them were leaders among the people of Israel. [4] These were their names: from the tribe of Reuben, Shammua son of Zaccur;

### translationNotes

#### Shammua son of Zaccur

These are men's names. (See: How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- Paran
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Reuben
- son, sons

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 13 General Notes
- Numbers 13 translationQuestions

## Numbers 13:5-8

### UDB:

[5] Shaphat son of Hori, from the tribe of Simeon;

[6] Caleb son of Jephunneh, from the tribe of Judah;

[7] Igal son of Joseph, from the tribe of Issachar;

[8] Hoshea the son of Nun, from the tribe of Ephraim;

### ULB:

[5] from the tribe of Simeon, Shaphat son of Hori; [6] from the tribe of Judah, Caleb son of Jephunneh;
[7] from the tribe of Issachar, Igal son of Joseph; [8] from the tribe of Ephraim, Hoshea son of Nun;

### translationNotes

#### Shaphat ... Hori ... Jephunneh ... Igal ... Joseph ... Nun

These are all men's names. (See: How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- Simeon
- Judah
- Caleb
- Issachar
- Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 13 General Notes
- Numbers 13 translationQuestions

## Numbers 13:9-12

### UDB:

[9] Palti son of Raphu, from the tribe of Benjamin;

[10] Gaddiel son of Sodi, from the tribe of Zebulun;

[11] Gaddi son of Susi, from the tribe of Joseph's descendent Manasseh;

[12] Ammiel the son of Gemalli, from the tribe of Dan;

### ULB:

[9] from the tribe of Benjamin, Palti son of Raphu; [10] from the tribe of Zebulun, Gaddiel son of Sodi; [11] from the tribe of Joseph (that is to say, from the tribe Manasseh), Gaddi son of Susi; [12] from the tribe of Dan, Ammiel son of Gemalli;

### translationNotes

#### Palti ... Raphu ... Gaddiel ... Sodi ... Gaddi ... Susi ... Ammiel ... Gemalli

These are all men's names. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### from the tribe of Joseph (that is to say, from the tribe Manasseh)

The relationship between between Joseph and Manasseh can be stated clearly. AT: "from the tribe of Joseph's son Manasseh" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites
- Zebulun
- Joseph (OT)
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Manasseh
- Dan

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 13 General Notes
- Numbers 13 translationQuestions

## Numbers 13:13-16

### UDB:

[13] Sethur son of Michael, from the tribe of Asher;

[14] Nahbi son of Vophsi, from the tribe of Naphtali;

[15] and Geuel son of Maki, from the tribe of Gad.

[16] Those are the names of the men whom Moses sent out to explore Canaan. Before they left, Moses gave Hoshea a new name, Joshua, which means 'Yahweh is the one who saves.'

### ULB:

[13] from the tribe of Asher, Sethur son of Michael; [14] from the tribe of Naphtali, Nahbi son of Vophsi; [15] from the tribe of Gad, Geuel son of Maki. [16] These were the names of the men whom Moses sent to examine the land. Moses called Hoshea son of Nun by the name of Joshua.

### translationNotes

#### Sethur ... Michael ... Nahbi ... Vophsi ... Geuel ... Maki

These are all men's names. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### Hoshea son of Nun

See how you translated these men's names in Numbers 13:8.

### translationWords

- Asher
- son, sons
- Naphtali
- Gad
- Moses
- Joshua

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 13 General Notes
- Numbers 13 translationQuestions

## Numbers 13:17-20

### UDB:

17 Before Moses sent them to explore Canaan, he said to them, "Go through the southern Judean wilderness, and then go north into the hill country. 18 See what the land is like. See if the people who live there are strong or weak. See if there are many people or only a few people. 19 Find out what kind of land they live in. Is it good or bad? Find out about the towns in which they live. Do they have walls around them or not? 20 Find out about the soil. Is it fertile or not? Find out if there are trees there. Try to bring back some of the fruit that grows in that land." He said that because it was the beginning of the time to harvest grapes.

### ULB:

17 Moses sent them to examine the land of Canaan. He said to them, "Approach from the Negev and go up into the hill country. 18 Examine the land to see what it is like. Observe the people who live there, whether they are strong or weak, and whether they are few or many. 19 See what the land is like where they live. Is it good or bad? What cities are there? Are they like camps, or are they fortified cities? 20 See what the land is like, whether it is good for growing crops or not, and whether there are trees there or not. Be brave and bring back samples of the land's produce." Now the time was the season for the first ripe grapes.

### translationNotes

#### Is it good or bad? What cities are there? Are they like camps, or are they fortified cities?

Moses asks these questions to explain the kind of information that the men were to report back to him. These can be expressed as a statement. AT: "See if the land is good or bad, what kind of cities are there, and whether those cities are only camps, or whether they have defensive walls around them." (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### Are they like camps, or are they fortified cities

Fortified cities had strong walls around them to protect them from enemy armies. Camps did not have these walls.

### translationWords

- Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites
- Negev
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- good, goodness

- stronghold, strongholds, fortifications, fortified, fortress, fortresses
- grape, grapes, grapevine

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 13 General Notes
- Numbers 13 translationQuestions

## Numbers 13:21-22

### UDB:

21 So those men went to Canaan. They went through the entire land, from the wilderness of Zin in the south all the way to the city of Rehob near Lebo Hamath in the north. 22 In the southern Judean wilderness, they went to Hebron, where Ahiman, Sheshai, and Talmai, huge men descended from Anak, lived. Hebron was a city that was built seven years before the city of Zoan was built in Egypt.

### ULB:

21 So the men went up and examined the land from the wilderness of Zin to Rehob, near Lebo Hamath. 22 They went up from the Negev and arrived at Hebron. Ahiman, Sheshai, and Talmai, clans descended from Anak, were there. Now Hebron had been built seven years before Zoan in Egypt.

### translationNotes

#### Zin ... Rehob ... Zoan

These are names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### the wilderness of Zin

The word “Zin” here is the Hebrew name of the wilderness. (See: Copy or Borrow Words)

#### Hebron had been built seven years before Zoan in Egypt

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the Canaanites had built Hebron 7 years before the Egyptians built Zoan” (See: Active or Passive and Numbers)

#### Ahiman ... Sheshai ... Talmai

These are names of clans that were named after their ancestors. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### Anak

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- Hamath, Hamathites, Lebo Hamath

- Negev
- Hebron
- clan, clans
- year, years
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 13 General Notes
- Numbers 13 translationQuestions

## Numbers 13:23-24

### UDB:

[23] In one valley, they cut from a grapevine one cluster of grapes. Because it was very large, they needed two men to carry it on a pole. They also picked some pomegranates and some figs to carry back to their camp. [24] They called that place Eshcol which means ‘cluster’ because they had cut that huge cluster of grapes there.

### ULB:

[23] When they reached the Valley of Eshkol, they cut down a branch with a cluster of grapes. They carried it on a staff between two of their group. They also brought pomegranates and figs. [24] That place was named the Valley of Eshkol, because of the grape cluster that the people of Israel cut down there.

### translationNotes

#### Eshkol

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### between two of their group

“between two men of their group”

#### That place was named

This can be stated in active form. AT: “They named that place” (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- staff, staffs
- pomegranate, pomegranates
- fig, figs
- Israel, Israelites

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 13 General Notes
- Numbers 13 translationQuestions

## Numbers 13:25-26

### UDB:

25 After they explored the land for forty days, they returned to their camp.

26 They came to Aaron and Moses and the rest of the Israelite people in the wilderness at Paran. They reported to everyone what they had seen. They also showed them the fruit that they had brought back.

### ULB:

25 After forty days, they returned from examining the land. 26 They came back to Moses, Aaron, and all the community of the people of Israel in the wilderness of Paran, at Kadesh. They brought back word to them and to all the community, and showed them the produce from the land.

### translationNotes

#### After forty days

"After 40 days" (See: Numbers)

#### They brought back word

Here "word" refers to a report. AT: "They brought back their report" or "They reported what they had seen" (See: Metonymy)

### translationWords

- Moses
- Aaron
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Paran
- Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 13 General Notes
- Numbers 13 translationQuestions

## Numbers 13:27-29

### UDB:

[27] But this is what they reported to Moses: "We arrived in the land that you sent us to explore. It is truly a beautiful land. It is a very fertile land. Here is some of the fruit. [28] But the people who live there are very strong. Their cities are large and are surrounded by walls. We even saw some of the huge descendants of Anak there. [29] The descendants of Amalek live in the southern part of the land, and the descendants of Heth, Jebus, and Amor live in the hill country to the north. The descendants of Canaan live along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea and along the Jordan River."

### ULB:

[27] They told Moses, "We reached the land to which you sent us. It certainly flows with milk and honey. Here is some produce from it. [28] However, the people who make their homes there are strong. The cities are fortified and very large. We also saw descendants of Anak there. [29] The Amalekites live in the Negev. The Hittites, Jebusites, and Amorites have their homes in the hill country. The Canaanites live by the sea and along the Jordan River."

### translationNotes

#### It certainly flows with milk and honey

"Milk and honey certainly flow there." They spoke of the land being good for animals and plants as if the milk and honey from those animals and plants were flowing through the land. AT: "It is certainly excellent for raising livestock and growing crops" or "It is certainly very fertile land" (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

#### milk

Since milk comes from cows and goats, it represents livestock and the food produced from the livestock. AT: "food from livestock" (See: Metonymy)

#### honey

Since honey is produced from flowers, it represents crops and the food produced from the crops. AT: "food from crops" (See: Metonymy)

### translationWords

- honey, honeycomb
- stronghold, strongholds, fortifications, fortified, fortress, fortresses
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants

- Amalek, Amalekite, Amalekites
- Negev
- Hittite, Hittites
- Jebus, Jebusite, Jebusites
- Amorite, Amorites
- Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites
- the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea
- Jordan River, Jordan

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 13 General Notes
- Numbers 13 translationQuestions

## Numbers 13:30-31

### UDB:

30 Caleb told the people who were standing near Moses to be quiet. Then he said, “We should go there and take the land, because we are certainly able to conquer it!”

31 But the men who had gone with him said, “No, we cannot attack and defeat those people. They are much stronger than we are!”

### ULB:

30 Then Caleb silenced the people who were before Moses and said, “Let us go up and take possession of the land, for we are certainly able to conquer it.” 31 But the other men who had gone with him said, “We are not able to attack the people because they are stronger than we are.”

### translationNotes

### translationWords

- Caleb
-

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 13 General Notes
- Numbers 13 translationQuestions

## Numbers 13:32-33

### UDB:

[32] So those men gave to the Israelite people a bad report about the land that they had explored. They said, "The land that we explored destroys the life those who try to attack it. And all the people living there are very tall. [33] We also saw giants there. They are the descendants of Anak (who come from the Nephilim, those giant people). When we saw these giants we felt as small as grasshoppers and they thought that we looked like grasshoppers too."

### ULB:

[32] So they spread around a discouraging report to the people of Israel about the land that they had examined. They said, "The land that we looked at is a land that eats up its inhabitants. All the people whom we saw there are people of great height. [33] There we saw giants, descendants of Anak, people who came from giants. In our own sight we were like grasshoppers in comparison with them, and this is what we were in their sight, too."

### translationNotes

#### they spread around ... They said

Here "they" refers to all of the men who examined the land except for Caleb and Joshua.

#### the land that they had examined

Here "they" refers to all of the men who examined the land including Caleb and Joshua.

#### a land that eats up its inhabitants

The men speak of the land, or the people of the land, being very dangerous as if the land ate up people. AT: "a very dangerous land" or "a land where the people will kill us" (See: Metaphor)

#### Anak

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### In our own sight ... in their sight

Here sight represents evaluation and judgement. AT: "In our own opinion ... in their opinion" or "In our own judgement ... in their judgement" (See: Metaphor)

### we were like grasshoppers in comparison with them

The men speak of grasshoppers to show how very small they thought themselves to be compared to the people of the land. AT: “we are as small as grasshoppers in comparison with them” (See: Simile)

### translationWords

- report, reports, reported
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- giant, giants

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 13 General Notes
- Numbers 13 translationQuestions

## Numbers 14 General Notes

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

### Rhetorical Questions

The author uses several rhetorical questions in this chapter. These questions indicate that people did not have faith in Yahweh. Yahweh also uses rhetorical questions to show the people's lack of faith. (See: Rhetorical Question and faith)

### Links:

- **Numbers 14:01 Notes**

## Numbers 14:1-3

### UDB:

[1] That night, all the Israelite people cried loudly. [2] The next day they all complained against Aaron and Moses. All the men said, "We wish that we had died in Egypt, or in this wilderness! [3] Why is Yahweh bringing us to this land, where we men will be killed with swords? And they will take away our wives and children to be their slaves. Instead of going to Canaan, it would be better for us to return to Egypt!"

### ULB:

[1] That night all the community wept loudly. [2] All the people of Israel criticized Moses and Aaron. The whole community said to them, "We wish we had died in the land of Egypt, or here in this wilderness! [3] Why did Yahweh bring us to this land to die by the sword? Our wives and our little ones will become victims. Is it not better for us to return to Egypt?"

### translationNotes

#### Why did Yahweh bring us to this land to die by the sword?

The people use this question in order to complain and accuse Yahweh of treating them unfairly. It can be translated as a statement. AT: "Yahweh should not have brought us to this land only to die by the sword." (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### to die by the sword

Here "the sword" represents either being killed by the sword or being killed in battle. AT: "to die when people attack us with swords" or "to die in battle" or (See: Metonymy)

#### Is it not better for us to return to Egypt?

The people use this question to encourage people to agree with them that it would be better to return to Egypt. It can be translated as a statement. AT: "It would be better for us to return to Egypt than to try to conquer Canaan." (See: Rhetorical Question)

### translationWords

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Aaron
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly

- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- Yahweh
- sword, swords, swordsmen

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 14 General Notes
- Numbers 14 translationQuestions

## Numbers 14:4-5

### UDB:

[4] Then some of them said to each other, “We should choose a leader who will take us back to Egypt!”

[5] Then Aaron and Moses bowed down to pray in front of all the Israelite people who had gathered there.

### ULB:

[4] They said to each another, “Let us choose another leader, and let us return to Egypt.” [5] Then Moses and Aaron lay facedown before all the assembly of the community of the people of Israel.

### translationNotes

#### They said to each another

This refers to the people of Israel.

#### lay facedown

“lay down with their faces touching the ground.” Moses and Aaron did this to show that they were humbling themselves before God. They feared that God might punish the people for rebelling against him. AT: “lay facedown in humility to God” or “lay facedown to pray to God” (See: Symbolic Action)

### translationWords

- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 14 General Notes
- Numbers 14 translationQuestions

## Numbers 14:6-8

### UDB:

[6] Joshua and Caleb, two of the men who had explored the land, tore their clothes because they were very dismayed. [7] They said to the Israelite people, "The land that we explored is very good. [8] If Yahweh is pleased with us, he will lead us into that very fertile land, and he will give it to us.

### ULB:

[6] Joshua son of Nun and Caleb son of Jephunneh, who were some of those sent to examine the land, tore their clothes. [7] They spoke to all the community of the people of Israel. They said, "The land that we passed through and examined is a very good land. [8] If Yahweh is pleased with us, then he will take us into this land and give it to us. The land flows with milk and honey.

### translationNotes

#### Nun ... Jephunneh

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### who were some of those sent

This can be stated in active form. AT: "who were some of those whom Moses sent" (See: Active or Passive)

#### tore their clothes

Tearing one's clothes was a gesture indicating the person is very troubled and is mourning. (See: Symbolic Action)

#### The land flows with milk and honey

They spoke of the land being good for animals and plants as if the milk and honey from those animals and plants flowed through it. See how you translated this in Numbers 13:27. AT: "It is excellent for raising livestock and growing crops" or "It is very fertile land" (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- Joshua
- Caleb
- send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 14 General Notes
- Numbers 14 translationQuestions

## Numbers 14:9-10

### UDB:

9 So do not rebel against Yahweh! And do not be afraid of the people in that land! We will gobble them up! They do not have anyone who will protect them, but Yahweh will be with us and help us. So do not be afraid of them!"

10 Then all the Israelite people talked about killing Caleb and Joshua by throwing stones at them. But suddenly Yahweh's glory appeared to them at the sacred tent.

### ULB:

9 But do not rebel against Yahweh, and do not fear the people in the land, for they are bread to us. Their protection will be removed from them, because Yahweh is with us. Do not fear them." 10 But all the community threatened to stone them to death. Then Yahweh's glory appeared at the tent of meeting to all the people of Israel.

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

Joshua and Caleb continue speaking to the people of Israel.

#### for they are bread to us

Joshua and Caleb speak of destroying their enemies as easily as if they were eating bread. AT: "We will destroy them as easily as we can eat food" (See: Metaphor and Simile)

#### Their protection will be removed from them

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Yahweh will remove their protection from them" (See: Active or Passive)

#### Their protection

The abstract noun "protection" can be stated as "protect." AT: "Anyone that might protect them" (See: Abstract Nouns)

### translationWords

- rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- Yahweh
- fear, fears, afraid

- consume, consumes, consumed, consuming
- stone, stones, stoning
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies
- tent of meeting
- Israel, Israelites

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 14 General Notes
- Numbers 14 translationQuestions

## Numbers 14:11-12

### UDB:

[11] Then Yahweh said to Moses, "How long will these people reject me? I am tired of them not believing in what I can do, in spite of all the miracles I have performed among them. [12] So I will send a plague among them and get rid of them. But I will cause your descendants to become a great nation. They will be a nation that is much greater and stronger than these people are."

### ULB:

[11] Yahweh said to Moses, "How long must this people despise me? How long must they fail to trust me, despite all the signs of my power that I have done among them? [12] I will attack them with plague, disinherit them, and make from your own clan a nation that will be greater and mightier than they are."

### translationNotes

#### How long must this people despise me? How long must they fail to trust me, despite all the signs ... them?

Yahweh uses these questions to show that he was angry and had lost patience with the people. They can be translated as statements. AT: "This people has despised me for too long. They have failed to trust me for too long, despite all the signs ... them." (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### disinherit them

"reject them from being my people." This may imply that he would destroy them, and some versions translate it that way.

#### make from your own clan

Here "your" is singular and refers to Moses. (See: Forms of You)

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- sign, signs, proof, reminder
- power, powers
- plague, plagues

- clan, clans
- nation, nations
- might, mighty, mightier, mightily

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 14 General Notes
- Numbers 14 translationQuestions

## Numbers 14:13-14

### UDB:

[13] But Moses replied to Yahweh, "Please do not do that, because the people of Egypt will hear about it! You brought these Israelite people from Egypt by your great power, [14] and the people of Egypt will tell that to the descendants of Canaan who live in this land. Yahweh, they have already heard about you. They know that you have been with these people and that they have seen you face to face. They have heard that your cloud is like a huge pillar that stays over them, and by that cloud you lead them during the day, and that the cloud becomes like a fire at night to give them light.

### ULB:

[13] Moses said to Yahweh, "If you do this, then the Egyptians will hear about it, because you rescued this people from them by your power. [14] They will tell it to this land's inhabitants. They have heard that you, Yahweh, are present with this people, because you are seen face to face. Your cloud stands over our people. You go before them in a pillar of cloud by day and in a pillar of fire by night.

### translationNotes

#### you are seen face to face

Possible meanings are 1) Moses speaks of God showing himself to his people as if God had allowed them to actually see his face. AT: "they have seen you" or 2) Moses speaks of the intimate relationship between him and God as if Moses could see God's face when God spoke to him. This can be stated in active form. AT: "you speak directly to me" (See: Metaphorand Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown
- column, columns, pillar, pillars
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 14 General Notes
- Numbers 14 translationQuestions

## Numbers 14:15-16

### UDB:

15 If you kill these people all at one time, the people groups who have heard about your power will say, 16 'Yahweh was not able to bring them into the land that he promised to give to them, so he killed them in the wilderness.'

### ULB:

15 Now if you kill this people as one man, then the nations that have heard of your fame will speak and say, 16 'Because Yahweh could not take this people into the land that he swore to give them, he has killed them in the wilderness.'

### translationNotes

#### as one man

Killing them all at the same time is spoken of as killing them as one person. AT: "all at one time" (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 14 General Notes
- Numbers 14 translationQuestions

## Numbers 14:17-19

### UDB:

[17] So Yahweh, now show that you are very powerful. You said, [18] 'I do not quickly become angry. Instead, I love people greatly, and I forgive people for having sinned and having disobeyed my laws. But I will always punish people who are guilty of doing what is wrong. When parents sin, I will punish them, but I will also punish their children and their grandchildren and their great-grandchildren and their great-great-grandchildren.' [19] So, because you love your people with a great covenant loyalty, forgive these people for the sins that they have committed, just like you have continued to forgive them ever since they left Egypt."

### ULB:

[17] Now, I beg you, use your great power. For you have said, [18] 'Yahweh is slow to anger and abundant in covenant faithfulness. He forgives iniquity and transgression. He will by no means clear the guilty when he brings the punishment of the ancestors' sin on their descendants, to the third and fourth generation.' [19] Pardon, I plead with you, this people's sin because of the greatness of your covenant faithfulness, just as you have always forgiven this people from the time they were in Egypt until now."

### translationNotes

#### abundant in covenant faithfulness

The abstract noun "faithfulness" can be stated as "faithful" or "faithfully." AT: "always faithful to his covenant" or "always faithfully loves his people" (See: Abstract Nouns)

#### He will by no means clear the guilty

"he will certainly not clear guilty people." Clearing away people's sin is a metaphor for refusing to punish them. God would not clear away the sin of guilty people. AT: "He will always punish the guilty" (See: Metaphor)

#### when he brings the punishment of the ancestors' sin on their descendants

Punishing people is spoken of as if punishment were an object that could be brought and put on people. AT: "when he punishes the guilty people's descendants for the guilty people's sins" (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- beg, begged, begging, beggar

- power, powers
- Yahweh
- anger, angered, angry
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love
- forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned
- iniquity, iniquities
- transgress, transgresses, transgression
- guilt, guilty
- punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- generation
- forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 14 General Notes
- Numbers 14 translationQuestions

## Numbers 14:20-22

### UDB:

[20] Then Yahweh replied, "I have forgiven them, as you requested me to. [21] But, just as certainly as I live and that people all over the world can see my glory, I solemnly declare that [22] all these people saw my glory and all the miracles that I performed in Egypt and in the wilderness, but they disobeyed me, and many times they tested whether they could continue to do evil things without my punishing them.

### ULB:

[20] Yahweh said, "I have pardoned them in keeping with your request, [21] but truly, as I live, and as all the earth will be filled with my glory, [22] all those people who saw my glory and the signs of power that I did in Egypt and in the wilderness—they have still tempted me these ten times and have not listened to my voice.

### translationNotes

#### all the earth will be filled with my glory

This can be stated in active form. AT: "my glory will fill all the earth" (See: Active or Passive)

#### they have still tempted me

"they have continued to test me"

#### these ten times

Here the number 10 represents too many times. AT: "too many times" (See: Idiom)

#### have not listened to my voice

Here "listened" represents obedience, and God's voice represents what he said. AT: "have not obeyed what I have said" (See: Metonymy)

### translationWords

- true, truth, truths
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- earth, earthen, earthly
- glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies
- sign, signs, proof, reminder

- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- tempt, temptation
- voice, voices

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 14 General Notes
- Numbers 14 translationQuestions

## Numbers 14:23-25

### UDB:

[23] Because of that, not one of them will see the land that I promised their ancestors that I would give to them. No one who rejected me will see that land. [24] But Caleb, who serves me well, is different from the others. He obeys me completely. So I will bring him into that land that he has already seen, and his descendants will inherit some of it. [25] So, since the descendants of Amalek and Canaan who are living in the valleys in Canaan are very strong, when you leave here tomorrow, instead of traveling toward Canaan, go back along the road through the wilderness toward the Sea of Reeds."

### ULB:

[23] So I say that they will certainly not see the land about which I made an oath to their ancestors. Not one of them who despised me will see it, [24] except for my servant Caleb, because he had another spirit. He has followed me fully; I will bring him into the land which he went to examine. His descendants will possess it. [25] (Now the Amalekites and Canaanites lived in the valley.) Tomorrow turn and go to the wilderness by the way of the Sea of Reeds."

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

#### because he had another spirit

Here "spirit" represents his attitude. Caleb was willing to obey God. What his attitude was can be stated clearly. AT: "because he had a different attitude" or "because he was willing to obey God" (See: Metonymy and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- Caleb
- spirit, spirits, spiritual
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- Amalek, Amalekite, Amalekites
- Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites
- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back

- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- Sea of Reeds, Red Sea

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 14 General Notes
- Numbers 14 translationQuestions

## Numbers 14:26-27

### UDB:

[26] Then Yahweh said to Aaron and Moses, [27] "How long will the wicked people of this nation keep complaining about me? I have heard everything that they have grumbled against me.

### ULB:

[26] Yahweh spoke to Moses and to Aaron. He said, [27] "How long must I tolerate this evil community that criticizes me? I have heard the complaining of the people of Israel against me.

### translationNotes

#### How long must I tolerate this evil community that criticizes me?

Yahweh asks this question because he has lost patience with the people. It can be translated as a statement. AT: "I have tolerated this evil community who has criticized me long enough." (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### I have heard the complaining of the people of Israel

The word "complaining," an abstract noun, can be expressed as a verb. AT: "I have heard the people of Israel complain" (See: Abstract Nouns)

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Aaron
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- Israel, Israelites

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 14 General Notes
- Numbers 14 translationQuestions

## Numbers 14:28-30

### UDB:

28 So now tell them this: 'Just as certainly as I, Yahweh, live, I will do exactly what you said would happen. 29 I will cause all of you to die here in this wilderness! Because you grumbled against me, none of you who are more than twenty years old and who were counted when Moses counted everyone 30 will enter the land that I solemnly promised to give to you. Only Caleb and Joshua will enter that land.

### ULB:

28 Say to them, 'As I live,' says Yahweh, 'as you have spoken in my hearing, I will do this to you: 29 Your dead bodies will fall in this wilderness, all you who complained against me, you who were counted in the census, the whole number of the people from twenty years old and upward. 30 You will certainly not go into the land that I promised to make your home, except Caleb son of Jephunneh and Joshua son of Nun.

### translationNotes

#### as you have spoken in my hearing

"as I have heard you say"

#### Your dead bodies will fall

Their dead bodies falling represents them dying. AT: "You will die" (See: Metonymy)

#### you who were counted in the census

This can be stated in active form. AT: "you whom Moses counted in the census" (See: Active or Passive)

#### from twenty years old and upward

"twenty years old and older"

### translationWords

- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- body, bodies
- census

- promise, promises, promised
- Joshua

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 14 General Notes
- Numbers 14 translationQuestions

## Numbers 14:31-33

### UDB:

31 You said that your children would be taken from you to become slaves, but I will take them into
the land, and they will enjoy living in the land that you rejected. 32 But as for you adults, you will
die here in this wilderness. 33 Your children will wander around in this wilderness as shepherds
for forty years. Because you adults were not loyal to me, your children will suffer until you all die
in the wilderness.

### ULB:

31 But your little ones who you said would be victims, I will take them into the land. They will
experience the land that you have rejected! 32 As for you, your dead bodies will fall in this wilder-
ness. 33 Your children will be shepherds in the wilderness for forty years. They must bear the
consequences of your acts of rebellion until the end of your corpses in the wilderness.

### translationNotes

#### your dead bodies will fall

Their dead bodies falling represents them dying. AT: “you will die” (See: Metonymy)

#### Your children will be shepherds in the wilderness

Some modern versions choose to translate, “Your children will wander in the wilderness.” This is because in ancient times, shepherds usually wandered from place to place so their flocks and herds could find pasture.

#### They must bear the consequences of your acts

“They must suffer the consequences of your acts” or “They must suffer because of your acts”

#### until the end of your corpses

A corpse is a dead body. The end of their corpses represents the last of the them dying. AT: “until the last one of you dies” or “until all of you die” (See: Metonymy)

### translationWords

- reject, rejects, rejected, rejecting, rejection
- children, child
- rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 14 General Notes
- Numbers 14 translationQuestions

## Numbers 14:34-35

### UDB:

[34] You will suffer for your sins for forty years. That will be one year for each of the forty days that the twelve men explored Canaan land. And I will be like an enemy to you. [35] This will certainly happen because I, Yahweh, have said it! I will do these things to every one in this group that has plotted against me. They will all die right here in this wilderness!'"

### ULB:

[34] Just as the number of the days during which you examined the land—forty days, you must likewise bear the consequences of your sins for forty years—one year for every day, and you must know what it is like for me to oppose you. [35] I, Yahweh, have spoken. I will certainly do this to all this evil community that is gathered together against me. They will be completely cut off, and here they will die.'"

### translationNotes

#### bear the consequences of your sins

"suffer the consequences of your sins" or "suffer because of your sins"

#### They will be completely cut off

This probably means that they will no longer exist. AT: "they will come to an end" or "they will all be destroyed" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- consume, consumes, consumed, consuming

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 14 General Notes
- Numbers 14 translationQuestions

## Numbers 14:36-38

### UDB:

[36-37] Then Yahweh attacked the ten men who had discouraged the people, so that they died. These were the men who had explored Canaan and then told the people that they would not be able to take over the land. It was because of the men that the people spoke against Moses. [38] Of the twelve men who had explored Canaan, only Joshua and Caleb remained alive.

### ULB:

[36] So the men Moses sent to spy out the land, who returned and made the entire community grumble against Moses by spreading a bad report about the land— [37] these men who had brought out a bad report about the land were struck down, and they died of a plague before Yahweh. [38] Of those men who had gone to spy out the land, only Joshua son of Nun and Caleb son of Jephunneh remained alive.

### translationNotes

#### these men who had brought out a bad report about the land were struck down, and they died of a plague before Yahweh

The phrase “plague before Yahweh” shows that Yahweh struck them down. This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh struck down these men who had brought out a bad report about the land, and they died” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- Moses
- plague, plagues
- report, reports, reported
- Caleb

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 14 General Notes
- Numbers 14 translationQuestions

## Numbers 14:39-40

### UDB:

[39] When Moses reported to the Israelite people what Yahweh had said, many of them were very sad. [40] So the people got up early the next morning and started to go toward the hill country in Canaan. They said, “We know that we have sinned, but now we are ready to enter the land that Yahweh promised to give to us.”

### ULB:

[39] When Moses reported these words to all the people of Israel, they mourned very deeply. [40] They rose up early in the morning and went to the top of the mountain and said, “Look, we are here, and we will go to the place that Yahweh has promised, for we have sinned.”

### translationNotes

#### Look

“Look” here adds emphasis to what follows. “Indeed”

### translationWords

- word, words
- Israel, Israelites
- mourn, mourns, mourned, mourning, mourner, mourners, mournful, mournfully
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- promise, promises, promised

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 14 General Notes
- Numbers 14 translationQuestions

## Numbers 14:41-43

### UDB:

41 But Moses said, "Yahweh commanded you to return to the desert, so why are you now disobeying
him? It will not succeed. 42 Do not try to enter the land now! If you try, your enemies will defeat
you, because Yahweh will not be with you. 43 When you begin to fight the descendants of Amalek
and Canaan, they will slaughter you! Yahweh will abandon you, because you have abandoned
him."

### ULB:

41 But Moses said, "Why are you now violating Yahweh's command? You will not succeed. 42 Do
not go, because Yahweh is not with you to prevent you from being defeated by your enemies. 43
The Amalekites and Canaanites are there, and you will die by the sword because you turned back
from following Yahweh. So he will not be with you."

### translationNotes

#### Why are you now violating Yahweh's command?

Moses asks this question to rebuke the people of Israel. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "You should not be violating Yahweh's command again." (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### Yahweh is not with you

Helping them is spoken of as being with them. AT: "Yahweh will not help you" (See: Metaphor)

#### to prevent you from being defeated by your enemies

This can be stated in active form. AT: "to prevent your enemies from defeating you" or "to give you victory over your enemies" (See: Active or Passive)

#### you will die by the sword

Here "the sword" refers to battle. AT: "you will die in battle" or "they will kill you when you fight against them" (See: Metonymy)

#### you turned back from following Yahweh

Obeying Yahweh is spoken of as following him, and stopping doing that is spoken of as turning away from him. AT: "you stopped obeying Yahweh" or "you have decided not to obey Yahweh" (See: Metaphor)

### he will not be with you

Helping them is spoken of as being with them. AT: “he will not help you” (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies
- Amalek, Amalekite, Amalekites
- Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites
- sword, swords, swordsmen
- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 14 General Notes
- Numbers 14 translationQuestions

## Numbers 14:44-45

### UDB:

44 But even though Moses did not leave the camp, and the sacred chest that contained the Ten Commandments was not taken from the camp, the people began to go toward the hill country in Canaan. 45 Then the descendants of Amalek and Canaan who lived in those hills came down and attacked them; they chased them as far south as Hormah.

### ULB:

44 But they presumed to go up into the hill country; however, neither Moses nor the ark of the covenant of Yahweh left the camp. 45 Then the Amalekites came down, and also the Canaanites who lived on those hills. They attacked the Israelites and defeated them all the way to Hormah.

### translationNotes

#### they presumed to go up into the hill country

“they dared to go up into the hill country even though God did not approve”

#### into the hill country

Much of the land of Israel is elevated. When the Israelites crossed the Jordan River valley to attack the Canaanites, there were hills that they had to climb in order to go farther into the land of Canaan.

### translationWords

- Moses
- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 14 General Notes
- Numbers 14 translationQuestions

## Numbers 15 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Purifying the people

As the people travel through the wilderness, Yahweh is purifying them. He is doing this so that they are able to enter into the Promised Land. (See: pure, purify, purification and Promised Land)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Prostitution

The imagery of prostitution is commonly used in Scripture to indicate that Yahweh alone is to be worshiped. The people are compared to the prostitute because a husband is to only have a sexual relationship with his wife. Both the prostitute and the worship of other gods are violations of this exclusive relationship. Many cultures will struggle with this imagery because of a desire to use euphemisms. (See: god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry and Euphemism)

### Links:

- **Numbers 15:01 Notes**

## Numbers 15:1-3

### UDB:

[1] Then Yahweh told Moses, [2] "Tell this to the Israelite people, 'When you arrive in the land that I am giving to you, [3] you must offer to me special sacrifices which will be pleasing to me when the priest burns them on the altar. Some of them may be offerings that will be completely burned on the altar. Some of them may be to indicate that you have made a solemn promise to me. Some of them may be offerings that you yourselves have decided to make. Some of them may be offerings at one of the festivals that you celebrate each year. These offerings may be taken from your herds of cattle or from your flocks of sheep and goats.

### ULB:

[1] Then Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said, [2] "Speak to the people of Israel and say to them, 'When you go into the land where you will live, which Yahweh will give to you, [3] you are to prepare an offering by fire to Yahweh, either a burnt offering or a sacrifice to fulfill a vow or a freewill offering, or an offering at your feasts, to produce a pleasing aroma for Yahweh from the herd or the flock.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Numbers 15:1-32 tells what God told Moses to tell the people of Israel.

#### to produce a pleasing aroma for Yahweh from the herd or the flock

"to produce from the herd or flock a smell that pleases Yahweh." The Lord's pleasure with the aroma represents his pleasure with the person who burns the offering. AT: "to please Yahweh by burning a sacrifice from the herd or the flock" (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- vow, vows, vowed
- freewill offering, freewill offerings

- feast, feasts, feasting
- flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 15 General Notes
- Numbers 15 translationQuestions

## Numbers 15:4-5

### UDB:

[4] When you give these offerings, you must also bring to me a flour offering of about two liters of nice flour mixed with about a liter of olive oil. [5] When you offer a young ram or goat for the sacrifice that will be completely burned up, or when you offer as a sacrifice of every young lamb, you should prepare a liter of wine to be used as a drink offering.

### ULB:

[4] You must offer to Yahweh a burnt offering as well as a grain offering of a tenth of an ephah of fine flour mixed with one-fourth of a hin of oil. [5] You must also offer with the burnt offering, or for the sacrifice, one-fourth of a hin of wine for the drink offering for each lamb.

### translationNotes

#### a burnt offering

This refers to the offerings spoken of in Numbers 15:3.

#### a tenth of an ephah

An ephah is a unit of volume equal to about 22 liters. AT: “about 2 liters” or “two liters” (See: Biblical Volume)

#### one-fourth of a hin

A hin is a unit of volume equal to about 3.7 liters. AT: “about 1 liter” or “one liter” (See: Biblical Volume)

### translationWords

- grain offering, grain offerings
- tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes
- oil
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- drink offering
- lamb, Lamb of God

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 15 General Notes
- Numbers 15 translationQuestions

## Numbers 15:6-7

### UDB:

[6] When you offer a ram to be a sacrifice, you must also bring an offering of about three and four-fifths liters of finely ground flour mixed with about one and one-quarter liters of olive oil. [7] And also pour on the altar about one and one-fifth liters of wine. While they are being burned, the smell of it will be very pleasing to me.

### ULB:

[6] If you are offering a ram, you must prepare as a grain offering two-tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with a third of a hin of oil. [7] For the drink offering, you must offer a third of a hin of wine. It will produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh.

### translationNotes

#### two-tenths of an ephah

An ephah is a unit of volume equal to about 22 liters. AT: “4 liters” or “four and a half liters” (See: Biblical Volume)

#### a third of a hin

A hin is a unit of volume equal to about 3.7 liters. AT: “one liter” (See: Biblical Volume)

#### It will produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh

“It will produce a smell that pleases Yahweh.” The Lord’s pleasure with the aroma represents his pleasure with the person who burns the offering. AT: “You will please Yahweh by offering it” (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 15 General Notes
- Numbers 15 translationQuestions

## Numbers 15:8-10

### UDB:

[8] Sometimes you will offer a young bull to be completely burned on the altar. Sometimes you will offer a sacrifice to indicate that you have made a solemn promise to me. Sometimes you will offer a sacrifice to restore fellowship with me. [9] When you offer these sacrifices, you must also offer a flour offering of about six and one-half liters of finely ground flour mixed with about two liters of olive oil. [10] Also pour on the altar two quarts of wine to be an offering. While those special gifts are being burned, the smell from it will be very pleasing to me.

### ULB:

[8] When you prepare a bull as a burnt offering or as a sacrifice to fulfill a vow, or as a fellowship offering to Yahweh, [9] then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of three-tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil. [10] You must offer as the drink offering half a hin of wine, as an offering made by fire, to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh.

### translationNotes

#### three-tenths of an ephah

You may convert this to a modern measure. AT: “six and one half liters” (See: Biblical Volume)

#### half a hin

You may convert this to a modern measure AT: “two liters” (See: Biblical Volume)

#### made by fire

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that you burn on the altar” (See: Active or Passive)

#### to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh

“to produce a smell that pleases Yahweh.” The Lord being pleased with the sincere worshiper who offers the sacrifice is spoken of as if God were pleased with the aroma of the sacrifice. AT: “to please Yahweh by offering it” (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings

- fulfill, fulfilled
- vow, vows, vowed
- fellowship offering, fellowship offerings
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 15 General Notes
- Numbers 15 translationQuestions

## Numbers 15:11-13

### UDB:

11 Each time someone offers a bull or a ram or a male lamb or young goat to be a sacrifice, it must be done that way. 12 You must obey these instructions for each animal that you bring to me for an offering.

13 All of you people who have been Israelites all of your lives must obey these regulations when you offer sacrifices that will be pleasing to me when they are burned on the altar.

### ULB:

11 It must be done this way for each bull, for each ram, and for each of the male lambs or young goats. 12 Every sacrifice that you prepare and offer must be done as described here. 13 All who are native-born Israelites must do these things in this way, when anyone brings an offering made by fire, to produce an aroma that is pleasing to Yahweh.

### translationNotes

#### It must be done

This can be stated in active form. AT: “You must do it” (See: Active or Passive)

#### must be done as described

This can be stated in active form. AT: “you must do as I have described” (See: Active or Passive)

#### made by fire

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that they burn on the altar” (See: Active or Passive)

#### to produce an aroma that is pleasing to Yahweh

“to produce a smell that pleases Yahweh.” Yahweh being pleased with the sincere worshiper who offers the sacrifice is spoken of as if Yahweh were pleased with the aroma of the sacrifice. AT: “to please Yahweh by offering it” (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- lamb, Lamb of God
- goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids
- Israel, Israelites
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- Yahweh

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 15 General Notes
- Numbers 15 translationQuestions

## Numbers 15:14-16

### UDB:

[14] If any foreigners visit you or live among you, if they also want to bring a sacrifice that will be pleasing to me when it is burned on the altar, they must obey these same instructions. [15] I consider that those who have always been Israelites and those who are foreigners are equal, and so they must all obey the same instructions. All of your descendants must also continue to obey these instructions of mine. [16] You Israelites and the foreigners who live among you must all obey the same instructions.'"

### ULB:

[14] If a foreigner is staying with you, or whoever may live among you throughout your people's generations, he must make an offering made by fire, to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh. He must act as you act. [15] There must be the same law for the community and for the foreigner who stays with you, a permanent law throughout your people's generations. As you are, so also must be the traveler staying with you. He must act as you act before Yahweh. [16] The same law and decree must apply to you and to the foreigner who is staying with you.'"

### translationNotes

#### he must make an offering made by fire

This can be stated in active form. AT: "he must burn an offering on the altar" (See: Active or Passive)

#### to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh

"to produce a smell that pleases Yahweh." The Lord being pleased with the sincere worshiper who offers the sacrifice is spoken of as if God were pleased with the aroma of the sacrifice. AT: "to please Yahweh by offering it" (See: Metaphor)

#### As you are, so also must be the traveler

Possible meanings are 1) "You and the traveler staying with you are alike before Yahweh" or 2) "The same law applies to both you and the traveler"

#### He must act as you act before Yahweh

"He must act as you act in Yahweh's presence." Because it says that they must act as the Israelites in Yahweh's presence, it is implied that they must obey all of Yahweh's commands. AT: "he must act as you act and obey all of Yahweh's commands" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**translationWords**

- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- generation
- law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
- decree, decrees, decreed

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 15 General Notes
- Numbers 15 translationQuestions

## Numbers 15:17-19

### UDB:

17 Yahweh also said to Moses, 18 "Tell these instructions to the Israelite people, 'When you arrive in the land to which I am taking you, 19 and you eat the crops that are growing there, you must set some of them aside to be a sacred offering to me, and present them to me.

### ULB:

17 Again Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said, 18 "Speak to the people of Israel and say to them, 'When you come into the land where I will take you, 19 when you eat the food produced in the land, you must offer an offering and present it to me.

### translationNotes

#### the food produced in the land

This can be stated in active form. AT: "the food that the land produces" or "the food that you produce in the land" (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- Moses
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 15 General Notes
- Numbers 15 translationQuestions

## Numbers 15:20-21

### UDB:

[20] Each year set aside some of the first grain that you gather after you have threshed it. Bake a loaf of bread from the first flour that you grind and present it before me as a sacred offering. [21] Every year, you and your descendants must continue to make and present to me a loaf of bread baked with flour from the first part of the grain that you harvest.

### ULB:

[20] From the first of your dough you must offer a loaf to raise it up as a raised offering from the threshing floor. You must raise it up in this way. [21] You must give to me a raised offering throughout your people's generations from the first of your dough.

### translationNotes

#### the first of your dough

Possible meanings are that this refers to 1) the first grain that they would gather during the harvest or 2) the dough that they would make from the first of their grain. (See: Metonymy)

#### a loaf

Calling it a loaf implies that they would cooked the dough first.

#### to raise it up as a raised offering

This idiom "raise it up" refers to offering it as a gift. AT: "to offer it as a gift" (See: Idiom)

#### a raised offering from the threshing floor

The offering is spoken of as being from the threshing floor because this is where they would separate the grain from the other parts of the plant.

### translationWords

- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- thresh, threshes, threshed, threshing

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 15 General Notes
- Numbers 15 translationQuestions

## Numbers 15:22-24

### UDB:

[22] There may be times when you Israelites do not obey all these instructions that I have given to Moses to tell you, but not because you intended to disobey them. [23] There may be times when some of your descendants do not obey all these instructions that I have given to Moses to tell to you. [24] If you or they sin by forgetting to obey these instructions and none of the Israelite people realize that they were doing that, one young bull as an offering for all the people must be brought to the priest. That will be pleasing to me when it is burned on the altar. They must also bring to me a flour offering and an offering of wine, and a male goat, to be sacrificed to remove the guilt of their sin.

### ULB:

[22] You will sometimes sin without intending to do so, when you do not obey all these commands that I have spoken to Moses— [23] everything that I have commanded you through Moses from the day that I began to give you commands and onward throughout your people's generations. [24] In the case of unintentional sin without the community's knowledge, then all the community must offer one young bull as a burnt offering to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh. Along with this must be made a grain offering and drink offering, as commanded by the decree, and one male goat as a sin offering.

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

God continues telling Moses what he must tell the people.

#### General Information:

The word "you" here refers to Israelite people.

#### to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh

"to produce a smell that pleases Yahweh." The Lord being pleased with the sincere worshipers who offer the sacrifice is spoken of as if God were pleased with the aroma of the sacrifice. AT: "to please Yahweh by burning it" (See: Metaphor)

#### must be made a grain offering and drink offering

This can be stated in active form. AT: "you must make a grain offering and drink offering" (See: Active or Passive)

### as commanded by the decree

This can be stated in active form. AT: “as the decree commands” or “as I commanded when I made the decree” (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- grain offering, grain offerings
- drink offering
- decree, decrees, decreed
- goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids
- sin offering, sin offerings

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 15 General Notes
- Numbers 15 translationQuestions

## Numbers 15:25-26

### UDB:

25 By offering these sacrifices, the priest will make atonement for all of you Israelite people. Then, as a result of their bringing to me an offering to be burned on the altar, you will be forgiven, because you sinned without realizing that you were sinning. 26 You Israelite people, and the foreigners who are living among you, will all be forgiven.

### ULB:

25 The priest must make atonement for all the community of the people of Israel. They will be forgiven because the sin was an error. They have brought their sacrifice, an offering made by fire to me. They have brought their sin offering before me for their error. 26 Then all the community of the people of Israel will be forgiven, and also the foreigners who are staying with them, because all the people committed the sin unintentionally.

### translationNotes

#### They will be forgiven

This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will forgive them” (See: Active or Passive)

#### made by fire

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that they made by fire” or “that they burned on the altar” (See: Active or Passive)

#### all the community of the people of Israel will be forgiven

This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will forgive all the community of the people of Israel” (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- priest, priests, priesthood
- atonement, atone, atones, atoned
- Israel, Israelites
- forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 15 General Notes
- Numbers 15 translationQuestions

## Numbers 15:27-29

### UDB:

[27] If one person commits a sin without realizing that he was sinning, that person must bring to me a female goat to be an offering to take away that person's guilt for that sin. [28] The priest will offer it to be a sacrifice to remove the guilt of that person's sin, and that person will be forgiven. [29] You Israelites and all the foreigners who live among you must obey these same instructions.

### ULB:

[27] If a person sins unintentionally, then he must offer a female goat a year old as a sin offering. [28] The priest must make atonement before Yahweh for the person who sins unintentionally. That person will be forgiven when atonement has been made. [29] You must have the same law for the one who does anything unintentionally, the same law for the one who is native born among the people of Israel and for the foreigners who are staying among them.

### translationNotes

#### a female goat a year old

"a 1-year-old female goat"

#### That person will be forgiven when atonement has been made

This can be stated in active form. AT: "I will forgive that person when the priest has made atonement" (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- year, years
- Yahweh
- law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 15 General Notes
- Numbers 15 translationQuestions

## Numbers 15:30-31

### UDB:

[30] But those who disobey my commands deliberately, both Israelites and the foreigners who live among you, have sinned against me by doing that. So they must be expelled from your camp. [31] They have despised my commands and deliberately disobeyed them, so they must be punished for their sin by never being allowed to live among you again.'"

### ULB:

[30] But the person who does anything in defiance, whether he is native born or a foreigner, blasphemes me. That person must be cut off from among his people. [31] Because he has despised my word and has broken my commandment, that person must be cut off completely. His sin will be on him.'"

### translationNotes

#### That person must be cut off from among his people

The metaphor "cut off" has at least three possible meanings. They can be expressed in active form: 1) "his people must send him away" or 2) "I will no longer consider him to be one of the people of Israel" or 3) "his people must kill him." (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

#### has broken my commandment

Not obeying a commandment is spoken of as breaking it. AT: "has disobeyed my commandment" or "has not obeyed what I commanded" (See: Metonymy)

#### His sin will be on him

Here "sin" represents either 1) punishment for that sin or 2) guilt of that sin. Sin being on him is a metaphor for either 1) being punished or 2) being guilty. AT: 1) "I will punish him because of his sin" or 2) "I will consider him guilty" (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

### translationWords

- blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemed, blasphemous, blasphemies
- cut off, cuts off, cutting off
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- word, words
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 15 General Notes
- Numbers 15 translationQuestions

## Numbers 15:32-34

### UDB:

[32] One day, while the Israelites were in the wilderness, some of them saw a man who was gathering firewood on the Sabbath day. [33] Those who saw him doing that brought him to Aaron and Moses and the rest of the Israelite people. [34] They guarded him carefully, because they did not know what to do to punish him.

### ULB:

[32] While the people of Israel were in the wilderness, they found a man gathering wood on the Sabbath day. [33] Those who found him brought him to Moses, Aaron, and all the community. [34] They kept him in custody because it had not been declared what should be done with him.

### translationNotes

#### it had not been declared what should be done with him

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh had not declared what they should do with him” (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- Israel, Israelites
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- Sabbath
- Moses
- Aaron
- declare, declares, declared, declaring, declaration, declarations

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 15 General Notes
- Numbers 15 translationQuestions

## Numbers 15:35-36

### UDB:

[35] Then Yahweh said to Moses, “The man must be executed. All of you must kill him by throwing stones at him outside the camp.” [36] So they all took the man outside the camp and killed him by throwing stones at him, as Yahweh had commanded Moses that they should do.

### ULB:

[35] Then Yahweh said to Moses, “The man must surely be put to death. All the community must stone him with stones outside the camp.” [36] So all the community brought him outside the camp and stoned him to death as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

### translationNotes

#### The man must surely be put to death

This can be stated in active form. AT: “You must surely put the man to death” or “The man must surely die” (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- stone, stones, stoning

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 15 General Notes
- Numbers 15 translationQuestions

## Numbers 15:37-39

### UDB:

[37] Yahweh also said to Moses, [38] "Tell this to the Israelite people: 'You and all your descendants must twist threads together to make tassels, and then attach them with blue cords to the bottom edges of your clothes. [39] When you look at the tassels, you will remember all the instructions that I gave to you, and you will obey them. In that way, you will not be unfaithful to me. You will not be like an unfaithful prostitute who does the shameful things that she looks at and desires to do.

### ULB:

[37] Again Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said, [38] "Speak to the descendants of Israel and command them to make for themselves tassels to hang from the borders of their garments, to hang them from each border by a blue cord. They must do this throughout their people's generations. [39] It will be a special reminder to you, when you may look at it, of all my commandments, to carry them out so that you do not look to your own heart and your own eyes and prostitute yourselves to them.

### translationNotes

#### the descendants of Israel

"the people of Israel"

#### to carry them out

"to obey them"

#### so that you do not look to your own heart and your own eyes

"Look to" here is a metaphor for think about. The heart represents what a person wants, and the eyes represent what a person sees and wants. AT: "so that you do not think about whatever you want" (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

#### prostitute yourselves to them

Being unfaithful to God by choosing to do whatever they want is spoken of as if they were women who were unfaithful to their husband by choosing to have sinful relationships with other men. It can be stated clearly that this was a shameful thing to do. AT: "be shamefully unfaithful to me" or "do those things instead of obeying me" (See: Metaphor and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**translationWords**

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- generation
- sign, signs, proof, reminder
- heart, hearts
- prostitute, prostituted, prostitutes, harlot, whored

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 15 General Notes
- Numbers 15 translationQuestions

## Numbers 15:40-41

### UDB:

40 Seeing those tassels will help you to remember that you must obey all my commands and that you must be my holy people. 41 Do not forget that I am Yahweh, your God. I am the one who brought you out of Egypt in order that you might belong to me. I am Yahweh, your God.'"

### ULB:

40 Do this so that you may call to mind and obey all my commandments, and so that you may be holy, reserved for me, your God. 41 I am Yahweh your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, to become your God. I am Yahweh your God."

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

God continues telling Moses what to tell the people of Israel. The word "you" refers to the people.

#### call to mind

This is an idiom. AT: "remember" (See: Idiom)

#### I am Yahweh your God

This clause is repeated for emphasis.

### translationWords

- call, calls, calling, called
- mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- God
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 15 General Notes
- Numbers 15 translationQuestions

# Numbers 16 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

### Rebellion and punishment

A certain Levite and a few men from the tribe of Reuben claimed that they were just as good as Moses and Aaron, and they also could do the work of sacrificing animals at the sacred tent. So Moses told them to come to the sacred tent and burn incense to Yahweh. God then made the earth open and swallow up these leaders and their families. He also sent fire to destroy 250 other men who had joined with those leaders. These actions showed that only the Levites, those whom Yahweh appointed, could be priests. Also, it taught the people that to rebel against Yahweh's anointed was to rebel against Yahweh. (See: appoint, appoints, appointed, priest, priests, priesthood and anoint, anointed, anointing)

### Links:

- **Numbers 16:01 Notes**

## Numbers 16:1-3

### UDB:

[1] One day Korah son of Izhar and a descendant of Levi's son Kohath, conspired with Dathan and Abiram, who were the sons of Eliab, and On son of Peleth. They were all from the tribe of Reuben. [2] Those four men incited 250 other people who were leaders among the Israelite people to join them in rebelling against Moses. [3] They came together to criticize Aaron and Moses. They said to them, "You two are using more authority than you should! Yahweh has set apart all of us Israelite people, and he is with all of us. So why do you act as though you were more important than the rest of us people who belong to Yahweh?"

### ULB:

[1] Now Korah son of Izhar son of Kohath son of Levi, along with Dathan and Abiram sons of Eliab, and On son of Peleth, descendants of Reuben, gathered some men. [2] They rose up against Moses, along with other men from the people of Israel, two hundred and fifty leaders of the community who were well-known members in the community. [3] They assembled themselves together to confront Moses and Aaron. They said to them, "You have gone too far! All the community is set apart, every one of them, and Yahweh is among them. Why do you lift up yourselves above the rest of Yahweh's community?"

### translationNotes

#### Kohath

See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 3:17.

#### rose up against Moses

Rebelling or criticizing someone in authority is spoken of as if they were standing up to fight. AT: "rebelled against Moses" (See: Metaphor)

#### two hundred and fifty

"250" (See: Numbers)

#### well-known members in the community

"famous members of the community" or "important men in the community"

#### You have gone too far

This represents doing more than one should. AT: "You have done more than you should" or "You assume to have more authority than you should" (See: Idiom)

#### Why do you lift up yourselves above the rest of Yahweh's community?

The men ask this question to rebuke Moses and Aaron. It can be translated as a statement. AT: "You are wrong to lift up yourselves above the rest of Yahweh's community." (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### lift up yourselves above the rest

Considering someone to be important is spoken of as lifting it up. AT: "consider yourselves more important than the rest" (See: Metaphor)

#### translationWords

- Korah, Korahite, Korahites
- son, sons
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Reuben
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- Moses
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- member, members
- Aaron
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh

#### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 16 General Notes
- Numbers 16 translationQuestions

## Numbers 16:4-5

### UDB:

[4] When Moses heard what they were saying, he prostrated himself on the ground. [5] Then he said to Korah and those who were with Korah, "Tomorrow morning Yahweh will show to us whom he has chosen to be his priest, and who is holy and allowed to come near to him. Yahweh will permit only those whom he chooses to come into his presence.

### ULB:

[4] When Moses heard that, he lay facedown. [5] He spoke to Korah and to all those with him, "In the morning Yahweh will make known who belongs to him and who is set apart to him. He will bring that person near to him. The one he chooses he will bring near to himself.

### translationNotes

#### he lay facedown

This indicates that Moses was humbling himself before God. He was afraid that God would punish the people for rebelling against God and his chosen leaders. (See: Symbolic Action)

#### who is set apart to him

This can be stated in active form. AT: "whom Yahweh has set apart for himself" (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- set apart

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 16 General Notes
- Numbers 16 translationQuestions

## Numbers 16:6-7

### UDB:

[6] So Korah, tomorrow you and those who are with you must prepare your pans to burn incense. [7] Then you must light a fire in them and burn the incense in the presence of Yahweh. Then we will see which one of us Yahweh has chosen to be his holy servant. It is you men who are descendants of Levi who are trying to use more authority than you should!"

### ULB:

[6] Do this, Korah and all your group. Take censers [7] tomorrow and put fire and incense in them before Yahweh. The one whom Yahweh chooses, that man will be set apart to Yahweh. You have gone too far, you descendants of Levi."

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

Moses continues speaking to Korah and the men who were with Korah.

#### censers

containers in which to burn incense

#### before Yahweh

This is an idiom. AT: "in Yahweh's presence" (See: Idiom)

#### that man will be set apart to Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Yahweh will set apart that man for himself" (See: Active or Passive)

#### You have gone too far

This represents doing more than one should. AT: "You have done more than you should" or "You assume to have more authority than you should" (See: Idiom)

### translationWords

- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- incense, incenses
- set apart

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 16 General Notes
- Numbers 16 translationQuestions

## Numbers 16:8-11

### UDB:

[8] Then Moses spoke again to Korah. He said, "You men who are descendants of Levi, listen to me! [9] You know that Yahweh, the God of Israel has chosen you Levites from the community of Israel so you can work for him at his sacred tent and serve the people. Does that seem to you like a small thing for you to do? [10] Yahweh has brought you, Korah, and your fellow descendants of Levi, near to himself. Now are you demanding to become priests also? [11] It is really Yahweh against whom you and your fellow descendants of Levi are rebelling. Aaron is not the one about whom you are really complaining."

### ULB:

[8] Again, Moses said to Korah, "Now listen, you descendants of Levi: [9] is it a small thing for you that the God of Israel has separated you from the community of Israel, to bring you near to himself, to do work in Yahweh's tabernacle, and to stand before the community to serve them? [10] He has brought you near, and all your kinfolk, the descendants of Levi, with you, yet you are seeking the priesthood also! [11] That is why you and all your group have gathered together against Yahweh. So why are you complaining about Aaron, who obeys Yahweh?"

### translationNotes

#### is it a small thing for you ... to serve them?

Moses uses this question to rebuke Korah and the men with him. It can be translated as a statement. AT: "You behave as though it it is a small thing for you ... to serve them!" or "You should not consider it a small thing ... to serve them!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### a small thing for you

"not enough for you" or "unimportant to you"

#### you are seeking the priesthood also

Wanting to have the priesthood is spoken of as if they were looking for it. AT: "you want to have the priesthood too" or "you want to be priests also" (See: Metaphor)

#### So why are you complaining about Aaron, who obeys Yahweh?

Moses uses this question to show them that when they complain about what Aaron does, they are really complaining against Yahweh, because Aaron was doing what Yahweh told him to do. AT: "You are not really complaining about Aaron, but about Yahweh, whom Aaron obeys!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**translationWords**

- Moses
- Korah, Korahite, Korahites
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- tabernacle
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- kin, kinfolk, kindred, kinsfolk, kinsman, kinsmen
- priest, priests, priesthood
- Aaron
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 16 General Notes
- Numbers 16 translationQuestions

## Numbers 16:12-14

### UDB:

12 Then Moses summoned Dathan and Abiram, but they refused to come. They sent a message saying, "We will not come to you! 13 You brought us out of Egypt, which was a very fertile land, in order to cause us to die here in this desert. That was bad. But now you are also trying to boss us, and that is worse. 14 You have not given us a new land to live in, a land that has good fields and vineyards. You are only trying to blind these people. So we will not come to you."

### ULB:

12 Then Moses called for Dathan and Abiram, the sons of Eliab, but they said, "We will not come up. 13 Is it a small thing that you have brought us up out of a land flowing with milk and honey, to kill us in the wilderness? Now you want to make yourself ruler over us! 14 In addition, you have not brought us into a land flowing with milk and honey, or given us the fields and vineyards as an inheritance. Now do you want to blind us with empty promises? We will not come to you."

### translationNotes

#### Is it a small thing that you have brought us ... to kill us in the wilderness?

Dathan and Abiram use this question to rebuke Moses. It can be translated as a statement. AT: "You behave as though it was a small thing for you to bring us ... and kill us in the wilderness." (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### a small thing

"not enough" or "unimportant"

#### a land flowing with milk and honey

They spoke of the land being good for animals and plants as if the milk and honey from those animals and plants were flowing through the land. See how you translated this in Numbers 14:08. AT: "that is excellent for raising livestock and growing crops" or "a very fertile land" (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

#### to kill us

The people exaggerate because they will hold Moses responsible if any of them die. AT: "to have us die" (See: Hyperbole and Generalization)

### as an inheritance

They spoke of what God would give them to be theirs forever as if it were an inheritance. (See: Metaphor)

### Now do you want to blind us with empty promises?

The people used this question to accuse Moses. It can be translated as a statement. AT: "Now you want to blind us with empty promises." (See: Rhetorical Question)

### to blind us

Deceiving people is spoken of as making them blind. AT: "to deceive us" (See: Metaphor)

### with empty promises

They speak of promises that are not kept as if they are empty containers. AT: "with promises that you do not keep" or "by promising to do things that you do not do" (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- call, calls, calling, called
- honey, honeycomb
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled
- vineyard, vineyards
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- promise, promises, promised

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 16 General Notes
- Numbers 16 translationQuestions

## Numbers 16:15-17

### UDB:

15 Then Moses became very angry. He said to Yahweh, “Do not accept the grain offerings that they have brought. I have not taken anything from them, not even one donkey, and I have never done anything wrong to them, so they have no reason to complain against me.”

16 Then Moses said to Korah, ”You and all those who are with you must come here tomorrow and stand in front of Yahweh. Aaron will also be here. 17 You and all the 250 men who are with you must each take a pan in which to burn incense, and put incense in it, to burn it to be an offering to Yahweh. Aaron will do the same thing.”

### ULB:

15 Moses was very angry and said to Yahweh, “Do not respect their offering. I have not taken one donkey from them, and I have not harmed any of them.” 16 Then Moses said to Korah, ”Tomorrow you and all your company must go before Yahweh—you and they, and Aaron. 17 Each of you must take his censer and put incense in it. Then each man must bring before Yahweh his censer, two hundred and fifty censers. You and Aaron, also, must each bring your censer.”

### translationNotes

#### I have not taken one donkey from them

One donkey here represents anything that a person my take from someone else. AT: “I have not taken anything from them, not even one donkey” (See: Synecdoche)

#### censer

a container in which to burn incense

### translationWords

- anger, angered, angry
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- donkey, mule
- incense, incenses

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 16 General Notes
- Numbers 16 translationQuestions

## Numbers 16:18-19

### UDB:

[18] So each of those men got a pan to burn incense. They put in it incense and hot coals to light it, and then they all stood at the entrance of the sacred tent with Aaron and Moses. [19] Then Korah summoned all the people who supported him and who were against Moses, and they also gathered at the entrance of the tent. Then the glory of Yahweh appeared to all of them.

### ULB:

[18] So every man took his censer, put fire in it, laid incense in it, and stood at the entrance to the tent of meeting with Moses and Aaron. [19] Korah assembled all the community against Moses and Aaron at the entrance to the tent of meeting, and Yahweh's glory appeared to all the community.

### translationNotes

### translationWords

- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- tent of meeting
- Moses
- Aaron
- Korah, Korahite, Korahites
- Yahweh
- glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 16 General Notes
- Numbers 16 translationQuestions

## Numbers 16:20-22

### UDB:

[20] Yahweh said to Aaron and Moses, [21] "Get away from all these people, in order that I can get rid of them immediately!"

[22] But Aaron and Moses prostrated themselves on the ground. They pleaded with Yahweh, saying, "God, you are the one who caused all these people to live. Only one of these men has sinned. So, is it right for you to be angry with all the people?"

### ULB:

[20] Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and to Aaron: [21] "Separate yourselves from among this community that I may consume them immediately." [22] Moses and Aaron lay facedown and said, "God, the God of the spirits of all humanity, if one man sins, must you be angry with all the community?"

### translationNotes

#### that I may consume them

Destroying them is spoken of as if God were to eat them. AT: "that I may destroy them" or "and I will destroy them" (See: Metaphor)

#### lay facedown

This shows that Moses and Aaron were humbling themselves before God. (See: Symbolic Action)

#### the God of the spirits of all humanity

Here "spirits" represents the ability to live. AT: "the God who gives life to all humanity" (See: Metonymy)

#### if one man sins, must you be angry with all the community?

Moses and Aaron use this question to plead with God for the people. It can be translated as a statement. AT: "please do not be angry with all the community because one man sins" (See: Rhetorical Question)

### translationWords

- consume, consumes, consumed, consuming
- God
- spirit, spirits, spiritual
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 16 General Notes
- Numbers 16 translationQuestions

## Numbers 16:23-24

### UDB:

[23] Yahweh said to Moses, [24] "Okay, but tell all the people to get away from the tents of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram."

### ULB:

[23] Yahweh replied to Moses. He said, [24] "Speak to the community. Say, 'Get away from the tents of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram.' "

### translationNotes

### translationWords

- tent, tents, tentmakers

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 16 General Notes
- Numbers 16 translationQuestions

## Numbers 16:25-27

### UDB:

25 So Moses stood up and went to the tents of Dathan and Abiram. The Israelite leaders followed him. 26 He told the people, "Get away from the tents of these wicked men, and do not touch anything that belongs to them! If you touch anything, you will die because of their sins!" 27 So all the people moved away from the tents of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram. Dathan and Abiram came out of their tents with their wives and children and babies, and stood at the entrance of their tents.

### ULB:

25 Then Moses rose up and went to Dathan and Abiram; the elders of Israel followed him. 26 He spoke to the community and said, "Now leave the tents of these wicked men and touch nothing of theirs, or you will be consumed by all their sins." 27 So the community on every side of the tents of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram left them. Dathan and Abiram came out and stood at the entrance to their tents, with their wives, sons, and their little ones.

### translationNotes

#### you will be consumed

Being destroyed is spoken of as if they would be eaten. AT: "you will be destroyed" (See: Metaphor)

#### you will be consumed by all their sins

Being destroyed because of their sins is spoken of as if the sins would destroy them. AT: "you will be destroyed because of all their sins" (See: Metaphor)

#### you will be consumed by all their sins

This can be stated in active form. AT: "all their sins will destroy you" or "Yahweh will destroy you because of all their sins" (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- Moses
- elder, elders
- Israel, Israelites
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- Korah, Korahite, Korahites

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 16 General Notes
- Numbers 16 translationQuestions

## Numbers 16:28-30

### UDB:

[28] Then Moses said, "I was not the one who decided to do all these things that I have done. It was Yahweh who chose me and sent me to do them. And now he will prove that to you. [29] If these men die in a normal way, then it will be clear that Yahweh did not choose me. [30] But if Yahweh does something that has never happened before, if he causes the ground that is under their feet to open up and swallow these men and their families and all their possessions, and they fall into the opening and are buried while they are still alive, then you will know that these men have insulted Yahweh."

### ULB:

[28] Then Moses said, "By this you will know that Yahweh has sent me to do all these works, for I have not done them of my own accord. [29] If these men die a natural death such as normally happens, then Yahweh has not sent me. [30] But if Yahweh creates something new, and the earth opens its mouth and swallows them, with everything that they possess, and they go down alive into Sheol, then you must understand that these men have despised Yahweh."

### translationNotes

#### By this you will know

Here "this" refers to what Moses will say next.

#### the earth opens its mouth and swallows them

Moses speaks as if the earth were alive and the opening in the ground into which these people would fall were a large mouth that would eat them. AT: "and they fall into it and are buried underneath the ground" (See: Simile)

### translationWords

- know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge
- Yahweh
- send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out
- works, deeds, work, acts
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- create, creates, created, creation, creator
- family, families
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- Hades, Sheol

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 16 General Notes
- Numbers 16 translationQuestions

## Numbers 16:31-32

### UDB:

[31] As soon as Moses said this, the ground split open beneath those men. [32] It swallowed those men and their families and all those who were standing there with Korah and all of their possessions.

### ULB:

[31] As soon as Moses finished speaking all these words, the ground opened under those men. [32] The earth opened its mouth and swallowed them, their families, and all the people who belonged to Korah, as well as all their possessions.

### translationNotes

#### The earth opened its mouth and swallowed them

Moses speaks of the earth as if it were alive, and the hole that the people fell into as if it were the earth's mouth. AT: "The earth opened up like a large mouth, and they fell into it and were buried in it" or "There was a giant hole in the ground, and they fell into it and were buried in it" (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- word, words
- earth, earthen, earthly
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 16 General Notes
- Numbers 16 translationQuestions

## Numbers 16:33-35

### UDB:

[33] They fell into the opening in the ground while they were still alive, and all their possessions fell into the opening also. They disappeared, and the ground closed back up again. [34] They screamed as they fell, and all the people who were standing nearby heard them scream. The people were terrified and cried out as they ran away, saying, "We do not want the ground to swallow us, also!"

[35] And then a fire from Yahweh came down from the sky and burned up the 250 men who were burning the incense!

### ULB:

[33] So they and all that they possessed went down alive into Sheol. The earth closed over them, and they perished from among the community. [34] All Israel around them fled from their cries. They exclaimed, "The earth may swallow us up also!" [35] Then fire flashed out from Yahweh and devoured the 250 men who had offered incense.

### translationNotes

#### went down alive into Sheol

A similar phrase occurs in Numbers 16:30. See how you translated it there.

#### They exclaimed

"They" refers to "All Israel."

#### The earth may swallow us up also

The people speak of the earth as if it were alive. AT: "The earth might open up and we too will fall into it" or "If the earth opens up again, we too will fall into it and be buried" (See: Metaphor)

#### fire flashed out from Yahweh and devoured the 250 men

Being destroyed by fire is spoken of as if they were eaten by the fire. AT: "fire flashed out from Yahweh and destroyed the 250 men" (See: Metaphor)

#### 250 men

"two hundred and fifty men" (See: Numbers)

**translationWords**

- Hades, Sheol
- perish, perished, perishing, perishable
- Israel, Israelites
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- devour, devours, devoured, devouring
- incense, incenses

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 16 General Notes
- Numbers 16 translationQuestions

## Numbers 16:36-38

### UDB:

[36] Then Yahweh said to Moses, [37] "Tell Aaron's son Eleazar to take the pans that had incense in them away from the fire and to scatter the burning coals. The pans that those men were carrying are holy because they burned incense to me in them. [38] Those men have now died because of their sin. So Eleazar must take their pans and hammer the metal to make it become very thin. He must make a covering for the altar with that metal. Those pans were used to offer incense to me, so they are holy. What happened to those pans will now warn the Israelite people."

### ULB:

[36] Again Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, [37] "Speak to Eleazar son of Aaron the priest and let him take up the censers out of the flames, for the censers are set apart to me. Then let him scatter the burning coals at a distance. [38] Take the censers of those who lost their lives because of their sin. Let them be made into hammered plates as a covering over the altar. Those men did offer them before me, so they are set apart to me. They will be a sign of my presence to the people of Israel."

### translationNotes

#### out of the flames

This refers to the flames that burned the 250 men.

#### those who lost their lives

Losing their lives represents dying. AT: "those who died" (See: Metonymy)

#### Let them be made

Here "them" refers to the censers. This can be stated in active form. AT: "Let Eleazar make them" (See: Active or Passive)

#### they are set apart ... They will be a sign

Here "they" and "They" refer to the censers.

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Eleazar

- Aaron
- priest, priests, priesthood
- altar, altars
- set apart
- sign, signs, proof, reminder
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 16 General Notes
- Numbers 16 translationQuestions

## Numbers 16:39

### UDB:

[39-40] So Eleazar the priest collected the 250 pans for burning incense that had been used by the men who died in the fire. He hammered the pans very thin to make a covering for the altar, as Yahweh told Moses should be done. That warned the Israelites that only those who were descendants of Aaron were permitted to burn incense as an offering to Yahweh. If anyone else did that, the same thing would happen to him as happened to Korah and those with him.

### ULB:

[39] Eleazar the priest took the bronze censers that had been used by the men who were burned up, and they were hammered out into a covering for the altar, [40] to be a reminder to the people of Israel, so that no outsider who was not descended from Aaron should come up to burn incense before Yahweh, so they might not become like Korah and his group—just as Yahweh had commanded through Moses.

### translationNotes

#### that had been used by the men who were burned up

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that the men whom the fire had burned up had used” (See: Active or Passive)

#### become like Korah and his group

How they might become like them can be stated clearly. AT “die as Korah and his group had died” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- bronze
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Korah, Korahite, Korahites

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 16 General Notes
- Numbers 16 translationQuestions

## Numbers 16:41-43

### UDB:

41 But the following morning, all the Israelite people started to complain against Aaron and Moses saying “You have killed many people who belonged to Yahweh!”

42 When all the people gathered together to protest about what Aaron and Moses had done, they looked at the sacred tent and saw that the sacred cloud had covered it, and the glory of Yahweh had appeared. 43 Aaron and Moses went and stood in front of the sacred tent.

### ULB:

41 But the next morning all the community of the people of Israel complained against Moses and Aaron. They said, “You have killed Yahweh’s people.” 42 Then it happened, when the community had assembled against Moses and Aaron, that they looked toward the tent of meeting and, behold, the cloud was covering it. Yahweh’s glory appeared, 43 and Moses and Aaron came to the front of the tent of meeting.

### translationNotes

#### Then it happened

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

#### had assembled against Moses and Aaron

“had assembled to complain against Moses and Aaron”

#### behold

“suddenly.” Here “behold” shows that the people were surprised by what they saw.

### translationWords

- people of God, my people
- tent of meeting
- glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 16 General Notes
- Numbers 16 translationQuestions

## Numbers 16:44-46

### UDB:

44 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 45 "Get away from these people, in order that I can get rid of them immediately without injuring you two!" But Aaron and Moses prostrated themselves on the ground and prayed.

46 Moses said to Aaron, "Quickly take another pan and put in it some burning coals from the altar. Put incense in the pan, and carry it out among the people to atone for the sins of the people. Yahweh is very angry with them, and I know that a severe plague has already started among them."

### ULB:

44 Then Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said, 45 "Go away from in front of this community so that I may consume them immediately." Then Moses and Aaron lay down with their faces to the ground.
46 Moses said to Aaron, "Take the censer, put fire in it from off the altar, put incense in it, carry it quickly to the community, and make atonement for them, because anger is coming from Yahweh. The plague has begun."

### translationNotes

#### so that I may consume them

God speaks of destroying them as if he would eat them. AT: "so that I may destroy them" or "and I will destroy them" (See: Metaphor)

#### lay down with their faces to the ground

This indicates that Moses and Aaron are humbling themselves before God. (See: Symbolic Action)

#### anger is coming from Yahweh

Anger coming from God represents God showing his anger. AT: "Yahweh is showing us his anger" or "Yahweh is very angry and is acting according to his anger" (See: Metonymy)

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- consume, consumes, consumed, consuming
- Aaron
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- altar, altars

- incense, incenses
- atonement, atone, atones, atoned
- anger, angered, angry
- plague, plagues

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 16 General Notes
- Numbers 16 translationQuestions

## Numbers 16:47-48

### UDB:

47 So Aaron did what Moses told him. He took the burning incense out among the people. The plague had already started to strike the people, but Aaron continued to burn the incense to make atonement for the sins of the people. 48 He stood between the people who had already died and those who were still alive, and then the plague stopped.

### ULB:

47 So Aaron did as Moses directed. He ran into the middle of the community. The plague had quickly started to spread among the people, so he put in the incense and made atonement for the people. 48 Aaron stood between the dead and the living; in this way the plague was stopped.

### translationNotes

#### he put in the incense

Putting the incense in the censer here represents burning it. AT: “he burned the incense” (See: Metonymy)

#### the plague was stopped

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the plague stopped spreading” (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 16 General Notes
- Numbers 16 translationQuestions

## Numbers 16:49-50

### UDB:

49 But 14,700 people had already died from that plague, in addition to the people who died with Korah. 50 Then after the plague had ended, Aaron and Moses returned to the entrance of the sacred tent.

### ULB:

49 Those who died by the plague were 14,700 in number, besides those who had died in the matter of Korah. 50 Aaron returned to Moses at the entrance to the tent of meeting, and the plague ended.

### translationNotes

#### 14,700 in number

“fourteen thousand seven hundred in number” (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- Korah, Korahite, Korahites
- tent of meeting

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 16 General Notes
- Numbers 16 translationQuestions

## Numbers 17 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Which tribe should be special workers for God?

God told Moses that each tribe should bring one wooden staff and leave it overnight at the temple. The next day Aaron's staff representing the tribe of Levi bloomed and produced ripe almond nuts. This showed that the tribe of Levi was still the tribe chosen to be Yahweh's priests. (See: chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect and priest, priests, priesthood)

### Links:

- **Numbers 17:01 Notes**

## Numbers 17:1-2

### UDB:

[1] Then Yahweh said to Moses, [2] "Tell the Israelite people to bring to you twelve walking sticks. They should bring one from each of the leaders of the twelve tribes. You should carve each leader's name on his stick.

### ULB:

[1] Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said, [2] "Speak to the people of Israel and get staffs from them, one for each ancestral tribe, twelve staffs. Write each man's name on his staff.

### translationNotes

#### twelve

"12" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- staff, staffs
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 17 General Notes
- Numbers 17 translationQuestions

## Numbers 17:3-5

### UDB:

[3] There must be one stick for the leader of each tribe, so you must carve Aaron's name on the stick for the tribe of Levi. [4] Put those walking sticks inside the sacred tent, in front of the sacred chest that has in it the tablets on which the Ten Commandments are written. That is the place where I always talk with you. [5] Buds will sprout on the stick of the man whom I have chosen to be the priest. When the people see that, they will stop their constantly complaining about you because they will realize that he is the one whom I have chosen."

### ULB:

[3] You must write Aaron's name on Levi's staff. There must be one staff for each leader from his ancestors' tribe. [4] You must place the staffs in the tent of meeting in front of the covenant decrees, where I meet with you. [5] It will happen that the staff of the man whom I choose will bud. I will cause the complaints from the people of Israel to stop, which they are speaking against you."

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

#### Levi's staff

The name Levi here refers to the tribe of Levi.

#### for each leader from his ancestors' tribe

Here "his" refers to "each leader."

#### the covenant decrees

The phrase "the covenant decrees" refers to the box that held the tablets that the covenant decrees were written on. AT: "the ark of the covenant" or "the box that holds the covenant decrees" (See: Synecdoche)

#### the staff of the man whom I choose will bud

"buds will start to grow on the staff of the man whom I choose"

**cause the complaints from the people of Israel to stop, which they are speaking against you**

Here “complaints” is an abstract noun that can be expressed as a verb. AT: “make the people of Israel stop complaining against you” (See: Abstract Nouns)

**translationWords**

- Aaron
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- tent of meeting
- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- decree, decrees, decreed

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 17 General Notes
- Numbers 17 translationQuestions

## Numbers 17:6-7

### UDB:

[6] So Moses told the people what Yahweh had said. Then each of the twelve Israelite leaders, including Aaron, brought his walking stick to Moses. [7] Moses placed the sticks inside the sacred tent in front of the sacred chest.

### ULB:

[6] So Moses spoke to the people of Israel. All the tribal leaders gave him staffs, one staff from each leader, selected from each of the ancestral tribes, twelve staffs in all. Aaron's staff was among them. [7] Then Moses deposited the staffs before Yahweh in the tent of the covenant decrees.

### translationNotes

#### selected from each of the ancestral tribes

This can be stated in active form. AT: "whom Moses selected from each of the ancestor's tribes" (See: Active or Passive)

#### the tent of the covenant decrees

The phrase "the covenant decrees" refers to the box that held the tablets that the covenant decrees were written on. AT: "the tent of the covenant box" or "the tent that the covenant decrees are in" (See: Synecdoche)

### translationWords

- tent, tents, tentmakers

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 17 General Notes
- Numbers 17 translationQuestions

## Numbers 17:8-9

### UDB:

[8] The following morning, when he went into the tent, he saw that Aaron's stick, which represented the tribe of Levi, had sprouted. It had produced leaves and blossoms, and it had also produced almonds that were ripe! [9] Moses brought all the sticks out of the sacred tent and showed them to the people. Each of the twelve leaders took back his own stick.

### ULB:

[8] The next day Moses went into the tent of the covenant decrees and, behold, Aaron's staff for the tribe of Levi had budded. It grew buds and produced blossoms and ripe almonds! [9] Moses brought out all the staffs from before Yahweh to all the people of Israel, and each man took his staff.

### translationNotes

#### behold

The word "behold" here shows that something especially important has happened. You might have a similar word in your language.

### translationWords

- Moses
- staff, staffs
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- Yahweh
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- rod, rods

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 17 General Notes
- Numbers 17 translationQuestions

## Numbers 17:10-11

### UDB:

10 Then Yahweh said to Moses, “Put Aaron’s stick in front of the sacred chest, and let it stay there permanently. That will be a warning to people who want to rebel against me. Then no more people will die because of complaining against me.” 11 So Moses did what Yahweh had commanded.

### ULB:

10 Yahweh said to Moses, “Put Aaron’s staff in front of the covenant decrees. Keep it as a sign of guilt against the people who rebelled so that you may end complaints against me, or they will die.” 11 Moses did just as Yahweh had commanded him.

### translationNotes

#### the covenant decrees

The phrase “the covenant decrees” refers to the box that held the tablets that the covenant decrees were written on. AT: “the ark of the covenant” or “the box that holds the covenant decrees” (See: Synecdoche)

#### so that you may end complaints against me

The word “complaints” is an abstract noun that can be expressed as a verb. AT: “so that you may stop them from complaining against me” (See: Abstract Nouns)

#### or they will die

This is what would happen if the people were to continue complaining. God wanted to prevent this. AT: “so that they will not die”

### translationWords

- Aaron
- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- decree, decrees, decreed
- sign, signs, proof, reminder
- guilt, guilty
- rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 17 General Notes
- Numbers 17 translationQuestions

## Numbers 17:12-13

### UDB:

[12] Then the Israelite people said to Moses, "We are going to die! All of us are surely going to die! [13] Everyone who comes close to Yahweh's sacred tent dies. Are the rest of us going to die, also?"

### ULB:

[12] The people of Israel spoke to Moses and said, "We will die here. We will all perish! [13] Everyone who comes up, who approaches Yahweh's tabernacle, will die. Must we all perish?"

### translationNotes

#### We will die here. We will all perish!

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: Parallelism)

### translationWords

- perish, perished, perishing, perishable
- tabernacle

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 17 General Notes
- Numbers 17 translationQuestions

# Numbers 18 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

### Tithes and offerings

The tribes of Israel were required to bring a tithe to the Levites in order to free them to serve Yahweh as priests. There is a detailed description of what belonged to Yahweh in this chapter. (See: priest, priests, priesthood)

### Links:

- **Numbers 18:01 Notes**

## Numbers 18:1-2

### UDB:

[1] Yahweh said to Aaron, "You and your sons and the other members of your father's family are the ones who will be punished if anything bad happens to the things inside the sacred tent. And you and your sons will be punished if any priest does something bad. [2] Require that those who belong to your tribe, the tribe of Levi, must assist you and your sons while you perform your work at the sacred tent.

### ULB:

[1] Yahweh said to Aaron, "You, your sons, and your ancestor's clan will be responsible for all sins committed against the sanctuary. But only you and your sons with you will be responsible for all sins committed by anyone in the priesthood. [2] As for your fellow members of the tribe of Levi, your ancestors' tribe, you must bring them with you so they may join you and help you when you and your sons serve in front of the tent of the covenant decrees.

### translationNotes

#### all sins committed against the sanctuary

This can be stated in active form. AT: "all sins that anyone commits against the sanctuary" (See: Active or Passive)

#### all sins committed by anyone in the priesthood

This can be stated in active form. AT: "all sins that anyone in the priesthood commits" (See: Active or Passive)

#### anyone in the priesthood

"any priest"

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Aaron
- son, sons
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- commit, commits, committed, committing, commitment
- sanctuary
- priest, priests, priesthood

- member, members
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- tent, tents, tentmakers
- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- decree, decrees, decreed

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 18 General Notes
- Numbers 18 translationQuestions

## Numbers 18:3-5

### UDB:

[3] But while they do that work, they must not go near the sacred items inside the tent or near the altar. If they do that, they will die, and you will die, too! [4] They may assist you in doing all the work to take care of the sacred tent, but no one else is permitted to come near the place where you are working.

[5] You are the ones who will do the sacred work inside the sacred tent and at the altar. If you obey these instructions, I will not become very angry with the Israelite people again.

### ULB:

[3] They must serve you and the whole tent. However, they must not come near to anything in the holy place or connected with the altar, or they and also you will die. [4] They must join you and take care of the tent of meeting, for all the work connected with the tent. A foreigner must not come near you. [5] You must take responsibility for the holy place and for the altar so that my anger does not come on the people of Israel again.

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues speaking to Aaron.

#### They must serve you ... They must join you

"They" refers to members of the tribe of Levi; the word "you" is singular and refers to Aaron. (See: Forms of You)

#### or they and also you will die

Here "they" refers to any member of the tribe of Levi who comes "near to anything in the sanctuary;" the word "you" is plural and refers to both Aaron and the rest of the Levites who are serving in approved roles. (See: Pronouns)

#### not come near you. You must take responsibility

Here "you" is plural and refers to both Aaron and the rest of the Levites. (See: Forms of You)

#### so that my anger does not come on the people of Israel again

Possible meanings are 1) this represents God being extremely angry with his people. AT: "so that I do not become very angry with the people of Israel again" or 2) this represents God punishing them because of his anger. AT: "so that I do not punish the people of Israel again" (See: Metonymy)

**translationWords**

- altar, altars
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- tent of meeting
- works, deeds, work, acts
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners
- anger, angered, angry
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 18 General Notes
- Numbers 18 translationQuestions

## Numbers 18:6-7

### UDB:

[6] I myself have chosen the descendants of Levi from the other Israelites in order that they may be your special helpers. They are like a gift that I have given you to work at the sacred tent. [7] But it is you and your sons, who are the priests, who must perform all the details I have commanded concerning the altar and with what happens inside the Very Holy Place. I am giving to you this work of serving as priests. So anyone else who tries to do that work must be executed."

### ULB:

[6] Look, I myself have chosen your fellow members of the Levites from among the descendants of Israel. They are a gift to you, given to me to do the work connected to the tent of meeting. [7] But only you and your sons may exercise the priesthood regarding everything connected with the altar and everything inside the curtain. You yourselves must fulfill those responsibilities. I am giving you the priesthood as a gift. Any foreigner who approaches must be put to death."

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues speaking to Aaron.

#### They are a gift to you

Yahweh appointing the Levites to help Aaron is spoken of as if they were a gift that Yahweh were giving to Aaron. AT: "They are like a gift to you" (See: Metaphor)

#### given to me

Here "given" to God represents being set apart to serve God. This can be stated in active form. AT: "which I have set apart for myself" or "and I have set them apart for myself" (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)

#### only you and your sons

Here "you" and "your" are singular and refer to Aaron. Other occurrences of "you" and "your" are plural and refer to Aaron and his sons. (See: Forms of You)

#### exercise the priesthood

"do the work of priests"

#### everything inside the curtain

Being inside the curtain represents being inside the room behind the curtain. AT: “everything in the room behind the curtain” (See: Metonymy)

#### Any foreigner who approaches must be put to death

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Any foreigner who approaches must die” or “You must put to death any foreigner who approaches” (See: Active or Passive)

#### who approaches

What they should not approach can be stated clearly. AT: “who approaches the sacred things” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### translationWords

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- gift, gifts
- curtain, curtains
- fulfill, fulfilled

#### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 18 General Notes
- Numbers 18 translationQuestions

## Numbers 18:8-9

### UDB:

[8] Yahweh also said to Aaron, "I myself have appointed you to take care of all the sacred offerings that the Israelite people bring to me. I have given all these sacred offerings to you and to your sons. You and your descendants will get a share of these offerings permanently. [9] The parts of the offerings that are not completely burned on the altar belong to you. Those parts of the sacred offerings, including the flour offerings, the offerings to make atonement for sins and to remove the guilt of sins, are set apart, and are to be given to you and your sons.

### ULB:

[8] Then Yahweh said to Aaron, "Look, I have given you the duty of handling the offerings raised up to me, and all the holy offerings that the people of Israel give to me. I have given these offerings to you and your sons as your ongoing share. [9] This will belong to you from the most holy things that is kept from the fire. From every offering of theirs—every grain offering, every sin offering, and every guilt offering—they are set apart to you and to your sons.

### translationNotes

#### the offerings raised up to me

Here "raised up to me" represents giving or offering something to God. This can be stated in active form. AT: "the offerings that people give to me" (See: Idiom and Active or Passive)

#### I have given these offerings to you

God speaks as if he had already done this because it is a decision that he had already made. AT: "I give these offerings to you"

#### as your ongoing share

A share is a portion of something that someone receives. AT: "as the portion that you will continually receive"

#### kept from the fire

This can be stated in active form. AT: "that you do not completely burn on the altar" (See: Active or Passive)

**translationWords**

- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- son, sons
- grain offering, grain offerings
- sin offering, sin offerings
- guilt offering, guilt offerings

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 18 General Notes
- Numbers 18 translationQuestions

## Numbers 18:10-11

### UDB:

10 You are to eat it as a most holy offering. Every male in your clan may eat it. But you must have respect for those offerings because they are holy to you.

11 The priests lift up high the sacred offerings while they are standing in front of the altar. All of those offerings that the Israelites present to me belong to you and your sons and daughters. They will always be your share. All the members of your family who have performed the rituals to cause them to be acceptable to me are permitted to eat from these offerings.

### ULB:

10 These offerings are very holy; every male must eat it, for they are holy to you. 11 These are the offerings that will belong to you, set apart out of all their gifts of the wave offerings of the people of Israel. I have given them to you, your sons, and your daughters, as your portion forever. Everyone who is ceremonially clean in your family may eat any of these offerings.

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to Aaron.

### translationWords

- set apart
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
- family, families

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 18 General Notes
- Numbers 18 translationQuestions

## Numbers 18:12-13

### UDB:

12 I am also giving to you the first food that people harvest each year and bring to me—the best olive oil and new wine and grain. 13 All of the first crops that people harvest and bring to me belong to you. Anyone in your family who has performed the ritual to become acceptable to me is permitted to eat that food.

### ULB:

12 All the best of the oil, all the best of the new wine and grain, the firstfruits that the people give to me—all these things I have given to you. 13 The first ripe produce of all that is in their land, which they bring to me, will be yours. Everyone who is clean in your family may eat these things.

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to Aaron.

#### the firstfruits

This refers to the first of the best oil, wine, and grain that they harvest.

#### Everyone who is clean in your family

Being acceptable to God is spoken of as if they were clean. AT: “Everyone in your family who is acceptable to me” (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- oil
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- grain, grains, grainfields
- firstfruits

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 18 General Notes
- Numbers 18 translationQuestions

## Numbers 18:14-16

### UDB:

[14] Everything in Israel that is devoted to me, will be yours. [15] The firstborn males, both humans and domestic animals, that are offered to me, will be yours. But people must buy back their firstborn sons and the firstborn animals that may not be used for sacrifices. [16] They must buy them back when they are one month old. The price that they must pay for each one is five pieces of silver. They must weigh the silver on the scales that are in the sacred tent.

### ULB:

[14] Every devoted thing in Israel will be yours. [15] Everything that opens the womb, all the firstborn which the people offer to Yahweh, both of man and animal, will be yours. Nevertheless, the people must certainly buy back every firstborn son, and they must buy back the firstborn male of unclean animals. [16] Those that are to be bought back by the people must be bought back after becoming one month old. Then the people may buy them back, for the price of five shekels, by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel, which equals twenty gerahs.

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to Aaron.

#### Everything that opens the womb, all the firstborn

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. AT: “Every firstborn male” (See: Parallelism)

#### Everything that opens the womb

The idiom “opens the womb” means to be the first male that a mother gives birth to. (See: Idiom)

#### the people must certainly buy back every firstborn son

Instead of sacrificing their firstborn sons, people had to pay the priests for their sons.

#### Those that are to be bought back by the people must be bought back after becoming one month old

This can be stated in active form. AT: “The people must buy them back when they become one month old” (See: Active or Passive)

#### Those that are to be bought back

Most likely this refers only to firstborn humans that must be bought back and not to firstborn unclean animals.

#### five shekels ... which equals twenty gerahs

If it is necessary to use modern weight units, here are two ways of doing it. AT: “five pieces of silver ... each of which equals ten grams” or “fifty grams of silver, using the standard weights that are used in the sanctuary” (See: Biblical Weight)

#### five shekels

A shekel is a unit of weight. What was weighed can be stated clearly. AT: “five shekels of silver” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. It weighed twenty gerahs, which was about 11 grams. (See: Biblical Weight)

#### translationWords

- womb, wombs
- firstborn
- Yahweh
- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
- sanctuary

#### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 18 General Notes
- Numbers 18 translationQuestions

## Numbers 18:17-18

### UDB:

[17] But they are not permitted to buy back the firstborn cattle or sheep or goats. They are holy and have been set apart for me. Slaughter them and sprinkle their blood on the altar. Then completely burn the fat of those animals on the altar to be an offering to me. The smell as they burn will be very pleasing to me. [18] The meat from those offerings will be yours, just like the breast and right thigh of animals that are presented to me to restore fellowship with me, as the priest lifts them up high in front of the altar, are yours.

### ULB:

[17] But the firstborn of a cow, or the firstborn of a sheep, or the firstborn of a goat—you must not buy back these animals; they are set apart to me. You must sprinkle their blood on the altar and burn their fat as an offering made by fire, an aroma pleasing to Yahweh. [18] Their meat will be yours. Like the raised breast and the right thigh, their meat will be yours.

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to Aaron.

#### You must sprinkle their blood

That he must kill the animals first can be stated clearly. AT: “You must kill them and sprinkle their blood” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### made by fire

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that you make by fire” or “that you burn with fire on the altar” (See: Active or Passive)

#### an aroma pleasing to Yahweh

The Lord’s pleasure with the aroma represents his pleasure with the person who burns the offering. AT: “and Yahweh will be pleased with you” (See: Metaphor)

#### the raised breast and the right thigh

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the breast and the right thigh that you lift up as a gift to me” (See: Active or Passive)

**translationWords**

- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids
- set apart
- blood
- altar, altars
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 18 General Notes
- Numbers 18 translationQuestions

## Numbers 18:19-20

### UDB:

[19] Anything that the Israelite people present to me as holy gifts, I am giving to you. They are for you and your sons and daughters to eat. They will always be your share. This is an agreement that I am making with you, an agreement that will last forever. I am also making this agreement with your descendants."

[20] Yahweh also said to Aaron, "You priests will not receive any of the land or the property like the other Israelite people will receive. I am what you will receive.

### ULB:

[19] All the holy offerings that the people of Israel present to Yahweh, I have given to you, and to your sons and to your daughters with you, as a continual share. It is an everlasting covenant of salt, a binding covenant forever, before Yahweh for both you and your descendants with you." [20] Yahweh said to Aaron, "You will have no inheritance in the people's land, nor will you have any share of property among the people. I am your share and inheritance among the people of Israel.

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to Aaron.

#### I have given to you

God speaks as if he had already done this because it is a decision that he had already made. AT: "I give to you"

#### as a continual share

A share is a portion of something that someone receives. AT: "as the portion that you will continually receive"

#### an everlasting covenant of salt ... a binding covenant forever

The two phrases refer to the same thing. Together they emphasize that the covenant will endure forever. AT: "an agreement forever" (See: Parallelism)

#### an everlasting covenant of salt

"a covenant made with salt." Salt represented permanence and was used in offerings and covenant meals. AT: "a permanent covenant" or "an everlasting covenant" (See: Symbolic Action)

#### You will have no inheritance in the people's land

God speaks of the land that the other people will possess as if they will inherit it. AT: "You will not possess any of the people's land" or "You will not receive any of the land that the Israelites will possess" (See: Metaphor)

#### I am your share and inheritance

God speaks of the great honor that Aaron and his descendants will have by serving him as priests as if God were something that they will inherit. AT: "Instead, I am what you will have" or "Instead, I will allow you to serve me and I will provide for you through that service" (See: Metaphor)

#### translationWords

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- son, sons
- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Aaron
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

#### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 18 General Notes
- Numbers 18 translationQuestions

## Numbers 18:21-22

### UDB:

[21] When the Israelite people bring to me a tenth of all the crops and of their newborn animals, I will give that to you descendants of Levi. That will be your payment for the work you do at the sacred tent. [22] The other Israelites must not go near that tent. If they go near it, I will consider that their doing that is a sin, and they will die for committing that sin.

### ULB:

[21] To the descendants of Levi, look, I have given all the tithes in Israel as their inheritance in return for the service that they provide in working at the tent of meeting. [22] From now on the people of Israel must not come near the tent of meeting, or they will be responsible for this sin and die.

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to Aaron.

#### look, I have given

The word "look" here adds emphasis to what follows. AT: "indeed, I have given"

#### as their inheritance

God speaks of what Aaron and his descendants will receive as if they will inherit it. AT: "as their portion of what I give to all Israel" (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- tent of meeting
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 18 General Notes
- Numbers 18 translationQuestions

## Numbers 18:23-24

### UDB:

[23] Only the descendants of Levi are permitted to work at the sacred tent, and they will be punished if anything bad happens to it. That is a law that will never be changed. You descendants of Levi will not receive any land to own among all the other Israelite people. [24] The Israelites must present one tenth of all their crops and animals as offerings to me, and that is what I give to the descendents of Levi so they can provide for themselves. This is why I said that I will not give the descendants of Levi any land to own.

### ULB:

[23] The Levites must do the work connected to the tent of meeting. They will be responsible for any sin regarding it. This will be a permanent law throughout your people's generations. Among the people of Israel they must have no inheritance. [24] For the tithes of the people of Israel, which they offer as a contribution to me—it is these that I have given to the Levites as their inheritance. That is why I said to them, 'They must have no inheritance among the people of Israel.'"

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to Aaron.

#### Among the people of Israel they must have no inheritance

God speaks of the land that the other people of Israel will possess as if they will inherit it. The Levites would not receive any of the land. AT: "they must not have any of the land that the other people of Israel receive" (See: Metaphor)

#### as their inheritance

God speaks of what Aaron and his descendants will receive as if they will inherit it. AT: "as their portion of what I give to all Israel" (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
- generation

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 18 General Notes
- Numbers 18 translationQuestions

## Numbers 18:25-27

### UDB:

[25] Yahweh said to Moses, [26] "Tell this to the descendants of Levi, 'When you receive one tenth of all the crops and animals from the Israelite people, you must present one tenth of all that to me to be a sacred offering, [27] just like the other Israelites present one tenth of the grain and wine that they produce.

### ULB:

[25] Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, [26] "You must speak to the Levites and say to them, 'When you receive from the people of Israel the tenth that I have given to you from them for your inheritance, you will present a contribution from it to Yahweh, a tenth of the tithe. [27] Your contribution must be considered by you as if it were a tenth of the grain from the threshing floor or of the production from the winepress.

### translationNotes

#### When you receive from the people of Israel the tenth that I have given to you from them

The people of Israel would offer Yahweh a tenth of their crops and animals, and Yahweh would give that to the Levites.

#### for your inheritance

God speaks of what Aaron and his descendants will receive as if they will inherit it. AT: "as your portion of what I give to all Israel" (See: Metaphor)

#### Your contribution must be considered by you

This can be stated in active form. AT: "You must consider your contribution" (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- receive, receives, received, receiving, receiver
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- grain, grains, grainfields
- thresh, threshes, threshed, threshing
- winepress

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 18 General Notes
- Numbers 18 translationQuestions

## Numbers 18:28-29

### UDB:

[28] You must present to me one tenth of all that you receive from the Israelite people. That will be your sacred offering to me. You must present it to Aaron. [29] Select the best parts of the things that are given to you to present them to me.'

### ULB:

[28] So you also must make a contribution to Yahweh from all the tithes that you receive from the people of Israel. From them you must give his contribution to Aaron the priest. [29] Out of all the gifts you receive, you must make every contribution to Yahweh. You must do this from all the best and the holiest things that have been given to you.'

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

God continues tell Moses what he must tell the Levites.

#### you must give his contribution to Aaron the priest

Here "his" refers to Yahweh. It was Yahweh's contribution in the sense that they had to give it to Yahweh. AT: "you must give Aaron the priest the contribution that you owe Yahweh"

#### that have been given to you

This can be stated in active form. AT: "that the people of Israel give to you" (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes
- Aaron
- priest, priests, priesthood
- gift, gifts
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 18 General Notes
- Numbers 18 translationQuestions

## Numbers 18:30-32

### UDB:

30 Also, tell this to the descendants of Levi, 'When you present those best portions of grain and wine as your offering to me, I will consider that those gifts are as though they came from your own grain and wine. 31 You descendants of Levi and your families are permitted to eat the rest of that food, and you may eat it wherever you want to, because it is your payment for the work that you do at the sacred tent. 32 If you give to the priests the best portions of what you receive, you will not be punished by me for accepting one tenth of the gifts that the people bring to me. But you must consider those gifts to be sacred. If you sin by eating those things in ways that are contrary to these regulations that I have given to you, you will be executed.'"

### ULB:

30 Therefore you must say to them, 'When you present the best of it, then it must be credited to the Levites as the product from the threshing floor and the winepress. 31 You may eat the rest of your gifts in any place, you and your families, because it is your pay in return for your work in the tent of meeting. 32 You will not incur any guilt by eating and drinking it, if you have presented to Yahweh the best of what you have received. But you must not profane the holy offerings of the people of Israel, or you will die.'"

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to Moses.

#### the best of it

"the best of what you have received from the people of Israel"

#### the rest of your gifts

The "gifts" are the offerings that the Israelites give to God and that the Levites receive from them.

#### You will not incur any guilt by eating and drinking it

"You will not be guilty when you eat and drink it"

### translationWords

- family, families

- tent of meeting
- guilt, guilty
- profane, profaned, profaning
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 18 General Notes
- Numbers 18 translationQuestions

## Numbers 19 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Ritually clean

This chapter talks about being clean. Some of these rituals were required to make a priest clean in order to set them apart to serve Yahweh. Other rituals were required because they prevented people from getting sick. (See: clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean)

### Links:

- **Numbers 19:01 Notes**

## Numbers 19:1-2

### UDB:

[1] Yahweh said to Aaron and Moses, [2] "I am now giving to you another regulation. Tell the Israelite people to bring to you one reddish brown cow that has no defects. It must be an animal that has never been used for plowing ground.

### ULB:

[1] Yahweh spoke to Moses and Aaron. He said, [2] "This is a statute, a law which I am commanding you: Say to the people of Israel that they must bring to you a red heifer without flaw or blemish, and which has never carried a yoke.

### translationNotes

#### a statute, a law

These two words share similar meanings. AT: "a statute of the law" or "a legal statute" (See: Doublet)

#### bring to you

Here "you" is singular and refers to Moses.

#### flaw or blemish

These two words mean basically the same thing and emphasize that this animal is to have no imperfections. (See: Doublet)

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Aaron
- statute, statutes
- law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
-
- blemish, blemishes, unblemished
- yoke, yokes, yoked

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 19 General Notes
- Numbers 19 translationQuestions

## Numbers 19:3-6

### UDB:

[3] Give it to Eleazar the priest. He must take it outside the camp and someone will slaughter it. [4] And Eleazar must dip one of his fingers in the blood and sprinkle some of it seven times on the ground near the sacred tent. [5] Then, while Eleazar watches, the cow must be burned completely—its hide, its meat, the rest of its blood, and even its dung. [6] Eliezer then must take a stick of cedar wood, a stalk of a plant named hyssop, and some scarlet yarn, and throw them into the fire where the cow is burning.

### ULB:

[3] Give the heifer to Eleazar the priest. He must bring it outside the camp, and someone must kill it in front of him. [4] Eleazar the priest must take some of its blood with his finger and sprinkle it seven times toward the front of the tent of meeting. [5] Another priest must burn the heifer in his sight. He must burn its hide, flesh, and its blood with its dung. [6] The priest must take cedarwood, hyssop, and scarlet wool, and throw it all into the middle of the burning heifer.

### translationNotes

#### in his sight

“in his view” or “so he could see it”

#### priest must take cedarwood

“The priest” refers to Eleazar.

#### scarlet wool

“red wool”

### translationWords

- Eleazar
- priest, priests, priesthood
- blood
- tent of meeting
- flesh
- dung, manure
- cedar, cedars, cedarwood

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 19 General Notes
- Numbers 19 translationQuestions

## Numbers 19:7-8

### UDB:

[7] Then the priest must wash his clothes and bathe. After doing that, he may return to the camp. But he will be unfit for doing any sacred work until that evening. [8] The man who burns the cow must also wash his clothes and bathe, and he will also be unacceptable to me until that evening.

### ULB:

[7] Then he must wash his clothes and bathe in water. Then he may come into the camp, where he will remain unclean until the evening. [8] The one who has burned the heifer must wash his clothes in water and bathe in water. He will remain unclean until the evening.

### translationNotes

#### Then he must wash his clothes

Here “he” refers to Eleazar the priest.

#### he will remain unclean

Being unacceptable to God or unfit to do any sacred work is spoken of as not being clean. (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 19 General Notes
- Numbers 19 translationQuestions

## Numbers 19:9-10

### UDB:

[9] Then someone who has not become unacceptable to me must gather up the ashes of the cow and put them in a sacred place outside the camp. The ashes must be kept there for the people of Israel to use when they mix it with water for the ritual to remove the guilt of sin. [10] The man who gathers up the ashes of the cow must also wash his clothes, and he also will be unfit to do anymore sacred work until that evening. That is a regulation that will never be changed. It must be obeyed by you Israelite people and by any foreigners who live among you.

### ULB:

[9] Someone who is clean must gather up the heifer's ashes and put them outside the camp in a clean place. These ashes must be kept for the community of the people of Israel. They will mix the ashes with water for purification from sin, since the ashes were from a sin offering. [10] The one who gathered the heifer's ashes must wash his clothes. He will remain unclean until the evening. This will be a permanent law for the people of Israel and the foreigners who stay with them.

### translationNotes

#### Someone who is clean

Being acceptable to God and fit to do sacred work is spoken of as being clean. (See: Metaphor)

#### These ashes must be kept

This can be stated in active form. AT: "You must keep these ashes" (See: Active or Passive)

#### in a clean place

Being acceptable to God is spoken of as being clean. (See: Metaphor)

#### He will remain unclean

Being unacceptable to God or unfit to do any sacred work is spoken of as not being clean. (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
-
- ash, ashes, dust

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- pure, purify, purification
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin offering, sin offerings
- law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 19 General Notes
- Numbers 19 translationQuestions

## Numbers 19:11-13

### UDB:

[11] All those who touch a corpse will be unacceptable to me for seven days. [12] On the third day and on the seventh day after touching a corpse, in order to become acceptable to me again, they must sprinkle on themselves some of that water for removing the guilt of their sin. If they do not do that on both of those days, they will continue to be unacceptable to me. [13] All those who touch a corpse, and do not perform in the correct way the ritual to become acceptable to me again, defile Yahweh's sacred tent. They will no longer be permitted to live among the Israelite people. The water to remove the guilt of sin was not sprinkled on them, so they continue to be unacceptable to me.

### ULB:

[11] Whoever touches the dead body of any man will be unclean for seven days. [12] Such a person must purify himself on the third day and on the seventh day. Then he will be clean. But if he does not purify himself the third day, then he will not be clean on the seventh day. [13] Whoever touches a dead person, the body of a man who has died, and does not purify himself—this person defiles Yahweh's tabernacle. That person must be cut off from Israel because the water for impurity was not sprinkled on him. He will remain unclean; his uncleanness will remain on him.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

The ideas of "clean" and "purify" represent being acceptable to God. (See: Metaphor)

#### General Information:

The ideas of "unclean," "defile," "impurity," and "uncleanness" represent not being acceptable to God. (See: Metaphor)

#### the dead body of any man

"the dead body of any person"

#### purify himself

The person would ask someone who is clean to purify him by sprinkling on him some water mixed with the cows ashes. Asking someone to purify him is spoken of as if he were to purify himself. AT: "ask someone to purify him" (See: Metonymy)

#### if he does not purify himself the third day, then he will not be clean on the seventh day

This can be stated in a positive form. AT: “he will be clean on the seventh day only if he purifies himself the third day” (See: Double Negatives)

#### That person must be cut off

Here the phrase “be cut off” means to be disowned and sent away. See how you translated this in Numbers 9:13. AT: “That person must be sent away” or “you must send that person away” (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

#### the water for impurity was not sprinkled on him

This can be stated in active form. AT: “no one sprinkled the water for impurity on him” (See: Active or Passive)

#### the water for impurity

“the water that is sprinkled on impure things to make them pure” or “the water for making things pure”

#### He will remain unclean; his uncleanness will remain on him

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: Parallelism)

#### translationWords

- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- body, bodies
- defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled
- Yahweh
- tabernacle
- cut off, cuts off, cutting off

#### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 19 General Notes
- Numbers 19 translationQuestions

## Numbers 19:14-16

### UDB:

14 There is another practice that must be performed when someone dies inside a tent. All those who were inside that tent when that person died or who enter that tent will be unacceptable to me for seven days. 15 Any jars that are inside that tent that are not covered are not permitted to be used. 16 If someone who is out in a field touches the corpse of someone who was murdered, or who died from natural causes, or if someone touches a bone from some human or touches a grave, that person will be unacceptable to me for seven days.

### ULB:

14 This is the law for when someone dies in a tent. Everyone who goes into the tent and everyone who is already in the tent will be unclean for seven days. 15 Every open container with no cover becomes unclean. 16 Similarly, anyone outside a tent who touches someone who has been killed with a sword, any other dead body, a human bone, or a grave—that person will be unclean for seven days.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

The idea of "unclean" represents not being acceptable to God or fit for use. (See: Metaphor)

#### Every open container with no cover becomes unclean

This can be stated in a positive form. AT: "Open containers will remain clean only if they have covers" (See: Double Negatives)

#### someone who has been killed with a sword

This can be stated in active form. AT: "someone whom someone else has killed with a sword" (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- tent, tents, tentmakers
- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
- sword, swords, swordsmen
- grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 19 General Notes
- Numbers 19 translationQuestions

## Numbers 19:17-19

### UDB:

17 For someone like that to become acceptable to me again, some of the ashes from the cow that was burned must be taken and put in a jar. Then some fresh water must be poured over the ashes. 18 Then someone who has not become unacceptable to me must take a stalk of a plant named hyssop and dip it into the water. Then that person must sprinkle some of the water on the tent where that person died, on the things that are in the tent, and on the people who were in the tent. He must also sprinkle some of that water on any person who touched a human bone or who touched a person who had been killed, or who touched a person who died of natural causes, or who touched a grave. 19 On the third day and on the seventh day after that, the person who is acceptable to me must sprinkle some of that water on those who have become unacceptable to me. On the seventh day, the people who are performing that ritual to become acceptable to me again must wash their clothes and bathe. If they do that, on that evening they will become acceptable to me again.

### ULB:

17 Do this for the unclean person: Take some ashes from the burnt sin offering and mix them in a jar with fresh water. 18 Someone who is clean must then take hyssop, dip it in the water, and sprinkle it on the tent, on all the containers inside the tent, on the persons who were there, and on anyone who touched the bone, the one who was killed, the one who died, or the grave. 19 On the third day and on the seventh day, the clean person must sprinkle the unclean person. On the seventh day the unclean person must purify himself. He must wash his clothes and bathe in water. At evening he will become clean.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

The idea of “unclean” represents not being acceptable to God or fit for use. (See: Metaphor)

#### General Information:

The ideas of “clean” and “purify” here represent being acceptable to God. (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- ash, ashes, dust
- sin offering, sin offerings
- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
- pure, purify, purification

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 19 General Notes
- Numbers 19 translationQuestions

## Numbers 19:20-22

### UDB:

[20] If those who have become unacceptable to me do not become acceptable to me again by doing this, they will no longer be permitted to live among to the Israelite people, because they have defiled my sacred tent. They did not sprinkle on themselves the water that removes the guilt of their sins, so they remain unacceptable to me. [21] That is a law for the Israelite people that will never be changed. Those who sprinkle that water on themselves must then wash their clothes. And anyone who touches that water which removes guilt for sins will remain unacceptable to God until that evening.

[22] Anything and any person that someone who has become unacceptable to me has touched will remain unacceptable to me until that evening."

### ULB:

[20] But anyone who remains unclean, who refuses to purify himself—that person will be cut off from the community, because he has defiled Yahweh's sanctuary. The water for impurity has not been sprinkled on him; he remains unclean. [21] This will be an ongoing law concerning these situations. The one who sprinkles the water for impurity must wash his clothes. The one who touches the water for impurity will become unclean until evening. [22] Whatever the unclean person touches will become unclean. The person who touches it will become unclean until evening."

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

The ideas of "clean" and "purify" represent being acceptable to God. (See: Metaphor)

#### General Information:

The ideas of "unclean," "defile," and "impurity," represent not being acceptable to God. (See: Metaphor)

#### that person will be cut off

Here the phrase "be cut off" means to be disowned and sent away. See how you translated this in Numbers 9:13. AT: "That person must be sent away" or "you must send that person away" (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

#### The water for impurity has not been sprinkled on him

This can be stated in active form. AT: "No one has sprinkled the water for impurity on him" (See: Active or Passive)

### the water for impurity

"the water that is sprinkled on impure things to make them pure" or "the water for making things pure." See how you translated this in Numbers 19:13

### translationWords

- cut off, cuts off, cutting off
- defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled
- Yahweh
- sanctuary
- law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 19 General Notes
- Numbers 19 translationQuestions

# Numbers 20 General Notes

## Special concepts in this chapter

### Moses' sin

God told Moses to command water to come out of a rock for the people who were complaining that they had no water. Moses became angry with the people and hit the rock twice. God told him that he and Aaron would not be allowed to go into Canaan because he disobeyed by hitting the rock instead of just speaking to it. (See: sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning)

## Important figures of speech in this chapter

### "It would have been better if we had died when our fellow Israelites died in front of Yahweh"

It is possible that this statement should be taken as hyperbole, but it does not have to be taken this way. The translator should probably avoid treating this as hyperbole. (See: Hyperbole and Generalization)

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### Wilderness of Sin

Sin is the name of a place in this chapter. It is not a place that is known for its sin. The name is not related to the meaning of the word "sin." (See: sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning)

## Links:

- **Numbers 20:01 Notes**

## Numbers 20:1

### UDB:

[1] In the first month of the next year, the Israelite people traveled to the wilderness of Zin and camped near Kadesh. While they were there, Moses' sister Miriam died and was buried there.

### ULB:

[1] So the people of Israel, the whole community, went into the wilderness of Zin in the first month; they stayed at Kadesh. There Miriam died and was buried.

### translationNotes

#### the wilderness of Zin

The word "Zin" here is the Hebrew name of the wilderness. (See: Copy or Borrow Words)

#### the first month

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God rescued the Israelites from the Egyptians. The first month is during the last part of March and the first part of April on the Western calendar. (See: Hebrew Months)

#### was buried

This can be stated in active form. AT: "they buried her" (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh
- Miriam
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- bury, buries, buried, burying, burial

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 20 General Notes
- Numbers 20 translationQuestions

## Numbers 20:2-3

### UDB:

[2] There was no water for the people to drink there, so they came to Aaron and Moses. [3] They complained and said, "We wish that we had died in front of Yahweh's sacred tent when our fellow Israelites died!

### ULB:

[2] There was no water for the community, so they assembled together against Moses and Aaron. [3] The people complained against Moses. They said, "It would have been better if we had died when our fellow Israelites died in front of Yahweh!

### translationNotes

#### they assembled

Here "they" refers to the community.

#### assembled together

"came as a mob"

#### in front of Yahweh

This represents being in front of Yahweh's tent. (See: Metonymy)

### translationWords

- Moses
- Aaron
- Yahweh

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 20 General Notes
- Numbers 20 translationQuestions

## Numbers 20:4-5

### UDB:

[4] Did you bring us, who are Yahweh's people, into this desert to die along with our livestock? [5] Why did you bring us from Egypt to this miserable place? There is no grain, there are no figs, no grapes, and no pomegranates here. And there is no water for us to drink!"

### ULB:

[4] Why have you brought Yahweh's community into this wilderness to die here, we and our animals? [5] Why did you make us come up out of Egypt to bring us to this horrible place? Here there is no seed, figs, vines, or pomegranates, and there is no water to drink."

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

The people of Israel continue to complain to Moses and Aaron.

#### Why have you brought Yahweh's community into this wilderness to die here, we and our animals?

The people use this question in order to complain against Moses and Aaron. It can be translated as a statement. AT: "You should not have brought Yahweh's community into this wilderness to die here, we and our animals." (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### Why did you make us come up out of Egypt to bring us to this horrible place?

The people use this question in order to complain against Moses and Aaron. It can be translated as a statement. AT: "You should not have made us leave Egypt to bring us to this horrible place." (See: Rhetorical Question)

### translationWords

- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- seed, semen
- fig, figs
- vine, vines
- pomegranate, pomegranates

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 20 General Notes
- Numbers 20 translationQuestions

## Numbers 20:6

### UDB:

[6] Moses and Aaron turned away from the people and went to the entrance of the sacred tent and prostrated themselves on the ground. Just then Yahweh appeared to them with his bright glory.

### ULB:

[6] So Moses and Aaron went away from in front of the assembly. They went to the entrance of the tent of meeting and lay facedown. There Yahweh's brilliant glory appeared to them.

### translationNotes

#### lay facedown

This indicates that Moses and Aaron are humbling themselves before God. (See: Symbolic Action)

### translationWords

- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled
- tent of meeting
- glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 20 General Notes
- Numbers 20 translationQuestions

## Numbers 20:7-9

### UDB:

[7] When Yahweh appeared in glory, he said, [8] "You and Aaron must take Aaron's walking stick with you and gather all the people together. While the people are watching, command that large rock over there to pour out water. Water for the people will flow from it. All they and all their livestock will have enough water to drink."

[9] So Moses did what Yahweh told him to do. He took Aaron's walking stick from the place in the sacred tent where it was kept.

### ULB:

[7] Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, [8] "Take the staff and assemble the community, you, and Aaron your brother. Speak to the rock before their eyes, and command it to flow with water. You will produce water for them out of that rock, and you must give it to the community and their cattle to drink." [9] Moses took the staff from before Yahweh, as Yahweh had commanded him to do.

### translationNotes

#### before their eyes

Here the people are represented by their "eyes" to emphasize what they see. AT: "while they watch you" (See: Synecdoche)

#### from before Yahweh

This represents Yahweh's tent. AT: "from Yahweh's tent" (See: Metonymy)

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- staff, staffs
- Aaron
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 20 General Notes
- Numbers 20 translationQuestions

## Numbers 20:10-11

### UDB:

10 Then Moses and Aaron summoned all the people to gather at the rock. Then Moses shouted to them, “All you rebellious people, listen! Is it necessary for us to bring to you water from this rock?” 11 Then Moses raised his hand and instead of speaking to the rock, he struck the rock two times with the walking stick. And water gushed out. So all the people and their livestock drank all the water that they wanted.

### ULB:

10 Then Moses and Aaron gathered the assembly together before the rock. Moses said to them, “Listen now, you rebels. Must we bring water out of this rock for you?” 11 Then Moses raised his hand and struck the rock twice with his staff, and much water came out. The community drank, and their cattle drank.

### translationNotes

#### Must we bring water out of this rock for you?

Moses asks this question out of frustration to rebuke the people for complaining. It can be translated as a statement. AT: “You complain that there is no water. Well, we will make water come out of this rock.” or “You would not be happy even if we caused water to come out of this rock. But I will do it anyway.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### Must we bring

Here “we” refers to Moses and Aaron and may include Yahweh, but does not include the people. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive “We”)

### translationWords

- rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 20 General Notes
- Numbers 20 translationQuestions

## Numbers 20:12-13

### UDB:

12 But Yahweh said to Aaron and Moses, “You did not trust me or honor me before the people of Israel, and so you will not lead them into the land I have given to them!”

13 Later this place was called the Meribah, which means ‘arguing’, because there the Israelite people argued against Yahweh, and there he showed his honor and holiness to them by giving them water.

### ULB:

12 Then Yahweh said to Moses and Aaron, “Because you did not trust me or honor me as holy in the eyes of the people of Israel, you will not bring this assembly into the land I have given them.”
13 This place was called the waters of Meribah because the people of Israel had quarreled with Yahweh there, and he showed himself to them as holy.

### translationNotes

#### Because you did not trust me or honor me as holy in the eyes of the people of Israel

How Moses showed that he did not trust and honor God can be stated clearly. AT: “Because you did not trust me or honor me as holy in the eyes of the people of Israel, but struck the rock instead of speaking to it as I told you” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### in the eyes of the people of Israel

Here the people are represented by their “eyes” to emphasize what they see. AT: “while the people of Israel were watching you” (See: Synecdoche)

#### This place was called

This can be stated in active form. AT: “People called this place” (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled
- call, calls, calling, called
- water, waters, watered, watering

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 20 General Notes
- Numbers 20 translationQuestions

## Numbers 20:14-16

### UDB:

[14] While the people were at Kadesh, Moses sent messengers to the king of Edom to tell him this,

"Your relatives, the Israelite people, are sending you this message. You know the many troubles that have happened to us. [15] You know that our ancestors went down to Egypt. You know that they stayed there for many years. They suffered because the rulers of Egypt caused them to become their slaves and to work very hard.

[16] But when they called out to Yahweh, he heard them and sent an angel who brought them out of Egypt. Now we have set up our tents here at Kadesh, a town on the border of your land.

### ULB:

[14] Moses sent messengers from Kadesh to the king of Edom: Your brother Israel says this: "You know all the difficulties that have happened to us. [15] You know that our ancestors went down to Egypt and lived in Egypt a long time. The Egyptians treated us harshly and also our ancestors. [16] When we called out to Yahweh, he heard our voice and sent an angel and brought us out of Egypt. Look, we are in Kadesh, a city on the border of your land.

### translationNotes

#### Your brother Israel

Moses uses this phrase to emphasize that the Israelites and the Edomites are related because their ancestors, Jacob and Esau, were brothers.

#### When we called out to Yahweh

"When we prayed to Yahweh begging him to help us"

#### he heard our voice

Here "voice" represents their crying or what they said to him. AT: "he heard our cry" or "he heard what we asked for" (See: Metonymy)

#### Look

"Look" here marks a change in topic. They were just speaking about their past. Now they speak about their present situation as they prepare to ask the king to do something.

**translationWords**

- Moses
- send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out
- messenger, messengers
- Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Edom, Edomite, Edomites, Idumea
- brother, brothers
- Israel, Israelites
- know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- Yahweh
- voice, voices
- angel, angels, archangel

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 20 General Notes
- Numbers 20 translationQuestions

## Numbers 20:17

### UDB:

17 Please allow us to travel through your country. We will be careful to not walk through your fields and your vineyards. We will not even drink water from your wells. As we travel, we will stay on the king's highway, the main road that goes from the south to the north, and we will not leave that road until we have crossed the border of your country in the north."

### ULB:

17 I am asking you to let us pass through your land. We will not pass through field or vineyard, nor will we drink the water in your wells. We will go along the king's highway. We will not turn aside to the right hand or to the left until we have passed your border."

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

The messengers continue speaking to the king of Edom.

#### We will not turn aside to the right hand or to the left

Here "turn aside" represents leaving the road. AT: "We will not leave the road in any direction" (See: Metonymy)

#### the king's highway

This is the main road that connects Damascus in the north to the Gulf of Aqabah in the south.

### translationWords

- vineyard, vineyards
- cistern, cisterns, well, wells
- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 20 General Notes
- Numbers 20 translationQuestions

## Numbers 20:18-19

### UDB:

18 But the king of Edom refused. He replied, “Stay out of my country! If you try to enter it, I will send my army to attack you!”

19 The Israelite messengers replied, “If we travel through your country, we will stay on the main road. If we and any of our livestock drink any of your water, we will pay for it. We want only to travel through your country. We do not want anything else.”

### ULB:

18 But the king of Edom replied to him, “You may not pass through here. If you do, I will come with the sword to attack you.” 19 Then the people of Israel said to him, “We will go along the highway. If we or our livestock drink your water, we will pay for it. Just let us walk through on foot, without doing anything else.”

### translationNotes

#### You may not pass ... to attack you

Here “you” is singular and refers to Moses, who represents the people of Israel. AT: “Your people may not pass ... to attack them” (See: Forms of You and Synecdoche)

#### I will come with the sword

Here the sword represents the king’s army. AT: “I will send my army” (See: Metonymy)

#### the people of Israel

This phrase refers to the Israelite messengers.

#### walk through on foot

This idiom means that they would simply travel through the area by walking. They would not come in chariots to attack the people of Edom. (See: Idiom)

### translationWords

- sword, swords, swordsmen
- livestock

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 20 General Notes
- Numbers 20 translationQuestions

## Numbers 20:20-21

### UDB:

[20] But the king replied, “No! Stay out of our country! We will not allow you to travel through our land!” Then he sent the strongest soldiers in his army to prevent the Israelites from entering his country.

[21] So, because the king of Edom refused to allow the Israelites to travel through his country, the Israelites turned and traveled a different way.

### ULB:

[20] But the king of Edom replied, “You may not pass through.” So the king of Edom came against Israel with a strong hand with many soldiers. [21] The king of Edom refused to allow Israel to cross over their border. Because of this, Israel turned away from the land of Edom.

### translationNotes

#### the king of Edom came against Israel with a strong hand with many soldiers

Here the hand represents the king’s powerful army. AT: “the king of Edom sent a strong army of many soldiers to attack Israel” (See: Metonymy)

#### cross over their border

Here “their” refers to the Edomites.

### translationWords

- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Edom, Edomite, Edomites, Idumea
- Israel, Israelites

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 20 General Notes
- Numbers 20 translationQuestions

## Numbers 20:22-24

### UDB:

22 The Israelite people left Kadesh. They went to Mount Hor, 23 which is at the border of Edom.
While they were there, Yahweh said to Aaron and Moses, 24 "It is time for Aaron to die. He will not
enter the land that I am giving to you Israelites, because the two of you disobeyed me when I told
you to speak to the rock to cause the water to flow at Meribah.

### ULB:

22 So the people journeyed from Kadesh. The people of Israel, the whole community, came to Mount
Hor. 23 Yahweh spoke to Moses and Aaron at Mount Hor, on Edom's border. He said, 24 "Aaron must
be gathered to his people, for he will not enter the land that I have given to the people of Israel.
This is because you both rebelled against my word at the waters of Meribah.

### translationNotes

#### The people of Israel, the whole community

The phrase "the whole community" emphasizes that every person who was a part of "the people of Israel" was present, without exception. (See: Doublet)

#### Aaron must be gathered to his people

This is a gentle way to say that Aaron must die. It means that it is time for Aaron to die and for his spirit to go to the place where his ancestors are. AT: "Aaron must die" (See: Euphemism)

#### rebelled against my word

"refused to do what I said"

### translationWords

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Aaron
- rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- word, words
- water, waters, watered, watering

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 20 General Notes
- Numbers 20 translationQuestions

## Numbers 20:25-26

### UDB:

[25] Now you, Moses, take Aaron and his son Eleazar up on Mount Hor. [26] There you must remove Aaron's clothes that he wears when he does the works of a priest, and put them on his son, Eleazar. Aaron will die up there."

### ULB:

[25] Take Aaron and Eleazar his son, and bring them up to Mount Hor. [26] Take Aaron's priestly garments off him and put them on Eleazar his son. Aaron must die and be gathered to his people there."

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to Moses.

#### must die and be gathered to his people

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. They mean that it is time for Aaron to die and for his spirit to go to the place where his ancestors are. (See: Parallelism and Euphemism)

### translationWords

- Eleazar
- priest, priests, priesthood
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 20 General Notes
- Numbers 20 translationQuestions

## Numbers 20:27-29

### UDB:

[27] So Moses did what Yahweh commanded. The three of them climbed up Mount Hor, while all the Israelite people watched. [28] At the top of the mountain, Moses took off the clothes that Aaron wore while he did the work of a priest and put them on Eleazar. Then Aaron died there on the top of the mountain, and Eleazar and Moses went back down. [29] When the Israelite people realized that Aaron had died, they all mourned for him for thirty days.

### ULB:

[27] Moses did as Yahweh commanded. They went up Mount Hor in the sight of all the community. [28] Moses took Aaron's priestly garments off him and put them on Eleazar his son. Aaron died there on the top of the mountain. Then Moses and Eleazar came down. [29] When all the community saw that Aaron was dead, the entire nation wept for Aaron for thirty days.

### translationNotes

#### thirty days

"30 days" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- nation, nations

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 20 General Notes
- Numbers 20 translationQuestions

## Numbers 21 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations indent each line of poetry to make it easier to read. The ULB does this with the poetry in 21:14-15, 17-18, 27-30.

### Special concepts in this chapter

### Ungrateful

The Israelites said, “Why have you brought us up out of Egypt to die in the wilderness? There is no bread, no water, and we hate this miserable food.” After all Yahweh had done, they were very ungrateful. This showed their lack of faith and trust in Yahweh. (See: faith and trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness)

### Links:

- **Numbers 21:01 Notes**

## Numbers 21:1-3

### UDB:

[1] The king of the city of Arad lived in the area where the Canaanites lived, in the southern Judean wilderness. He heard a report that the Israelites were approaching on the road to Atharim village. So his army attacked the Israelites and captured some of them. [2] Then the Israelites declared this solemnly, "Yahweh, if you will help us to defeat these people, we will completely destroy all their towns." [3] Yahweh heard what they requested, and he enabled them to defeat the army of this Canaan people group. The Israelite soldiers killed all the people and destroyed their towns. Ever since that time, that place has been called Hormah which means "destruction."

### ULB:

[1] When the Canaanite king of Arad, who lived in the Negev, heard that Israel was traveling by the road to Atharim, he fought against Israel and took some of them captive. [2] Israel vowed to Yahweh and said, "If you give us victory over these people, then we will completely destroy their cities." [3] Yahweh listened to Israel's voice and he gave them victory over the Canaanites. They completely destroyed them and their cities. That place was called Hormah.

### translationNotes

#### he fought against Israel

Here "he fought" means that his army fought. AT: "his army fought against Israel" (See: Metonymy)

#### Israel vowed

This refers to the people of Israel. AT: "The people of Israel vowed" or "The Israelites made a vow" (See: Metonymy)

#### listened to Israel's voice

Here "listen" means that Yahweh did as they asked. AT: "did what Israel asked" (See: Metonymy)

#### Israel's voice

Here "voice" is a metonym that refers to their request. AT: "what Israel asked" (See: Metonymy)

#### They completely destroyed them and their cities

"The people of Israel completely destroyed the Canaanite army and their cities"

### That place was called Hormah

This can be stated in active form. AT: “They called that place Hormah” (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- Negev
- Israel, Israelites
- captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity
- vow, vows, vowed
- Yahweh
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- voice, voices

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 21 General Notes
- Numbers 21 translationQuestions

## Numbers 21:4-5

### UDB:

[4] Then the Israelites left Mount Hor and traveled on the road toward the Sea of Reeds, in order to go around the land of Edom. But the people became impatient along the way, [5] and they began to grumble against God and against Moses. They said, “Why have you brought us out of Egypt to die here in this desert? There is nothing to eat here, and nothing to drink. And we detest this lousy manna food!”

### ULB:

[4] They traveled from Mount Hor by the road to the Sea of Reeds to go around the land of Edom. The people became very discouraged on the way. [5] The people spoke against God and Moses: “Why have you brought us up out of Egypt to die in the wilderness? There is no bread, no water, and we hate this miserable food.”

### translationNotes

#### Why have you brought us up out of Egypt to die in the wilderness?

The people used this question in order to rebuke Moses. This can be translated as a statement. AT: “You should not made us leave Egypt to die in the wilderness!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

### translationWords

- Sea of Reeds, Red Sea
- Edom, Edomite, Edomites, Idumea
- God
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- bread

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 21 General Notes
- Numbers 21 translationQuestions

## Numbers 21:6-7

### UDB:

[6] So Yahweh sent poisonous snakes among them. Many of the people were bitten by the snakes and died. [7] Then the people came to Moses and cried out, saying, “We now know that we have sinned against Yahweh and against you. Pray to Yahweh, asking that he will take away the snakes!” So Moses prayed for the people.

### ULB:

[6] Then Yahweh sent poisonous snakes among the people. The snakes bit the people; many people died. [7] The people came to Moses and said, “We have sinned because we have spoken against Yahweh and you. Pray to Yahweh for him to take the snakes away from us.” So Moses prayed for the people.

### translationNotes

#### we have spoken against Yahweh and you

“we have said bad things about Yahweh and you”

#### we have spoken ... from us

The words “we” and “us” here refer to the people but not to Moses. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive “We”)

### translationWords

- serpent, serpents, snake, snakes, viper, vipers
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- pray, prayer, prayers, prayed

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 21 General Notes
- Numbers 21 translationQuestions

## Numbers 21:8-9

### UDB:

[8] Then Yahweh told him, “Make a model of a poisonous snake, and attach it to the top of a pole. If those who are bitten by the snakes look at that model, they will recover.” [9] So Moses made a snake from bronze and attached it to the top of a pole. Then, when those who had been bitten by a snake looked at the bronze snake, they recovered!

### ULB:

[8] Yahweh said to Moses, “Make a snake and attach it to a pole. It will happen that everyone who is bitten will survive, if he looks at it.” [9] So Moses made a bronze snake and attached it to a pole. When a snake bit any person, if he looked at the bronze snake, he survived.

### translationNotes

#### Make a snake

Since it is impossible for Moses to make a real snake, it is implied that he was to make a model of a snake. This implied information can be made clear. AT: “Make a model of a snake” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### everyone who is bitten

This can be stated in active form. AT: “everyone whom a snake bites” (See: Active or Passive)

#### a bronze snake

“a snake out of bronze”

#### if he looked at the bronze snake, he survived

Here “he” refers to “any person” who was bitten by a snake.

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- bronze

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 21 General Notes
- Numbers 21 translationQuestions

## Numbers 21:10-11

### UDB:

[10] Then the Israelites traveled to Oboth and camped there. [11] Then they left Oboth and went to Iye Abarim in the wilderness on the eastern border of Moab.

### ULB:

[10] Then the people of Israel traveled on and camped at Oboth. [11] They traveled from Oboth and camped at Iye Abarim in the wilderness that faces Moab toward the east.

### translationNotes

#### that faces Moab

Here “faces” is an idiom that means “is across from” or “is next to.” AT: “that is next to Moab” (See: Idiom)

### translationWords

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown
- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 21 General Notes
- Numbers 21 translationQuestions

## Numbers 21:12-13

### UDB:

[12] From there they traveled to the valley where the Zered riverbed is, and camped there. [13] Then they traveled to the north side of the Arnon River. That area is in the wilderness next to the land where the Amorites live. The Arnon River is the boundary between Moab and where the Amorites live.

### ULB:

[12] From there they traveled on and camped in the Valley of Zered. [13] From there they traveled on and camped on the other side of the Arnon River, which is in the wilderness that extends from the border of the Amorites. The Arnon River forms the border of Moab, between Moab and the Amorites.

### translationNotes

#### forms the border of Moab, between Moab and the Amorites

This means that the two peoples lived on different sides of the river, which was a boundary between them. The Moabite people lived south of the river and the Amorites lived on the north.

### translationWords

- Amorite, Amorites

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 21 General Notes
- Numbers 21 translationQuestions

## Numbers 21:14-15

### UDB:

14 That is why it is written down in the book of the book of the wars of Yahweh,

”Waheb in Suphah, and the ravines there,

and the Arnon River

15 and the ravines there,

which extend as far as Ar village on the border of Moab.”

### ULB:

14 That is why it says in the scroll of the Wars of Yahweh,

”... Waheb in Suphah, and the valleys of the Arnon,

15 the slope of the valleys that lead toward the town of Ar

and lie along the border of Moab.”

### translationNotes

#### Waheb in Suphah

These are both names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### the slope of the valleys that lead toward the town of Ar and lie along the border of Moab

“the valleys that go downhill to the town of Ar and lie along the border of Moab”

### translationWords

- scroll, scrolls
- Yahweh

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 21 General Notes
- Numbers 21 translationQuestions

## Numbers 21:16

### UDB:

16 From there the Israelites traveled to Beer. There was a well there where Yahweh previously had said to Moses, “Gather the people together, and I will give them water.”

### ULB:

16 From there they traveled to Beer, the well where Yahweh said to Moses, “Gather the people together for me to give them water.”

### translationNotes

#### to Beer, the well

This can be stated as two sentences. AT: “to Beer. There was a well there”

#### where Yahweh said to Moses, “Gather the people together for me to give them water.”

This can be stated as an indirect quote. AT: “where Yahweh told Moses to gather the people together for him to give them water” (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

### translationWords

- cistern, cisterns, well, wells
- Moses

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 21 General Notes
- Numbers 21 translationQuestions

## Numbers 21:17-18

### UDB:

17 There the Israelites sang this song:

”O well, give us water!

Sing about this well!

18 Sing about this well

which our leaders dug;

they dug out the dirt with their royal scepters and their walking sticks.”

Then the Israelites left that wilderness and went through Mattanah.

### ULB:

17 Then Israel sang this song:

”Spring up, well!

Sing about it,

18 about the well that our leaders dug,

the well the nobles of the people dug,

with the scepter and their staffs.”

Then from the wilderness they traveled to Mattanah.

### translationNotes

#### Spring up, well

Here “well” represents the water in the well. The Israelites are speaking to the water as if it were a person who could hear them, and they are asking for it to fill the well. AT: “Water, fill up the well” (See: Metonymy and Personification)

#### the well that our leaders dug, the well the nobles of the people dug

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize the role of the leaders in digging the well. (See: Parallelism)

### with the scepter and their staffs

A scepter was carried by those with authority, and the staff was carried by everyone. Neither of these are digging tools. These two items emphasize that they were not too proud to use any means available. AT: “using even their scepter and staffs” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- Israel, Israelites
- noble, nobles, nobleman, noblemen
- scepter, scepters
- staff, staffs
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 21 General Notes
- Numbers 21 translationQuestions

## Numbers 21:19-20

### UDB:

[19] The Israelites also went throught Nahaliel, and Bamoth village. [20] Then they went to the valley in Moab where Mount Pisgah rises above the wilderness.

### ULB:

[19] From Mattanah they traveled to Nahaliel, and from Nahaliel to Bamoth, [20] and from Bamoth to a valley in the land of Moab. That is where the top of Mount Pisgah looks down on the wilderness.

### translationNotes

#### Nahaliel ... Bamoth

These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### Mount Pisgah

This is the name of a mountain. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### looks down on the wilderness

This is an idiom. It is a way of saying that the mountain is high, and speaks of the mountain as if it were a person who looks down to see the wilderness below him. AT: “rises above the wilderness” (See: Idiom and Personification)

### translationWords

- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 21 General Notes
- Numbers 21 translationQuestions

## Numbers 21:21-23

### UDB:

21 Then the Israelites sent messengers to Sihon, the king of the Amor people group. This was the message that they gave him,

22 "Allow us to travel through your country. We will stay on the king's highway, the main road that goes from the south to the north, until we have finished traveling through your land. We will not walk through any field or vineyard, or drink water from your wells."

23 But King Sihon refused. He would not allow them to walk through his land. Instead, he sent his whole army to attack the Israelites in the desert. They attacked the Israelites at Jahaz village.

### ULB:

21 Then Israel sent messengers to Sihon king of the Amorites saying, 22 "Let us pass through your land. We will not turn into any field or vineyard. We will not drink the water from your wells. We will travel by the king's highway until we have crossed your border." 23 But King Sihon would not allow Israel to pass through their border. Instead, Sihon gathered all his army together and attacked Israel in the wilderness. He came to Jahaz, where he fought against Israel.

### translationNotes

#### Then Israel

Here "Israel" refers to the people of Israel, and especially to their leaders. AT: "Then the Israelites" (See: Metonymy)

#### We will not turn into any field or vineyard

"We will not go into any of your fields or vineyards"

#### the king's highway

This is the main road that connects Damascus in the north to the Gulf of Aqabah in the south. See how you translated this in Numbers 20:17.

#### to pass through their border

"to cross over their border." Here "their" refers to the Amorites.

#### Jahaz

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

### he fought against Israel

Here “he” refers to King Sihon who represents himself and his army. AT: “they fought against the Israelites” (See: Synecdoche)

### translationWords

- send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out
- messenger, messengers
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Amorite, Amorites
- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
- vineyard, vineyards
- cistern, cisterns, well, wells

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 21 General Notes
- Numbers 21 translationQuestions

## Numbers 21:24-26

### UDB:

[24] But the Israelites completely defeated them and occupied their land, from the Arnon River in the south to the Jabbok River in the north. They stopped at the border of the land where the Ammon people group lived, because the Ammon army was defending the border strongly. [25] So the Israelites occupied all the cities and towns where the Amorites lived, and some of the Israelites began to live in them. They occupied the city of Heshbon and the nearby villages. [26] Heshbon was the capital of the country. It was the city where King Sihon ruled. His army had previously defeated the army of the king of Moab, and then his people had begun to live in all of the land of Moab as far as the Arnon River in the south.

### ULB:

[24] Israel attacked the army of Sihon with the edge of the sword and took their land from the Arnon to the Jabbok river, as far as the land of the people of Ammon. Now the border of the people of Ammon was fortified. [25] Israel took all the Amorite cities and lived in all of them, including Heshbon and all of its villages. [26] Heshbon was the city of Sihon king of the Amorites, who had fought against the former king of Moab. Sihon had taken all his land from his territory to the Arnon River.

### translationNotes

#### Israel attacked

Here “Israel” refers to the people of Israel. AT: “The Israelites attacked” (See: Metonymy)

#### with the edge of the sword

“with the sharp part of the sword.” The “edge of the sword” is associated with death and complete destruction. AT: “and completely defeated them” (See: Metonymy)

#### took their land

“conquered the land of the Amorites.” Here the word “their” refers to the Amorites.

#### the people of Ammon ... the Amorites

“the Ammonites ... the Amorites” or “the people of Ammon ... the people of Amor.” These names are similar, but they refer to two different people groups.

#### was fortified

“was strongly defended.” The Israelites did not attack the Ammonites.

#### Heshbon and all of its villages

Here “its” is possessive to show that a relationship existed between the city of Heshbon and these nearby villages. AT: “Heshbon and the nearby villages that it controlled”

#### Sihon had taken all his land

Here “his” refers to the king of Moab.

#### translationWords

- Israel, Israelites
- sword, swords, swordsmen
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites
- stronghold, strongholds, fortifications, fortified, fortress, fortresses

#### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 21 General Notes
- Numbers 21 translationQuestions

## Numbers 21:27-28

### UDB:

[27] For that reason, one of the poets wrote long ago,

”Come to Heshbon, the city where King Sihon ruled.

We want the city to be restored.

[28] A fire blazed from Heshbon.

It burned down the city of Ar in Moab.

It destroyed everything on the hills along the Arnon River.

### ULB:

[27] That is why those who speak in proverbs say,

”Come to Heshbon.

Let the city of Sihon be rebuilt and established again.

[28] A fire blazed from Heshbon,

a flame from the city of Sihon

that devoured Ar of Moab,

and the owners of the high places of Arnon.

### translationNotes

#### Heshbon ... city of Sihon

These are two names that refer to the same city. (See: Parallelism)

#### Let the city of Sihon be rebuilt and established again

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Let someone rebuild and establish again the city of Sihon” (See: Active or Passive)

#### rebuilt and established

These two terms are very similar and emphasize that the city will be fully rebuilt. AT: “completely rebuilt” (See: Doublet)

#### A fire blazed from Heshbon, a flame from the city of Sihon

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that destruction will begin at Heshbon. The fire refers to a destroying army. AT: “King Sihon led a strong army from the city of Heshbon” (See: Parallelism and Metaphor)

#### devoured Ar of Moab

The army of Sihon is spoken of as if it was an animal that ate up the city of Ar. AT: “destroyed the town of Ar in the land of Moab” (See: Metaphor)

#### translationWords

- proverb, proverbs
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- devour, devours, devoured, devouring
- high place, high places

#### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 21 General Notes
- Numbers 21 translationQuestions

## Numbers 21:29-30

### UDB:

[29] You people of Moab, terrible things have happened to you!

You people who worship your god Chemosh have been annihilated!

The men who worshiped Chemosh have run away and are now refugees,

and the women who worshiped him have been captured by the army of Sihon, the king of the Amor people group.

[30] But we have defeated those descendants of Amor,

all the way from Heshbon in the north to the city of Dibon in the south.

We have completely obliterated them as far as the cities of Nophah and Medeba."

### ULB:

[29] Woe to you, Moab!

You have perished, people of Chemosh.

He has made his sons to be fugitives

and his daughters to be prisoners

of Sihon king of the Amorites.

[30] But we have conquered Sihon. Heshbon is devastated all the way to Dibon.

We have defeated them all the way to Nophah,

which reaches to Medeba."

### translationNotes

#### Moab ... people of Chemosh

These two phrases refer to the same people. (See: Parallelism)

#### people of Chemosh

"Chemosh" was the name of the false god whom the Moabites worshiped. AT: "the people who worship Chemosh"

#### He has made his sons

"He" and "his" refer to Chemosh.

#### we have conquered

Here “we” refers to the Israelites who defeated Sihon.

#### Heshbon is devastated

This can be stated in active form. AT: “We have devastated Heshbon” (See: Active or Passive)

#### Heshbon ... all the way to Dibon ... all the way to Nophah ... to Medeba

These are all places in Sihon’s kingdom. This means the Israelites destroyed Sihon’s entire nation. (See: How to Translate Names and Merism)

#### translationWords

- woe
- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess
- perish, perished, perishing, perishable
- son, sons
- prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments
- Amorite, Amorites
- devastate, devastated, devastating, devastation, devastations

#### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 21 General Notes
- Numbers 21 translationQuestions

## Numbers 21:31-32

### UDB:

[31] So the Israelite people began to live in the land where the Amorites lived.

[32] After Moses sent some men to explore the area near the city of Jazer, Israelite people began to live in all the towns in that region and expelled the Amor people group who lived there.

### ULB:

[31] So Israel began to live in the Amorites' land. [32] Then Moses sent men to look at Jazer. They took its villages and drove out the Amorites who were there.

### translationNotes

#### drove out

"chased away"

### translationWords

- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- cast out, casting out, driving out, throw out, throwing out

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 21 General Notes
- Numbers 21 translationQuestions

## Numbers 21:33-35

### UDB:

[33] Then they turned north toward the region of Bashan, but King Og of Bashan and all his army attacked them at the city of Edrei.

[34] Yahweh said to Moses, “Do not be afraid of Og, because I am going to enable your men to defeat him and his army, and to take possession of all his land. You will do to him what you did to Sihon, the king of the Amor people group, who ruled in Heshbon.”

[35] And that is what happened. The Israelites defeated Og’s army, and killed King Og and his sons and all his people. Not a person survived! And then the Israelites began to live in their land.

### ULB:

[33] Then they turned and went up by the road of Bashan. Og king of Bashan went out against them, he and all his army, to fight them at Edrei. [34] Then Yahweh said to Moses, “Do not fear him, because I have given you victory over him, all his army, and his land. Do to him as you did to Sihon king of the Amorites, who lived at Heshbon.” [35] So they killed him, his sons, and all his army, until none of his people were left alive. Then they took over his land.

### translationNotes

#### went out against them

“attacked them”

#### Do to him as you did to Sihon king of the Amorites

The Israelites had completely destroyed Sihon. AT: “Destroy him like you destroyed Sihon king of the Amorites”

#### So they killed him

“So the army of Israel killed Og”

#### none of his people were left alive

This can be stated in active form. AT: “all of his people were dead” (See: Active or Passive)

#### they took over his land

“they took control of his land”

**translationWords**

- Bashan
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Yahweh
- fear, fears, afraid
- son, sons
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 21 General Notes
- Numbers 21 translationQuestions

## Numbers 22 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The chapter begins a section on Balaam. The king of Moab wanted the prophet Balaam to come and curse Israel. God told him not to go but he wanted to go; so God told him to say only what God wanted him to say. Yahweh was able to use Balaam, even though he was not a prophet of Yahweh. (See: prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess and curse, cursed, curses, cursing)

### Links:

- **Numbers 22:01 Notes**

## Numbers 22:1

### UDB:

[1] Then the Israelites traveled west to the plain of Moab that was in the Valley of the Jordan River, across the river from Jericho.

### ULB:

[1] The people of Israel traveled on until they camped in the plains of Moab near Jericho, on the other side of the Jordan River from the city.

### translationNotes

#### on the other side of the Jordan River from the city

The Israelites were camped on the east side of the Jordan River. Jericho was on the west side of the river.

### translationWords

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess
- Jericho
- Jordan River, Jordan

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 22 General Notes
- Numbers 22 translationQuestions

## Numbers 22:2-4

### UDB:

[2] But King Balak son of Zippor, who ruled Moab, found out what the Israelites had done to the Amor people group. [3] When he saw that the Israelites were very numerous, he and his people became terrified.

[4] So the king of Moab went to the leaders of the Midian people group and said to them, “This huge group of Israelites will wipe out everything around them, like an ox devours grass!”

Balak was the king of Moab.

### ULB:

[2] Balak son of Zippor saw all that Israel had done to the Amorites. [3] Moab was very afraid of the people because they were many, and Moab was in terror of the people of Israel. [4] The king of Moab said to the elders of Midian, “This multitude will eat up all that is around us as an ox eats up the grass in a field.” Now Balak son of Zippor was king of Moab at that time.

### translationNotes

#### Balak son of Zippor

Balak was king of Moab. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### Zippor

Zippor is the father of Balak. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### Moab was very afraid of the people ... Moab was in terror of the people of Israel

These two phrases mean the same thing, and emphasize how afraid Moab was. (See: Parallelism)

#### Moab was very afraid

Here “Moab” refers to the people of Moab. AT: “All of the Moabites were very afraid” (See: Metonymy)

#### because they were many

“because there were many of them”

### The king of Moab said to the elders of Midian

The Moabites and the Midianites were two different groups of people, but the Midianites were living in the land of Moab at that time.

### This multitude will eat up all that is around us as an ox eats up the grass in a field

The way the Israelites will destroy their enemies is spoken of as if they were an ox eating up the grass in a field. (See: Simile)

### Now Balak son of Zippor was king of Moab at that time

This changes from the main story to background information about Balak. (See: Background Information)

### translationWords

- Amorite, Amorites
- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess
- fear, fears, afraid
- terror, terrorize, terrorized, terrors, terrify, terrified, terrifying
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- elder, elders
- Midian, Midianite, Midianites
-

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 22 General Notes
- Numbers 22 translationQuestions

## Numbers 22:5-6

### UDB:

5 He sent messengers to a prophet named Balaam, who was living in his own area, in Pethor, near the Euphrates River. He sent this message to request that Balaam would come to help him,

”A huge group of people has arrived here from Egypt. It looks like they are covering the entire land! And they have begun to live close to us. 6 Because they are very powerful, we are afraid of them. So please come and curse them for me. Then my army may be able to defeat them and expel them from the land where they are now living. I know that good things will happen to the people whom you bless, and disasters will happen to the people whom you curse.”

### ULB:

5 He sent messengers to Balaam son of Beor, at Pethor which is by the Euphrates River, in the land of his nation and his people. He called him and said, ”Look, a nation has come here from Egypt. They cover the face of the earth and they are right now next to me. 6 So please come now and curse this nation for me, because they are too strong for me. Perhaps then I can manage to attack them and drive them out of the land. I know that whomever you bless will be blessed, and whomever you curse will be cursed.”

### translationNotes

#### He sent messengers

“Balak sent messengers”

#### Beor

This is the name of Balaam’s father. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### Pethor

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### of his nation and his people

“of Balaam’s nation and people”

#### He called him

“Balak called Balaam.” Balak did not speak to Balaam directly, but did so through the messengers he sent.

### They cover the face of the earth

This is an exaggeration to emphasize how many of them there were. AT: “They are extremely numerous” (See: Hyperbole and Generalization)

### the face of the earth

This refers to the surface of the earth. (See: Idiom)

### drive them

“chase them”

### I know that whomever you bless will be blessed, and whomever you curse will be cursed

This can be stated in active form. AT: “I know you have the power to bless or to curse people” (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out
- messenger, messengers
- Balaam
- Euphrates River, the River
- nation, nations
- call, calls, calling, called
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown
- earth, earthen, earthly
- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- cast out, casting out, driving out, throw out, throwing out
- bless, blessed, blessing

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 22 General Notes
- Numbers 22 translationQuestions

## Numbers 22:7-8

### UDB:

7 Balak's messengers, who were leaders of both the Moab and Midian people groups, took money with them to pay Balaam in order that he would come and curse the Israelites. They went to Balaam and told him what Balak had said.

8 Balaam said, "Stay here tonight. Tomorrow morning I will tell you whatever Yahweh tells me that I should say to you."

So the leaders from Moab stayed there that night.

### ULB:

7 So the elders of Moab and the elders of Midian left, taking payment for divination. They came to Balaam and spoke to him Balak's words. 8 Balaam said to them, "Stay here tonight. I will bring you what Yahweh says to me." So the leaders of Moab stayed with Balaam that night.

### translationNotes

#### payment for divination

The abstract noun "divination" can be stated as an action. AT: "money to pay Balaam to curse Israel" (See: Abstract Nouns)

#### They came to Balaam

You may prefer to say "They went to Balaam" (See: Go and Come)

#### spoke to him Balak's words

"told him the message from Balak"

#### Balak

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in Numbers 22:2.

#### I will bring you

Balaam's report is spoken of as if it were something that he would carry to the messengers. AT: "I will tell you" (See: Metaphor)

**translationWords**

- Balaam
- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess
- Midian, Midianite, Midianites
- divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer
- word, words
- Yahweh

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 22 General Notes
- Numbers 22 translationQuestions

## Numbers 22:9-11

### UDB:

[9] During the night, God appeared to Balaam and asked him, “Who are these men who are staying with you?”

[10] Balaam replied, ”Balak, the king of Moab, sent these men to tell me this message, [11] ‘A huge group of people has come from Egypt, and they have spread all over this area. Please come immediately to curse them. Then I may be able to defeat them and expel them from this area.’”

### ULB:

[9] God came to Balaam and said, “Who are these men who came to you?” [10] Balaam answered God, ”Balak son of Zippor, king of Moab, has sent them to me. He said, [11] ‘Look, the people who have come from Egypt cover the surface of my land. Now come and curse them for me. Perhaps I will manage to fight them and drive them out.’”

### translationNotes

#### God came to Balaam

“God appeared to Balaam”

#### Who are these men who came to you?

Yahweh uses a question to introduce a new topic of conversation. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “Tell me about these men who came to you.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### Balak ... Zippor

These are the names of men. See how you translated these in Numbers 22:2.

#### Look, the people ... drive them out

Balaam restates the message that Balak sent to him. See how you translated many of these phrases in Numbers 22:5-6.

#### drive them out

“chase them away”

**translationWords**

- God
- Balaam
- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 22 General Notes
- Numbers 22 translationQuestions

## Numbers 22:12-14

### UDB:

[12] God replied to Balaam, “Do not go with them! I have blessed those people, so you must not curse them!”

[13] The next morning, Balaam got up and told Balak’s men, “Go back home. But go by yourselves, because Yahweh is not allowing me to go with you.”

[14] So the men from Moab returned to King Balak and they reported to him, “Balaam refused to come with us.”

### ULB:

[12] God replied to Balaam, “You must not go with those men. You must not curse the people of Israel because they have been blessed.” [13] Balaam rose up in the morning and said to Balak’s leaders, “Go back to your land because Yahweh refuses to allow me to go with you.” [14] So the leaders of Moab left and went back to Balak. They said, “Balaam refused to come with us.”

### translationNotes

#### because they have been blessed

This can be stated in active form. AT: “because I have blessed them” (See: Active or Passive)

#### Balak

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in Numbers 22:2.

### translationWords

- God
- Balaam
- Israel, Israelites
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 22 General Notes
- Numbers 22 translationQuestions

## Numbers 22:15-17

### UDB:

15 But Balak sent another group of leaders to Balaam. It was a group that was larger and they were more important than the men in the first group. 16 They went to Balaam and told him this,

”This is what King Balak says, ’Please do not allow anything to hinder you from coming here. 17 I will pay you a lot of money if you come, and I will do anything that you ask me to do. Just come and curse these Israelite people for me!’”

### ULB:

15 Balak sent again more leaders who were even more honored than the first group. 16 They came to Balaam and said to him, ”Balak son of Zippor says this, ’Please let nothing stop you from coming to me, 17 because I will pay you extremely well and give you great honor, and I will do whatever you tell me to do. So please come and curse this people for me.’”

### translationNotes

#### They came to Balaam

You may prefer to say “They went to Balaam” (See: Go and Come)

#### Balak

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in Numbers 22:2.

#### this people

The singular noun refers to the Israelites as a group. AT: “this group of people”

### translationWords

- honor, honors
- Balaam
- curse, cursed, curses, cursing

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 22 General Notes
- Numbers 22 translationQuestions

## Numbers 22:18-20

### UDB:

[18] But Balaam answered them, "Even if Balak would give me a palace filled with silver and gold, I would not do anything to disobey Yahweh, my God. [19] But stay here one more night, like the other messengers did, and I will find out if Yahweh has anything more to say to me."

[20] That night God appeared to Balaam again and said to him, "These men have come to request that you go back with them, so you may go with them, but do only what I tell you to do!"

### ULB:

[18] Balaam answered and said to Balak's men, "Even if Balak would give me his palace full of silver and gold, I cannot go beyond the word of Yahweh, my God, and do less or more than what he tells me. [19] Now then, please wait here tonight too, so that I may learn anything further that Yahweh says to me." [20] God came to Balaam at night and said to him, "Since these men have come to summon you, get up and go with them. But only do what I tell you to do."

### translationNotes

#### Balak

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in Numbers 22:2.

#### Even if Balak would give me his palace full of silver and gold

Balaam is describing something that would never happen. He is emphasizing that there is nothing that could make him disobey Yahweh. (See: Hypothetical Situations)

#### I cannot go beyond the word of Yahweh ... and do less or more than what he tells me

This means Balaam cannot disobey Yahweh in any way.

### translationWords

- Balaam
- palace, palaces
- silver
- gold, golden
- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures
- God

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 22 General Notes
- Numbers 22 translationQuestions

## Numbers 22:21-23

### UDB:

21 So the next morning, Balaam put a saddle on his donkey and he departed with two of his servants
along with the men from Moab. 22 Even though God had given Balaam permission to go, he was
still angry. So he sent one of his angels to Balaam. This angel stood in the road to block Balaam's
path. As Balaam and the two servants were riding on their donkeys, 23 Balaam's donkey saw the
angel. The angel was standing in the road and was holding a sword in his hand, but Balaam did
not see him.

Balaam's donkey turned off the road into a field. So Balaam struck the donkey and forced it to go back onto the road.

### ULB:

21 Balaam got up in the morning, saddled his donkey, and went with the leaders of Moab. 22 But
because he went, God's anger was kindled. The angel of Yahweh placed himself in the road as
someone hostile to Balaam, who was riding on his donkey. Balaam's two servants were also with
him. 23 The donkey saw the angel of Yahweh standing in the road with his drawn sword in his
hand. The donkey turned off the road and went into a field. Balaam struck the donkey to turn her
back to the road.

### translationNotes

#### saddled his donkey

A saddle is a seat put on the back of an animal in order to ride it.

#### God's anger was kindled

The increase in God's anger is spoken of as if it was a fire starting to burn. This can be stated in active form. AT: "God became very angry" (See: Idiom and Active or Passive)

#### as someone hostile to Balaam

"as an enemy to Balaam" or "in order to stop Balaam"

#### with his drawn sword

A sword is drawn from its sheath in order to be ready to use. AT: "with his sword ready to attack" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### The donkey turned off the road and went into a field

The donkey did this to avoid the angel of Yahweh.

### to turn her back

Sometimes animals are referred to as “her” or “she.” AT: “to turn it back”

### translationWords

- Balaam
- donkey, mule
- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess
- God
- anger, angered, angry
- angel, angels, archangel
- Yahweh
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- sword, swords, swordsmen

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 22 General Notes
- Numbers 22 translationQuestions

## Numbers 22:24-25

### UDB:

[24] Then the angel stood in a place where the road was very narrow, between two vineyards, with walls on each side of the road. [25] When the donkey saw the angel standing there, it walked very close to the wall to try to get past the angel. As a result, it bashed Balaam's foot against the wall. So Balaam struck the donkey again.

### ULB:

[24] Then the angel of Yahweh stood in a narrow part of the road between some vineyards, with a wall on his right side and another wall on his left side. [25] The donkey saw the angel of Yahweh again. She went against the wall and pinned Balaam's foot against it. Balaam struck her again.

### translationNotes

#### She went against the wall

This was an attempt to escape from the angel of Yahweh in the road.

#### She went

Sometimes animals are referred to as "her" or "she." AT: "It went"

#### pinned Balaam's foot against it

"pushed Balaam's foot against it" or "hurt Balaam's foot against it"

### translationWords

- angel, angels, archangel
- Yahweh
- vineyard, vineyards
- Balaam

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 22 General Notes
- Numbers 22 translationQuestions

## Numbers 22:26-27

### UDB:

[26] Then the angel went further along the road and stood at a place that was extremely narrow, with the result that the donkey could not get past at all. [27] This time, when the donkey saw the angel, it lay down on the ground with Balaam sitting on top of it. Balaam became extremely angry, and he struck the donkey again with his walking stick.

### ULB:

[26] The angel of Yahweh went further and stood in another narrow place where there was no way to turn to either side. [27] The donkey saw the angel of Yahweh, and she lay down under Balaam. Balaam's anger was kindled, and he struck the donkey with his staff.

### translationNotes

#### Balaam's anger was kindled

The increase in Balaam's anger is spoken of as if it was a fire starting to burn. This can be stated in active form. See how you translated a similar phrase in Numbers 22:22. AT: "Balaam became very angry" (See: Idiom and Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- Balaam
- staff, staffs

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 22 General Notes
- Numbers 22 translationQuestions

## Numbers 22:28-30

### UDB:

28 Then Yahweh enabled the donkey to speak! It said to Balaam, “What bad thing have I done to you that caused you to strike me three times?”

29 Balaam shouted, “I struck you because you have caused me to appear to be foolish! If I had a sword with me, I would kill you!”

30 But the donkey answered, “I am your own donkey, the one that you have always ridden! Have I ever done anything like this previously?”

Balaam said, “No.”

### ULB:

28 Then Yahweh opened the donkey’s mouth so she could talk. She said to Balaam, “What have I done to you that induced you to strike me these three times?” 29 Balaam replied to the donkey, “It was because you acted so stupidly with me. I wish there were a sword in my hand. If there were, by now I would have killed you.” 30 The donkey said to Balaam, “Am not I your donkey on which you have ridden all your life long to this present day? Have I ever been in the habit of doing such things to you before?” Balaam said, “No.”

### translationNotes

#### Then Yahweh opened the donkey’s mouth so she could talk

Opening the mouth is associated with the ability to speak. AT: “Then Yahweh gave the donkey the ability to speak like a human would speak” (See: Metonymy)

#### She said to Balaam

“The donkey said to Balaam”

#### Am not I your donkey on which you have ridden all your life long to this present day?

This rhetorical question was used to convict Balaam that his judgment of the donkey was unfair. This can be translated as a statement. AT: “I am your donkey on which you have ridden all your life, right up to the present moment.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### Have I ever been in the habit of doing such things to you before?

This rhetorical question was used to further convict Balaam that his judgment of the donkey was unfair. This can be translated as a statement. AT: “I have never been in the habit of doing such things to you!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

**translationWords**

- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 22 General Notes
- Numbers 22 translationQuestions

## Numbers 22:31-33

### UDB:

[31] Then Yahweh enabled Balaam to see the angel standing on the road, holding a sword in his hand. Balaam realized that it was an angel and prostrated himself on the ground in front of the angel.

[32] The angel asked him, "Why did you strike your donkey three times? I have come to block your path because what you are planning to do is wrong. [33] Three times your donkey saw me and turned away from me. If it had not done that, I would certainly have killed you already, but I would have allowed the donkey to live."

### ULB:

[31] Then Yahweh opened Balaam's eyes, and he saw the angel of Yahweh standing in the road with his drawn sword in his hand. Balaam lowered his head and lay facedown. [32] The angel of Yahweh said to him, "Why have you struck your donkey these three times? Look, I have come as someone hostile to you because your actions before me have been wicked. [33] The donkey saw me and turned away from me these three times. If she had not turned away from me, I would certainly have killed you and spared her life."

### translationNotes

#### Then Yahweh opened Balaam's eyes, and he saw the angel of Yahweh

To "open one's eyes" is associated with being able to see. AT: "Then Yahweh gave Balaam the ability to see the angel of Yahweh" (See: Metonymy)

#### with his drawn sword

A sword is drawn from its sheath in order to be ready to use. See how you translated this in Numbers 22:23. AT: "with his sword ready to attack" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### Balaam lowered his head and lay facedown

This indicates that Balaam is humbling himself before the angel. (See: Symbolic Action)

#### Why have you struck your donkey these three times?

This rhetorical question is used to accuse Balaam of doing wrong. This can be translated as a statement. AT: "You should not have struck your donkey these three times." (See: Rhetorical Question)

### as someone hostile to you

"as an enemy to you" or "to oppose you"

### If she had not turned ... killed you and spared her life

This hypothetical statement indicated what could have happened, but it did not because the donkey's actions saved Balaam. (See: Hypothetical Situations)

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- angel, angels, archangel
- sword, swords, swordsmen
- donkey, mule
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 22 General Notes
- Numbers 22 translationQuestions

## Numbers 22:34-35

### UDB:

34 Then Balaam said to the angel, “I have sinned. But I did not realize that you were standing there, trying to block my path. So if you do not want me to continue going, I will return home.”

35 But the angel replied, “I will allow you to go with these men, but you must say only what I tell you to say!”

So Balaam went on with the leaders whom Balak had sent.

### ULB:

34 Balaam said to the angel of Yahweh, “I have sinned. I did not know that you stood against me in the road. So now, if it is displeasing to you, I will turn back.” 35 But the angel of Yahweh said to Balaam, “Go on ahead with the men. But you must only speak the words that I tell you.” So Balaam went with the leaders of Balak.

### translationNotes

#### So now, if it is displeasing to you

“So if you do not want me to continue going”

#### with the leaders of Balak

“with the leaders whom Balak had sent.” See how you translated “Balak” in Numbers 22:2.

### translationWords

- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 22 General Notes
- Numbers 22 translationQuestions

## Numbers 22:36-37

### UDB:

[36] When King Balak heard that Balaam was coming, he went to meet him at a city in Moab that is located alongside the Arnon River, near the border of his own land. [37] When he arrived where Balaam was, he said to him, “I sent you a message saying that you should come immediately! Why did you not come? Did you think that I was not able to pay you a lot of money for coming?”

### ULB:

[36] When Balak heard that Balaam had come, he went out to meet him at a city in Moab at the Arnon, which is on the border. [37] Balak said to Balaam, “Did I not send men to you to summon you? Why did you not come to me? Am I not able to honor you?”

### translationNotes

#### Arnon

This is the name of a river. See how you translated it in Numbers 21:13.

#### Did I not send men to you to summon you?

This rhetorical question is used to rebuke Balaam for delaying to come. This can be translated as a statement. AT: “Surely I sent men to summon you.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### Why did you not come to me?

This rhetorical question is used to rebuke Balaam for delaying to come. This can be translated as a statement. AT: “You should have come to me!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### Am I not able to honor you?

This rhetorical question is used to rebuke Balaam for delaying to come. This can be translated as a statement. AT: “Surely you know that I am able to pay you money for coming to me.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

### translationWords

- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess
- honor, honors

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 22 General Notes
- Numbers 22 translationQuestions

## Numbers 22:38-40

### UDB:

[38] Balaam replied, “I have come here now, but I am not able to say anything that I want to. I will say only the words that God tells me to say.”

[39] Then Balaam went with Balak to Kiriath Huzoth. [40] There Balak killed some cattle and sheep as sacrifices, and offered parts of the meat to Balaam and the leaders who were with him.

### ULB:

[38] Then Balaam replied to Balak, “See, I have come to you. Do I now have any power to say anything? I can only say the words that God puts into my mouth.” [39] Balaam went with Balak, and they arrived at Kiriath Huzoth. [40] Then Balak sacrificed oxen and sheep and gave some meat to Balaam and the leaders who were with him.

### translationNotes

#### Do I now have any power to say anything?

Balaam uses this rhetorical question to tell Balak that he will not be able to do everything that Balak asks him to do. This can be translated as a statement. AT: “But I have no power to say anything I want” (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### the words that God puts into my mouth

The message is spoken of as if it is something that God put into his mouth. AT: “the message that God wants me to say” (See: Metaphor)

#### Kiriath Huzoth

This is the name of a town. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### some meat

“some of the meat from the sacrifices”

### translationWords

- power, powers
- word, words
- God
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings

- 
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 22 General Notes
- Numbers 22 translationQuestions

## Numbers 22:41

### UDB:

41 They slept there, and the next morning Balak took Balaam part way up the mountain to Bamoth Baal village. From there, they could see some of the Israelite people who were down below.

### ULB:

41 In the morning, Balak took Balaam up to the high place of Baal. From there Balaam could see only a part of the Israelites in their camp.

### translationNotes

#### the high place of Baal

Possible meanings are 1) this refers to the same place as Bamoth in Numbers 21:19. The word Bamoth means “the high place,” or 2) this is another high place where people sacrificed to Baal.

### translationWords

- Baal
- Israel, Israelites

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 22 General Notes
- Numbers 22 translationQuestions

## Numbers 23 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The story of Balaam continues in this chapter.

Some translations indent each line of poetry to make it easier to read. The ULB does this with the poetry in 23:7-10, 18-24.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Cursing God's people

God does not allow others to curse his people. Balaam blessed Israel twice when he was supposed to curse them. This may be taken as humor or an ironic situation. (See: curse, cursed, curses, cursing and people of God, my people)

### Links:

- **Numbers 23:01 Notes**

## Numbers 23:1-3

### UDB:

[1] Balaam said to King Balak, “Build here seven altars for me. Then kill seven young bulls and seven rams for a sacrifice.” [2] So Balak did that. And then he and Balaam each burned a young bull and a ram as a sacrifice on each altar.

[3] Then Balaam said to Balak, “You stand here close to your burned offerings, and I will go and ask Yahweh if he has something else to tell me. Then I will tell you what he says to me.”

Then Balaam went by himself to the top of a hill.

### ULB:

[1] Balaam said to Balak, “Build seven altars here for me and prepare seven bulls and seven rams.” [2] So Balak did as Balaam requested. Then Balak and Balaam offered a bull and a ram on every altar. [3] Then Balaam said to Balak, “Stand at your burnt offering and I will go. Perhaps Yahweh will come to meet me. Whatever he shows me I will tell you.” So he went away to a hilltop with no trees.

### translationNotes

#### Balak

This is the king of Moab. See how you translated this in Numbers 22:2.

#### prepare seven bulls and seven rams

“kill seven bulls and seven rams as a sacrifice”

#### Stand at your burnt offering and I will go

“Stay here with your burnt offering and I will go a distance away”

### translationWords

- Balaam
- altar, altars
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- Yahweh

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 23 General Notes
- Numbers 23 translationQuestions

## Numbers 23:4-6

### UDB:

[4] While he was on the top of the hill, God appeared to him there. Balaam said to him, “We have built seven altars, and I have killed and burned a young bull and a ram as a sacrifice to you on each altar.”

[5] Then Yahweh gave Balaam a message to give to King Balak. Then he said, “Go back and tell him what I told you.”

[6] When Balaam returned to Balak, Balak was standing with the leaders from Moab beside the offerings he had burned on the altar.

### ULB:

[4] While he was on the hilltop, God met him, and Balaam said to him, “I have built seven altars, and I have offered up a bull and a ram on each one.” [5] Yahweh put a message in Balaam’s mouth and said, “Return to Balak and speak to him.” [6] So Balaam returned to Balak, who was standing by his burnt offering, and all the leaders of Moab were with him.

### translationNotes

#### I have offered up a bull and a ram

It has already been stated that he killed these animals as a burnt offering. AT: “I have killed a bull and a ram and burnt them as an offering” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### Yahweh put a message in Balaam’s mouth

Here Yahweh giving Balaam a message to speak is spoken of as if Yahweh placed it in his mouth. AT: “Yahweh told Balaam what he wanted him to say to Balak” (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- God
- altar, altars
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- Yahweh
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 23 General Notes
- Numbers 23 translationQuestions

## Numbers 23:7-8

### UDB:

7 This is the message that Balaam told them,

”Balak summoned me to come here from Aram;

the king of Moab brought me here from the hills at the eastern side of Aram.

He said, ’Come and curse the descendants of Jacob for me!

Come and say that bad things will happen to these Israelite people!’

8 But how can I curse people whom God has not cursed?

How can I fight against people against whom Yahweh does not fight?

### ULB:

7 Then Balaam began to speak his prophecy and said,

”Balak has brought me from Aram,

the king of Moab from the eastern mountains.

‘Come, curse Jacob for me,’ he said.

‘Come, defy Israel.’

8 How can I curse those whom God has not cursed?

How can I oppose those whom Yahweh does not oppose?

### translationNotes

#### Balak has brought me from Aram ... the king of Moab from the eastern mountains

These phrases mean the same thing. (See: Parallelism)

#### ‘Come, curse Jacob for me,’ ... ‘Come, defy Israel.’

Both of these statements mean the same thing. They emphasize that Balak wants Balaam to curse the people of Israel. (See: Parallelism)

#### How can I curse those whom God has not cursed? How can I oppose those whom Yahweh does not oppose?

These rhetorical questions emphasize Balaam’s refusal to disobey God. They can be translated as statements. AT: “But I cannot curse those whom God has not cursed. I cannot fight against those whom Yahweh does not fight!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

**translationWords**

- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Aram, Aramean, Arameans, Aramaic
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob
- Israel, Israelites

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 23 General Notes
- Numbers 23 translationQuestions

## Numbers 23:9

### UDB:

[9] I have seen them from the tops of the rocky peaks,

I have seen them from the hills.

I see that they are a group of people who live by themselves.

They have separated themselves from other nations.

### ULB:

[9] For from the top of the rocks I see him;

from the hills I look at him.

See, there is a people who live alone

and do not consider themselves as just an ordinary nation.

### translationNotes

#### from the top of the rocks I see him ... from the hills I look at him

These two phrases mean the same thing. Balaam viewed Israel from the top of a hill. (See: Parallelism)

#### I see him ... I look at him

Here "him" is a metonym that refers to the people of Israel. (See: Metonymy)

#### there is a people

"there is a group of people"

#### do not consider themselves as just an ordinary nation

This negative statement is used to stress that the opposite is true. AT: "they consider themselves to be a special nation" (See: Litotes)

### translationWords

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- nation, nations

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 23 General Notes
- Numbers 23 translationQuestions

## Numbers 23:10

### UDB:

[10] Who can count the descendants of Jacob, as numerous as particles of dust!

Who can count even a fourth of the number of the Israelite people?

I wish that I will die like righteous people die.

I hope that I will die peacefully like they will die."

### ULB:

[10] Who can count the dust of Jacob

or number even only one-fourth of Israel?

Let me die the death of a righteous person,

and let my life's end be like his!"

### translationNotes

#### Who can count the dust of Jacob or number even only one-fourth of Israel?

Here "dust of Jacob" is a metaphor that speaks of the number of Israelites as if they were as numerous as the specks of dust. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "There are too many Israelites to count. No one could count even a fourth of them because there are so many." (See: Rhetorical Question and Metaphor)

#### the death of a righteous person

It is understood that this will be a peaceful death. This can be stated. AT: "the peaceful death of a righteous person" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### a righteous person ... like his

These are metonymies that refer to the people of Israel as a single person. (See: Metonymy)

### translationWords

- Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 23 General Notes
- Numbers 23 translationQuestions

## Numbers 23:11-12

### UDB:

11 Then Balak said, “What have you done to me? I brought you here to curse my enemies, but instead you have blessed them!”

12 But Balaam replied, “I can say only what Yahweh tells me to say. I cannot say anything else.”

### ULB:

11 Balak said to Balaam, “What have you done to me? I brought you to curse my enemies, but look, you have blessed them.” 12 Balaam answered and said, “Should I not be careful to say only what Yahweh puts in my mouth?”

### translationNotes

#### Balak

This is the king of Moab. See how you translated this in Numbers 22:2.

#### What have you done to me?

Balak uses this question to scold Balaam. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “I cannot believe you did this to me!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### but look

This emphasizes the shocking action that follows.

#### Should I not be careful to say only what Yahweh puts in my mouth?

Balaam uses this rhetorical question to defend his actions. This can be translated as a statement. AT: “I must be very careful to say only what Yahweh tells me to say.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### to say only what Yahweh puts in my mouth

The message is spoken of as if it is something that God put into his mouth. See how you translated a similar phrase in Numbers 22:38. AT: “to say only what Yahweh wants me to say” (See: Metaphor)

**translationWords**

- Balaam
- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies
- bless, blessed, blessing

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 23 General Notes
- Numbers 23 translationQuestions

## Numbers 23:13-15

### UDB:

13 Then King Balak told Balaam, “Come with me to another place. There you will see only part of the Israelite people, and you will be able to curse those people for me.” 14 So Balak took Balaam to a field on the top of Mount Pisgah. There, again he built seven altars and offered a young bull and a ram as a sacrifice on each altar.

15 Then Balaam said to the king, “Stand here close to your burned offerings, while I go and talk with Yahweh.”

### ULB:

13 So Balak said to him, “Please come with me to another place where you can see them. You will only see the nearest of them, not all of them. There you will curse them for me.” 14 So he took Balaam into the field of Zophim, to the top of Mount Pisgah, and built seven more altars. He offered up a bull and a ram on each altar. 15 Then Balaam said to Balak, “Stand here by your burnt offering, while I meet with Yahweh over there.”

### translationNotes

#### There you will curse them for me

“There you will curse the Israelites for me”

#### field of Zophim

Translators may add a footnote that says: “The word ‘Zophim’ means ‘to watch’ or ‘to spy.’ ” (See: How to Translate Names)

#### Mount Pisgah

This is the name of a mountain. See how you translated this in Numbers 21:20. (See: How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- altar, altars
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- Yahweh

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 23 General Notes
- Numbers 23 translationQuestions

## Numbers 23:16-18

### UDB:

16 So Balaam did that, and Yahweh appeared to Balaam again and gave him another message. Then he said, “Go back to Balak and tell him that message.”

17 So Balaam returned to where the king and the leaders from Moab were standing, next to the altar where Balak had burned the sacrifices. Balak asked him, “What did Yahweh say?”

18 Then Balaam told him this message,

”Balak, listen carefully,

hear what I have to say, you son of Zippor!

### ULB:

16 So Yahweh met Balaam and put a message in his mouth. He said, “Return to Balak and give him my message.” 17 Balaam returned to him, and look, he was standing by his burnt offering, and the leaders of Moab were with him. Then Balak said to him, “What has Yahweh said?” 18 Balaam began his prophecy. He said,

”Rise up, Balak, and hear.

Listen to me, you son of Zippor.

### translationNotes

#### put a message in his mouth

The message is spoken of as if it is something that God put into his mouth. See how you translated a similar phrase in Numbers 22:38. AT: “told him what to say” (See: Metaphor)

#### He said

“Then Yahweh said”

#### Balak, and hear ... Listen to me, you son of Zippor

These two phrases mean the same thing and are repeated to emphasize how important it was for Balak to pay attention. (See: Parallelism)

#### son of Zippor

This refers to Balak. See how you translated this in Numbers 22:2.

**translationWords**

- Yahweh
- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 23 General Notes
- Numbers 23 translationQuestions

## Numbers 23:19-20

### UDB:

[19] God is not a human being.

Humans lie, but God never lies.

He never changes his mind, as humans do.

Whatever he has said that he will do, he does.

Whatever he has promised to do, he has done it.

[20] He commanded me to request him to bless the Israelites,

So he has blessed them, and I cannot change that.

### ULB:

[19] God is not a man, that he should lie,

Or a human being, that he should change his mind.

Has he promised anything without doing it?

Has he said he would do something without carrying it out? [20] Look, I have been commanded to bless.

God has given a blessing, and I cannot reverse it.

### translationNotes

#### Has he promised anything without doing it? Has he said he would do something without carrying it out?

Both of these questions mean the same thing and emphasize that God does what he says he will. These rhetorical questions can be translated as statements. AT: “He has never promised a thing without fulfilling what he promised. He has always done exactly what he said he would do.” (See: Parallelism and Rhetorical Question)

#### I have been commanded to bless

This can be stated in active form. AT: “God has commanded me to bless the Israelites” (See: Active or Passive)

**translationWords**

- God
- mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded
- promise, promises, promised
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- bless, blessed, blessing

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 23 General Notes
- Numbers 23 translationQuestions

## Numbers 23:21-22

### UDB:

[21] Yahweh their God is with them;
the people shout that he is their true king.
So the descendants of Jacob will not be harmed,
they will not endure trouble without God.
[22] God brought them out slavery in Egypt
and has led them through the wilderness with strength like a wild ox.

### ULB:

[21] He has seen no hardship in Jacob
or trouble in Israel.
Yahweh their God is with them,
and shouts for their king are among them. [22] God brought them out of Egypt
with strength like that of a wild ox.

### translationNotes

#### hardship in Jacob ... trouble in Israel

These two phrases mean the same thing. Possible meanings are 1) God has given Israel only good things or 2) there is no sin in Israel that would cause him to judge them. (See: Parallelism)

#### shouts for their king are among them

“they shout with joy because Yahweh is their king”

#### with strength like that of a wild ox

This simile says that Yahweh’s great strength is equal to an ox. (See: Simile)

### translationWords

- Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob
- trouble, troubles, troubled, troubling, troublemaker, troublesome

- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- strength, strengthen, strengthens, strengthened, strengthening
-

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 23 General Notes
- Numbers 23 translationQuestions

## Numbers 23:23

### UDB:

[23] When people curse the descendants of Jacob, they will not be harmed,
when people work sorcery on them, it will have no power.
So now people will say about the descendants of Jacob,
'God has done wonderful things for the Israelites!'

### ULB:

[23] There is no sorcery that works against Jacob,
and no fortune-telling harms Israel.
Instead, it must be said about Jacob and Israel,
'Look what God has done!'

### translationNotes

#### There is no sorcery that works against Jacob ... no fortune-telling harms Israel

These two lines mean the same thing, that no curse that anyone puts on the nation of Israel will be effective. Here "Jacob" is a metonym that refers to Israel. (See: Parallelism and Metonymy)

#### it must be said

This can be stated in active form. "people must say" (See: Active or Passive)

#### Look what God has done!

It is implied that what God did for them was good. AT: "Look at the good things God has done for them!"

### translationWords

- sorcerer, sorcerers, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft
- Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 23 General Notes
- Numbers 23 translationQuestions

## Numbers 23:24

### UDB:

[24] They are very strong, like lionesses that are ready to attack other animals.
They stand firm like lions.
The lions refuse to rest until they have killed and eaten their prey
and drunk the blood of the animals they slaughtered."

### ULB:

[24] Look, the people rise like a lioness,
as a lion emerges and attacks.
He does not lie down until he eats his victim
and drinks the blood of what he has killed."

### translationNotes

#### the people rise like a lioness ... he has killed

This verse is a long metaphor that speaks of Israel defeating her enemies as if Israel was a lion devouring its prey. (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- lions, lion, lioness, lionesses
- blood

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 23 General Notes
- Numbers 23 translationQuestions

## Numbers 23:25-27

### UDB:

[25] Then Balak said to Balaam, “If you will not curse them, then I certainly do not want you to bless them!”

[26] But Balaam replied, “I told you that I must do only what Yahweh tells me to do!”

[27] Then King Balak said to Balaam, “Come with me; I will take you to another place. Perhaps it will please God to allow you to curse them from that place.”

### ULB:

[25] Then Balak said to Balaam, “Do not curse them or bless them at all.” [26] But Balaam answered and said to Balak, “Did I not tell you that I must say all that Yahweh tells me to say?” [27] So Balak replied to Balaam, “Come now, I will take you to another place. Perhaps it will please God for you to curse them there for me.”

### translationNotes

#### Balak

This is the king of Moab. See how you translated this in Numbers 22:2.

#### Did I not tell you that I must say all that Yahweh tells me to say?

Balaam uses this rhetorical question to remind Balak that Balaam refused to disobey God even before he came to Balak. It can be translated as a statement. AT: “I told you before that I must say all that Yahweh tells me to say.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

### translationWords

- Balaam
- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- Yahweh

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 23 General Notes
- Numbers 23 translationQuestions

## Numbers 23:28-30

### UDB:

28 So Balak took Balaam to the top of Mount Peor where they could look down and see the Israelites in the desert.

29 Balaam again told Balak, “Build me seven altars again and kill seven young bulls and seven rams for a sacrifice.” 30 So Balak did what Balaam told him to do. He burned a young bull and a ram on each altar as sacrifices.

### ULB:

28 So Balak took Balaam to the top of Mount Peor, which looks down on the wilderness. 29 Balaam said to Balak, “Build me seven altars here and prepare seven bulls and seven rams.” 30 So Balak did as Balaam had said; he offered up a bull and a ram on each altar.

### translationNotes

#### which looks down on the wilderness

It is understood that this wilderness was where Israel was camped. AT: “which looks down on the wilderness where Israel was” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- Peor, Mount Peor, Baal Peor
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- altar, altars
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 23 General Notes
- Numbers 23 translationQuestions

# Numbers 24 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The story of Balaam continues in this chapter.

Some translations indent each line of poetry to make it easier to read. The ULB does this with the poetry in 24:3-9, 15-24.

### Special concepts in this chapter

### Cursing God's people

God does not allow others to curse his people. Balaam blesses Israel again and the king is angry and sends him home. This may be taken as humor or an ironic situation. (See: curse, cursed, curses, cursing and people of God, my people)

### Links:

- **Numbers 24:01 Notes**

## Numbers 24:1

### UDB:

[1] Balaam now realized that Yahweh wanted to bless the Israelite people, not curse them. So he did not use magic like a shaman would do to find out what Yahweh wanted, as he often did. Instead, he turned toward the desert.

### ULB:

[1] When Balaam saw that it pleased Yahweh to bless Israel, he did not go, as at the other times, to use sorcery. Instead, he looked toward the wilderness.

### translationNotes

#### as at the other times

"like he did the previous times"

### translationWords

- Balaam
- Yahweh
- bless, blessed, blessing
- Israel, Israelites
- sorcerer, sorcerers, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 24 General Notes
- Numbers 24 translationQuestions

## Numbers 24:2-3

### UDB:

[2] He saw the Israelite people camped there in their tents, with each tribe gathered in one group. Then the Spirit of God came upon him, [3] and this is the prophetic message that he gave to Balak:

”I, Balaam son of Beor, am giving this prophecy.

This prophecy that I speak is as a man who sees what will happen in the future clearly speaks.

### ULB:

[2] He raised his eyes and saw that Israel was camped, each in their own tribe, and the Spirit of God came on him. [3] He received this prophecy and said,

”Balaam son of Beor is about to speak,

the man whose eyes are wide open.

### translationNotes

#### He raised his eyes

Here “raised his eyes” is an idiom that means to look up. AT: “He looked up” (See: Idiom)

#### Spirit of God came on him

This mean’s God’s Spirit took control of him to prophesy.

#### He received this prophecy

This can be stated in active form. AT: “God gave him this prophecy” (See: Active or Passive)

#### Balaam son of Beor

Beor was Balaam’s father. See how you translated this in Numbers 22:5.

#### whose eyes are wide open

This idiom means he sees and understands clearly. (See: Idiom)

**translationWords**

- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- receive, receives, received, receiving, receiver
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 24 General Notes
- Numbers 24 translationQuestions

## Numbers 24:4-5

### UDB:

[4] I hear this message from God.

I see a vision from the one who is all-powerful.

My eyes are open as I prostrate myself in front of him.

[5] You descendants of Jacob, your tents are very beautiful!

The places where you live are lovely!

### ULB:

[4] He speaks and hears God's words.

He sees a vision from the Almighty,

Before whom he bows down with his eyes open.

[5] How beautiful are your tents, Jacob,

the place where you live, Israel!

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Balaam continues to prophesy under the control of the Spirit of God.

#### He speaks ... He sees ... he bows

Here Balaam refers to himself as "He." (See: First, Second, or Third Person)

#### he bows down

This is an act of humility. (See: Symbolic Action)

#### with his eyes open

Here "eyes open" is an idiom that means Balaam has received the ability to know what God wants to say. (See: Idiom)

**How beautiful are your tents, Jacob, the place where you live, Israel!**

Both of these statements mean the same thing. They emphasize the Israelite camp was beautiful to Balaam. (See: Parallelism)

### translationWords

- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures
- vision, visions, envision
- Almighty
- bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down
- tent, tents, tentmakers
- Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- Israel, Israelites

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 24 General Notes
- Numbers 24 translationQuestions

## Numbers 24:6

### UDB:

[6] Your tents are spread out in front of me like groves of palm trees in valleys,

like gardens alongside a river.

They are like strong aloe trees that Yahweh has planted,

like strong cedar trees that grow along the rivers.

### ULB:

[6] Like valleys they spread out,

like gardens by the riverside,

like aloes planted by Yahweh,

like cedars beside the waters.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Balaam continues to prophesy under the control of the Spirit of God.

#### Like valleys they spread out

Balaam speaks of the Israelies as if they were numerous enough to cover entire valleys. (See: Simile)

#### like gardens by the riverside

Balaam speaks of the Israelies as if they were well-watered gardens that produce an abundant harvest. (See: Simile)

#### aloes planted by Yahweh

Aloes are plants with a pleasant smell that grow well even in dry conditions. Balaam speaks of the Israelies as if they would thrive and be pleasant like aloe plants. This can be stated in active form. AT: “aloes which Yahweh has planted” (See: Translate Unknowns and Simile and Active or Passive)

### like cedars beside the waters

Cedar trees were the largest trees in Israel. Balaam speaks of the Israelies as if they grew as large as well-watered cedar trees. (See: Simile)

### translationWords

- cedar, cedars, cedarwood
- water, waters, watered, watering

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 24 General Notes
- Numbers 24 translationQuestions

## Numbers 24:7

### UDB:

[7] Your water buckets will always be full.

The seeds that you plant will always have plenty of water to make them grow.

The Israelites' king will be greater than King Agag.

The kingdom that he rules will be honored.

### ULB:

[7] Water flows from their buckets,

and their seed is well-watered.

Their king is to be higher than Agag,

and their kingdom will be honored.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Balaam continues to prophesy under the control of the Spirit of God.

#### Water flows ... well-watered

Abundant water is associated with God's blessing on the crops of the land. AT: "God will bless Israel with plenty of water for their crops" (See: Metonymy)

#### their seed is well-watered

Well-watered seed refers to God's blessing on his people so that they will have abundant crops. AT: "they will have plenty of water for their seed to grow healthy crops" (See: Metonymy)

#### Their king is to be higher ... their kingdom will be honored

These two phrases have similar meaning, emphasizing how much God will bless them compared to other nations. (See: Parallelism)

#### Their king is to be higher than Agag

Here "higher" refers to greater honor and power. This means the future king of Israel will have more honor and will be more powerful than Agag. Agag was king of the Amalekites. (See: How to Translate Names and Metonymy)

#### their kingdom will be honored

This can be stated in active form. AT: “other people will give honor to their kingdom” (See: Active or Passive)

#### translationWords

- seed, semen
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- kingdom, kingdoms
- honor, honors

#### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 24 General Notes
- Numbers 24 translationQuestions

## Numbers 24:8

### UDB:

[8] God brought them out of Egypt,

leading them along with his great power that is like a wild ox.

God devastates all the nations that oppose him.

He breaks all those people's bones into pieces,

and shoots them with his arrows.

### ULB:

[8] God brings him out of Egypt,

with strength like a wild ox.

He will eat up the nations who fight against him.

He will break their bones to pieces.

He will shoot them with his arrows.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Balaam continues to prophesy under the control of the Spirit of God.

#### God brings him

"God brings the Israelites"

#### with strength like a wild ox

This simile emphasizes that the Israelites have great strength. (See: Simile)

#### He will eat up the nations

Balaam speaks of the Israelites as if they are wild animals that eat their enemies. This means they will destroy their enemies. (See: Metaphor)

**translationWords**

- God
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- strength, strengthen, strengthens, strengthened, strengthening
-
- nation, nations
- bow and arrow, bows and arrows

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 24 General Notes
- Numbers 24 translationQuestions

## Numbers 24:9

### UDB:

[9] The Israelites are like lions that crouch and lie down, ready to spring on their prey,

like lionesses that are resting.

No one would dare to arouse them!

God will bless everyone who blesses you Israelites,

and he will curse everyone who curses you."

### ULB:

[9] He crouches down like a lion,

like a lioness. Who dares disturb him?

May everyone who blesses him be blessed;

may everyone who curses him be cursed."

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Balaam finishes the prophecy under the control of the Spirit of God.

#### He crouches down like a lion, like a lioness

In this simile, Balaam compares the Israelites to both male and female lions. This means they are dangerous and always ready to attack. (See: Simile)

#### Who dares disturb him?

Balaam uses a question to warn all the people to not provoke the Israelites. This can be translated as a statement. AT: "No one dares to disturb him!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### May everyone who blesses him be blessed; may everyone who curses him be cursed

This can be stated in active form. AT: "May God bless those who bless the Israelites; may he curse those who curse the Israelites" (See: Active or Passive)

**translationWords**

- lions, lion, lioness, lionesses
- bless, blessed, blessing
- curse, cursed, curses, cursing

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 24 General Notes
- Numbers 24 translationQuestions

## Numbers 24:10-11

### UDB:

10 Then King Balak was extremely angry with Balaam. He showed with his hands that he was very angry, and he shouted, saying, "I summoned you here to curse my enemies! Instead, you have blessed them three times! 11 So now, get out of here! Go back home! I said that I would pay you a lot of money if you cursed them, but Yahweh has prevented you from getting any pay!"

### ULB:

10 Balak's anger was kindled against Balaam and he struck his hands together in anger. Balak said to Balaam, "I called you to curse my enemies, but look, you have blessed them three times. 11 So leave me right now and go home. I said I would greatly reward you, but Yahweh has kept you from getting any reward."

### translationNotes

#### Balak's anger was kindled

The increase in Balak's anger is spoken of as if it was a fire starting to burn. This can be stated in active form. AT: "Balak became very angry" (See: Idiom and Active or Passive)

#### struck his hands together in anger

This was a sign of great frustration and anger. (See: Symbolic Action)

### translationWords

- Balaam
- anger, angered, angry
- call, calls, calling, called
- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies
- Yahweh
- reward, rewards, rewarded, rewarding, rewarder

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 24 General Notes
- Numbers 24 translationQuestions

## Numbers 24:12-14

### UDB:

[12] Balaam said to Balak, "Do you not remember what I told the messengers that you sent to me? I said, [13] 'Even if Balak would give me a palace filled with silver and gold, I would not disobey Yahweh. I cannot do anything bad or anything that is good that he does not approve of.' And I told you that I could say only what Yahweh says to me. [14] So yes, I will return to my people, but first, allow me to tell you what will happen to you Moab people in the future."

### ULB:

[12] Then Balaam replied to Balak, "I said to the messengers that you sent to me, [13] 'Even if Balak gave me his palace full of silver and gold, I could not go beyond Yahweh's word and anything bad or good, or anything at all that I might want to do. I can say only what Yahweh tells me to say.' Did I not say this to them? [14] So now, look, I will go back to my people. But first let me warn you what this people will do to your people in the days ahead."

### translationNotes

#### Even if Balak gave me his palace full of silver and gold

Balaam is describing something that would never happen. This statement emphasizes that there is nothing that would make Balaam disobey God. (See: Hypothetical Situations)

#### Did I not say this to them?

Balaam uses a question to remind Balak about what he said earlier. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. "AT: I said this to them." (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### this people

"the Israelites"

### translationWords

- messenger, messengers
- send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out
- palace, palaces
- silver
- gold, golden
- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures

- Yahweh
- people of God, my people
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 24 General Notes
- Numbers 24 translationQuestions

## Numbers 24:15-16

### UDB:

15 Then Balaam said this to Balak:

”I, Balaam, son of Beor, am again giving a prophecy.

This prophecy that I speak is again as a man who sees what will happen in the future clearly speaks.

16 I hear a message from God;

I know things that God, who lives in heaven, has revealed to me.

I see a vision from the one who is all-powerful.

My eyes are open as I prostrate myself in front of him.

### ULB:

15 Balaam began this prophecy. He said,

”Balaam son of Beor speaks,

The man whose eyes are wide open.

16 This is a prophecy of someone who hears words from God,

who has knowledge from the Most High,

who has visions from the Almighty,

Before whom he bows down with open eyes.

### translationNotes

#### Balaam son of Beor

Beor was Balaam’s father. See how you translated this in Numbers 22:5.

#### whose eyes are wide open

This idiom means he sees and understands clearly. See how you translated this in Numbers 24:3. (See: Idiom)

#### who has knowledge from the Most High

The abstract term “knowledge” can be stated as an action. AT: “who knows things that God Most High has revealed to him” (See: Abstract Nouns)

### bows down

This is a sign of submission to God. (See: Symbolic Action)

### translationWords

- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge
- Most High
- vision, visions, envision
- Almighty
- bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 24 General Notes
- Numbers 24 translationQuestions

## Numbers 24:17

### UDB:

[17] The things that I see in the vision are not going to happen now.
I see things that God will cause to happen in the future.
A man who is a descendant of Jacob will appear like a star;
a king who holds a scepter will be one of the Israelite people.
He will crush the heads of you people of Moab;
he will wipe out the descendants of Seth.

### ULB:

[17] I see him, but he is not here now.
I look at him, but he is not near.
A star will come out of Jacob,
and a scepter will rise out of Israel.
He will shatter Moab's leaders
and destroy all the descendants of Seth.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Balaam continues the first of his four prophecies.

#### I see him, but he is not here now. I look at him, but he is not near

Both of these statements mean the same thing. Balaam is having a vision of a future event. The word "him" refers to a future leader of Israel. (See: Parallelism)

#### A star will come out of Jacob

Here "star" refers to an Israelite king that will rise in power. (See: Symbolic Language)

#### out of Jacob

Here "Jacob" refers to the descendants of Jacob. AT: "from among the descendants of Jacob" (See: Metonymy)

#### a scepter will rise out of Israel

This means the same thing as the first part of the sentence. Here “scepter” refers to a powerful king. (See: Parallelism)

#### out of Israel

Here “Israel” refers to future Israelites. AT: “from among the Israelites in the future” (See: Metonymy)

#### shatter Moab’s leaders

Possible meanings are 1) he will break the heads of the leaders of Moab or 2) he will destroy the leaders of Moab.

#### all the descendants of Seth

This also refers to the Moabites, who were descendants of Seth.

#### translationWords

- Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob
- scepter, scepters
- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Seth

#### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 24 General Notes
- Numbers 24 translationQuestions

## Numbers 24:18-19

### UDB:

[18] The Israelites will occupy Edom,

and they will conquer their enemies who live near Mount Seir.

The Israelite people will be victorious.

[19] A ruler will come who is a descendant of Jacob.

He will get rid of the people who still live in the city where Balaam first met Balak."

### ULB:

[18] Then Edom will become a possession of Israel,

and Seir will also become their possession,

enemies of Israel,

whom Israel will conquer with force.

[19] Out of Jacob a king will come who will have dominion,

and he will destroy the survivors of their city."

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Balaam finishes the first of his four prophecies.

#### Edom will become a possession of Israel

This can be stated in active form. AT: "The Israelites will occupy Edom" (See: Active or Passive)

#### Seir will also become their possession

Here "Seir" refers to the people who lived near Mount Seir. This can be stated in active form. AT: "Israel will also conquer the people of Seir" (See: Active or Passive and Metonymy)

#### Out of Jacob a king will come

Jacob was the ancestor of the Israelites. "Jacob" is a metonym that refers to the whole people group. (See: Metonymy)

### of their city

This refers to the city of Ar where Balak met Balaam. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- Edom, Edomite, Edomites, Idumea
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- dominion

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 24 General Notes
- Numbers 24 translationQuestions

## Numbers 24:20

### UDB:

[20] Then Balaam looked out over where the Amalek people group lived, and he prophesied this,

”The Amalek people group were the greatest nation,

but they will be wiped out.”

### ULB:

[20] Then Balaam looked at Amalek and began his prophecy. He said,

”Amalek was once the greatest of nations,

but his final end will be destruction.”

### translationNotes

#### Balaam looked at Amalek

Here “Amalek” is a metonym that refers to the people of Amalek. This continues Balaam’s vision while turning to look in the direction of the Amalek nation, and then he prophecies about the Amalekites. (See: Metonymy)

#### his final end

A singular pronoun is used because the Amalekites are spoken of as a single person. (See: First, Second, or Third Person)

### translationWords

- Balaam
- Amalek, Amalekite, Amalekites
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- nation, nations

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 24 General Notes
- Numbers 24 translationQuestions

## Numbers 24:21-22

### UDB:

[21] Then he looked out over the area where the Kenite people group lived, and he prophesied this,

”You think that the place where you live is secure

like a nest that is made in the cliffs,

[22] but you will be wiped out

when the army of Assyria conquers you.”

### ULB:

[21] Then Balaam looked toward the Kenites and began his prophecy. He said,

”The place where you live is strong,

and your nest is in the rocks.

[22] Nevertheless you Kenites will be consumed by fire

when Assyria carries you away captive.”

### translationNotes

#### the Kenites

This is the name of a people group who descended from Kain. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### The place where you live is strong

“The place were you live is well defended”

#### your nest is in the rocks

This is a metaphor that means that they live in a secure place. AT: “your location is as secure as a nest high in the rocks” (See: Metaphor)

#### Nevertheless you Kenites will be consumed by fire when Assyria carries you away captive

Here the destruction of the Kenites is spoken of as if they were burned up in a fire. This can be stated in active form. AT: “Nevertheless the Assyrians will destroy you Kenites like a fire, and take you away as captives” (See: Active or Passive)

**translationWords**

- ruin, ruins, ruined
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrians, Assyrian Empire
- captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 24 General Notes
- Numbers 24 translationQuestions

## Numbers 24:23-24

### UDB:

[23] Balaam ended his prophecies by saying,

”Also, who can survive when God does all these things?

[24] Ships will come from the Island of Cyprus ,

and the men in those ships will defeat the armies of Assyria and Eber.

But God will get rid of those men, too.”

### ULB:

[23] Then Balaam began his final prophecy. He said,

”Woe! Who will survive when God does this?

[24] Ships will come from the coast of Kittim;

they will attack Assyria and will conquer Eber,

but they, too, will end in destruction.”

### translationNotes

#### Who will survive when God does this?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “No one will survive when God does this!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### Kittim

This is the name of a city on an island in the Mediterranean Sea. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### they, too, will end in destruction

The abstract noun “destruction” can be stated as an action. AT: “God will destroy them also” (See: Abstract Nouns)

### translationWords

- woe

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 24 General Notes
- Numbers 24 translationQuestions

## Numbers 24:25

### UDB:

[25] Then Balaam and Balak returned to their homes.

### ULB:

[25] Then Balaam got up and left. He returned to his home, and Balak also went away.

### translationNotes

#### Balak

This is the king of Moab. See how you translated this in Numbers 22:2.

### translationWords

- Balaam

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 24 General Notes
- Numbers 24 translationQuestions

## Numbers 25 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The story of Balaam concludes in this chapter.

### Special concepts in this chapter

### Foreign women

Balaam told the young women from Moab to act friendly to the Israelite men and invite them to feasts in honor of their god Baal. The men went to the feasts and worshiped Baal. God was angry and killed 24,000 Israelite men. Foreign women are often the source of problems in Israel. They caused the men to worship their false gods. (See: god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry)

### Links:

- **Numbers 25:01 Notes**

## Numbers 25:1-3

### UDB:

[1] While the Israelites were camped at a place called Acacia Grove, some of the men became unfaithful to God by sleeping with some of the women of the Moab people group who lived in that area. [2] Then those women invited the men to come when the sacrifices were being offered to their gods. The Israelite men accepted. They went to the feasts with the women and worshiped the gods of the Moab people group. [3] By doing that, the Israelite people joined the women in worshiping the god Baal who the Moab people group thought lived on Mount Peor. That caused Yahweh to become very angry with his people, and he sent a severe plague on many of the Israelite people.

### ULB:

[1] Israel stayed in Shittim, and the men began to prostitute themselves with women of Moab, [2] for the Moabites had invited the people to the sacrifices to their gods. So the people ate and bowed down to Moabite gods. [3] The men of Israel joined in worshiping Baal of Peor, and Yahweh's anger was kindled against Israel.

### translationNotes

#### Shittim

This is the name of a place in Moab. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### bowed down

This was an act of worship. (See: Symbolic Action)

#### Peor

Peor was the name of a mountain. See how you translated this in Numbers 23:28.

#### Yahweh's anger was kindled

The increase in Yahweh's anger is spoken of as if it was a fire starting to burn. This can be stated in active form. See how you translated a similar phrase in Numbers 21:20. AT: "Yahweh became very angry" (See: Idiom and Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- Israel, Israelites
- had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, sleeps with, slept with, sleeping with

- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down
- worship
- Baal
- Yahweh
- anger, angered, angry

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 25 General Notes
- Numbers 25 translationQuestions

## Numbers 25:4-5

### UDB:

[4] Yahweh said this to Moses: "Seize all the leaders of those who are doing this and execute them while I am watching. Do that in the daytime. After you do that, I will no longer be angry with the Israelite people."

[5] So Moses said to the other Israelite leaders, "Each of you must execute your men who have joined others in worshiping Baal."

### ULB:

[4] Yahweh said to Moses, "Kill all the leaders of the people and hang them up before me to expose them in the daylight, so that my fierce anger may turn away from Israel." [5] So Moses said to Israel's leaders, "Each of you must execute his people who have joined in worshiping Baal of Peor."

### translationNotes

#### all the leaders of the people

It is implied that this refers to the leaders who were guilty of idolatry. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: "all the leaders of the people who are guilty of idolatry" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### to expose them in the daylight

This means that the leaders of Israel will kill these people and leave their dead bodies out where all the people can see them.

#### to Israel's leaders

"to Israel's leaders who were not guilty of idolatry"

#### Peor

Peor was the name of a mountain. See how you translated this in Numbers 23:28.

### translationWords

- Moses
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- hang, hangs, hanged, hanging, hangings, hung
- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 25 General Notes
- Numbers 25 translationQuestions

## Numbers 25:6-7

### UDB:

[6] But later, while many people were crying at the entrance of the sacred tent, one of the Israelite men brought a woman from the Midian people group into his tent and started to sleep with her. Moses and all the people heard of it. [7] When Phinehas, who was a grandson of Aaron, heard this, he grabbed a spear.

### ULB:

[6] Then one of the men of Israel came and brought among his family members a Midianite woman. This happened in the sight of Moses and all the community of the people of Israel, while they were weeping at the entrance to the tent of meeting. [7] When Phinehas son of Eleazar son of Aaron the priest, saw that, he rose up from among the community and took a spear in his hand.

### translationNotes

#### brought among his family members a Midianite woman

It is implied that he brought her among his camp to have sex with her. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: "brought a Midianite woman to the Israelite camp to sleep with her" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### in the sight of Moses and all the community of the people of Israel

Here "in the sight of" is an idiom that means they heard about it, or found out about it. (See: Idiom)

#### Eleazar

This is the name of Aaron's son. See how you translated it in Numbers 3:2.

### translationWords

- family, families
- Midian, Midianite, Midianites
- tent of meeting
- Phinehas
- Aaron
- priest, priests, priesthood
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- spear, spears, spearmen

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 25 General Notes
- Numbers 25 translationQuestions

## Numbers 25:8-9

### UDB:

[8] Then he rushed into the man's tent. He thrust the spear completely through the man's body and into the woman's belly and killed both of them. When he did that, the plague that had started to strike the Israelites stopped. [9] But twenty-four thousand people had already died from that plague.

### ULB:

[8] He followed the Israelite man into the tent and thrust the spear through both of their bodies, both the Israelite man and the woman. So a plague that God had sent on the people of Israel stopped. [9] Those who died by the plague were twenty-four thousand in number.

### translationNotes

#### He followed

"Phinehas followed"

### translationWords

- tent, tents, tentmakers
- body, bodies
- plague, plagues
- God
- send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 25 General Notes
- Numbers 25 translationQuestions

## Numbers 25:10-11

### UDB:

10 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 11 "Phinehas has caused me to stop being angry with the Israelite people, by being as eager as I am to stop this sinful behavior. I was ready to get rid of all the Israelite people because I was extremely angry, but Phinehas has prevented me from doing that.

### ULB:

10 Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, 11 "Phinehas son of Eleazar son of Aaron the priest, has turned my rage away from the people of Israel because he was passionate with my zeal among them. So I have not consumed the people of Israel in my fierceness.

### translationNotes

#### turned my rage away from the people of Israel

God's rage is spoken of as if it were something that could be physically pushed aside in order to stop it. AT: "caused me to no longer be angry with the people of Israel" (See: Metaphor)

#### I have not consumed the people of Israel in my fierceness

God is spoken of as if he were a fierce animal that could have eaten up the people of Israel. AT: "I have not destroyed the people of Israel in my terrible anger" (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Phinehas
- rage, rages, raged, raging
- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
- Israel, Israelites
- zeal, zealous
- consume, consumes, consumed, consuming

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 25 General Notes
- Numbers 25 translationQuestions

## Numbers 25:12-13

### UDB:

[12] Now tell him that I am making a special peace agreement with him. [13] In this agreement, I am promising to give to him and to his descendants the right to be priests. I am doing this because he showed that he was very eager to honor me, his God, by stopping this sinful behavior. He has satisfied my holy righteousness against the sinfulness of Israel by causing me to forgive them for their sin."

### ULB:

[12] Therefore say, 'Yahweh says, "Look, I am giving to Phinehas my covenant of peace. [13] For him and his descendants after him, it will be a covenant of an everlasting priesthood because he was zealous for me, his God. He has atoned for the people of Israel.""'

### translationNotes

#### Therefore say, 'Yahweh says, "Look, I am giving to Phinehas ... the people of Israel."'

This continues Yahweh's speech from the previous verse. This has quotations within quotations. The direct quotations can be stated as indirect quotation. AT: "Therefore say to Phinehas that I am giving to him ... the people of Israel." (See: Quotes Within Quotes and Direct and Indirect Quotations)

### translationWords

- covenant, covenants, new covenant
- peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever
- priest, priests, priesthood
- zeal, zealous
- God
- atonement, atone, atones, atoned

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 25 General Notes
- Numbers 25 translationQuestions

## Numbers 25:14-15

### UDB:

14 The Israelite man who was killed with the woman of the Moab people group was named Zimri son of Salu, who was the leader of a family from the tribe of Simeon. 15 The woman's name was Kozbi. She was the daughter of Zur, who was the leader of one of the clans of the Midian people group.

### ULB:

14 Now the name of the Israelite man who was killed with the Midianite woman was Zimri son of Salu, a leader of an ancestor's family among the Simeonites. 15 The name of the Midianite woman who was killed was Kozbi daughter of Zur, who was head of a tribe and family in Midian.

### translationNotes

#### Now

This switches from the main story line to background information about Zimri and Kozbi. (See: Background Information)

#### who was killed

This can be stated in active form. AT: "whom Phinehas killed" (See: Active or Passive)

#### Zimri ... Salu ... Zur

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### Kozbi

This is the name of a woman. (See: How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- name, names, named
- Midian, Midianite, Midianites
- Simeon
- head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 25 General Notes
- Numbers 25 translationQuestions

## Numbers 25:16-18

### UDB:

16 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 17 "Take your men and attack the Midian people group and kill them.
18 They have become your enemies, because they tricked you Israelite people and induced many of you to worship Baal, and because one of your men slept with Kozbi, who was the daughter of a leader of the Midian people group. She was killed at the time the plague started because of the people who sinned at Mount Peor."

### ULB:

16 So Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, 17 "Treat the Midianites as enemies and attack them, 18 for they treated you like enemies with their deceitfulness. They led you into evil in the case of Peor and in the case of their sister Kozbi, the daughter of a leader in Midian, who was killed on the day of the plague in the matter of Peor."

### translationNotes

#### with their deceitfulness

The abstract noun "deceitfulness" can be stated as a verb. AT: "by deceiving you" (See: Abstract Nouns)

#### They led you into evil

"They persuaded you to do this evil thing"

#### in the case of Peor ... in the matter of Peor

Both of these phrases mean that these things happened at Mount Peor.

#### Peor

Peor was the name of a mountain. See how you translated this in Numbers 23:28.

#### who was killed

This can be stated in active form. AT: "whom Phinehas killed" (See: Active or Passive)

**translationWords**

- Moses
- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies
- deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceptive
- plague, plagues

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 25 General Notes
- Numbers 25 translationQuestions

## Numbers 26 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The ULB indents the lines in 26:12-17, 20-26, 29-32, 35, 38-39, 44-45, 48-49, 57-58 because they are long lists.

The people are counted in preparation for entering into the Promised Land. (See: Promised Land)

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### A new generation

None of the adults who came out of Egypt with Moses were still alive except the two faithful spies, Joshua and Caleb. (See: faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness)

### Links:

- **Numbers 26:01 Notes**

## Numbers 26:1-2

### UDB:

[1] After the plague ended, Yahweh said to Eleazar and Moses, [2] "Count all the people of Israel again. Write down the names of all the men who are at least 20 years old who are able to fight in battles, along with their family names."

### ULB:

[1] It came about after the plague that Yahweh spoke to Moses and Eleazar son of Aaron the priest. He said, [2] "Count all the community of the people of Israel, from twenty years old and up, by their ancestor's families, all who are able to go to war for Israel."

### translationNotes

#### Count all the community

They were only to count the men, not the women. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: "Count all the men of the community" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### twenty years old and up

"20 years old and older" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- plague, plagues
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Eleazar
- Aaron
- priest, priests, priesthood
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- year, years
- family, families

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 26 General Notes

- Numbers 26 translationQuestions

## Numbers 26:3-4

### UDB:

[3] So while the Israelites were on the plains of Moab, by the Jordan across from Jericho, Eleazar and Moses told this to the Israelite leaders, [4] "Write down the names of all the Israelite men who are at least 20 years old, as Yahweh has commanded us."

So they did that, and this is a record of all the descendants of Jacob who came out of Egypt who were still alive.

### ULB:

[3] So Moses and Eleazar the priest spoke to them in the plains of Moab by the Jordan at Jericho and said, [4] "Count the people, from twenty years old and up, as Yahweh commanded Moses and the people of Israel, who came out of the land of Egypt."

### translationNotes

#### spoke to them

"spoke to the Israelite leaders"

#### plains

A plain is a large flat area of land.

#### twenty years old and up

"20 years old and older" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Jericho
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 26 General Notes
- Numbers 26 translationQuestions

## Numbers 26:5

### UDB:

[5-7] These are the descendants of Reuben, Jacob's oldest son:

the Hanokites descended from his son Hanok,

the Palluites descended from his son Pallu,

the Hezronites descended from his son Hezron,

### ULB:

[5] Reuben was the firstborn of Israel. From his son Hanok came the clan of the Hanokites. From Pallu came the clan of the Palluites. [6] From Hezron came the clan of the Hezronites. From Karmi came the clan of the Karmites. [7] These were the clans of Reuben, who numbered 43,730 men.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: How to Translate Names and Numbers)

#### was the firstborn of Israel

Here "Israel" refers to the man also known as Jacob.

#### From his son

The word "his" refers to Rueben.

#### 43,730 men

"forty-three thousand seven hundred and thirty men" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- Reuben
- firstborn
- Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob
- clan, clans
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 26 General Notes
- Numbers 26 translationQuestions

## Numbers 26:8-9

### UDB:

[8] Pallu's son was Eliab [9] and his grandsons were Nemuel, Dathan and Abiram. Dathan and Abiram were the leaders who joined with Korah to conspire against Aaron and Moses and rebelled against Yahweh.

### ULB:

[8] Eliab was a son of Pallu. [9] Eliab's sons were Nemuel, Dathan, and Abiram. These were the same Dathan and Abiram who followed Korah when they challenged Moses and Aaron and rebelled against Yahweh.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### Eliab ... Dathan ... Abiram

See how you translated these men's names in Numbers 16:1.

### translationWords

- Korah, Korahite, Korahites
- Moses
- Aaron
- rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- Yahweh

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 26 General Notes
- Numbers 26 translationQuestions

## Numbers 26:10-11

### UDB:

10 But the earth opened up and swallowed them and Korah. Yahweh also sent a fire that burned up 250 men who supported those three men. That was a warning to all the Israelite people that they should respect and obey the leaders whom Yahweh had appointed. 11 But the descendants of Korah did not die on that day.

### ULB:

10 The earth opened its mouth and swallowed them up together with Korah when all his followers died. At that time, fire devoured 250 men, who became a warning sign. 11 But Korah's line did not die out.

### translationNotes

#### The earth opened its mouth and swallowed them up

Here the earth is spoken of as if it were a person opening its mouth and eating something. AT: "Yahweh caused the earth to split open, and the men fell in the hole" (See: Personification)

#### fire devoured 250 men

Here the fire is spoken of as if it were a large animal devouring something. AT: "Yahweh caused a fire that killed 250 men" (See: Personification)

#### 250 men

"two hundred and fifty men" (See: Numbers)

#### Korah's line

"all of Korah's family"

#### die out

"end"

### translationWords

- earth, earthen, earthly
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly

- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- devour, devours, devoured, devouring
- sign, signs, proof, reminder

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 26 General Notes
- Numbers 26 translationQuestions

## Numbers 26:12

### UDB:

[12-14] These are the descendants of Simeon:

the Nemuelites descended from his son Nemuel,

the Jaminites descended from his son Jamin,

the Jakinites descended from his son Jakin,

the Zerahites descended from his son Zerah,

### ULB:

[12] The clans of Simeon's descendants were these:

Through Nemuel, the clan of the Nemuelites,

through Jamin, the clan of the Jaminites,

through Jakin, the clan of the Jakinites,

[13] through Zerah, the clan of the Zerahites,

through Shaul, the clan of the Shaulites. [14] These were the clans of Simeon's descendants, who numbered 22,200 men.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: How to Translate Names and Numbers)

#### 22,200 men

"twenty-two thousand two hundred men" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- clan, clans
- Simeon
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 26 General Notes
- Numbers 26 translationQuestions

## Numbers 26:15

### UDB:

[15-18] These are the descendants of Gad:
the Zephonites descended from his son Zephon,
the Haggites descended from his son Haggi,
the Shunites descended from his son Shuni,
the Oznites descended from his son Ozni,
the Erites descended from his son Eri,
the Arodites descended from his son Arod,

### ULB:

[15] The clans of Gad's descendants were these:
Through Zephon, the clan of the Zephonites,
through Haggi, the clan of the Haggites,
through Shuni, the clan of the Shunites,
[16] through Ozni, the clan of the Oznites,
through Eri, the clan of the Erites,
[17] through Arod, the clan of the Arodites,
through Areli, the clan of the Arelites. [18] These were the clans of Gad's descendants, who numbered 40,500 men.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: How to Translate Names and Numbers)

#### 40,500 men

"forty thousand five hundred men" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- Gad

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 26 General Notes
- Numbers 26 translationQuestions

## Numbers 26:19

### UDB:

[19-22] Judah's sons, Er and Onan, died in Canaan before they had any children. These are the descendants of Judah:

the Shelanites descended from his son Shelah,

the Perezites descended from his son Perez,

### ULB:

[19] Judah's sons were Er and Onan, but these men died in the land of Canaan. [20] The clans of Judah's other descendants were these:

through Shelah, the clan of the Shelanites,

through Perez, the clan of the Perezites, and

through Zerah, the clan of the Zerahites. [21] The descendants of Perez were these:

Through Hezron, the clan of the Hezronites,

through Hamul, the clan of the Hamulites. [22] These were the clans of Judah's descendants, who numbered 76,500 men.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: How to Translate Names and Numbers)

#### 76,500 men

"seventy-six thousand five hundred men" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- Judah
- son, sons
- Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 26 General Notes
- Numbers 26 translationQuestions

## Numbers 26:23

### UDB:

[23-25] These are the descendants of Issachar:

the Tolaites descended from his son Tola,

the Puites descended from his son Puah,

the Jashubites descended from his son Jashub,

### ULB:

[23] The clans of Issachar's descendants were these:

Through Tola, the clan of the Tolaites,

through Puah, the clan of the Puites, [24] through Jashub, the clan of the Jashubites,

through Shimron, the clan of the Shimronites. [25] These were the clans of Issachar, who numbered 64,300 men.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: How to Translate Names and Numbers)

#### 64,300 men

"sixty-four thousand three hundred men" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- clan, clans
- Issachar
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 26 General Notes
- Numbers 26 translationQuestions

## Numbers 26:26

### UDB:

[26-27] These are the descendants of Zebulun:

the Seredites descended from his son Sered,

the Elonites descended from his son Elon,

### ULB:

[26] The clans of Zebulun's descendants were these:

Through Sered, the clan of the Seredites,

through Elon, the clan of the Elonites,

through Jahleel, the clan of the Jahleelites. [27] These were the clans of the Zebulunites, who numbered 60,500 men.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: How to Translate Names and Numbers)

#### 60,500 men

"sixty thousand five hundred men" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- Zebulun

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 26 General Notes
- Numbers 26 translationQuestions

## Numbers 26:28

### UDB:

[28-29] The sons of Joseph are Manasseh and Ephraim. These are the descendants of Manasseh:

### ULB:

[28] The clans of Joseph's descendants were Manasseh and Ephraim. [29] The descendants of Manasseh were these:

through Makir, the clan of the Makirites (Makir was Gilead's father),

through Gilead, the clan of the Gileadites.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- Joseph (OT)
- Manasseh
- Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites
- Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 26 General Notes
- Numbers 26 translationQuestions

## Numbers 26:30

### UDB:

[30-32] Theses are the descendants of Gilead:

the Iezerites descended from his son Iezer,

the Helekites descended from his son Helek,

the Asrielites descended from his son Asriel,

the Shechemites descended from his son Shechem,

the Shemidaites descended from his son Shemida,

### ULB:

[30] Gilead's descendants were these:

Through Iezer, the clan of the Iezerites,

through Helek, the clan of the Helekites,

[31] through Asriel, the clan of the Asrielites,

through Shechem, the clan of the Shechemites,

[32] through Shemida, the clan of the Shemidaites,

through Hepher, the clan of the Hepherites.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- clan, clans

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 26 General Notes
- Numbers 26 translationQuestions

## Numbers 26:33

### UDB:

[33-34] Hepher's son Zelophehad did not have any sons, but he had five daughters—Mahlah, Noah, Hoglah, Milkah, and Tirzah.

The Israelite leaders counted 52,700 men from the tribe of Manasseh, who was one of the sons of Joseph.

### ULB:

[33] Zelophehad son of Hepher had no sons, but only daughters. The names of his daughters were Mahlah, Noah, Hoglah, Milkah, and Tirzah. [34] These were the clans of Manasseh, who numbered 52,700 men.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: How to Translate Names and Numbers)

#### 52,700 men

"fifty-two thousand seven hundred men" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- name, names, named

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 26 General Notes
- Numbers 26 translationQuestions

## Numbers 26:35

### UDB:

[35-37] These are the descendants of Ephriam:

the Shuthelahites descended from his son Shuthelah,

the Becherites descended from his son Becher,

### ULB:

[35] The clans of Ephraim's descendants were these:

Through Shuthelah, the clan of the Shuthelahites,

through Beker, the clan of the Bekerites,

through Tahan, the clan of the Tahanites. [36] The descendants of Shuthelah were, by Eran, the clan of the Eranites. [37] These were the clans of Ephraim's descendants, who numbered 32,500 men. These were Joseph's descendants, counted in each of their clans.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: How to Translate Names and Numbers)

#### 32,500 men

"thirty-two thousand five hundred men" (See: Numbers)

#### These were Joseph's descendants

The word "these" refers to all of the men descended from Joseph's sons, Ephraim and Manasseh. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: "These were Joseph's descendants, descended from his sons Manasseh and Ephraim," (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### counted in each of their clans

This can be stated in active form. AT: "they counted them in each of their clans" (See: Active or Passive)

**translationWords**

- clan, clans
- Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Joseph (OT)

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 26 General Notes
- Numbers 26 translationQuestions

## Numbers 26:38

### UDB:

[38-41] These are the descendants of Benjamin:

the Belaites descended from his son Bela,

the Ashbelites descended from his son Ashbel,

the Ahiramites descended from his son Ahiram,

the Shuphamites descended from his son Shephupham,

### ULB:

[38] The clans of Benjamin's descendants were these:

Through Bela, the clan of the Belaites,

through Ashbel, the clan of the Ashbelites,

through Ahiram, the clan of the Ahiramites,

[39] through Shephupham, the clan of the Shuphamites,

through Hupham, the clan of the Huphamites.

[40] Bela's sons were Ard and Naaman. From Ard came the clan of the Ardites, and from Naaman came the clan of the Naamites. [41] These were the clans of Benjamin's descendants. They numbered 45,600 men.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: How to Translate Names and Numbers)

#### 45,600 men

"forty-five thousand six hundred men" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- clan, clans
- Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 26 General Notes
- Numbers 26 translationQuestions

## Numbers 26:42

### UDB:

[42-43] These are the descendants of Dan:

### ULB:

[42] The clans of Dan's descendants were, by Shuham, the clans of the Shuhamites. These were the clans of Dan's descendants. [43] All the clans of the Shuhamites numbered 64,400 men.

### translationNotes

### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: How to Translate Names and Numbers)

### 64,400 men

"sixty-four thousand four hundred men" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- Dan

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 26 General Notes
- Numbers 26 translationQuestions

## Numbers 26:44

### UDB:

[44-47] These are the descendants of Asher:

the Imnites descended from his son Imnah,

the Ishvites descended from his son Ishvi,

### ULB:

[44] The clans of Asher's descendants were these:

Through Imnah, the clan of the Imnites,

through Ishvi, the clan of the Ishvites,

through Beriah, the clan of the Beriites.

[45] The descendants of Beriah were these:

Through Heber, the clan of the Heberites,

through Malkiel, the clan of the Malkielites.

[46] The name of Asher's daughter was Serah. [47] These were the clans of Asher's descendants, who numbered 53,400 men.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: How to Translate Names and Numbers)

#### 53,400 men

"fifty-three thousand four hundred men" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- clan, clans
- Asher
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 26 General Notes
- Numbers 26 translationQuestions

## Numbers 26:48

### UDB:

[48-50] These are the descendants of Napthali:

the Jahzeelites descended from his son Jahzeel,

the Gunites descended from his son Guni,

the Jezerites descended from his son Jezer,

### ULB:

[48] The clans of Naphtali's descendants were these:

Through Jahzeel, the clan of the Jahzeelites,

through Guni, the clan of the Gunites,

[49] through Jezer, the clan of the Jezerites,

through Shillem, the clan of the Shillemites.

[50] These were the clans of Naphtali's descendants, who numbered 45,400 men.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: How to Translate Names and Numbers)

#### 45,400 men

"forty-five thousand four hundred men" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- Naphtali

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 26 General Notes
- Numbers 26 translationQuestions

## Numbers 26:51

### UDB:

[51] The total of the Israelite men whom the leaders counted was 601,730.

### ULB:

[51] This was the complete count of men among the people of Israel: 601,730.

### translationNotes

#### the complete count

“the total number”

#### 601,730

“six-hundred and one thousand, seven hundred and thirty” (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 26 General Notes
- Numbers 26 translationQuestions

## Numbers 26:52-53

### UDB:

52 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 53 "Divide Canaan land among the tribes. Distribute the land according to the number of people in each tribe that are on your lists.

### ULB:

52 Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, 53 "The land must be divided among these men as an inheritance according to the number of their names.

### translationNotes

#### The land must be divided

This can be stated in active form. AT: "You must divide the land" (See: Active or Passive)

#### these men

This refers to all of the men that were counted in their clans, beginning in Numbers 26:5.

#### according to the number of their names

"by the number of people in each clan"

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 26 General Notes
- Numbers 26 translationQuestions

## Numbers 26:54

### UDB:

54-56 Decide by casting lots to determine which group will get which area, but give the largest areas to the groups with the most people."

### ULB:

54 To the larger clans you must give more inheritance, and to the smaller clans you must give less inheritance. To every family you must give an inheritance according to the number of men who were counted. 55 However, the land must be divided by random lots. They must inherit the land as it will be divided among their ancestors' tribes. 56 Their inheritance must be divided among the larger and the smaller clans, distributed to them by random lot."

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

#### give more inheritance

In this passage, the word "inheritance" refers to land inherited. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: "give more land as an inheritance" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### who were counted

This can be stated in active form. AT: "whom the leaders of Israel counted" (See: Active or Passive)

#### the land must be divided

This can be stated in active form. AT: "you must divide the land" (See: Active or Passive)

#### by random lots

"by casting lots"

#### it will be divided

This can be stated in active form. AT: "you will divide it" (See: Active or Passive)

### distributed to them

This can be stated in active form. AT: “and you must distribute the land to them” (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- clan, clans
- family, families
- lots, casting lots
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 26 General Notes
- Numbers 26 translationQuestions

## Numbers 26:57-59

### UDB:

[57] The leaders also counted the male descendants of Levi. They were in clans descended from Gershon, Kohath, and Merari. [58] These also included people from the clans of Libni, Hebron, Mahli, Mushi, and Korah. All of them were descendants of Levi. Kohath was the ancestor of Amram, [59] whose wife was Jochebed. She also was a descendant of Levi, but she was born in Egypt. She and Amram had two sons, Aaron and Moses, and their older sister Miriam.

### ULB:

[57] The Levite clans, counted clan by clan, were these:

Through Gershon, the clan of the Gershonites,

through Kohath, the clan of the Kohathites,

through Merari, the clan of the Merarites.

[58] The clans of Levi were these:

the clan of the Libnites,

the clan of the Hebronites,

the clan of the Mahlites,

the clan of the Mushites,

and the clan of the Korahites.

Kohath was the Amram's ancestor. [59] The name of Amram's wife was Jochebed, a descendant of Levi, who was born to Levites in Egypt. She bore to Amram their children, who were Aaron, Moses, and Miriam their sister.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

This is a list of the Levite clans. Moses counts the Levites separately from the other tribes because they did not receive any land. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### counted clan by clan

This can be stated in active form. AT: "that the leaders also counted clan by clan" (See: Active or Passive)

#### Gershon ... Kohath ... Merari ... Amram

See how you translated these men's names you did in Numbers 3:17-19.

### She bore to Amram their children

"She and Amram had children"

### translationWords

- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- Aaron
- Miriam

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 26 General Notes
- Numbers 26 translationQuestions

## Numbers 26:60-62

### UDB:

60 Aaron's sons were Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar. 61 But Nadab and Abihu died when they burned incense for a sacrifice to Yahweh in a way that disobeyed what Yahweh had commanded.

62 The leaders counted twenty-three thousand men from the descendants of Levi who were at least one month old. But these men were not counted when the rest of the Israelite people were counted, because were not given any land at that time.

### ULB:

60 To Aaron were born Nadab and Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar. 61 Nadab and Abihu died when they offered before Yahweh unacceptable fire. 62 The males who were counted among them numbered twenty-three thousand, all males one month old and up. But they were not counted among Israel's descendants because no inheritance was given to them among the people of Israel.

### translationNotes

#### Nadab ... Abihu ... Ithamar

See how you translated these men's names in Numbers 3:2.

#### they offered before Yahweh unacceptable fire

Here the word "fire" is used to refer to "burning incense." See how you translated a similar phrase in Numbers 3:4. AT: "they burned an incense offering to Yahweh in a way that he did not approve of" (See: Metonymy)

#### who were counted

This can be stated in active form. AT: "whom the leaders counted" (See: Active or Passive)

#### twenty-three thousand

"23,000" (See: Numbers)

#### one month old and up

"one month old and older"

#### they were not counted

This can be stated in active form. AT: "but the leaders did not count them" (See: Active or Passive)

### because no inheritance was given to them

This can be stated in active form. Here "inheritance" refers to land inherited. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: "because Yahweh said they would not receive any land as an inheritance" (See: Active or Passive and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- Yahweh
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- month, months, monthly
- Israel, Israelites
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 26 General Notes
- Numbers 26 translationQuestions

## Numbers 26:63-64

### UDB:

[63] Those were the men whom Eleazar and Moses said should be counted. They counted the Israelite people on the plains of Moab, on the east side of the Jordan River, across from Jericho. [64] None of the men whom they counted were on the lists that were made by Aaron and Moses when the Israelites were in the wilderness of Sinai.

### ULB:

[63] These are the ones who were counted by Moses and Eleazar the priest. They counted the people of Israel in the plains of Moab by the Jordan at Jericho. [64] But among these there was no man who had been counted by Moses and Aaron the priest when the descendants of Israel were counted in the wilderness of Sinai.

### translationNotes

#### who were counted by Moses and Eleazar the priest

This can be stated in active form. AT: “whom Moses and Eleazar the priest counted” (See: Active or Passive)

#### there was no man

“there were no men”

#### who had been counted by Moses and Aaron the priest

This can be stated in active form. AT: “whom Moses and Aaron the priest had counted” (See: Active or Passive)

#### when the descendants of Israel were counted

This can be stated in active form. AT: “when they counted the descendants of Israel” (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- Moses
- priest, priests, priesthood
- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess
- Jordan River, Jordan

- Jericho
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- Sinai, Mount Sinai

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 26 General Notes
- Numbers 26 translationQuestions

## Numbers 26:65

### UDB:

65 They were told what Yahweh had said. He said, “They will all die in this desert,” and that is what happened. The only ones who were still alive were Jephunneh’s son Caleb and Nun’s son Joshua.

### ULB:

65 For Yahweh had said that all of those people would certainly die in the wilderness. There was not a man left among them, except Caleb son of Jephunneh and Joshua son of Nun.

### translationNotes

#### There was not a man left among them, except

The word “them” refers to all of the people who were counted in the wilderness of Sinai. This can be stated in positive form. AT: “The only ones who were still alive were” (See: Double Negatives)

#### son of Jephunneh

Jephunneh was Caleb’s father. See how you translated this in Numbers 13:6.

#### son of Nun

Nun was Joshua’s father. See how you translated this in Numbers 11:28.

### translationWords

- Caleb
- Joshua

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 26 General Notes
- Numbers 26 translationQuestions

# Numbers 27 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

### Daughters

The daughters of Korah received no land because their father was punished by Yahweh. Yahweh still graciously gave them their father's portion of land. (See: grace, gracious)

### The new leader is Joshua

God told Moses to appoint Joshua as the new leader. Joshua became Yahweh's anointed leader. (See: appoint, appoints, appointed and anoint, anointed, anointing)

### Links:

- **Numbers 27:01 Notes**

## Numbers 27:1

### UDB:

[1] One day the five daughters of Zelophehad came to Moses. They were Mahlah, Noah, Hoglah, Milkah, and Tirzah.

### ULB:

[1] Then to Moses came the daughters of Zelophehad son of Hepher son of Gilead son of Machir son of Manasseh, of the clans of Manasseh son of Joseph. These were the names of his daughters: Mahlah, Noah, Hoglah, Milkah, and Tirzah.

### translationNotes

#### Then to Moses came the daughters of Zelophehad ... son of Joseph

"Then the daughters of Zelophehad son of Hepher son of Gilead son of Machir son of Manasseh, of the clans of Manasseh son of Joseph came to Moses." This tells us the genealogy of Zelophehad.

#### Zelophehad son of Hepher ... Mahlah, Noah, Hoglah, Milkah, and Tirzah

See how you translated these men's names in Numbers 26:33.

#### Gilead ... Machir

See how you translated these men's names in Numbers 26:29.

### translationWords

- Moses
- Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites
- Manasseh
- Joseph (OT)
- Tirzah

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 27 General Notes
- Numbers 27 translationQuestions

## Numbers 27:2-3

### UDB:

[2] They came to the entrance of the sacred tent and stood in front of Eleazar, Moses, the tribal leaders, and many other Israelite people. [3] They said, "Our father died during the time that we were in the desert, and he did not have any sons. But he was not among those who supported Korah, who rebelled against Yahweh, and he died because of his own sin. He did not have any sons.

### ULB:

[2] They stood before Moses, Eleazar the priest, the leaders, and before all the community at the entrance to the tent of meeting. They said, [3] "Our father died in the wilderness. He was not among those who conspired against Yahweh in the company of Korah. He died for his own sin, and he had no sons.

### translationNotes

#### They stood

"The daughters of Zelophehad stood"

#### who conspired against Yahweh in the company of Korah

The people in the company of Korah gathered together and rebelled against Yahweh. Yahweh caused them to die, because of their sin. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: "who died because they were among Korah's followers who rebelled against Yahweh" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### for his own sin

"because of his own sin"

### translationWords

- Eleazar
- priest, priests, priesthood
- tent of meeting
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- Yahweh
- Korah, Korahite, Korahites
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 27 General Notes
- Numbers 27 translationQuestions

## Numbers 27:4-5

### UDB:

[4] Why should the name of his clan disappear because our father had no sons? So give us some land like our father's relatives will be getting!"

[5] So Moses asked Yahweh what to do about their case.

### ULB:

[4] Why should our father's name be taken away from among his clan members because he had no son? Give us land among our father's relatives." [5] So Moses brought their case before Yahweh.

### translationNotes

#### Why should our father's name be taken away from among his clan members because he had no son?

At that time, only sons received land as an inheritance. The daughters use this question to suggest that they should receive the inheritance and continue the family clan. This can be written as a statement. AT: "You should not remove our father's name from the clan members just because he did not have a son." (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### Give us land among our father's relatives

This means that they are asking to inherit land near where their father's relatives are inheriting land. The meaning of this can be made clear. AT: "Give us land where our father's relatives live" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- clan, clans

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 27 General Notes
- Numbers 27 translationQuestions

## Numbers 27:6-8

### UDB:

[6] And Yahweh replied, [7] "What the daughters of Zelophehad are requesting is right. You must give them some land, just as you are giving to their father's relatives. Give to each of them some of the land that would have been given to their brothers if they had any.

[8] Also tell this to the Israelite people: 'If a man who has no sons dies, give the things that his sons would have inherited to his daughters.

### ULB:

[6] Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, [7] "Zelophehad's daughters are speaking correctly. You must certainly give them land as an inheritance among their father's relatives, and you must ensure that their father's inheritance passes on to them. [8] You must speak to the people of Israel and say, 'If a man dies and has no son, then you must cause his inheritance to pass to his daughter.

### translationNotes

#### among their father's relatives

This means that they will be inherit land where their father's relatives are inheriting land. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: "where their father's relatives live" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 27 General Notes
- Numbers 27 translationQuestions

## Numbers 27:9-11

### UDB:

9 If the man has no sons or daughters, give to his brothers the things that his sons and daughters would have inherited. 10 If the man had no brothers, give to his father's brothers the things that his sons or daughters or brothers would have inherited. 11 If the man's father has no brothers, give to his closest relative the things that the others would have inherited.' That will be a rule for the Israelite people, because I am giving this as a command to you, Moses, to tell them."

### ULB:

9 If he has no daughter, then you must give his inheritance to his brothers. 10 If he has no brothers, then you must give his inheritance to his father's brothers. 11 If his father has no brothers, then you must give his inheritance to his nearest relative in his clan, and he must take it for his own. This will be a law established by decree for the people of Israel, as Yahweh has commanded me.'"

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

This continues God's law about who will receive land if a man does not have any sons.

#### be a law established by decree for the people of Israel

This can be stated in active form. AT: "be a law that all the people of Israel must obey" (See: Active or Passive)

#### has commanded me

Here "me" refers to Moses.

### translationWords

- clan, clans
- law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
- decree, decrees, decreed
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 27 General Notes
- Numbers 27 translationQuestions

## Numbers 27:12-14

### UDB:

[12] One day, Yahweh said to Moses, "Climb to the top of the Abarim mountains east of the Jordan River. Then look out over the land that I am giving to the Israelite people. [13] After you have seen it, you will die just like your older brother Aaron did. [14] The reason that you will die and not enter that land is that you both disobeyed my instructions in the wilderness of Zin. When the Israelite people rebelled against me there at Meribah, near Kadesh, I told you to speak to the rock to cause water to flow out of it. But because you struck the rock instead of speaking to it, you did not show the people my holy power."

### ULB:

[12] Yahweh said to Moses, "Go up the mountains of Abarim and look at the land that I have given to the people of Israel. [13] After you have seen it, you, too, must be gathered to your people, like Aaron your brother. [14] This will happen because you two rebelled against my command in the wilderness of Zin. There, when the water flowed from the rock, in your anger you failed to honor me as holy before the eyes of the whole community." These are the waters of Meribah of Kadesh in the wilderness of Zin.

### translationNotes

#### mountains of Abarim

This is a range of mountains in Moab. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### that I have given to the people of Israel

Here Yahweh speaks about the land that his is giving the Israel as if he has already given it to them. He speaks this way to emphasize that his committed to give it to them. AT: "that I will give to the people of Israel" (See: Metaphor)

#### you, too, must be gathered to your people

This is a euphemism that means Moses will die and his spirit will go to the place where his ancestors are. AT: "you must die" (See: Euphemism)

#### like Aaron your brother

You can make clear the understood information that Aaron died. AT: "like your older brother Aaron died" (See: Ellipsis)

### you two rebelled

This refers to Moses and Aaron.

### wilderness of Zin

See how you translated this phrase in Numbers 13:21.

### when the water flowed from the rock, in your anger

This refers to an event when Yahweh made water miraculously flow out of a rock. God told Moses to speak to the rock. Instead, Moses hit the rock because he was angry with the people. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### you failed to honor me as holy

“you did not treat me as holy”

### before the eyes of the whole community

Here the people of the people are represented by their “eyes” to emphasize what they saw. AT: “in front of the whole community” (See: Synecdoche)

### waters of Meribah

See how you translated this phrase in Numbers 20:13.

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Aaron
- rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- honor, honors
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 27 General Notes
- Numbers 27 translationQuestions

## Numbers 27:15-17

### UDB:

15 Then Moses said this to Yahweh, 16 "Yahweh, you are the God who directs the spirits of all people. So please appoint a new leader for the Israelite people. 17 Appoint someone who will lead your people when they go to fight a battle, so that they will not just wander around like sheep that do not have a shepherd."

### ULB:

15 Then Moses spoke to Yahweh and said, 16 "May you, Yahweh, the God of the spirits of all humanity, appoint a man over the community, 17 a man who may go out and come in before them and lead them out and bring them in, so that your community is not like sheep that have no shepherd."

### translationNotes

#### the God of the spirits of all humanity

Possible meaning are 1) here "spirits" refers to all people." AT: "the God over all of humanity" or 2) the reference to "spirits" refers to God having given life and breath to all people. AT: "the God who gives breath to all people" or "the God who give life to all humanity" (See: Synecdoche)

#### a man over the community

To be "over" a group of people means to have authority to lead them. AT: "a man to lead the community" (See: Idiom)

#### a man who may go out and come in before them and lead them out and bring them in

This is an idiom that means a person who will lead all the people and also lead the army into battle. (See: Idiom)

#### so that your community is not like sheep that have no shepherd

This is a simile that means without a leader the people will wander and be helpless. (See: Simile)

### translationWords

- spirit, spirits, spiritual
- appoint, appoints, appointed
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- shepherd, shepherds, shepherded, shepherding

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 27 General Notes
- Numbers 27 translationQuestions

## Numbers 27:18-19

### UDB:

18 Yahweh replied, "Get Joshua son of Nun, who has my Spirit within him. Lay your hands on him to appoint him. 19 Cause him to stand in front of Eleazar the priest, as all the people are watching, and commission him to be the new leader of the Israelite people.

### ULB:

18 Yahweh said to Moses, "Take Joshua son of Nun, a man in whom my Spirit lives, and lay your hand on him. 19 Place him before Eleazar the priest and before all the community, and command him before their eyes to lead them.

### translationNotes

#### Take Joshua son of Nun, a man in whom my Spirit lives

Yahweh's Spirit is in Joshua, meaning that Joshua obeys Yahweh and follows his commands.

#### lay your hand on him

This is a sign of dedicating someone to God's service. AT: "lay your hand on him to appoint him" (See: Symbolic Action)

#### command him before their eyes to lead them

Here the people are represented by their "eyes" to emphasize what they see. AT: "in front of all of them command Joshua to lead the people of Israel" (See: Synecdoche)

### translationWords

- Joshua
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- priest, priests, priesthood

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 27 General Notes
- Numbers 27 translationQuestions

## Numbers 27:20-21

### UDB:

[20] Give to him some of the authority that you now have, in order that all the Israelite people will know that they must obey him. [21] When you all need me to guide you, Joshua will stand in front of Eleazar. Then by casting lots Eleazar will determine what they should do. At Joshua's command all people of Israel will mobilize themselves together."

### ULB:

[20] You must put some of your authority on him, so that all the community of the people of Israel may obey him. [21] He will go before Eleazar the priest to seek my will for him by the decisions of the Urim. It will be at his command that the people will go out and come in, both he and all the people of Israel with him, the whole community."

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses about Joshua.

#### You must put some of your authority on him

Here Yahweh speaks of Moses giving some of his authority to Joshua as if it were an article of clothing that he could put on him. AT: "You should give him some of your authority" or "Let him decide what the people should do" (See: Metaphor)

#### Urim

This was a sacred stone that the High Priest wore on his chest plate. He used it to determine God's will. (See: Translate Unknowns)

#### It will be at his command that the people will go out and come in

This means that Joshua will have authority to command the movements of the community of Israel. "Going out" and "coming in" are two opposite commands used to emphasize that he will have full command over their movements. AT: "He will command the community's movements" (See: Merism)

#### both he and all the people of Israel with him, the whole community

Both of these phrases mean the same thing, and they are used together for emphasis. AT: "both he and the entire nation of Israel" (See: Parallelism)

**translationWords**

- authority, authorities
- Israel, Israelites
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- will of God

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 27 General Notes
- Numbers 27 translationQuestions

## Numbers 27:22-23

### UDB:

[22] So Moses did what Yahweh commanded. He presented Joshua to Eleazar and to all the Israelite people. [23] Moses laid his hands on him and commissioned him to do the work that Yahweh told Moses to tell him to do.

### ULB:

[22] So Moses did as Yahweh had commanded him. He took Joshua and placed him before Eleazar the priest and all the community. [23] He laid his hands on him and commanded him to lead, as Yahweh had commanded him to do.

### translationNotes

#### placed him before

“told him to stand in front of”

#### He laid his hands on him and commanded him to lead

“He” refers to Moses, and “him” refers to Joshua.

#### He laid his hands on him

The laying on of hands was a way of setting a person apart to do a special task for God. (See: Symbolic Action)

#### to lead

You can make clear the understood information to lead the people. AT: “to lead the people” or “to be the leader of the Israelites” (See: Ellipsis)

#### as Yahweh had commanded him to do

Here “him” refers to Moses.

### translationWords

- Moses
- Yahweh
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Joshua
- Eleazar

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 27 General Notes
- Numbers 27 translationQuestions

## Numbers 28 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

### Offerings for special days

God commanded the Israelites to make special offerings for Sabbaths, new months, Passover and firstfruits. On each of these occasions, specific sacrifices were required. (See: Sabbath, Passover and firstfruits)

### Links:

- **Numbers 28:01 Notes**

## Numbers 28:1-2

### UDB:

[1] Yahweh said this to Moses, [2] "Tell this to the Israelite people, 'Bring to me the offerings that will be burned on the altar. When they are burned, the smell will be very pleasing to me. And tell them that they must bring them at the proper time.

### ULB:

[1] Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, [2] "Command the people of Israel and say to them, 'You must offer sacrifices to me at the appointed times, the food of my offerings made by fire to produce a sweet aroma for me.'

### translationNotes

#### at the appointed times

"at the times that I haven chosen"

#### the food of my offerings made by fire to produce

This can be stated in active form. AT: "the food offerings that you will burn on the altar produce" (See: Active or Passive)

#### a sweet aroma for me

"a smell I enjoy"

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- appoint, appoints, appointed
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 28 General Notes
- Numbers 28 translationQuestions

## Numbers 28:3-5

### UDB:

[3] Tell them that what they must bring to me each day are two male lambs that are one year old. They must have no defects. They must be completely burned on the altar. [4] They should bring one in the morning and the other early in the evening. [5] They must also bring a flour offering of two liters of finely-ground flour, mixed with a liter of olive oil.

### ULB:

[3] You must also say to them, 'This is the offering made by fire that you must offer to Yahweh—male lambs a year old without blemish, two each day, as a regular burnt offering. [4] One lamb you must offer in the morning, and the other lamb you must offer in the evening. [5] You must offer a tenth of an ephah of fine flour as a grain offering, mixed with one-fourth of a hin of beaten oil.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

#### the offering made by fire

This can be stated in active form. "the burnt offering" or "the offering you have burned by fire on the altar" (See: Active or Passive)

#### mixed with

This can be stated in active form. "which you have mixed with" (See: Active or Passive)

#### a tenth of an ephah

"A tenth" means one part out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. AT: "2 liters" or "a tenth of an ephah (which is about 2 liters)" (See: Fractions and Biblical Volume)

#### one-fourth of a hin

"One-fourth" means one part out of four equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. AT: "a liter" or "one-fourth of a hin (which is almost 1 liter)" (See: Fractions and Biblical Volume)

#### beaten oil

"pressed oil" or "pure olive oil." This refers to oil that has been pressed out of olives.

**translationWords**

- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- lamb, Lamb of God
- year, years
- blemish, blemishes, unblemished
- day, days
- tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes
- grain offering, grain offerings
- oil

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 28 General Notes
- Numbers 28 translationQuestions

## Numbers 28:6-8

### UDB:

6 That is the offering that they must bring every day. They started to bring those offerings while you were at Mount Sinai. When those offerings are burned on the altar, the smell will be very pleasing to me. 7 When they burn each lamb, they must also pour on the sacred altar in the holy place one liter of wine. 8 In the evening, when they offer the second lamb, they must also bring the same offerings of flour and wine as they burned in the morning. When they are burned, the smell will also be very pleasing to me.

### ULB:

6 This is the regular burnt offering that was commanded at Mount Sinai to produce a sweet aroma, an offering made by fire to Yahweh. 7 The drink offering with it must be one-fourth of a hin for one of the lambs. You must pour out in the holy place a drink offering of strong drink to Yahweh. 8 The other lamb you must offer in the evening along with another grain offering like the one offered in the morning. You must also offer another drink offering with it, an offering made by fire, to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh.

### translationNotes

#### that was commanded at Mount Sinai

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that Yahweh commanded at Mount Sinai” (See: Active or Passive)

#### made by fire

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that you burned on the altar” (See: Active or Passive)

#### one-fourth of a hin

“One-fourth” means one part out of four equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. AT: “a liter” or “one-fourth of a hin (which is almost 1 liter)” (See: Fractions and Biblical Volume)

#### You must pour out in the holy place a drink offering of strong drink to Yahweh

This sentence describes the drink offering that is to accompany the lamb. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: “It must be a drink offering of strong drink and you must pour it out in the holy place to Yahweh” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### like the one offered

This can be stated in active form. AT: “like the one you offered” (See: Active or Passive)

**translationWords**

- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Sinai, Mount Sinai
- drink offering
- holy place
- strong drink, strong drinks

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 28 General Notes
- Numbers 28 translationQuestions

## Numbers 28:9-10

### UDB:

[9] On each Sabbath, you must bring two male lambs that have no defects. Also bring a flour offering of four and one-half liters of finely ground flour mixed with olive oil and a wine offering of four and one-half liters of wine. [10] Those are the offerings that are to be burned on the altar each Sabbath. Those are in addition to the offerings of two lambs and wine that you must bring each day.

### ULB:

[9] On the Sabbath day you must offer two male lambs, each a year old without blemish, and two-tenths of an ephah of fine flour as a grain offering, mixed with oil, and the drink offering with it. [10] This is to be the burnt offering for every Sabbath, in addition to the regular burnt offering and the drink offering with it.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

#### two-tenths of an ephah

"Two-tenths" means two parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. AT: "four and a half liters" or "two tenths of an ephah (which is about 4.5 liters)" (See: Fractions and Biblical Volume)

#### mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. AT: "which you have mixed with oil" (See: Active or Passive)

#### the drink offering with it

Many offerings had a drink offering that was required to be offered with them. The full meaning of the can be made clear. AT: "the drink offering that accompanies it" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- Sabbath
- year, years
- blemish, blemishes, unblemished

- grain offering, grain offerings
- oil
- drink offering
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 28 General Notes
- Numbers 28 translationQuestions

## Numbers 28:11-13

### UDB:

[11] On the first day of each month you must bring to me an offering of two young bulls, one male sheep, and seven male lambs that are one year old. All of these must be without defects. They must all be burned completely on the altar. [12] Also bring with each bull an offering of six liters of finely-ground flour mixed with olive oil. With each male sheep make an offering of four liters of nice flour mixed with olive oil. [13] Also bring an offering of two liters of finely-ground flour mixed with olive oil with each lamb. When all of these are burned on the altar, the smell will be very pleasing to me.

### ULB:

[11] At the beginning of each month, you must offer a burnt offering to Yahweh. You must offer two young bulls, one ram, and seven male lambs a year old without blemish. [12] You must also offer three-tenths of an ephah of fine flour as a grain offering mixed with oil for each bull, and two-tenths of fine flour as a grain offering mixed with oil for the one ram. [13] You must also offer a tenth of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil as a grain offering for each lamb. This is to be the burnt offering, to produce a sweet aroma, an offering made by fire to Yahweh.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

#### three-tenths of an ephah

“Three-tenths” means three parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. AT: “six liters” or “three-tenths of an ephah (which is about six liters)” (See: Fractions and Biblical Volume)

#### mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. AT: “which you have mixed with oil” (See: Active or Passive)

#### two-tenths of fine flour

The words “of an ephah” are understood and may stated clearly. “Two-tenths” means two parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. AT: “four and a half liters of fine flour” or “two-tenths of an ephah (which is about 4.5 liters) of fine flour” (See: Ellipsis and Fractions and Biblical Volume)

### a tenth of an ephah

"A tenth" means one part out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. AT: "2 liters" or "a tenth of an ephah (which is about 2 liters)" (See: Fractions and Biblical Volume)

### made by fire

This can be stated in active form. AT: "that you burned on the altar" (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- month, months, monthly
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- Yahweh
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- lamb, Lamb of God
- year, years
- blemish, blemishes, unblemished
- tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes
- grain offering, grain offerings
- oil
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 28 General Notes
- Numbers 28 translationQuestions

## Numbers 28:14-15

### UDB:

14 With each bull also bring two liters of wine. With each male sheep, bring one and one-fifth liters of wine. With each lamb bring one liter of wine. These offerings must be brought on the first day of each month and burned completely on the altar. 15 In addition to these offerings that you burn, you must bring to me one goat for an offering to remove the guilt of your sins.

### ULB:

14 The people's drink offerings must be half a hin of wine for a bull, a third of a hin for a ram, and one-fourth of a hin for a lamb. This is to be the burnt offering for every month throughout the months of the year. 15 One male goat as a sin offering to Yahweh must be offered. This will be in addition to the regular burnt offering and the drink offering with it.

### translationNotes

#### half a hin

"Half" means one part out of two equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. AT: "two liters" or "half a hin (which is two liters)" (See: Fractions and Biblical Volume)

#### a third of a hin

"One third of a hin." "A third" means one part out of three equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. AT: "1.2 liters" or "One and one-fifth liters" or "half a hin (which is 1.2 liters)" (See: Fractions and Biblical Volume)

#### one-fourth of a hin

"One-fourth" means one part out of four equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. AT: "a liter" or "one-fourth of a hin (which is almost 1 liter)" (See: Fractions and Biblical Volume)

#### One male goat as a sin offering to Yahweh must be offered

This can be stated in active form. AT: "You must offer one male goat to Yahweh as a sin offering" (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- drink offering

- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids
- sin offering, sin offerings

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 28 General Notes
- Numbers 28 translationQuestions

## Numbers 28:16-18

### UDB:

16 The Passover festival must be celebrated to honor me each year on the fourteenth day of your first month. 17 The Festival of Unleavened Bread will start on the next day. For the following seven days, the bread that you eat must be made without yeast. 18 On the first day of that festival, you must gather together to worship me, and you must not do any regular work that you would normally do.

### ULB:

16 During the first month, on the fourteenth day of the month, comes Yahweh's Passover. 17 On the fifteenth day of this month a feast is to be held. For seven days, bread without yeast must be eaten. 18 On the first day, there must be a holy assembly to honor Yahweh. You must not do regular work on that day.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

#### the first month, on the fourteenth day of the month ... On the fifteenth day of this month

"During the first month, on day 14 of the month ... On day 15 day of this month." This refers to the first month of the Hebrew calendar. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

#### comes Yahweh's Passover

"you must celebrate Yahweh's Passover"

#### a feast is to be held

This can be stated in active form. "you must have a feast" (See: Active or Passive)

#### bread without yeast must be eaten

This can be stated in active form. "you must eat bread without yeast" (See: Active or Passive)

#### On the first day

This refers to the first day of the feast. This can be stated clearly. AT: "On day 1 of the feast" (See: Ordinal Numbers and )

### there must be a holy assembly to honor Yahweh

"you must gather together to worship and honor Yahweh." The phrase "a holy assembly" means the people gather together to worship Yahweh. Worshiping Yahweh is a holy event.

### translationWords

- day, days
- Yahweh
- Passover
- feast, feasts, feasting
- bread
- yeast, leaven, leavens, leavened, unleavened
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled
- honor, honors

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 28 General Notes
- Numbers 28 translationQuestions

## Numbers 28:19-22

### UDB:

19 On that day, you must bring to me for an offering that will be completely burned on the altar two young bulls, one male sheep, and seven male lambs that are one year old. They must all have no defects. 20 With each of these bulls, bring a grain offering of six liters of finely-ground flour mixed with olive oil. With the male sheep, bring a grain offering of four liters of finely ground flour mixed with olive oil. 21 With each of the seven lambs, bring an offering of two liters of finely-ground flour mixed with olive oil. 22 Also bring one goat for a sacrifice to make atonement for your sin.

### ULB:

19 However, you must offer a sacrifice made by fire, a burnt offering to Yahweh. You must offer two young bulls, one ram, and seven male lambs a year old, without blemish. 20 Along with the bull, you must offer a grain offering of three-tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil, and along with the ram, two-tenths. 21 With each of the seven lambs, you must offer a tenth of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil, 22 and one male goat as a sin offering to make atonement for yourselves.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

#### you must offer a sacrifice made by fire, a burnt offering

The idea of "burnt" can be stated in active form. AT: "you must burn an offering on the altar" (See: Active or Passive)

#### three-tenths of an ephah

"Three-tenths" means three parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. AT: "six liters" or "three-tenths of an ephah (which is about six liters)" (See: Fractions and Biblical Volume)

#### mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. AT: "which you have mixed with oil" (See: Active or Passive)

### two-tenths

The words “of an ephah of fine flour” are understood from the previous phrase. They can be repeated. “Two-tenths” means two parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. AT: “four and a half liters of fine flour” or “two-tenths of an ephah of fine flour (which is about 4.5 liters)” (See: Ellipsis and Fractions and Biblical Volume)

### a tenth of an ephah

“A tenth” means one part out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. AT: “2 liters” or “a tenth of an ephah (which is about 2 liters)” (See: Fractions and Biblical Volume)

### to make atonement

The phrase “make atonement” can be expressed with the verb “atone.” AT: “to atone” (See: Abstract Nouns)

### translationWords

- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- blemish, blemishes, unblemished
- grain offering, grain offerings
- tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes
- sin offering, sin offerings
- atonement, atone, atones, atoned

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 28 General Notes
- Numbers 28 translationQuestions

## Numbers 28:23-25

### UDB:

[23] Bring these offerings in addition to the offerings that you bring each morning. [24] The smell of the grain that is burned on the altar each day for seven days will be very pleasing to me. Bring the grain in addition to the animals and the wine that you burn on the altar. [25] On the seventh day of that festival, you must again gather together to worship me, and you must not do any regular work that you would normally do.

### ULB:

[23] You must offer these in addition to the regular burnt offering required each morning. [24] As described here, you must offer these sacrifices daily, for the seven days of the Passover, the food of the offering made by fire, a sweet aroma for Yahweh. It must be offered in addition to the regular burnt offering and the drink offering with it. [25] On the seventh day you must have a holy assembly to honor Yahweh, and you must not do regular work on that day.

### translationNotes

#### required each morning

This can be stated in active form. AT: “which Yahweh requires each morning” (See: Active or Passive)

#### As described here

This can be stated in active form. AT: “As I, Yahweh, have described here” (See: Active or Passive)

#### the food of the offering made by fire

This can be stated in active form. AT: “you must burn the food offering on the altar” (See: Active or Passive)

#### a sweet aroma for Yahweh

“as a sweet aroma for Yahweh”

#### It must be offered

This can be stated in active form. AT: “You must offer it” (See: Active or Passive)

### have a holy assembly to honor Yahweh

"gather together to worship and honor Yahweh." The phrase "a holy assembly" means the people gather together to worship Yahweh. Worshiping Yahweh is a holy event.

### translationWords

- Passover
- drink offering

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 28 General Notes
- Numbers 28 translationQuestions

## Numbers 28:26-28

### UDB:

[26] On the day of the Harvest festival, when you bring to me the first grain that you have harvested, you must gather together to worship me. Do not do any regular work that you would normally do on that day. [27] Bring to me two young bulls, one male sheep, and seven male lambs that are one year old. When they are completely burned on the altar, the smell will be very pleasing to me. [28] Also bring a flour offering of finely ground flour mixed with olive oil. For each bull bring five and three-quarters of a liter, and with each male sheep bring three and four-fifths liters.

### ULB:

[26] Also on the day of the firstfruits, when you offer a new grain offering to Yahweh in your Festival of Weeks, you must have a holy assembly to honor Yahweh, and you must not do regular work on that day. [27] You must offer a burnt offering to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh. You must offer two young bulls, one ram, and seven male lambs a year old. [28] Offer also grain offering to go with them: Fine flour mixed with oil, three-tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil for each bull and two-tenths for the one ram.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

#### the day of the firstfruits

“the day of the firstfruits, that is the day.” This refers to the day during the Festival of Weeks when they offer the grain offering to Yahweh.

#### have a holy assembly to honor Yahweh

“gather together to worship and honor Yahweh.” The phrase “a holy assembly” means the people gather together to worship Yahweh. Worshiping Yahweh is a holy event.

#### mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. AT: “which you have mixed with oil” (See: Active or Passive)

#### three-tenths of an ephah

“Three tenths” means three parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. AT: “six liters” or “three-tenths of an ephah (which is about six liters)” (See: Fractions and Biblical Volume)

### three-tenths of an ephah

"Three tenths" means three parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. AT: "six liters" or "three-tenths of an ephah (which is about six liters)" (See: Fractions and Biblical Volume)

### two-tenths

The words "of an ephah of fine flour" are understood from the previous phrase and can be repeated. "Two-tenths" means two parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. AT: "four and a half liters of fine flour" or "two-tenths of an ephah of fine flour (which is about 4.5 liters)" (See: Ellipsis and Fractions and Biblical Volume)

### translationWords

- firstfruits
- grain offering, grain offerings
- Yahweh
- Pentecost, Festival of Weeks
- day, days
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- lamb, Lamb of God
- year, years

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 28 General Notes
- Numbers 28 translationQuestions

## Numbers 28:29-31

### UDB:

[29] For each of the lambs bring two liters. [30] Also sacrifice one male goat to make atonement for your sins. [31] Bring these offerings and the offering of wine in addition to the animals and flour that you burn on the altar each day. And remember that the animals that you sacrifice must have no defects.'"

### ULB:

[29] Offer a tenth of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil for each of the seven lambs, [30] and one male goat to make atonement for yourselves. [31] When you offer those animals without blemish, along with their drink offerings, this must be in addition to the regular burnt offering and the grain offering with it.'"

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

#### a tenth of an ephah

"A tenth" means one part out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. AT: "2 liters" or "a tenth of an ephah (which is about 2 liters)" (See: Fractions and Biblical Volume)

#### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. AT: "fine flour which you mix with oil" (See: Active or Passive)

#### to make atonement

The word "atonement" can be expressed with the verb "atone." AT: "to atone" (See: Abstract Nouns)

#### their drink offerings

This refers to the drink offerings that are required to accompany each of the animals when they are sacrificed. AT: "the drink offerings that are offered with them" or "the drink offerings that accompany them" (See: Possession)

**translationWords**

- tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes
- goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids
- atonement, atone, atones, atoned
- blemish, blemishes, unblemished
- drink offering
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- grain offering, grain offerings

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 28 General Notes
- Numbers 28 translationQuestions

## Numbers 29 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter continues the material from the previous chapter about offerings on specific days.

### Links:

- **Numbers 29:01 Notes**

## Numbers 29:1

### UDB:

[1] "Each year, gather together to worship me on the first day of your seventh month, and do not do any regular work that you would normally do on that day. On that day the priests must blow their trumpets.

### ULB:

[1] "In the seventh month, on the first day of the month, you must have a holy assembly to honor Yahweh. You must not do regular work on that day. It will be a day when you blow trumpets.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

#### In the seventh month, on the first day of the month

This refers to the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. AT: "On day 1 of month 7" (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

#### have a holy assembly to honor Yahweh

"gather together to worship and honor Yahweh." The phrase "a holy assembly" means the people gather together to worship Yahweh. Worshiping Yahweh is a holy event.

#### It will be a day when you blow trumpets

The word "you" refers to the people of Israel who here represent the priests. The priests blew the trumpet to begin a worship service or to gather the community together. AT: "It will be a day when the priests blow trumpets" (See: Synecdoche)

### translationWords

- day, days
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled
- honor, honors
- Yahweh
- trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 29 General Notes
- Numbers 29 translationQuestions

## Numbers 29:2

### UDB:

[2] When the offerings on the altar on that day are being completely burned, the smell will be very pleasing to me. The animals that you must bring are one young bull, one male sheep, and seven male lambs that are one year old. They must have no defects.

### ULB:

[2] You must offer a burnt offering to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh. You must offer one young bull, one ram, and seven male lambs a year old, each without blemish.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### translationWords

- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- lamb, Lamb of God
- year, years
- blemish, blemishes, unblemished

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 29 General Notes
- Numbers 29 translationQuestions

## Numbers 29:3-5

### UDB:

[3] With these animals bring a grain offering of finely ground flour mixed with olive oil. With the bull, bring five and three-quarters liters. With the male sheep, bring three and four-fifths liters, [4] and with each of the seven lambs bring two liters. [5] Also offer one male goat to atone for your sins.

### ULB:

[3] You must offer with them their grain offering, fine flour mixed with oil, three-tenths of an ephah for the bull, two-tenths for the ram, [4] and one-tenth for each lamb of the seven lambs. [5] You must offer one male goat as a sin offering to make atonement for yourselves.

### translationNotes

#### their grain offering

This refers to the grain offerings that are required to accompany each of the animals when they are sacrificed. AT: “the grain offerings that are offered with them” or “the grain offerings that accompany them” (See: Possession)

#### mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. AT: “which you have mixed with oil” (See: Active or Passive)

#### three-tenths of an ephah

The phrase “of fine flour mixed with oil” is understood from the previous phrase and can be repeated. “Three-tenths” means three parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. AT: “six liters of fine flour mixed with oil” or “three-tenths of an ephah (which is about six liters)” (See: Fractions and Biblical Volume)

#### two-tenths

The phrase “of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil” is understood from earlier in the sentence. “Two tenths” means two parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. AT: “four and a half liters of fine flour mixed with oil” or “two-tenths of an ephah (which is about 4.5 liters)” (See: Ellipsis and Fractions and Biblical Volume)

### one-tenth

The phrase “of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil” is understood from earlier in the sentence. “One-tenth” means one part out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. AT: “2 liters of fine flour mixed with oil” or “a tenth of an ephah (which is about 2 liters)” (See: Fractions and Biblical Volume)

### to make atonement

The word “atonement” can be expressed with the verb “atone.” AT: “to atone” (See: Abstract Nouns)

### translationWords

- grain offering, grain offerings
- oil
- goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids
- sin offering, sin offerings
- atonement, atone, atones, atoned

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 29 General Notes
- Numbers 29 translationQuestions

## Numbers 29:6

### UDB:

[6] All of those animals will be in addition to the animals that are completely burned on the altar each morning and on the first day of each month. The offerings of flour and wine must be made exactly as I have decreed that you are to do. When these offerings are burned, the smell will be very pleasing to me.

### ULB:

[6] Make these offerings in the seventh month in addition to all of the offerings you will make on the first of each month: the special burnt offering and the grain offering to go with it. These must be in addition to the regular burnt offering, its grain offering, and its drink offerings. As you make these offerings, you will obey what has been decreed to produce a sweet aroma, an offering made by fire to Yahweh.

### translationNotes

#### in the seventh month ... the first of each month

"in month 7 ... day 1 of each month." The word "month" refers to a month of the Hebrew calendar. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

#### of each month: the special burnt offering ... with it

"of each month–the special burnt offering ... with it." This is the offering that is made on the first day of each month.

#### the regular burnt offering, its grain offering, and its drink offerings

This refers to the offerings the priests were to give every day. The grain offering and drink offering were to be offered with the regular burnt offering. AT: "the regular burnt offering, with the grain offering and drink offerings that accompany it" (See: Possession)

#### you will obey what has been decreed

This can be stated in active form. AT: "you will obey Yahweh's decree" or "you will obey what Yahweh had decreed" (See: Active or Passive)

#### an offering made by fire to Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. AT: "an offering you burnt on the altar to Yahweh" (See: Active or Passive)

**translationWords**

- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- grain offering, grain offerings
- drink offering
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- decree, decrees, decreed
- Yahweh

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 29 General Notes
- Numbers 29 translationQuestions

## Numbers 29:7-8

### UDB:

[7] "Each year, on the tenth day of your seventh month, you must gather together to worship me. Do not eat any food or do any work on that day. [8] When you burn offerings on the altar on that day, the smell will be very pleasing to me. The animals that you must bring are one young bull, one male sheep, and seven male lambs that are one year old. They must have no defects.

### ULB:

[7] On the tenth day of the seventh month you must have a holy assembly to honor Yahweh. You must humble yourselves and do no work. [8] You must offer a burnt offering to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh. You must offer one young bull, one ram, and seven male lambs a year old. They must each be without blemish.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

#### the tenth day of the seventh month

"day 10 of month 7" The word "month" refers to those in the Hebrew calendar. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

#### have a holy assembly to honor Yahweh

"gather together to worship and honor Yahweh." The phrase "a holy assembly" means the people gather together to worship Yahweh. Worshiping Yahweh is a holy event.

### translationWords

- day, days
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled
- honor, honors
- Yahweh
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- lamb, Lamb of God
- year, years
- blemish, blemishes, unblemished

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 29 General Notes
- Numbers 29 translationQuestions

## Numbers 29:9-11

### UDB:

[9] With the bull, bring a flour offering of five and three-quarters liters of finely ground flour mixed with olive oil. With the male sheep, bring three and four-fifths liters. [10] With each of the lambs, bring two liters. [11] Also bring one male goat to remove the guilt of your sins, and the animals and flour and wine that you burn on the altar each day to atone for your sins. Those offerings will be in addition to the animals and flour and wine that are completely burned on the altar each day.

### ULB:

[9] You must offer with them a grain offering, fine flour mixed with oil, three-tenths of an ephah for the bull, two-tenths for the one ram, [10] and a tenth of an ephah for each of the seven lambs. [11] You must offer one male goat as a sin offering. This will be in addition to the sin offering of atonement, the regular burnt offering, its grain offering, and their drink offerings.

### translationNotes

#### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. AT: “fine flour which you have mixed with oil” (See: Active or Passive)

#### three-tenths of an ephah

“Three-tenths” means three parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. AT: “six liters” or “three-tenths of an ephah (which is about six liters)” (See: Fractions and Biblical Volume)

#### two-tenths

The words “of an ephah” are understood from earlier in the verse. They can be repeated here. “Two-tenths” means two parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. AT: “four and a half liters” or “two-tenths of an ephah (which is about 4.5 liters)” (See: Ellipsis and Fractions and Biblical Volume)

#### a tenth of an ephah

“A tenth” means one part out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. AT: “2 liters” or “a tenth of an ephah (which is about 2 liters)” (See: Fractions and Biblical Volume)

### of atonement

The word “atonement” can be expressed with the verb “atone.” AT: “that atones for you” (See: Abstract Nouns)

### its grain offering, and their drink offerings

The grain offering was to be offered with the burnt offering. The drink offerings were to be offered with both the sin offering and the burnt offering. AT: “along with the grain offering and the drink offerings that accompany them” (See: Possession)

### translationWords

- grain offering, grain offerings
- oil
- goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids
- sin offering, sin offerings
- atonement, atone, atones, atoned
- drink offering

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 29 General Notes
- Numbers 29 translationQuestions

## Numbers 29:12-13

### UDB:

[12] On the fifteenth day of your seventh month, you must all gather together to worship me. You must not do any regular work that you would normally do on that day. You must continue to celebrate for seven days. [13] When the offerings are burned on the altar, the smell will be very pleasing to me. The animals that you must bring are thirteen young bulls, two male sheep, and fourteen male lambs that are one year old. These animals must have no defects.

### ULB:

[12] On the fifteenth day of the seventh month you must have a holy assembly to honor Yahweh. You must not do regular work on that day, and you must keep the festival for him seven days. [13] You must offer a burnt offering, a sacrifice made by fire to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh. You must offer thirteen young bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs a year old. Each must be without blemish.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

#### the fifteenth day of the seventh month

"day 15 of month 7." The word "month" refer to those in the Hebrew calendar. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

#### have a holy assembly to honor Yahweh

"gather together to worship and honor Yahweh." The phrase "a holy assembly" means the people gather together to worship Yahweh. Worshiping Yahweh is a holy event.

#### you must keep the festival for him

This is an idiom. Here the word "keep" means to observe or celebrate. The word "him" refers to Yahweh. AT: "you must observe the festival for Yahweh" or "you must celebrate the festival for Yahweh" (See: Idiom)

#### a sacrifice made by fire

This can be stated in active form. "you must burn it on the altar" (See: Active or Passive)

### thirteen young bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs

“13 young bulls, 2 rams, and 14 male lambs” (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- day, days
- festival, festivals
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- year, years

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 29 General Notes
- Numbers 29 translationQuestions

## Numbers 29:14-16

### UDB:

[14] With each of the thirteen bulls, bring a flour offering of five and three-quarters liters of finely-ground flour mixed with olive oil. With each of the male sheep, bring three and four-fifths liters. [15] With each of the fourteen lambs, bring two liters. [16] Also bring one male goat to be sacrificed to remove the guilt of your sins, in addition to the offerings of animals and flour and wine that are completely burned on the altar each day.

### ULB:

[14] You must offer with them a grain offering, fine flour mixed with oil, three-tenths of an ephah for every bull of the thirteen bulls, two-tenths for each ram of the two rams, [15] and a tenth of an ephah for each of the fourteen lambs. [16] You must offer one male goat as a sin offering in addition to the regular burnt offering, its grain offering, and the drink offering with it.

### translationNotes

#### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. AT: “fine flour which you have mixed with oil” (See: Active or Passive)

#### three-tenths of an ephah

The phrase “of fine flour mixed with oil” is understood from earlier in the sentence and can be repeated. “Three-tenths” means three parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. AT: “six liters of fine flour mixed with oil” or “three-tenths of an ephah (which is about six liters)” (See: Fractions and Biblical Volume)

#### thirteen bulls ... fourteen lambs

“13 bulls ... 14 lambs” (See: Numbers)

#### two-tenths

The phrase “of an ephah of fine flour” is understood from earlier in the sentence. “Two-tenths” means two parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. AT: “four and a half liters of fine flour” or “two-tenths of an ephah (which is about 4.5 liters)” (See: Ellipsis and Fractions and Biblical Volume)

### a tenth of an ephah

The phrase “of fine flour” is understood from earlier in the sentence. “A tenth” means one part out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. AT: “2 liters of fine flour” or “a tenth of an ephah (which is about 2 liters)” (See: Fractions and Biblical Volume)

### its grain offering, and the drink offering with it

The grain offering and drink offering accompany the regular burnt offering.

### translationWords

- grain offering, grain offerings
- oil
- sin offering, sin offerings
- drink offering

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 29 General Notes
- Numbers 29 translationQuestions

## Numbers 29:17-19

### UDB:

17 On the second day of the festival, you must bring to the altar twelve young bulls, two rams, and fourteen lambs that are one year old. These animals must have no defects. 18 Bring also with the animals the offerings of flour and wine that are required. 19 Also offer one male goat; sacrifice it to remove the guilt of your sins. These animals will be in addition to the offerings of animals and flour and wine that are completely burned on the altar each day.

### ULB:

17 On the second day of the assembly, you must offer twelve young bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs a year old, each without blemish. 18 You must make with them a grain offering and the drink offerings for the bulls, for the rams, and for the lambs, making as many offerings as were commanded. 19 You must offer one male goat as a sin offering in addition to the regular burnt offering, its grain offering, and their drink offerings.

### translationNotes

#### On the second day of the assembly

"On day 2 of the festival." Here the word "assembly" refers to the Festival of Weeks. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

#### twelve young bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs

"12 young bulls, 2 rams, and 14 male lambs" (See: Numbers)

#### as were commanded

This can be stated in active form. AT: "as Yahweh commanded" (See: Active or Passive)

#### its grain offering, and their drink offerings

The grain offering was to be offered with the burnt offering. Drink offerings were to be offered with both the sin offering and the burnt offering. AT: "along with the grain offering and the drink offerings that accompany them" (See: Possession)

### translationWords

- day, days
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled

- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- lamb, Lamb of God
- year, years
- blemish, blemishes, unblemished
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 29 General Notes
- Numbers 29 translationQuestions

## Numbers 29:20-22

### UDB:

[20] On the third day of the festival, you must bring to the altar eleven young bulls, two rams, and fourteen lambs that are one year old. These animals must have no defects. They must all be burned on the altar, and their smell will please me. [21] Bring also with the animals the offerings of flour and wine that are required. [22] Also offer one male goat to be sacrificed to remove the guilt of your sins. These animals will be in addition to the offerings of animals and flour and wine that are completely burned on the altar each day.

### ULB:

[20] On the third day of the assembly, you must offer eleven bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs a year old, each without blemish. [21] You must make with them a grain offering and the drink offerings for the bulls, for the rams, and for the lambs, making as many offerings as were commanded. [22] You must offer one male goat as a sin offering in addition to the regular burnt offering, its grain offering, and their drink offerings.

### translationNotes

#### the third day of the assembly

"day 3 of the festival." Here the word "assembly" refers to the Festival of Weeks. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

#### eleven bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs

"11 bulls, 2 rams, and 14 male lambs" (See: Numbers)

#### as were commanded

This can be stated in active form. AT: "as Yahweh commanded" (See: Active or Passive)

#### its grain offering, and their drink offerings

The grain offering was to be offered with the burnt offering. The drink offerings were to be offered with both the sin offering and the burnt offering. AT: "along with the grain offering and the drink offerings that accompany them" (See: Possession)

### translationWords

- day, days

- year, years
- grain offering, grain offerings
- drink offering
- sin offering, sin offerings
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 29 General Notes
- Numbers 29 translationQuestions

## Numbers 29:23-25

### UDB:

[23] On the fourth day of the festival, you must bring to the altar ten young bulls, two rams, and fourteen lambs that are one year old. These animals must have no defects. They must all be burned on the altar, and their smell will please me. [24] Bring also with the animals the offerings of flour and wine that are required. [25] Also offer one male goat to be sacrificed to remove the guilt of your sins. These animals will be in addition to the offerings of animals and flour and wine that are completely burned on the altar each day.

### ULB:

[23] On the fourth day of the assembly, you must offer ten bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs a year old, each without blemish. [24] You must make with them a grain offering and the drink offerings for the bulls, for the rams, and for the lambs, making as many offerings as were commanded. [25] You must offer one male goat as a sin offering in addition to the regular burnt offering, its grain offering, and their drink offerings.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do during the festival in the seventh month.

#### the fourth day of the assembly

"day 4 of the festival." Here the word "assembly" refers to the Festival of Weeks. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

#### fourteen male lambs

"14 male lambs" (See: Numbers)

#### as were commanded

This can be stated in active form. AT: "as Yahweh commanded" (See: Active or Passive)

#### its grain offering, and their drink offerings

The grain offering was to be offered with the burnt offering. The drink offerings were to be offered with both the sin offering and the burnt offering. AT: "along with the grain offering and the drink offerings that accompany them" (See: Possession)

**translationWords**

- day, days
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- lamb, Lamb of God
- year, years
- blemish, blemishes, unblemished
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 29 General Notes
- Numbers 29 translationQuestions

## Numbers 29:26-28

### UDB:

[26] On the fifth day of the festival, you must bring to the altar nine young bulls, two rams, and fourteen lambs that are one year old. These animals must have no defects. They must all be burned on the altar, and their smell will please me. [27] Bring also with the animals the offerings of flour and wine that are required. [28] Also offer one male goat to be sacrificed to remove the guilt of your sins. These animals will be in addition to the offerings of animals and flour and wine that are completely burned on the altar each day.

### ULB:

[26] On the fifth day of the assembly, you must offer nine bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs a year old, each without blemish. [27] You must make with them a grain offering and the drink offerings for the bulls, for the rams, and for the lambs, making as many offerings as were commanded. [28] You must offer one male goat as a sin offering in addition to the regular burnt offering, its grain offering, and their drink offerings.

### translationNotes

#### the fifth day of the assembly

"day 5 of the festival." Here the word "assembly" refers to the Festival of Weeks. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

#### fourteen male lambs

"14 male lambs" (See: Numbers)

#### as were commanded

This can be stated in active form. AT: "as Yahweh commanded" (See: Active or Passive)

#### its grain offering, and their drink offerings

The grain offering was to be offered with the burnt offering. The drink offerings were to be offered with both the sin offering and the burnt offering. AT: "along with the grain offering and the drink offerings that accompany them" (See: Possession)

### translationWords

- day, days

- year, years
- grain offering, grain offerings
- drink offering
- sin offering, sin offerings
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 29 General Notes
- Numbers 29 translationQuestions

## Numbers 29:29-31

### UDB:

[29] On the sixth day of the festival, you must bring to the altar eight young bulls, two rams, and fourteen lambs that are one year old. These animals must have no defects. They must all be burned on the altar, and their smell will please me. [30] Bring also with the animals the offerings of flour and wine that are required. [31] Also offer one male goat to be sacrificed to remove the guilt of your sins. These animals will be in addition to the offerings of animals and flour and wine that are completely burned on the altar each day.

### ULB:

[29] On the sixth day of the assembly, you must offer eight bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs a year old, each without blemish. [30] You must make with them a grain offering and the drink offerings for the bulls, for the rams, and for the lambs, making as many offerings as were commanded. [31] You must offer one male goat as a sin offering in addition to the regular burnt offering, its grain offering, and their drink offerings.

### translationNotes

#### the sixth day of the assembly

"day 6 of the festival." Here the word "assembly" refers to the Festival of Weeks. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

#### fourteen male lambs

"14 male lambs" (See: Numbers)

#### as were commanded

This can be stated in active form. AT: "as Yahweh commanded" (See: Active or Passive)

#### its grain offering, and their drink offerings

The grain offering was to be offered with the burnt offering. The drink offerings were to be offered with both the sin offering and the burnt offering. AT: "along with the grain offering and the drink offerings that accompany them" (See: Possession)

### translationWords

- day, days

- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- lamb, Lamb of God
- year, years
- blemish, blemishes, unblemished
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 29 General Notes
- Numbers 29 translationQuestions

## Numbers 29:32-34

### UDB:

32 On the seventh day of the festival, you must bring to the altar seven young bulls, two rams, and fourteen lambs that are one year old. These animals must have no defects. They must all be burned on the altar, and their smell will please me. 33 Bring also with the animals the offerings of flour and wine that are required. 34 Also offer one male goat to be sacrificed to remove the guilt of your sins. These animals will be in addition to the offerings of animals and flour and wine that are completely burned on the altar each day.

### ULB:

32 On the seventh day of the assembly, you must offer seven bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs a year old, each without blemish. 33 You must make with them a grain offering and the drink offerings for the bulls, for the rams, and for the lambs, making as many offerings as were commanded. 34 You must offer one male goat as a sin offering in addition to the regular burnt offering, its grain offering, and their drink offerings.

### translationNotes

#### the seventh day of the assembly

"day 7 of the festival." Here the word "assembly" refers to the Festival of Weeks. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

#### fourteen male lambs

"14 male lambs" (See: Numbers)

#### as were commanded

This can be stated in active form. AT: "as Yahweh commanded" (See: Active or Passive)

#### its grain offering, and their drink offerings

The grain offering was to be offered with the burnt offering. The drink offerings were to be offered with both the sin offering and the burnt offering. AT: "along with the grain offering and the drink offerings that accompany them" (See: Possession)

### translationWords

- day, days

- year, years
- grain offering, grain offerings
- drink offering
- sin offering, sin offerings
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 29 General Notes
- Numbers 29 translationQuestions

## Numbers 29:35-36

### UDB:

[35] Eight days after the start of that festival, you must again gather together to worship me; you must not do any regular work that you would normally do on that day. [36] On that day, you must bring to the altar one bull, one full-grown ram, and seven lambs that are one year old. These animals must have no defects. They must all be burned on the altar, and their smell will please me.

### ULB:

[35] On the eighth day you must have another solemn assembly. You must not do regular work on that day. [36] You must make a burnt offering, an offering made by fire to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh. You must offer one bull, one ram, and seven male lambs a year old, each without blemish.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh tells Moses what the people must do after the seven-day festival in the seventh month.

#### eighth day

This “eighth” is the ordinal number for eight. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

#### have another solemn assembly

“gather together again to worship Yahweh.” This is another assembly similar to the one on the first day of the festival.

#### an offering made by fire

This can be stated in active form. AT: “you must burn it on the altar” (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- day, days
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- Yahweh
- year, years

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 29 General Notes
- Numbers 29 translationQuestions

## Numbers 29:37-38

### UDB:

[37] Bring also with the bull and the male sheep and each of the lambs the offerings of flour and wine that are required. [38] Also offer one male goat to be sacrificed to remove the guilt of your sins. These animals will be in addition to the offerings of animals and flour and wine that are completely burned on the altar each day.

### ULB:

[37] You must offer their grain offering and their drink offerings for the bull, for the ram, and for the lambs, making as many offerings as were commanded. [38] You must offer one male goat as a sin offering in addition to the regular burnt offering, its grain offering, and their drink offerings.

### translationNotes

#### their grain offering and their drink offerings

These offerings were to be offered with the bull, the ram, and the lambs. AT: “the grain offerings and the drink offerings” (See: Possession)

#### as were commanded

This can be stated in active form. AT: “as Yahweh commanded” (See: Active or Passive)

#### its grain offering, and their drink offerings

The grain offering was to be offered with the burnt offering. The drink offerings were to be offered with both the sin offering and the burnt offering. AT: “along with the grain offering and the drink offerings that accompany them” (See: Possession)

### translationWords

- grain offering, grain offerings
- drink offering
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- sin offering, sin offerings
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 29 General Notes
- Numbers 29 translationQuestions

## Numbers 29:39-40

### UDB:

[39] At your festivals, these are the offerings that you must bring to me: The offerings that will be completely burned on the altar, the grain offerings, the wine offerings, and the offerings to restore fellowship with me. Those are in addition to the offerings that you give to me because you promised to do something, and other special offerings that you want to give to me."

[40] Then Moses told to the Israelite people all the things that Yahweh had commanded him.

### ULB:

[39] These are what you must offer to Yahweh at your fixed festivals. These must be in addition to your vows and freewill offerings. You must offer these as your burnt offerings, grain offerings, drink offerings, and fellowship offerings." [40] Moses told the people of Israel everything that Yahweh had commanded him to say.

### translationNotes

#### These are what you must offer

"These offerings are what you must offer"

#### fixed festivals

"planned festivals." These are festivals that occurred at regularly scheduled times. The word "fixed" means "set" or "predetermined."

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- festival, festivals
- vow, vows, vowed
- freewill offering, freewill offerings
- fellowship offering, fellowship offerings
- Moses
- Israel, Israelites
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers

- Numbers 29 General Notes
- Numbers 29 translationQuestions

## Numbers 30 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Vows

Because a vow is a type of promise, men must do what they have vowed to do. A father or a husband has one day in which to cancel a woman's vow. Otherwise, she must do what she vowed she would do. (See: vow, vows, vowed and promise, promises, promised)

### Links:

- **Numbers 30:01 Notes**

## Numbers 30:1-2

### UDB:

[1] Moses spoke with the leaders of the Israelite tribes. He told them these commands that Yahweh had given to him:

[2] "If a man solemnly promises Yahweh that he will do something, he must do what he promised.

### ULB:

[1] Moses spoke to the leaders of the tribes of the people of Israel. He said, "This is what Yahweh has commanded. [2] When anyone makes a vow to Yahweh, or swears an oath to bind himself with a promise, he must not break his word. He must keep his promise to do everything that comes out of his mouth.

### translationNotes

#### When anyone makes a vow to Yahweh, or swears an oath

These two sentences have similar meanings and are combined to emphasize making a vow or promise. (See: Parallelism)

#### to bind himself with a promise

Here Moses speaks of a person promising to do something as if his promise were a physical object that he ties to himself. AT: "committing to fulfill a promise" or "promising to do something" (See: Metaphor)

#### he must not break his word. He must keep his promise to do everything that comes out of his mouth

These two sentences have similar meanings and are combined to emphasize that he must fulfill his promises. Here "word" is a metonym that refers to what he said. (See: Parallelism)

#### he must not break his word

The phrase "his word" refers to a man's oaths and vows. Here Moses speaks of not fulfilling these as if they were physical objects that the man could break. AT: "he must fulfill his promises" (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

#### everything that comes out of his mouth

Here the word "mouth" is a metonym for the things that the man says. AT: "to do everything that he says he will do" (See: Metonymy)

**translationWords**

- Moses
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- vow, vows, vowed
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- bind, bond, bound
- promise, promises, promised
- word, words

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 30 General Notes
- Numbers 30 translationQuestions

## Numbers 30:3-4

### UDB:

[3] If a young woman who is still living with her parents solemnly promises to Yahweh to do something, [4] and if her father hears about what she promised, and if he does not say anything to her, she must do what she promised.

### ULB:

[3] When a young woman living in her father's house makes a vow to Yahweh and binds herself with a promise, [4] if her father hears the vow and the promise by which she has bound herself, and if he says nothing to reverse her, then all her vows will remain in force. Every promise by which she has bound herself will remain in force.

### translationNotes

#### binds herself with a promise

Here Moses speaks of a woman promising to do something as if her promise were a physical object that she ties to herself. AT: "commits herself to fulfilling a promise" or "promises to do something" (See: Metaphor)

#### the vow and the promise

These two phrases have very similar meanings. They emphasize what she has promised to do. AT: "the vow" (See: Doublet)

#### by which she has bound herself

Here Moses speaks of how a woman has committed herself to fulfilling a promise as if her promise were a physical object that she had bound to her body. AT: "which she has committed herself to fulfill" (See: Metaphor)

#### to reverse her

"to cancel what she has said"

#### then all her vows will remain in force. Every promise ... will remain in force

These two statements say basically the same thing and emphasize that she must keep all of her vows. (See: Parallelism)

### will remain in force

This is an idiom. It means that her vows will remain in effect and that she will be required to fulfill them. AT: “she will be obligated to fulfill” (See: Idiom)

### translationWords

- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 30 General Notes
- Numbers 30 translationQuestions

## Numbers 30:5

### UDB:

[5] And if her father hears about all she promised to do, but he says nothing to her, then she must keep all the promises she made.

### ULB:

[5] But if her father hears about her vow and her promise, and if he says nothing to her, then all the vows and promises that she took on herself will remain in force.

### translationNotes

#### her vow and her promise

These two phrases have very similar meanings. They emphasize what she has promised to do. AT: "her vow" (See: Doublet)

#### she took on herself

Here the woman committing herself to fulfilling her vows is spoken of as if her vows were a garment that she placed on herself. AT: "that she committed herself to" or "that she made" (See: Metaphor)

#### will remain in force

This is an idiom. It means that her vows will remain in effect and she will be required to fulfill them. See how you translated this phrase in Numbers 30:4. AT: "she will be obligated to fulfill" (See: Idiom)

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 30 General Notes
- Numbers 30 translationQuestions

## Numbers 30:6-7

### UDB:

[6] If her father overrules her on the day he hears all the vows she made and her solemn promises with which she has bound herself, then they will stand. Yahweh will forgive her because her father had overruled her. [7] If she marries a husband while under the vows, or she makes rash utterances by which she obligates herself, they will stand.

### ULB:

[6] However, if her father hears all the vows she made and her solemn promises with which she has bound herself, and if he overrules her on that same day, then they will not remain in force. Yahweh will forgive her because her father had overruled her. [7] If she marries a man while she is under those vows, or if she makes rash promises with which she obligates herself, those obligations will remain in force.

### translationNotes

#### her solemn promises with which she has bound herself

Here Moses speaks of how a woman has committed herself to fulfilling a promise as if her promise were a physical object that she had bound to her body. AT: “her solemn promises which she has committed herself to fulfill” (See: Metaphor)

#### if he overrules her

Here the father overruling the woman’s promise is spoken of as if he were overruling “her.” AT: “if her overrules her promise” or “if he cancels her promise” (See: Metonymy)

#### will not remain in force

This is an idiom. It means that her vows will not remain in effect and she will be not required to fulfill them. AT: “she will not be obligated to fulfill” (See: Idiom)

#### Yahweh will forgive her

This refers to Yahweh forgiving her for not fulfilling her vows. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: “Yahweh will forgive her for not fulfilling her vows” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### while she is under those vows

This is an idiom. Being “under” her vows means that she is committed to them and that they are still in effect. AT: “while she is still committed to those vows” (See: Idiom)

### rash

something done without thinking

### those obligations

The word “obligations” can be expressed with the verb “obligate.” AT: “the things she has obligated herself to” (See: Abstract Nouns)

### translationWords

- vow, vows, vowed
- promise, promises, promised

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 30 General Notes
- Numbers 30 translationQuestions

## Numbers 30:8

### UDB:

[8] But if her husband stops her on the day that he hears about it, then he cancels the vow that she has made, the rash talk of her lips with which she has bound herself. Yahweh will release her.

### ULB:

[8] But if her husband stops her on the day that he hears about it, then he cancels the vow that she has made, the rash talk of her lips with which she has bound herself. Yahweh will release her.

### translationNotes

#### the vow that she has made ... the rash talk of her lips

"the vow that she has made ... that is, the rash talk of her lips." These two phrases refer to the same thing. The second phrase describes the vow that the woman made. (See: Parallelism)

#### the rash talk of her lips

The phrase "the rash talk" refers to the rash promise that she made. Here "her lips" means the woman herself. She is referred to as "her lips" because lips are related to what she says. AT: "the rash things she has said" or "her rash promise" (See: Synecdoche)

#### with which she has bound herself

Here Moses speaks of how a woman has committed herself to fulfilling a promise as if her promise were a physical object that she had bound to her body. AT: "which she has committed herself to fulfill" (See: Metaphor)

#### Yahweh will release her

Here Moses speaks about Yahweh forgiving the woman for not fulfilling her vow as if he were releasing her from something that bound her. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: "Yahweh will forgive her" or "Yahweh will forgive her for not fulfilling her vow" (See: Metaphor and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- Yahweh

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 30 General Notes
- Numbers 30 translationQuestions

## Numbers 30:9-11

### UDB:

[9] If a widow or a woman who has been divorced makes a promise, she must do what she promised.

[10] If a woman who is married promises to do something, [11] and if her husband hears about it but does not object, she must do what she promised.

### ULB:

[9] But as for a widow or a divorced woman, everything by which she has bound herself will remain in force against her. [10] If a woman made a vow in her husband's house or obligates herself by taking an oath, [11] and her husband hears of it, but he says nothing to her and he does oppose her, then all her vows must stand and the obligations she made must remain in force.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Moses continues telling the leaders of the tribes what Yahweh has commanded.

#### a divorced woman

This can be stated in active form. AT: "a woman who has been divorced by a man" (See: Active or Passive)

#### by which she has bound herself

Here Moses speaks of how a woman has committed herself to fulfilling a promise as if her promise were a physical object that she had bound to her body. AT: "which she has committed herself to fulfill" (See: Metaphor)

#### will remain in force against her

This is an idiom. It means that her vows will remain in effect and she will be required to fulfill them. See how you translated a similar phrase in Numbers 30:4. AT: "she will be obligated to fulfill" (See: Idiom)

#### If a woman made a vow in her husband's house

This refers to a married woman. You can make the meaning of this statement clear. AT: "If a married woman makes a vow" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### then all her vows must stand ... remain in force

This is an idiom. The phrase “remain in force” means that her vows will remain in effect and she will be required to fulfill them. See how you translated a similar phrase in Numbers 30:4. AT: “then she must fulfill all her vows ... she must fulfill” (See: Idiom)

### all her vows must stand ... the obligations she made must remain in force

These two statements say basically the same thing twice for emphasis and can be combined. AT: “then all of her vows and promises with which she has made must remain in force” (See: Parallelism)

### translationWords

- divorce
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 30 General Notes
- Numbers 30 translationQuestions

## Numbers 30:12

### UDB:

12 But if he hears about it and does not allow her to do that, she does not need to do what she promised, and Yahweh will forgive her for not doing it.

### ULB:

12 But if her husband cancels them on the day that he heard about them, then whatever came out of her lips about her vows or promises will not remain in force. Her husband has canceled them. Yahweh will release her.

### translationNotes

#### then whatever came out of her lips

Here what the woman said is referred to as something that came out of her lips. AT: “then whatever she said” (See: Metonymy)

#### will not remain in force

This is an idiom. It means that her vows will not remain in effect and she will be not required to fulfill them. See how you translated this phrase in Numbers 30:6. AT: “she will not be obligated to fulfill” (See: Idiom)

#### Yahweh will release her

Here Moses speaks about Yahweh forgiving the woman for not fulfilling her vow as if he were releasing her from something that bound her. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: “Yahweh will forgive her” or “Yahweh will forgive her for not fulfilling her vow” (See: Metaphor and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 30 General Notes
- Numbers 30 translationQuestions

## Numbers 30:13-14

### UDB:

[13] A woman's husband may require her to do what she has promised, or he may not allow her to do what she has promised. [14] If he does not object for several days after he hears about it, she must do what she promised.

### ULB:

[13] Every vow or oath a woman takes that binds her to deny herself something may be confirmed or canceled by her husband. [14] But if he says nothing at all to her day after day, then he confirms all her vows and binding promises that she has made. He has confirmed them because he has said nothing to her at the time that he heard about them.

### translationNotes

#### Every vow or oath ... may be confirmed or canceled by her husband

This can be stated in active form. AT: "A woman's husband may confirm or cancel any vow or oath she has taken that binds her to deny herself something" (See: Active or Passive)

#### that binds her

Here Moses speaks of a woman's promise that she is committed to as if it were something physically binding her body. AT: "that she is committed to" (See: Metaphor)

#### binding promises

Moses describes a woman's promises as if they were something that she is physically bound by. AT: "obligations" or "promises" (See: Metaphor)

#### because he has said nothing to her

You can make clear the understood information. AT: "because he has said nothing to her about them" (See: Ellipsis)

### translationWords

- vow, vows, vowed
- promise, promises, promised

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 30 General Notes
- Numbers 30 translationQuestions

## Numbers 30:15-16

### UDB:

15 But if he waits a long time after she has promised to do something and then he tells her that he will not permit her to do it, if she does not do what she promised, she will not be punished. Her husband is the one whom Yahweh will punish."

16 Those are the rules that Yahweh gave to Moses for husbands and wives, and for young women who are still living with their parents.

### ULB:

15 If her husband tries to cancel his wife's vow a long time after he has heard about it, then he will be responsible for her sin." 16 These are the statutes that Yahweh commanded Moses to announce—statutes for what is between a man and his wife and between a father and his daughter when she is in her youth in her father's family.

### translationNotes

#### then he will be responsible for her sin

This means that he will be guilty of her sin instead of her if she does not fulfill her vow. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: "if she does not fulfill her vow, she will not be guilty of her sin, and he will be guilty instead of her" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- statute, statutes
- Yahweh
- Moses

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 30 General Notes
- Numbers 30 translationQuestions

# Numbers 31 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

### Midianites

Israel killed the Midianites, including Balaam, for tempting them to worship Baal. This battle was at Yahweh's command. Yahweh would bring justice. (See: just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification)

### Links:

- **Numbers 31:01 Notes**

## Numbers 31:1-2

### UDB:

[1] Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, [2] "Tell the Israelite people that they should pay back the Midian people group for what they did to you. After that happens, you will die."

### ULB:

[1] Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, [2] "Take vengeance on the Midianites for what they did to the Israelites. After doing that, you will die and be gathered to your people."

### translationNotes

#### Take vengeance on the Midianites for what they did to the Israelites

Yahweh was punishing the Midianites for convincing the Israelites to worship idols.

#### you will die and be gathered to your people

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. This is a polite way to emphasize that it is time for Moses to die and for his spirit to go to the place where his ancestors are. (See: Parallelism and Euphemism)

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- avenge, avenges, avenged, avenging, avenger, revenge, vengeance
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- Midian, Midianite, Midianites

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 31 General Notes
- Numbers 31 translationQuestions

## Numbers 31:3-5

### UDB:

[3] So Moses said to the people, "Get some men prepared for battle. Yahweh will enable them to pay back the Midian people group for what they did to us. [4] Select a thousand men from each tribe to fight." [5] So twelve thousand men prepared for fighting in the battle, one thousand from each tribe.

### ULB:

[3] So Moses spoke to the people. He said, "Arm some of your men for war so they may go against Midian and carry out Yahweh's vengeance on it. [4] Every tribe throughout Israel must send a thousand soldiers to war." [5] So out of Israel's thousands of men, one thousand was provided from each tribe, twelve thousand men armed for war.

### translationNotes

#### Arm some of your men for war

"Give weapons to some of your men"

#### go against Midian and carry out Yahweh's vengeance on it

"go fight a war against the Midianites and punish them for what they did to us"

#### a thousand ... twelve thousand

"1,000 ... 12,000" (See: Numbers)

#### Israel's thousands of men

"the thousands of Israel's men"

#### one thousand was provided from each tribe

This can be stated in active form. AT: "every tribe sent 1,000 men to war" (See: Active or Passive)

#### twelve thousand men armed for war

All 12 tribes sent men, including the tribe of Levi. Each tribe sent 1,000 men into battle. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**translationWords**

- avenge, avenges, avenged, avenging, avenger, revenge, vengeance
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 31 General Notes
- Numbers 31 translationQuestions

## Numbers 31:6-8

### UDB:

[6] When Moses sent them to the battle, Phinehas son of Eleazar the priest, went with them. He took with him some of the things from the sacred tent and the trumpets that would be blown to give the signal to start the battle.

[7] The Israelite men fought the soldiers from the Midian people group, as Yahweh had told Moses to tell them to do, and they killed every man from the Midian people group. [8] Among those whom they killed were the five kings of the Midian people group—Evi, Rekem, Zur, Hur, and Reba. They also killed Balaam with a sword son of Beor.

### ULB:

[6] Then Moses sent them to battle, a thousand from every tribe, along with Phinehas son of Eleazar the priest, and with some articles from the holy place and the trumpets in his possession for sounding signals. [7] They fought against Midian, as Yahweh had commanded Moses. They killed every man. [8] They killed the kings of Midian with the rest of their dead: Evi, Rekem, Zur, Hur, and Reba, the five kings of Midian. They also killed Balaam son of Beor, with the sword.

### translationNotes

#### Evi, Rekem, Zur, Hur, and Reba

These are names of kings of Midian. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### Balaam son of Beor

Beor was Balaam's father. See how you translated this in Numbers 22:5.

### translationWords

- Phinehas
- Eleazar
- priest, priests, priesthood
- holy place
- trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- Balaam
- sword, swords, swordsmen

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 31 General Notes
- Numbers 31 translationQuestions

## Numbers 31:9-10

### UDB:

[9] They captured all the women and children of the Midian people group and took away their cattle, their flocks of sheep, and herds of goats, and all their other possessions. [10] Then they burned down all the houses in the towns and villages where the people of the Midian people group lived.

### ULB:

[9] The army of Israel took captive the women of Midian, their children, all their cattle, all their flocks, and all their goods. They took these as plunder. [10] They burned all their cities where they lived and all their camps.

### translationNotes

#### They took these as plunder

“They took the Midianites’ possessions as their own”

#### They burned all their cities where they lived and all their camps

“Israel’s army burned all the Midianites’ cities where the Midianites lived and all the Midianites’ camps”

### translationWords

- Israel, Israelites
- captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity
- Midian, Midianite, Midianites
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 31 General Notes
- Numbers 31 translationQuestions

## Numbers 31:11-12

### UDB:

[11] But they took home with them all the women and children and animals and possessions. [12] They brought all these to Eleazer and Moses, and to the rest of the Israelite people who were at their camp on the plains of Moab, near the Jordan River, across from Jericho.

### ULB:

[11] They took all the plunder and prisoners, both people and animals. [12] They brought the prisoners, the plunder, and the captured things to Moses, to Eleazar the priest, and to the community of the people of Israel. They brought these to the camp in the plains of Moab, by the Jordan near Jericho.

### translationNotes

#### They took

"The army of Israel took"

#### plunder

This refers to the material goods they recovered from killing the Midianite men.

#### plains

a large area of flat land

### translationWords

- prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments
- Moses
- Eleazar
- priest, priests, priesthood
- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Jericho

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 31 General Notes
- Numbers 31 translationQuestions

## Numbers 31:13-15

### UDB:

[13] Eleazar and all the leaders of the people and Moses went outside the camp to greet them.

[14] But Moses was angry with some of the men who had returned from the battle. He was angry with the army officers, those men who were commanders over thousands of men and those who were commanders over hundreds of men. [15] He asked them, "Why did you allow the women to live?

### ULB:

[13] Moses, Eleazar the priest, and all the leaders of the community went to meet them outside the camp. [14] But Moses was angry with the officers of the army, the commanders of thousands and the captains of hundreds, who came from battle. [15] Moses said to them, "Have you let all the women live?

### translationNotes

#### the commanders of thousands and the captains of hundreds

Possible meanings are 1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders and captains led. AT: "the commanders of 1,000 soldiers and the captains of 100 soldiers" or 2) the words translated as "thousands" and "hundreds" do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. AT: "the commanders of large military divisions and the captains of smaller military divisions" (See: Numbers)

#### Have you let all the women live?

The law was explicit on who would be permitted to live. The army violated the law by allowing all the women and children to live. This was a rebuke to the army leaders. (See: Rhetorical Question)

### translationWords

- commander, commanders

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 31 General Notes
- Numbers 31 translationQuestions

## Numbers 31:16-17

### UDB:

16 They are the ones who did what Balaam suggested and urged our people to worship Baal instead of Yahweh. As a result, Yahweh caused a plague to strike his people while they were at Peor. 17 So, now you must kill all the boys of the Midian people group, and also kill all the women who have slept with any man.

### ULB:

16 Look, these women caused the people of Israel, through Balaam's advice, to commit sin against Yahweh in the matter of Peor, when the plague spread among Yahweh's community. 17 Now then, kill every male among the little ones, and kill every woman who has ever slept with a man.

### translationNotes

#### Look

This word is used here to draw the audience's attention to what is said next. AT: "Listen" (See: Idiom)

#### slept with a man

had sexual relations with a man (See: Euphemism)

### translationWords

- Balaam
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- Peor, Mount Peor, Baal Peor
- plague, plagues
- had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, sleeps with, slept with, sleeping with

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 31 General Notes
- Numbers 31 translationQuestions

## Numbers 31:18-20

### UDB:

18 Spare only the girls who are virgins. You can keep them to be your wives or your slaves.

19 All of you who have killed someone or touched the corpse of someone who was killed in the battle must stay outside the camp for seven days. On the third day and on the seventh day, you must perform the ritual to enable you to become acceptable to God again. 20 You must also wash your clothes and anything that you took to the battle that is made of leather or goat's hair or wood."

### ULB:

18 But take for yourselves all the young girls who have never slept with a man. 19 You must camp outside the camp of Israel for seven days. All of you who have killed anyone and or have touched any dead person—you must purify yourselves on the third day and on the seventh day—you and your prisoners. 20 You must purify every garment and everything made of animal hide and goats' hair, and everything made of wood."

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Moses speaks to the commanders of the Israelite army about becoming clean before God.

#### who have never slept with a man

This refers to girls who were virgins. (See: Euphemism)

#### All of you

Moses is referring to anyone who fought in battle, not just the commanders.

#### you must purify yourselves

They must become spiritually clean again before entering the camp.

#### everything made of animal hide and goats' hair, and everything made of wood

This can be stated in active form. AT: "everything that someone has made of animal hide, goats' hair, or wood" (See: Active or Passive)

**translationWords**

- had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, sleeps with, slept with, sleeping with
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- pure, purify, purification

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 31 General Notes
- Numbers 31 translationQuestions

## Numbers 31:21-24

### UDB:

[21] Then Eleazar said to the soldiers who had returned from the battle, "This is what Yahweh has instructed Moses. [22] You must put into a fire any gold or silver or bronze or iron or tin or lead things that you brought back from the battle. [23] Put everything that will not burn into the fire, and then they will be acceptable for you to use. But also sprinkle those things with the water that causes things and people to become acceptable to God. The things that would burn if you put them in a fire, sprinkle them with that water. [24] On the seventh day, wash your clothes, and then you will become acceptable to God again. After you do that, you may return to the camp."

### ULB:

[21] Eleazar the priest said to the soldiers who had gone to war, "This is a decreed law that Yahweh has given to Moses: [22] The gold, silver, bronze, iron, tin, and lead, [23] and everything that resists fire, you must put it through the fire, and it will become clean. You must then purify those things with the water of cleansing. Whatever cannot go through the fire you must cleanse with that water. [24] You must wash your clothes on the seventh day, and then you will become clean. Afterward you may come into Israel's camp."

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Eleazar teaches the soldiers the customs of becoming ceremonially clean before Yahweh after going to war.

#### gold, silver, bronze, iron, tin, and lead

metals that were used during that time period

#### that resists fire

"that will not burn"

#### put it through the fire

"put it into the fire"

#### water of cleansing

This refers to water that someone has mixed with ashes from a sin offering. See: Numbers 19:17-19.

#### then you will become clean

These are the customs of becoming ceremonially clean before Yahweh.

#### translationWords

- Eleazar
- decree, decrees, decreed
- law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles
- Moses
- gold, golden
- silver
- bronze
- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean

#### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 31 General Notes
- Numbers 31 translationQuestions

## Numbers 31:25-27

### UDB:

25 Yahweh also said to Moses, 26 "Write down a list of all the goods, the women, and the animals that were captured in the battle. 27 Then tell Eleazar and the leaders of the family groups that they must they must divide all those things between the men who fought in the battle and the rest of the people.

### ULB:

25 Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, 26 "Count all the plundered things that were taken, both people and animals. You, Eleazar the priest, and the leaders of the community's ancestor's clans 27 must divide the plunder into two parts. Divide it between the soldiers who went out to battle and all the rest of the community.

### translationNotes

#### Count all the plundered things that were taken

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Count all of the possessions that the soldiers took" (See: Active or Passive)

#### plunder

This refers to all the items taken from the people Israel killed or captured in battle.

#### the leaders of the community's ancestor's clans

"the leaders of each clan"

### translationWords

- priest, priests, priesthood
- clan, clans

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 31 General Notes
- Numbers 31 translationQuestions

## Numbers 31:28-29

### UDB:

[28] From the men who fought in the battle, take one from every five hundred people and from every five hundred cattle and donkeys and sheep, to be a tax for me. [29] Take these things to Eleazar to be my share as the offering presented to me.

### ULB:

[28] Then levy a tax to be given to me from the soldiers who went out to battle. This tax must be one out of every five hundred, whether persons, cattle, donkeys, sheep, or goats. [29] Take this tax from their half and give it to Eleazar the priest for an offering to be presented to me.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

#### General Information:

"me" refers to Yahweh.

#### Then levy a tax to be given to me from the soldiers who went out to battle

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Collect a tax from the soldiers' plunder and give it to me" (See: Active or Passive)

#### every five hundred

"every 500" (See: Numbers)

#### from their half

"from the soldiers' half"

#### to be presented to me

This can be stated in active form. AT: "which he will present to me" (See: Active or Passive)

**translationWords**

- tax, taxes, taxed, taxation, taxpayers
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- donkey, mule
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids
- Eleazar
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 31 General Notes
- Numbers 31 translationQuestions

## Numbers 31:30-31

### UDB:

30 And from the other things, take one item from every fifty. That includes people, cattle, donkeys, sheep, goats, and other animals. Give those things to the descendants of Levi who take care of my sacred tent." 31 So Eleazar and Moses did what Yahweh commanded.

### ULB:

30 Also from the people of Israel's half, you must take one out of every fifty—from the persons, cattle, donkeys, sheep, and goats. Give these to the Levites who take care of my tabernacle." 31 So Moses and Eleazar the priest did as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

#### Also from the people of Israel's half

"Also from the people of Israel's half of the plunder"

#### every fifty

"every 50" (See: Numbers)

#### who take care

those who oversee and maintain the tabernacle and sacrifices to Yahweh

### translationWords

- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- tabernacle
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 31 General Notes
- Numbers 31 translationQuestions

## Numbers 31:32

### UDB:

[32-35] There were 675,000 sheep, seventy-two thousand cattle, sixty-one thousand donkeys, and thirty- virgins that they had captured from the Midian people group.

### ULB:

[32] Now the plunder that remained of what the soldiers had taken was 675,000 sheep, [33] seventy-two thousand oxen, [34] sixty-one thousand donkeys, [35] and thirty-two thousand women who had never slept with any man.

### translationNotes

#### Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main teaching. Here Moses begins listing the amount of plunder and how much went to the soldiers, to the people, and to Yahweh.

#### 675,000 sheep

“six hundred and seventy-five thousand sheep” (See: Numbers)

#### seventy-two thousand oxen, sixty-one thousand donkeys, and thirty-two thousand women

“72,000 oxen, 61,000 donkeys, and 32,000 women” (See: Numbers)

#### women who had never slept with any man

This refers to women who are virgins. (See: Euphemism)

### translationWords

- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
-
- donkey, mule
- had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, sleeps with, slept with, sleeping with

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 31 General Notes
- Numbers 31 translationQuestions

## Numbers 31:36-38

### UDB:

[36] The men who fought in the battle took 337,000 sheep from the battle, [37] and they gave 675 of them to Yahweh. [38] They took thirty-six thousand cattle and gave 72 of them to Yahweh.

### ULB:

[36] The half that was kept for the soldiers numbered 337,000 sheep. [37] Yahweh's part of the sheep was 675. [38] The oxen were thirty-six thousand which Yahweh's tax was seventy-two.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Moses is listing the plunder that goes to the soldiers and the tax that goes to Yahweh. (See: Numbers)

#### The half that was kept for the soldiers

This can be stated in active form. AT: "The soldiers' part of the sheep" (See: Active or Passive)

#### 337,000 sheep

"three hundred and thirty-seven thousand sheep" (See: Numbers)

#### was 675

"was six hundred and seventy-five" (See: Numbers)

#### thirty-six thousand

36,000 (See: Numbers)

#### seventy-two

72 (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- tax, taxes, taxed, taxation, taxpayers

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 31 General Notes
- Numbers 31 translationQuestions

## Numbers 31:39-41

### UDB:

[39] They took 30,500 donkeys, and they gave 61 of them to Yahweh. [40] They took sixteen thousand virgins, and they gave 32 of them to Yahweh.

[41] Moses gave to Eleazar all the animals that had been presented to Yahweh, as Yahweh had commanded.

### ULB:

[39] The donkeys were 30,500 from which Yahweh's part was sixty-one. [40] The persons were sixteen thousand women of whom Yahweh's tax was thirty-two. [41] Moses took the tax that was to be an offering presented to Yahweh. He gave it to Eleazar the priest, as Yahweh commanded Moses.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Moses is listing the plunder that goes to the soldiers and the tax that goes to Yahweh. (See: Numbers)

#### were 30,500

"were thirty thousand five hundred" (See: Numbers)

#### sixty-one

61 (See: Numbers)

#### sixteen thousand

16,000 (See: Numbers)

#### thirty-two

32 (See: Numbers)

#### to be an offering presented to Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. AT: "to be an offering to Yahweh" (See: Active or Passive)

**translationWords**

- Moses
- Eleazar
- priest, priests, priesthood

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 31 General Notes
- Numbers 31 translationQuestions

## Numbers 31:42

### UDB:

42-46 Moses separated what those who had fought in the battle received from what the other people received. The people received 337,500 sheep, thirty-six thousand cattle, 30,500 donkeys, and sixteen thousand virgins.

### ULB:

42 As for the people of Israel's half that Moses had taken from the soldiers who had gone to war—
43 the community's half was 337,500 sheep, 44 thirty-six thousand oxen, 45 30,500 donkeys, 46 and sixteen thousand women.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Moses is listing the plunder that goes to the people and the tax that goes to Yahweh. (See: Numbers)

#### 337,500 sheep

"three hundred and thirty-seven thousand five hundred sheep" (See: Numbers)

#### thirty-six thousand oxen

36,000 oxen (See: Numbers)

#### sixteen thousand women

"16,000 women." It has been stated earlier that all the males and the married women captives were put to death (See: Numbers and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- 
- donkey, mule
- had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, sleeps with, slept with, sleeping with

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 31 General Notes
- Numbers 31 translationQuestions

## Numbers 31:47

### UDB:

47 From what the people received, Moses took one from every fifty items and gave them to Yahweh. That included animals and people. As Yahweh commanded, Moses gave them all to the descendants of Levi who took care of the sacred tent.

### ULB:

47 From the people of Israel's half, Moses took one out of every fifty, both of people and animals. He gave them to the Levites who kept care of Yahweh's tabernacle, as Yahweh had commanded him to do.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Moses is listing the plunder that goes to the people and the tax that goes to Yahweh. (See: Numbers)

#### General Information:

The tax on the people's portion was higher than the tax on the soldiers' portion.

### translationWords

- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- tabernacle
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 31 General Notes
- Numbers 31 translationQuestions

## Numbers 31:48-49

### UDB:

48 Then the army officers, those who were commanders over thousands of men and those who were commanders over hundreds of men, they came to Moses. 49 They said, "We, who are your servants, have counted the soldiers whom we command, and we found that none of them is missing.

### ULB:

48 Then the officers of the army, the commanders over thousands and the captains over hundreds, came to Moses. 49 They said to him, "Your servants have counted the soldiers who are under our command, and not one man is missing.

### translationNotes

#### the commanders over thousands and the captains over hundreds

Possible meanings are 1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders and captains led. AT: "the commanders over 1,000 soldiers and the captains over 100 soldiers" or 2) the words translated as "thousands" and "hundreds" do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. AT: "the commanders over large military divisions and the captains over smaller military divisions" See how you translated a similar phrase in Numbers 31:14. (See: Numbers)

#### Your servants have counted

The commanders refer to themselves as "your servants." This is a polite way to speak to someone with greater authority.

#### not one man is missing

This can be stated in a positive statement. "we know for certain that every man is here" (See: Litotes)

### translationWords

- commander, commanders
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 31 General Notes
- Numbers 31 translationQuestions

## Numbers 31:50-51

### UDB:

50 So to thank Yahweh for that, we have brought to him a gift of the gold items that we found after the battle, gold arm bands and bracelets and rings, earrings and necklaces. We hope that this will atone for our sins."

51 So Eleazar and Moses accepted the gold items that they brought.

### ULB:

50 We have brought Yahweh's offering, what each man found, articles of gold, armlets and bracelets, signet rings, earrings, and necklaces, to make atonement for ourselves before Yahweh." 51 Moses and Eleazar the priest received from them the gold and all the articles of craftsmanship.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

The officers of the army continue speaking to Moses.

#### armlets and bracelets, signet rings, earrings, and necklaces

These are all types of jewelry that people wore.

#### to make atonement for ourselves before Yahweh

"to thank God for saving our lives"

#### the gold and all the articles of craftsmanship

"all the articles of gold" or "all the golden jewelry"

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- gold, golden
- atonement, atone, atones, atoned
- Moses

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 31 General Notes
- Numbers 31 translationQuestions

## Numbers 31:52-54

### UDB:

[52] The total of the offering they presented weighed about one hundred and ninety one kilograms. [53] Each soldier had taken these things for himself. [54] Eleazar and Moses accepted these gold items from these commanders and put them in the sacred tent to remind the Israelite people about how Yahweh had helped them defeat the Midian people group.

### ULB:

[52] All the gold of the offering that they gave to Yahweh—the offerings from the commanders of thousands and from the captains of hundreds—weighed 16,750 shekels. [53] Each soldier had taken plunder, each man for himself. [54] Moses and Eleazar the priest took the gold from the commanders of thousands and captains of hundreds. They took it into the tent of meeting as a reminder of the people of Israel for Yahweh.

### translationNotes

#### All the gold of the offering that they gave to Yahweh—the offerings from the commanders of thousands and from the captains of hundreds—weighed

"All the gold of the offering that the commanders of thousands and the captains of hundreds gave to Yahweh weighed"

#### from the commanders of thousands and from the captains of hundreds

Possible meanings are 1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders and captains led. AT: "from the commanders of 1,000 soldiers and from the captains of 100 soldiers" or 2) the words translated as "thousands" and "hundreds" do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. AT: "from the commanders of large military divisions and from the captains of smaller military divisions" See how you translated a similar phrase in Numbers 31:14. (See: Numbers)

#### 16,750

"sixteen thousand, seven hundred and fifty" (See: Numbers)

#### shekels

A shekel is 11 grams. (See: Biblical Money)

**as a reminder of the people of Israel for Yahweh**

The gold will remind the people that Yahweh gave them victory. It will also remind Yahweh that the people fulfilled his revenge on the Midianites.

**translationWords**

- priest, priests, priesthood
- tent of meeting
- Israel, Israelites

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 31 General Notes
- Numbers 31 translationQuestions

# Numbers 32 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

### Reuben and Gad's inheritance

Reuben and Gad were given the land conquered east of the Jordan River. This land had good pastures, and suited these tribes because they had many sheep, goats and cattle. They had not yet entered into the Promised Land, and it would have been sinful to not fight with the rest of Israel. So they promised to enter the land to fight with the other tribes, and then return to their own land. (See: sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning, Promised Land and promise, promises, promised)

### Links:

- **Numbers 32:01 Notes**

## Numbers 32:1-3

### UDB:

[1] The people of the tribes of Reuben and Gad had a lot of livestock. They saw that the land near the city of Jazer and the region of Gilead east of the Jordan River had good grass for the animals to graze on. [2] So their leaders came to Eleazar and the leaders of the people and Moses. They said, [3] "We have a great amount of livestock.

### ULB:

[1] Now the descendants of Reuben and of Gad had large numbers of livestock. When they saw the land of Jazer and Gilead, the land was a wonderful place for livestock. [2] So the descendants of Gad and Reuben came and spoke to Moses, to Eleazar the priest, and to the leaders of the community. They said, [3] "This is a list of places we have surveyed: Ataroth, Dibon, Jazer, Nimrah, Heshbon, Elealeh, Sebam, Nebo, and Beon.

### translationNotes

#### Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Moses tells background information about the tribes of Reuben and Gad. (See: Background Information)

#### Ataroth, Dibon, Jazer, Nimrah, Heshbon, Elealeh, Sebam, Nebo, and Beon

These are names of cities. (See: How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Reuben
- Gad
- livestock
- Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites
- Moses
- Eleazar
- priest, priests, priesthood

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 32 General Notes

- Numbers 32 translationQuestions

## Numbers 32:4-5

### UDB:

[4] Yahweh has enabled us Israelites to capture some land that is very good for animals to graze on—the land near the towns of Ataroth, Dibon, Jazer, Nimrah, Heshbon, Elealeh, Sebam, Nebo, and Beon. [5] If it pleases you, we would like this land to be ours, instead of land on the other side of the Jordan River."

### ULB:

[4] These are the lands that Yahweh attacked before the community of Israel, and they are good places for livestock. We, your servants, have a lot of livestock." [5] They said, "If we have found favor in your eyes, let this land be given to us, your servants, as a possession. Do not make us cross over the Jordan."

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

The people from Reuben and Gad continue speaking to Moses, Eleazar, and the other leaders.

#### the lands that Yahweh attacked before the community of Israel

Yahweh enabling the Israelites to conquer the people who lived in the land is spoken of as if Yahweh went before the Israelites and attacked the people. AT: "the lands where Yahweh enabled us to defeat the people living there" (See: Metaphor)

#### We, your servants

The people of the tribes of Reuben and Gad refer to themselves in this way to show respect to a person of higher authority.

#### If we have found favor in your eyes

Here "found favor" is an idiom that means be approved of or that the leaders are pleased with them. Here "eyes" are a metonym for sight, and sight is a metaphor representing his evaluation. AT: "If we have found favor with you" or "If you are pleased with us" (See: Idiom and Metonymy and Metaphor)

#### let this land be given to us

This can be stated in active form. AT: "give this land to us" (See: Active or Passive)

### Do not make us cross over the Jordan

They wanted the land on the east side of the Jordan River instead of crossing over to the west side and claiming land there. AT: “Do not make us cross over the Jordan to take possession of land on that side” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- favor, favors, favorable, favoritism
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- Jordan River, Jordan

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 32 General Notes
- Numbers 32 translationQuestions

## Numbers 32:6-7

### UDB:

[6] Moses replied to the leaders of the tribes of Gad and Reuben, "It is not right for your fellow Israelites to go to fight in wars and you stay here! [7] If you do that, you will cause the other Israelites to be discouraged, with the result that they will not cross the Jordan River to the land that Yahweh is giving to them.

### ULB:

[6] Moses replied to the descendants of Gad and Reuben, "Should your brothers go to war while you settle down here? [7] Why discourage the hearts of the people of Israel from going over into the land that Yahweh has given them?

### translationNotes

#### Should your brothers go to war while you settle down here?

Moses asks this question to rebuke the people from the tribes of Gad and Reuben. AT: "It is wrong for you to settle down in this land while your brothers go to war." (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### Why discourage the hearts ... the land that Yahweh has given them?

Moses asks this question to correct the people from the tribes of Gad and Reuben. AT: "Do not discourage the hearts ... the land that Yahweh has given them." or "Your actions would discourage the hearts ... the land that Yahweh has given them." (See: Rhetorical Question)

#### discourage the hearts of the people of Israel from going

Here the word "hearts" represents the people themselves and refers to the seat of their emotions. AT: "discourage the people of Israel from going" or "cause the people of Israel to not want to go" (See: Synecdoche)

### translationWords

- heart, hearts

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 32 General Notes
- Numbers 32 translationQuestions

## Numbers 32:8-9

### UDB:

[8] Our ancestors did the same kind of thing. I sent them from Kadesh Barnea to see what the land of Canaan was like. [9] They went as far as Eshcol Valley, but when they saw the huge people in the land, they returned and caused the Israelite people to be discouraged saying, 'We should not try to enter the land that Yahweh said that he is giving to us.'

### ULB:

[8] Your fathers did the same thing when I sent them from Kadesh Barnea to examine the land. [9] They went up to the Valley of Eshkol. They saw the land and then discouraged the hearts of the people of Israel so that they refused to enter the land that Yahweh had given them.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Reuben and Gad.

#### Valley of Eshkol

This is the name of a place. See how you translated this in Numbers 13:23. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### They saw the land

This refers to seeing what was in the land. AT: "They saw the strong people and cities in the land" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### discouraged the hearts of the people of Israel

Here the word "hearts" represents the people themselves and refers to the seat of their emotions. See how you translated this in Numbers 32:7. AT: "discouraged the people of Israel" (See: Synecdoche)

### translationWords

- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 32 General Notes
- Numbers 32 translationQuestions

## Numbers 32:10-11

### UDB:

[10] So Yahweh became very angry with them, and he solemnly declared this, [11-12] 'From all the people who came out of Egypt, the only ones who are at least twenty years old who will see the land that I promised to give to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, are Jephunneh's son Caleb and Nun's son Joshua, because they trusted me completely. None of the other people who came out of Egypt will even see that land, because they have not completely believed in my power.'

### ULB:

[10] Yahweh's anger was kindled on that day. He took an oath and said, [11] 'Surely none of the men who came up out of Egypt, from twenty years old and up, will see the land about which I swore to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, because they have not completely followed me, except for [12] Caleb son of Jephunneh the Kenizzite, and Joshua son of Nun. Only Caleb and Joshua have completely followed me.'

### translationNotes

#### Yahweh's anger was kindled

Yahweh becoming angry is spoken of as if his anger was a fire that begins to burn. This can be stated in active form. AT: "Yahweh became very angry" (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

#### none of the men

"none of the people." This phrase refers to both men and women.

#### twenty years old and up

"20 years old or older" (See: Numbers)

#### completely followed me

Being devoted to Yahweh and obeying him are spoken of as if they were following Yahweh. AT: "completely obeyed me" or "been completely devoted to me" (See: Metaphor)

#### Jephunneh ... Nun

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### Kenizzite

This is the name of a people group. (See: How to Translate Names)

**translationWords**

- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- Abraham, Abram
- Isaac
- Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob
- Caleb
- Joshua

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 32 General Notes
- Numbers 32 translationQuestions

## Numbers 32:13-15

### UDB:

13 So Yahweh was angry with the Israelite people, and as a result he has caused us to wander in this desert for forty years. Finally, all the people who had sinned against Yahweh by refusing to trust him died, one by one. 14 And you are acting like your ancestors did! You sinful Israelite people are going to cause Yahweh to be more angry with you than he was with our ancestors! 15 If you stop trusting him, he will cause you and all your fellow Israelites to stay longer in the desert, and he will get rid of all of you!"

### ULB:

13 So Yahweh's anger was kindled against Israel. He made them wander around in the wilderness for forty years until all the generation who had done evil in his sight was destroyed. 14 Look, you have risen up in your fathers' place, like just more sinful men, to add to Yahweh's burning anger toward Israel. 15 If you turn away from following him, he will again leave Israel in the wilderness and you will have destroyed all this people."

### translationNotes

#### Yahweh's anger was kindled against Israel

Yahweh becoming angry is spoken of as if his anger was a fire that begins to burn. This can be stated in active form. AT: "Yahweh became very angry with Israel" (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

#### forty years

"40 years" (See: Numbers)

#### all the generation ... sight was destroyed

This can be stated in active form. AT: "he destroyed all the generation ... sight" or "all the generation ... sight had died" (See: Active or Passive)

#### who had done evil in his sight

Being in someone's sight means to be in front of that person where he can see. AT: "who had done evil before Yahweh" or "who had done evil in Yahweh's presence" (See: Idiom)

### you have risen up in your fathers' place

The people of Reuben and Gad acting like their ancestors did is spoken of as if they were standing in the place where their ancestors did. AT: "you have begun to act just like your ancestors" (See: Metaphor)

### to add to Yahweh's burning anger toward Israel

The people causing Yahweh to become angrier is spoken of as if his anger was a fire and the people are adding more fuel to that fire. AT: "to cause Yahweh to be even more angry with Israel" (See: Metaphor)

### all this people

"this entire people" or "all this generation of people"

### translationWords

- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- year, years
- generation
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 32 General Notes
- Numbers 32 translationQuestions

## Numbers 32:16-17

### UDB:

16 Then the leaders of the tribes of Reuben and Gad said to Moses, "First we will build pens for our animals and build cities for our families here. 17 Then our families will live in strong cities with walls around them, and they will be safe from the people who live in this land. Then we will get ready to fight battles. We will help the other Israelites to get land on the other side of the river.

### ULB:

16 So they came near Moses and said, "Allow us to build fences here for our cattle and cities for our families. 17 However, we ourselves will be ready and armed to go with Israel's army until we have led them into their place. But our families will live in the fortified cities because of the other people who still live in this land.

### translationNotes

#### will be ready and armed

"will be ready with weapons" or "will be ready to fight a war"

#### in the fortified cities

"in the secured cities"

### translationWords

- Moses
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- family, families
- stronghold, strongholds, fortifications, fortified, fortress, fortresses
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 32 General Notes
- Numbers 32 translationQuestions

## Numbers 32:18-19

### UDB:

[18] We will not return to our homes until every Israelite has received some land. [19] We will not take any land on the west side of the Jordan River, because our land will be here on the east side."

### ULB:

[18] We will not return to our houses until every one of the people of Israel has obtained his inheritance. [19] We will not inherit the land with them on the other side of the Jordan, because our inheritance is here on the east side of the Jordan."

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

The leaders of Gad and Reuben continue speaking.

#### has obtained his inheritance

The land that the people were to receive as a permanent possession is spoken of as if it were an inheritance that they were to obtain. AT: "has taken possession of his portion of the land" (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- Jordan River, Jordan

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 32 General Notes
- Numbers 32 translationQuestions

## Numbers 32:20-22

### UDB:

[20] So Moses told them, "I will tell you what you must do. You must get ready to fight battles for Yahweh. [21] You must cross the Jordan River carrying your weapons. [22] After Yahweh helps us to take that land from the people who live there, you will be permitted to return to your homes. You will have done what you have promised Yahweh and the Israelite people that you would do, and you may keep this land to be your own, given to you by Yahweh.

### ULB:

[20] So Moses replied to them, "If you do what you say, if you arm yourselves to go before Yahweh to war, [21] then every one of your armed men must cross over the Jordan before Yahweh, until he has driven out his enemies from before him [22] and the land is subdued before him. Then afterward you may return. You will be guiltless toward Yahweh and toward Israel. This land will be your possession before Yahweh.

### translationNotes

#### if you arm yourselves

"if you take your weapons"

#### before Yahweh

This means Yahweh will go with them to battle and enable them to defeat their enemy and take their land. AT: "in the presence of Yahweh" (See: Idiom)

#### until he has driven out his enemies from before him

"until Yahweh has driven out his enemies from his presence." The pronouns here all refer to Yahweh. Yahweh enabling the Israelites to defeat their enemies is spoken of as if Yahweh were fighting their battles. AT: "until Yahweh has enabled your soldiers to defeat the enemy and force them away from his presence" (See: Metaphor)

#### the land is subdued before him

Here the word "land" refers to the people who live there. This can be stated in active form. AT: "in his presence the Israelites have subdued the people who live in the land" (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)

### you may return

It is implied that they will return to the east side of the Jordan. AT: “you may return to this land on the east side of the Jordan” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### You will be guiltless toward Yahweh and toward Israel

Possible meanings are 1) “You will have fulfilled your obligation to Yahweh and to Israel” or 2) “There will be nothing for which Yahweh or the people of Israel can blame you.”

### translationWords

- Moses
- Yahweh
- cast out, casting out, driving out, throw out, throwing out
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 32 General Notes
- Numbers 32 translationQuestions

## Numbers 32:23-25

### UDB:

[23] But if you do not do these things, you will be sinning against Yahweh, and he will punish you for that sin. [24] Now you can build cities for your families and pens for your animals, but after doing that, you must do what you have promised."

[25] The leaders of the tribes of Gad and Reuben replied, "We will do what you have asked us to do, because you are our leader.

### ULB:

[23] But if you do not do so, look, you will have sinned against Yahweh. Be sure that your sin will find you out. [24] Build cities for your families and pens for your sheep; then do what you have said."
[25] The descendants of Gad and Reuben spoke to Moses and said, "Your servants will do as you, our master, commands.

### translationNotes

#### Be sure that your sin will find you out

Moses speaks of sin as if it were a person who will condemn the guilty person. This means that the people cannot escape the punishment that their sin deserves. AT: "Know for sure that Yahweh will punish you for your sin" (See: Personification)

#### Your servants

The people of Gad and Reuben refer to themselves as "your servants." This is a polite way of speaking to someone with greater authority.

### translationWords

- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Gad
- Reuben
- Moses
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 32 General Notes
- Numbers 32 translationQuestions

## Numbers 32:26-27

### UDB:

[26] Our wives and children and our cattle and sheep and goats will stay here in the cities of the Gilead area, [27] but we will prepare to go to battle. We will take our weapons and go across the Jordan River and fight for Yahweh, just as you, our leader, have said."

### ULB:

[26] Our little ones, our wives, our flocks, and all our livestock will stay there in the cities of Gilead. [27] However, we, your servants, will cross over before Yahweh to battle, every man who is armed for war, as you, our master, say."

### translationNotes

#### will cross over

You can make it clear that they will cross over the Jordan. AT: "will cross over the Jordan River" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### every man who is armed for war

"every man prepared for war"

### translationWords

- flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds
- livestock
- Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 32 General Notes
- Numbers 32 translationQuestions

## Numbers 32:28-30

### UDB:

[28] So Moses gave instructions about them to Eleazar, Joshua, and the leaders of the Israelite tribes. [29] Moses said to them, "If the men from the tribes of Gad and Reuben prepare for battle and cross the Jordan River with you, in order to do what Yahweh desires and help you to take that land, give them the Gilead area to belong to them. [30] But if they do not take their weapons and go with you prepared to fight, they will not receive this land. They will need to accept some land in Canaan, like the rest of you will do."

### ULB:

[28] So Moses gave instructions concerning them to Eleazar the priest, to Joshua son of Nun, and to the leaders of the ancestor's clans in the tribes of the people of Israel. [29] Moses said to them, "If the descendants of Gad and Reuben cross over the Jordan with you, every man who is armed to battle before Yahweh, and if the land is subdued before you, then you will give them the land of Gilead as a possession. [30] But if they do not cross over with you armed, then they will acquire their possessions among you in the land of Canaan."

### translationNotes

#### every man who is armed

"every man who is ready with his weapon"

#### if the land is subdued before you

Here the word "land" refers to the people who live there. This can be stated in active form. AT: "if Yahweh subdues before you the people living in the land" or "if they help you subdue the people living in the land" (See: Active or Passive)

#### then they will acquire their possessions among you in the land of Canaan

"then the descendants of Gad and Reuben will receive land with you in Canaan"

### translationWords

- Eleazar
- priest, priests, priesthood
- Joshua
- clan, clans
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen

- Israel, Israelites
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 32 General Notes
- Numbers 32 translationQuestions

## Numbers 32:31-32

### UDB:

31 The leaders of the tribes of Gad and Reuben replied, "We will do what you have said and what Yahweh has said. 32 We will cross the river into Canaan land, and we will do what Yahweh desires and be prepared for battle. But our land will be here on the east side of the Jordan River."

### ULB:

31 So the descendants of Gad and Reuben answered and said, "As Yahweh has said to us, your servants, this is what we will do. 32 We will cross over armed before Yahweh into the land of Canaan, but our possessed inheritance will remain with us on this side of the Jordan."

### translationNotes

#### We will cross over armed

You can make it clear that they will cross the Jordan. AT: "We will cross over the Jordan ready to fight" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### our possessed inheritance

The land that the people were to receive as a permanent possession is spoken of as if it were an inheritance that they were to obtain. AT: "the portion of land that we will possess" (See: Metaphor)

#### will remain with us

This idiom refers to ownership. AT: "will be ours" (See: Idiom)

### translationWords

- Gad
- Reuben
- Yahweh
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 32 General Notes
- Numbers 32 translationQuestions

## Numbers 32:33

### UDB:

[33] So Moses agreed to give that land to the tribes of Gad and Reuben and to half of the tribe of Joseph's son Manasseh. That land was previously the land where Sihon, the king of the Amor people group, ruled, and the land where Og, the king of Bashan region, ruled, including its cities and surrounding land.

### ULB:

[33] So to the descendants of Gad and Reuben, and also to the half tribe of Manasseh son of Joseph, Moses gave the kingdom of Sihon, king of the Amorites, and of Og, king of Bashan. He gave to them the land, and distributed to them all its cities with their borders, the cities of the land around them.

### translationNotes

#### the kingdom of Sihon ... and of Og

These are names of kings who ruled two separate kingdoms. AT: "the kingdom of Sihon ... and the kingdom of Og" (See: Ellipsis and How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- Manasseh
- Joseph (OT)
- kingdom, kingdoms
- Amorite, Amorites
- Bashan

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 32 General Notes
- Numbers 32 translationQuestions

## Numbers 32:34-36

### UDB:

[34] The people of the tribe of Gad rebuilt Dibon, Ataroth, Aroer, [35] Atroth Shophan, Jazer, Jogbehah, [36] Beth Nimrah, and Beth Haran cities. Those were cities with strong walls around them. And they also built pens for their sheep.

### ULB:

[34] The descendants of Gad rebuilt Dibon, Ataroth, Aroer, [35] Atroth Shophan, Jazer, Jogbehah, [36] Beth Nimrah, and Beth Haran as fortified cities with pens for sheep.

### translationNotes

#### Dibon, Ataroth, Aroer, Atroth Shophan, Jazer, Jogbehah, Beth Nimrah, and Beth Haran

These are names of cities. (See: How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- stronghold, strongholds, fortifications, fortified, fortress, fortresses
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 32 General Notes
- Numbers 32 translationQuestions

## Numbers 32:37-39

### UDB:

[37] The people of the tribe of Reuben rebuilt Heshbon, Elealeh, Kiriathaim, [38] Nebo, Baal Meon, and Sibmah cities. When they rebuilt Nebo and Baal Meon, they gave new names to those cities.

[39] The descendants of Manasseh's son Makir went to the region of Gilead and took it away from the Amor people group.

### ULB:

[37] The descendants of Reuben rebuilt Heshbon, Elealeh, Kiriathaim, [38] Nebo, Baal Meon—their names were later changed, and Sibmah. They gave other names to the cities that they rebuilt. [39] The descendants of Machir son of Manasseh went to Gilead and took it away from the Amorites who were in it.

### translationNotes

#### Heshbon, Elealeh, Kiriathaim, Nebo, Baal Meon ... Sibmah

These are names of cities. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### their names were later changed

This can be translated in active form. AT: "people later changed the names of these cities" (See: Active or Passive)

#### Machir

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this name in Numbers 26:29.

### translationWords

- Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites
- Amorite, Amorites

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 32 General Notes
- Numbers 32 translationQuestions

## Numbers 32:40-42

### UDB:

40 So Moses gave Gilead to the family of Makir, and they started to live there. 41 Jair, who was also a descendant of Manasseh, went and captured the small towns in that region, and he named them the Towns of Jair. 42 A man named Nobah went and captured the city of Kenath and the nearby towns, and then he used his own name to be the new name of that area.

### ULB:

40 Then Moses gave Gilead to Machir son of Manasseh, and his people settled there. 41 Jair son of Manasseh went and captured its towns and called them Havvoth Jair. 42 Nobah went and captured Kenath and its villages, and he called it Nobah, after his own name.

### translationNotes

#### Jair ... Nobah

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### Havvoth Jair ... Kenath

These are names of cities. (See: How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites
- Manasseh
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- call, calls, calling, called

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 32 General Notes
- Numbers 32 translationQuestions

## Numbers 33 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter is a summary of Israel's exodus from Egypt to the Promised Land, including their wandering through the desert. The phrase "they set out" means "they left."

### Links:

- **Numbers 33:01 Notes**

## Numbers 33:1-2

### UDB:

[1] Here is a list of the places where the Israelites went as Aaron and Moses led them after they left Egypt. [2] Yahweh commanded Moses to write down the names of the places where they went.

### ULB:

[1] These were the movements of the people of Israel after they left the land of Egypt by their armed groups under the leadership of Moses and Aaron. [2] Moses wrote down the places from where they left to where they went, as commanded by Yahweh. These were their movements, departure after departure.

### translationNotes

#### by their armed groups

"by their military divisions." This means that each tribe had their own men, who were armed, to protect them. See how you translated "armed groups" in Numbers 1:3.

#### as commanded by Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. AT: "as Yahweh commanded" (See: Active or Passive)

#### departure after departure

"from one place to another place"

### translationWords

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- Moses
- Aaron
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Yahweh

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 33 General Notes
- Numbers 33 translationQuestions

## Numbers 33:3-4

### UDB:

[3] On the fifteenth day of the first month of the year, the day after they celebrated the Passover, they left the city of Rameses in Egypt and marched boldly while the Egyptian army was coming behind them. [4] As they left, the people of Egypt were still burying the bodies of their firstborn sons. By killing them, Yahweh showed that the gods that the people of Egypt worshiped were false gods.

### ULB:

[3] They traveled from Rameses during the first month, leaving on the fifteenth day of the first month. On the morning after the Passover, the people of Israel left openly, in the sight of all the Egyptians. [4] This happened while the Egyptians were burying all their firstborn, those whom Yahweh had killed among them, for he also inflicted punishment on their gods.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### during the first month, leaving on the fifteenth day of the first month

Here "first" is the ordinal number one and "fifteenth" is the ordinal number fifteen. This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The fifteenth day is near the beginning of April on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

#### the people of Israel left openly, in the sight of all the Egyptians

"the Israelites left in plain view of the Egyptians"

#### their firstborn

This refers to the firstborn sons. AT: "their firstborn sons" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### he also inflicted punishment on their gods

Yahweh proving that he is more powerful than all of the false gods that the Egyptians worshiped is spoken of as if Yahweh punished those false gods. AT: "he also proved that he is greater than their gods" (See: Metaphor)

**translationWords**

- day, days
- Passover
- bury, buries, buried, burying, burial
- firstborn
- punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 33 General Notes
- Numbers 33 translationQuestions

## Numbers 33:5-7

### UDB:

[5] After leaving Rameses, they first went to Succoth and set up their tents there.

[6] Then they left Succoth and went to Etham, at the edge of the desert, and set up their tents there.

[7] Then they left Etham and returned to Pi Hahiroth, to the east of Baal Zephon, and set up their tents near Migdol.

### ULB:

[5] The people of Israel set out from Rameses and camped at Succoth. [6] They set out from Succoth and camped at Etham, on the edge of the wilderness. [7] They set out from Etham and turned back to Pi Hahiroth, which is opposite Baal Zephon, where they camped opposite Migdol.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### set out from

“departed from”

#### on the edge of the wilderness

“on the border of the wilderness”

### translationWords

- Succoth
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 33 General Notes
- Numbers 33 translationQuestions

## Numbers 33:8-10

### UDB:

[8] Then they left Pi Hahiroth and walked through the Sea of Reeds and continued three days into the Etham Desert, and set their tents at Marah.

[9] Then they left Marah and went to Elim. There were twelve springs and seventy palm trees there. They set up their tents there.

[10] Then they left Elim and went to the area near the Sea of Reeds and set up their tents there.

### ULB:

[8] Then they set out from opposite Pi Hahiroth and passed through the middle of the sea into the wilderness. They traveled three days' journey into the wilderness of Etham and camped at Marah.
[9] They set out from Marah and arrived at Elim. At Elim were twelve springs of water and seventy palm trees. That is where they camped. [10] They set out from Elim and camped by the Sea of Reeds.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### passed through the middle of the sea

This refers to when Yahweh divided the Red Sea so that the Israelites could escape from the Egyptian army.

#### twelve springs ... seventy palm trees

"12 springs ... 70 palm trees" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- fountain, fountains, spring, springs, springing
- palm, palms
- Sea of Reeds, Red Sea

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 33 General Notes
- Numbers 33 translationQuestions

## Numbers 33:11-14

### UDB:

[11] Then they left the Sea of Reeds and went near the wilderness of Sinai and set up their tents there.

[12] Then they left the wilderness of Sinai and went to Dophkah and set up their tents there.

[13] Then they left Dophkah and went to Alush and set up their tents there.

[14] Then they left Alush and went and set up their tents at Rephidim, where they had no water to drink.

### ULB:

[11] They set out from the Sea of Reeds and camped in the wilderness of Sin. [12] They set out from the wilderness of Sin and camped at Dophkah. [13] They set out from Dophkah and camped at Alush. [14] They set out from Alush and camped at Rephidim, where no water was found for the people to drink.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### where no water was found for the people to drink

This can be stated in active form. AT: “where the people could not find water to drink” (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- Sea of Reeds, Red Sea
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 33 General Notes
- Numbers 33 translationQuestions

## Numbers 33:15-18

### UDB:

15 Then they left Rephidim and went to the wilderness of the Sinai and set up their tents there.

16 Then they left the wilderness of the Sinai and went to Kibroth Hattaavah and set up their tents there.

17 Then they left Kibroth Hattaavah and went to Hazeroth and set up their tents there.

18 Then they left Hazeroth and went to Rithmah and set up their tents there.

### ULB:

15 They set out from Rephidim and camped in the wilderness of Sinai. 16 They set out from the wilderness of Sinai and camped at Kibroth Hattaavah. 17 They set out from Kibroth Hattaavah and camped at Hazeroth. 18 They set out from Hazeroth and camped at Rithmah.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- Sinai, Mount Sinai

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 33 General Notes
- Numbers 33 translationQuestions

## Numbers 33:19-22

### UDB:

[19] Then they left Rithmah and went to Rimmon Perez and set up their tents there.

[20] Then they left Rimmon Perez and went to Libnah and set up their tents there.

[21] Then they left Libnah and went to Rissah and set up their tents there.

[22] Then they left Rissah and set up their tents at Kehelathah.

### ULB:

[19] They set out from Rithmah and camped at Rimmon Perez. [20] They set out from Rimmon Perez and camped at Libnah. [21] They set out from Libnah and camped at Rissah. [22] They set out from Rissah and camped at Kehelathah.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 33 General Notes
- Numbers 33 translationQuestions

## Numbers 33:23-26

### UDB:

[23] Then they left Kehelathah; they went to Mount Shepher and set up their tents there.

[24] Then they left Mount Shepher and went to Haradah and set up their tents there.

[25] Then they left Haradah and went to Makheloth and set up their tents there.

[26] Then they left Makheloth and went to Tahath and set up their tents there.

### ULB:

[23] They set out from Kehelathah and camped at Mount Shepher. [24] They set out from Mount Shepher and camped at Haradah. [25] They set out from Haradah and camped at Makheloth. [26] They set out from Makheloth and camped at Tahath.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 33 General Notes
- Numbers 33 translationQuestions

## Numbers 33:27-30

### UDB:

[27] Then they left Tahath and went to Terah and set up their tents there.

[28] Then they left Terah and went to Mithcah and set up their tents there.

[29] Then they left Mithcah and went to Hashmonah and set up their tents there.

[30] Then they left Hashmonah and went to Moseroth and set up their tents there.

### ULB:

[27] They set out from Tahath and camped at Terah. [28] They set out from Terah and camped at Mithkah. [29] They set out from Mithkah and camped at Hashmonah. [30] They set out from Hashmonah and camped at Moseroth.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 33 General Notes
- Numbers 33 translationQuestions

## Numbers 33:31-34

### UDB:

[31] Then they left Moseroth and went to Bene Jaakan and set up their tents there.

[32] Then they left Bene Jaakan and went to Hor Haggidgad and set up their tents there.

[33] Then they left Hor Haggidgad and went to Jotbathah and set up their tents there.

[34] Then they left Jotbathah and went to Abronah and set up their tents there.

### ULB:

[31] They set out from Moseroth and camped at Bene Jaakan. [32] They set out from Bene Jaakan and camped at Hor Haggidgad. [33] They set out from Hor Haggidgad and camped at Jotbathah. [34] They set out from Jotbathah and camped at Abronah.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 33 General Notes
- Numbers 33 translationQuestions

## Numbers 33:35-37

### UDB:

[35] Then they left Abronah and went to Ezion Geber and set up their tents there.

[36] Then they left Ezion Geber and went to the wilderness of Zin and set up their tents at Kadesh there.

[37] Then they left Kadesh and went to Mount Hor, at the border of Edom, and set up their tents there.

### ULB:

[35] They set out from Abronah and camped at Ezion Geber. [36] They set out from Ezion Geber and camped in the wilderness of Zin at Kadesh. [37] They set out from Kadesh and camped at Mount Hor, at the edge of the land of Edom.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh
- Edom, Edomite, Edomites, Idumea

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 33 General Notes
- Numbers 33 translationQuestions

## Numbers 33:38-39

### UDB:

[38] Aaron the priest obeyed Yahweh and climbed up the mountain. There he died, on the first day of their fifth month, forty years after the Israelites left Egypt. [39] Aaron was 123 years old when he died.

### ULB:

[38] Aaron the priest went up Mount Hor at Yahweh's command and died there in the fortieth year after the people of Israel had come out of the land of Egypt, in the fifth month, on the first day of the month. [39] Aaron was a 123 years old when he died on Mount Hor.

### translationNotes

#### in the fortieth year after

Here "fortieth" is the ordinal number for forty. AT: "40 years after" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

#### in the fifth month, on the first day of the month

This "fifth" is the ordinal number for five. This "first" is the ordinal number for one. This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day is near the middle of July on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

#### 123 years old

"one hundred and twenty-three years old" (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- Aaron
- priest, priests, priesthood
- Yahweh
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- year, years
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- day, days

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 33 General Notes
- Numbers 33 translationQuestions

## Numbers 33:40

### UDB:

[40] That was when the king of the city of Arad heard that the Israelites were coming. Arad was in the southern wilderness in the land of Canaan, where the Canaan people group lived.

### ULB:

[40] The Canaanite, the king of Arad, who lived in the southern wilderness in the land of Canaan, heard of the coming of the people of Israel.

### translationNotes

#### The Canaanite, the king of Arad

"The Canaanite king of Arad"

#### Arad

This was the name of a Canaanite city. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### heard of the coming of the people of Israel

"heard that the people of Israel were coming"

### translationWords

- Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 33 General Notes
- Numbers 33 translationQuestions

## Numbers 33:41-43

### UDB:

41 The Israelites left Mount Hor and went to Zalmonah and set up their tents there.

42 Then they left Zalmonah and went to Punon and set up tents there.

43 Then they left Punon and went to Oboth and set up their tents there.

### ULB:

41 They set out from Mount Hor and camped at Zalmonah. 42 They set out from Zalmonah and camped at Punon. 43 They set out from Punon and camped at Oboth.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 33 General Notes
- Numbers 33 translationQuestions

## Numbers 33:44-46

### UDB:

[44] Then they left Oboth and went to Iye Abarim, which was on the border of the region of Moab, and set up their tents there.

[45] Then they left Iye Abarim and went to Dibon Gad and set up their tents there.

[46] Then they left Dibon Gad and set up their tents at Almon Diblathaim.

### ULB:

[44] They set out from Oboth and camped at Iye Abarim, on the border of Moab. [45] They set out from Iye Abarim and camped at Dibon Gad. [46] They set out from Dibon Gad and camped at Almon Diblathaim.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 33 General Notes
- Numbers 33 translationQuestions

## Numbers 33:47-49

### UDB:

47 Then they left Almon Diblathaim and went to the Abarim Mountains, near Nebo and set up their tents there.

48 Then they left the Abarim mountains and went to the plains of Moab, near the Jordan River, across from Jericho. 49 They set up their tents there on the plains of Moab. Their tents stretched for several kilometers from Beth Jeshimoth to Abel Shittim.

### ULB:

47 They set out from Almon Diblathaim and camped in the mountains of Abarim, opposite Nebo.
48 They set out from the mountains of Abarim and camped in the plains of Moab by the Jordan at Jericho. 49 They camped by the Jordan, from Beth Jeshimoth to Abel Shittim in the plains of Moab.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### plains

a large area of flat land

### translationWords

- Jordan River, Jordan
- Jericho

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 33 General Notes
- Numbers 33 translationQuestions

## Numbers 33:50-52

### UDB:

50 While we were there on the plains of Moab near the Jordan River, across from Jericho, Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said, 51 "Tell this to the Israelite people, 'When you cross the Jordan River and enter the region of Canaan, 52 you must force all the people who live there to leave. Destroy all their carved figures and all cast figures made of metal. Wreck all the places where they worship their idols.

### ULB:

50 Yahweh spoke to Moses in the plains of Moab by the Jordan at Jericho and said, 51 "Speak to the people of Israel and say to them, 'When you cross over the Jordan into the land of Canaan, 52 then you must drive out all the land's inhabitants before you. You must destroy all their carved figures. You must destroy all their cast figures and demolish all their high places.

### translationNotes

#### demolish all their high places

"destroy all of their high places"

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Israel, Israelites
- Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites
- cast out, casting out, driving out, throw out, throwing out
- image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 33 General Notes
- Numbers 33 translationQuestions

## Numbers 33:53-54

### UDB:

[53] Take their land from them and start to live there, because I have given their land to you for you to own.

[54] Divide up the land by casting lots to decide which group will get which area. Give the larger areas to the groups that have more people, and give the smaller areas to the groups that have fewer people. Each tribe will receive its own land.

### ULB:

[53] You must take possession of the land and settle in it, because I have given you the land to possess.
[54] You must inherit the land by lot, according to each clan. To the larger clans you must give a larger share of land, and to the smaller clans you must give a smaller share of land. Wherever the lot falls to each clan, that land will belong to it. You will inherit the land according to your ancestors' tribes.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

#### inherit the land

The Israelites claiming the land as their permanent possession is spoken of as if they were inheriting the land. (See: Metaphor)

#### Wherever the lot falls to each clan, that land will belong to it

"Each clan will receive the land according to how the lot falls"

### translationWords

- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- lots, casting lots
- clan, clans
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 33 General Notes
- Numbers 33 translationQuestions

## Numbers 33:55-56

### UDB:

[55] If you do not force the people who live there to leave, they will cause you to have much trouble. They will be like sharp hooks in your eyes, and like thorns in your sides. And they will bring trouble to you, in that land where you will be living. [56] And then I will punish you, as I had planned to punish them.'"

### ULB:

[55] But if you do not drive out the land's inhabitants before you, then the people you allow to stay will become like objects in your eyes and thorns in your sides. They will make your lives difficult in the land where you settle. [56] Then it will happen that what I now intend to do to those people, I will do also to you.'"

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

#### like objects in your eyes and thorns in your sides

Just like a small object in a person's eye or a small thorn that sticks into a person skin can cause great irritation, so even a small portion of the Canaanites, if left in the land, would cause great trouble for the Israelites. (See: Simile)

### translationWords

- cast out, casting out, driving out, throw out, throwing out
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- thorn, thornbush, thornbushes, thorns, thistle, thistles

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 33 General Notes
- Numbers 33 translationQuestions

## Numbers 34 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The ULB indents the lines in 34:19-28 because they are long lists.

### Special concepts in this chapter

### The boundaries

Moses told them all of the land they would inherit and live in and said that they should divide it up by casting lots. (See: inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir)

### Links:

- **Numbers 34:01 Notes**

## Numbers 34:1-3

### UDB:

[1] Yahweh said to Moses, [2] "Tell this to the Israelite people, 'You will soon enter Canaan land, and it will become yours. The following will be the borders of the land. [3] On the south you will receive part of the wilderness of Zin, near the border of the region of Edom. On the east side, the border will start at the south end of the Dead Sea.

### ULB:

[1] Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, [2] "Command the people of Israel and say to them, 'When you enter the land of Canaan, the land that will belong to you, the land of Canaan and its borders, [3] your southern border will extend from the wilderness of Zin along the border of Edom. The eastern end of the southern border will be on a line that ends at the southern end of the Salt Sea.

### translationNotes

#### wilderness of Zin

See how you translated this phrase in Numbers 33:12.

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Israel, Israelites
- Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- Edom, Edomite, Edomites, Idumea
- Salt Sea, Dead Sea

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 34 General Notes
- Numbers 34 translationQuestions

## Numbers 34:4-5

### UDB:

[4] It will extend to a little south of the Scorpion Pass, and extend west through the wilderness of Sin and south of Kadesh Barnea. From there it will extend to Hazar Addar and from there to Azmon. [5] From Azmon it will extend west to the dry riverbed at the border of Egypt and then to the Mediterranean Sea.

### ULB:

[4] Your border will turn south from the hill of Akrabbim and pass along through the wilderness of Zin. From there, it will run south of Kadesh Barnea and continue to Hazar Addar and further to Azmon. [5] From there, the border will turn from Azmon toward the brook of Egypt and follow it to the sea.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where the borders are for the land that he is giving to the Israelites. (See: How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians
- the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 34 General Notes
- Numbers 34 translationQuestions

## Numbers 34:6

### UDB:

[6] The border on the west will be the Mediterranean Sea.

### ULB:

[6] The western border will be the coastline of the Great Sea. This will be your western border.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where the borders are for the land that he is giving to the Israelites.

### translationWords

- the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 34 General Notes
- Numbers 34 translationQuestions

## Numbers 34:7-9

### UDB:

[7] The border on the north will start from the Mediterranean Sea and extend west to Mount Hor. [8] From there it will extend to Lebo Hamath and then to Zedad. [9] From there the border will extend to Ziphron, and it will end at Hazar Enan.

### ULB:

[7] Your northern border will extend along a line that you must mark out from the Great Sea to Mount Hor, [8] then from Mount Hor to Lebo Hamath, then on to Zedad. [9] Then the border will continue to Ziphron and end at Hazar Enan. This will be your northern border.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where the borders are for the land that he is giving to the Israelites. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### Mount Hor

See how you translated this name in Numbers 20:22.

#### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 34 General Notes
- Numbers 34 translationQuestions

## Numbers 34:10-12

### UDB:

[10] The border on the east will start at Hazar Enan and extend south to Shepham. [11] From there it will extend east of Ain to Riblah and then along the hills that are east of Galilee Lake. [12] Then the border will extend south along the Jordan River and end at the Dead Sea.

Those will be the borders around your country.'"

### ULB:

[10] Then you must mark out your eastern border from Hazar Enan south to Shepham. [11] Then the eastern border will go down from Shepham to Riblah, on the east side of Ain. The border will continue along the east side of the Sea of Kinnereth. [12] Then the border will continue south along the Jordan River to the Salt Sea and continue down the eastern border of the Salt Sea. This will be your land, following its borders all around.'"

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where the borders are for the land that he is giving to the Israelites. (See: How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- Sea of Galilee, Sea of Kinnereth, lake of Gennesaret, Sea of Tiberias
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Salt Sea, Dead Sea

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 34 General Notes
- Numbers 34 translationQuestions

## Numbers 34:13-15

### UDB:

13 So Moses told all that to the Israelite people. Then he said to them, "That is the land that you will receive. You must cast lots to decide which area will go to each of the nine and a half tribes, because Yahweh has commanded that it should be divided among them. 14 The tribes of Reuben, Gad, and half of the tribe of Manasseh have already received the land in which they will live. 15 They have received land on the east side of the Jordan River, across from Jericho."

### ULB:

13 Then Moses commanded the people of Israel and said, "This is the land that you will receive by lot, which Yahweh has commanded to give to the nine tribes and to the half tribe. 14 The tribe of the descendants of Reuben, following the assignment of property to their ancestor's tribe, and the tribe of the descendants of Gad, following the assignment of property to their ancestor's tribe, and the half tribe of Manasseh have all received their land. 15 The two tribes and the half tribe have received their share of land beyond the Jordan at Jericho eastward, toward the sunrise."

### translationNotes

#### to the nine tribes and to the half tribe

This means the remaining tribes of Israel who will live on the west side of the Jordan River in the land of Canaan. The tribes of Reuben and Gad and the half tribe of Manasseh had already received their land on the east side of the Jordan River.

#### following the assignment of property to their ancestor's tribe

"according to how Yahweh assigned the property to their ancestor's tribe"

#### The two tribes and the half tribe

"The tribes of Reuben and Gad, and half of the tribe of Manasseh"

### translationWords

- Moses
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Israel, Israelites
- lots, casting lots
- Yahweh
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen

- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Reuben
- Gad
- Manasseh
- Jericho

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 34 General Notes
- Numbers 34 translationQuestions

## Numbers 34:16-18

### UDB:

[16] Then Yahweh said to Moses,

[17] "These are the men who will divide the land. First, Eleazar and Joshua, [18] but other leaders from each of the twelve tribes will help them divide the land.

### ULB:

[16] Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, [17] "These are the names of the men who will divide the land for your inheritance: Eleazar the priest and Joshua son of Nun. [18] You must choose one leader from every tribe to divide the land for their clans.

### translationNotes

#### divide the land for your inheritance

Here "your" is plural and refers to the people of Israel. These men will cast lots to divide the land. Then they will distribute it to the tribes. (See: Forms of You)

### translationWords

- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- Eleazar
- priest, priests, priesthood
- Joshua
- clan, clans

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 34 General Notes
- Numbers 34 translationQuestions

## Numbers 34:19-20

### UDB:

### ULB:

[19] These are the names of the men:

From the tribe of Judah, Caleb son of Jephunneh.

[20] From the tribe of the descendants of Simeon, Shemuel son of Ammihud.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

This is the list of men who will help divide the land among the tribes. (See: How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- Judah
- Caleb
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Simeon

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 34 General Notes
- Numbers 34 translationQuestions

## Numbers 34:21-23

### UDB:

[21] From the tribe of Benjamin appoint Kislon's son Elidad.

[22] From the tribe of Dan appoint Jogli's son Bukki.

[23] From the tribe of Manasseh appoint Ephod's son Hanniel.

### ULB:

[21] From the tribe of Benjamin, Elidad son of Kislon.

[22] From of the tribe of the descendants of Dan a leader, Bukki son of Jogli.

[23] From the descendants of Joseph, of the tribe of the descendants of Manasseh a leader, Hanniel son of Ephod.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

This continues the list of men who will help divide the land among the tribes. (See: How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites
- Dan
- Joseph (OT)
- Manasseh

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 34 General Notes
- Numbers 34 translationQuestions

## Numbers 34:24-26

### UDB:

[24] From the tribe of Ephraim appoint Shiphtan's son Kemuel.

[25] From the tribe of Zebulun appoint Parnak's son Elizaphan.

[26] From the tribe of Issachar appoint Azzan's son Paltiel.

### ULB:

[24] From the tribe of the descendants of Ephraim a leader, Kemuel son of Shiphtan.

[25] From the tribe of the descendants of Zebulun a leader, Elizaphan son of Parnak.

[26] From the tribe of the descendants of Issachar a leader, Paltiel son of Azzan.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

This continues the list of men who will help divide the land among the tribes. (See: How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites
- Zebulun
- Issachar

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 34 General Notes
- Numbers 34 translationQuestions

## Numbers 34:27-29

### UDB:

[27] From the tribe of Asher appoint Shelomi's son Ahihud.

[28] From the tribe of Naphtali appoint Ammihud's son Pedahel."

[29] Yahweh commanded that all those were the men who should divide the region of Canaan among the Israelite people.

### ULB:

[27] From the tribe of the descendants of Asher a leader, Ahihud son of Shelomi.

[28] From the tribe of the descendants of Naphtali a leader, Pedahel son of Ammihud."

[29] Yahweh commanded these men to divide the land of Canaan and to give each of the tribes of Israel their share.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

This concludes the list of men who will help divide the land among the tribes. (See: How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- Asher
- Naphtali
- Yahweh
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites
- Israel, Israelites

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 34 General Notes
- Numbers 34 translationQuestions

# Numbers 35 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter continues the material from the previous chapter.

### Special concepts in this chapter

### Revenge

Yahweh told Moses to establish safe places for people who accidentally killed other people. This prevented revenge killings. Justice is an important concept in this chapter. (See: avenge, avenges, avenged, avenging, avenger, revenge, vengeance and just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification)

### Links:

- **Numbers 35:01 Notes**

## Numbers 35:1-2

### UDB:

[1] Yahweh told this to Moses while the Israelites were on the plain in Moab near the Jordan River, across from Jericho, [2] "Tell the Israelite people that from the land that they will receive, they must give to the descendants of Levi some cities in which they can live. They must also give them some land around these cities.

### ULB:

[1] Yahweh spoke to Moses on the plains of Moab by the Jordan at Jericho and said, [2] "Command the people of Israel to give some of their own shares of land to the Levites. They must give them cities to live in and pastureland surrounding those cities.

### translationNotes

#### plains

a large area of flat land

#### give some of their own shares of land to the Levites

Yahweh did not give the Levites their own land, so they had to live in cities that belonged to other tribes.

#### pastureland

an area of land where animals feed on grass

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Jericho
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 35 General Notes
- Numbers 35 translationQuestions

## Numbers 35:3-4

### UDB:

[3] These cities will be for the descendants of Levi to live in, and around the cities will be land for their cattle and flocks of sheep and goats and other animals.

[4] The land that you give them for their animals must extend out for 457 meters from the walls of the cities.

### ULB:

[3] The Levites will have these cities to live in. The pastureland will be for their cattle, their flocks, and all their animals. [4] The pasturelands around the cities that you will give to the Levites must extend from the city walls for one thousand cubits in every direction.

### translationNotes

#### one thousand cubits

"1,000 cubits." If it is necessary to use modern distance units, here is a way of doing it. AT: "457 meters" (See: Numbers and Biblical Distance)

### translationWords

- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 35 General Notes
- Numbers 35 translationQuestions

## Numbers 35:5

### UDB:

[5] Also measure 920 meters in each direction out from the walls of each city. That additional land will be land for their animals outside the walls of the cities.

### ULB:

[5] You must measure two thousand cubits from outside the city on the east side, and two thousand cubits to the south side, two thousand cubits to the west side, and two thousand cubits to the north side. This will be the pasturelands for their cities. The cities will be in the center.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

#### two thousand cubits

"2,000 cubits." A cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: Biblical Distance and Numbers)

#### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 35 General Notes
- Numbers 35 translationQuestions

## Numbers 35:6-7

### UDB:

[6] Six of the cities that you give to the descendants of Levi will be cities to which people can run to be safe. If someone accidentally kills someone else, the one who killed that person may run to one of those cities to be safe. [7] You must also give to the descendants of Levi forty-two other cities and the land around those cities for their animals.

### ULB:

[6] Six of the cities that you will give to Levites must serve as cities of refuge. You must provide these as places to which a person who has killed someone can flee. Also provide forty-two other cities. [7] The cities that you give to the Levites will total forty-eight. You must give their pasturelands with them.

### translationNotes

#### a person who has killed someone

This refers to people who have killed someone, but it had not yet been determined whether they killed the person intentionally or accidentally.

#### forty-two ... forty-eight

“42 ... 48” (See: Numbers)

### translationWords

- refuge, refugee, refugees, shelter, shelters, sheltered, sheltering
- accuse, accuses, accused, accusing, accuser, accusers, accusation, accusations

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 35 General Notes
- Numbers 35 translationQuestions

## Numbers 35:8

### UDB:

[8] The Israelite tribes who have the most people must give them more cities than the tribes who have fewer people give. Each tribe must give some of its cities to the descendants of Levi, but the tribes that have more land must give more cities, and the tribes that have fewer cities will give fewer cities."

### ULB:

[8] The larger tribes of the people of Israel, the tribes that have more land, must provide more cities. The smaller tribes will provide fewer cities. Each tribe must provide for the Levites according to the share that it has received."

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### translationWords

- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 35 General Notes
- Numbers 35 translationQuestions

## Numbers 35:9-11

### UDB:

[9] Yahweh also said to Moses, [10] "Tell this to the Israelite people, 'When you cross the Jordan River and enter the region of Canaan, [11] you must choose some cities to which people can run to be safe. If someone kills another person, the one who killed that person may run to one of those cities and be safe.

### ULB:

[9] Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, [10] "Speak to the people of Israel and say to them, 'When you cross over the Jordan into the land of Canaan, [11] then you must choose cities to serve as cities of refuge for you, a place to which a person who has killed someone unintentionally may flee.

### translationNotes

### unintentionally

"accidentally"

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites
- refuge, refugee, refugees, shelter, shelters, sheltered, sheltering

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 35 General Notes
- Numbers 35 translationQuestions

## Numbers 35:12-13

### UDB:

[12] One of the relatives of the person who was killed may think he must avenge his relative's death by killing the murderer. But in that city, the killer will be safe because the people in that city would kill those relatives if they tried to get revenge there. The man who killed someone accidentally must be put on trial in a court. [13] You must set apart six cities to be cities to which someone who killed another person accidentally may run and be safe.

### ULB:

[12] These cities must be your refuge from the avenger, so that the accused man will not be killed without first standing trial before the community. [13] You must choose six cities as cities of refuge.

### translationNotes

#### the avenger

This refers to a close relative that seeks vengeance by killing the accused man.

#### so that the accused man will not be killed without first standing trial before the community

This can be stated in active form. AT: "so that no one will kill the accused man before the community is able to judge him in court" (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- refuge, refugee, refugees, shelter, shelters, sheltered, sheltering
- avenge, avenges, avenged, avenging, avenger, revenge, vengeance

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 35 General Notes
- Numbers 35 translationQuestions

## Numbers 35:14-15

### UDB:

[14] There must be three of these cities on the east side of the Jordan River and three on the west side, in the region of Canaan. [15] Those six cities will be cities where Israelite people may run and be safe, and where foreigners and other people who are living among you can also run and be safe. Any of those people who accidentally kills someone may run to one of these cities and be safe there.

### ULB:

[14] You must provide three cities beyond the Jordan and three in the land of Canaan. They will be cities of refuge. [15] For the people of Israel, for the foreigners, for anyone living among you, these six cities will serve as a refuge to which anyone who kills someone unintentionally can flee.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### translationWords

- Jordan River, Jordan
- Israel, Israelites
- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 35 General Notes
- Numbers 35 translationQuestions

## Numbers 35:16

### UDB:

16-18 But you must consider that anyone who kills another person with an iron weapon or with a big rock or with a piece of wood, is a murderer, and the one who killed the other person must be executed.

### ULB:

16 But if an accused man has struck his victim with an instrument of iron, and if his victim dies, then the accused is indeed a murderer. He must certainly be put to death. 17 If an accused man has struck his victim with a stone in his hand that might kill the victim, and if his victim dies, then the accused is indeed a murderer. He must certainly be put to death. 18 If an accused man has struck his victim with a wooden weapon that might kill the victim, and if the victim dies, then the accused is indeed a murderer. He must certainly be put to death.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

#### He must certainly be put to death

This can be stated in active form. AT: "You must certainly execute him" (See: Active or Passive and Idiom)

### translationWords

- accuse, accuses, accused, accusing, accuser, accusers, accusation, accusations
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 35 General Notes
- Numbers 35 translationQuestions

## Numbers 35:19-21

### UDB:

[19] A relative of the person who was murdered must be the one who executes the murderer as soon as he finds him. [20] If someone shoves another person over a cliff or throws something at another person [21] or hits that person with his hand and causes that person to die, if he did it because he hated that person, then you must consider that he is a murderer, and must be executed. A relative of the person who was killed must be the one who executes the murderer as soon as he finds him.

### ULB:

[19] The avenger of blood may put the murderer to death. When he meets him, the avenger of blood must put him to death. [20] If he strikes another in hatred or throws something at him, while hiding to ambush him, so that the victim dies, [21] or if he strikes him down in hatred with his hand so that the victim dies, then the accused who struck him must surely be put to death. He is a murderer. The avenger of blood may put the murderer to death when he meets him.

### translationNotes

#### The avenger of blood

Here the word "blood" is a metonym for the murder. AT: "The one who avenges the murder" or "The relative seeking vengeance" (See: Metonymy)

#### the accused who struck him must surely be put to death

This can be stated in active form. AT: "the relative must certainly execute the accused man" or "the accused man must die" (See: Active or Passive and Idiom)

### translationWords

- blood
- avenge, avenges, avenged, avenging, avenger, revenge, vengeance

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 35 General Notes
- Numbers 35 translationQuestions

## Numbers 35:22-23

### UDB:

[22] But someone might accidentally shove someone else, or he might accidentally throw something at another person and hit him, but not because he hates that person. [23] Or he might drop a rock on someone that he could not see. There is a law for the one who does that did not plan to hurt anyone and did not hate the person who was killed.

### ULB:

[22] But if an accused man suddenly hits a victim without premeditated hate or throws something that hits the victim without lying in wait [23] or if he throws a stone that could kill a victim without seeing the victim, then the accused was not the victim's enemy; he was not trying to hurt the victim. But this is what to do if the victim dies anyway.

### translationNotes

#### without premeditated hate

"without planning it out of hate ahead of time"

#### without lying in wait

Someone intentionally seeking a way to harm another person is spoken of as if someone were hiding in order to ambush that other person. AT: "without intentionally having tried to harm the victim" (See: Metaphor)

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 35 General Notes
- Numbers 35 translationQuestions

## Numbers 35:24-25

### UDB:

[24] That law is that the people of that city must decide whether the relative of the dead person has the right to get revenge, or whether the one who killed the other person truly did it accidentally. [25] If they decide that the killer planned to kill the other person, they must not allow him to stay in their city. But if they decide that it was done accidentally, they must protect the killer from being killed by the dead person's relative. They must send the killer to one of the cities where he will be safe, and allow him to stay there until the high priest dies. After that, the killer may go back to his home, because the dead person's relative no longer has the right to get revenge.

### ULB:

[24] In that case, the community must judge between the accused and the avenger of blood on the basis of these rules. [25] The community must rescue the accused from the power of the avenger of blood. The community must return the accused to the city of refuge to which he had originally fled. He must live there until the death of the current high priest, the one who was anointed with the holy oil.

### translationNotes

#### the avenger of blood

Here the word "blood" is a metonym for the murder. See how you translated this phrase in Numbers 35:19. AT: "the one who avenges the murder" or "the relative seeking vengeance" (See: Metonymy)

#### The community must rescue the accused

This means if the community judges that the death was accidental then they must save the accused man from the relative who wants to kill him. If the community judges that the death was not accidental, then the relative must execute the accused man. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### the one who was anointed with the holy oil

This can be stated in active form. AT: "the one you anointed with holy oil" (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- judge, judges, judgment, judgments
- accuse, accuses, accused, accusing, accuser, accusers, accusation, accusations

- avenge, avenges, avenged, avenging, avenger, revenge, vengeance
- power, powers
- refuge, refugee, refugees, shelter, shelters, sheltered, sheltering
- high priest
- anoint, anointed, anointing
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- oil

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 35 General Notes
- Numbers 35 translationQuestions

## Numbers 35:26-28

### UDB:

[26] But while the high priest is still living, the person who is in that safe city must not leave that city. [27] If he goes outside the city, and if a relative of the dead person finds him, that relative is permitted to kill that person, and people will not consider that the relative is guilty of murder. [28] The killer must stay in that city where he will be safe until the high priest dies. He will be safe from revenge after that, because the death of the high priest will be considered to be a sacrifice to atone for that murder. After that, the killer may return to his home.

### ULB:

[26] But if the accused man at any time goes beyond the border of the city of refuge to which he fled, [27] and if the avenger of blood finds him outside the border of his city of refuge, and if he kills the accused man, the avenger of blood will not be guilty of murder. [28] This is because the accused man should have remained in his city of refuge until the death of the high priest. After the death of the high priest, the accused may return to the land where he has his own property.

### translationNotes

#### the avenger of blood

Here the word “blood” is a metonym for the murder. See how you translated these words in Numbers 35:19. AT: “the one who avenges the murder” or “the relative seeking vengeance” (See: Metonymy)

### translationWords

- refuge, refugee, refugees, shelter, shelters, sheltered, sheltering
- guilt, guilty
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 35 General Notes
- Numbers 35 translationQuestions

## Numbers 35:29-30

### UDB:

[29] You must always obey these legal proceedings, wherever you live.

[30] If someone is accused of killing another person, the one who is accused may be executed only if there are people who saw him do it. There must be more than one witness. No one is permitted to be executed if there was only one witness.

### ULB:

[29] These laws must be statutes for you through all your people's generations in all the places where you live. [30] Whoever kills any person, the murderer must be killed, as testified to by the words of witnesses. But one witness' word alone may not cause any person to be put to death.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

#### through all your people's generations

"and all of your descendants who will live after you"

#### the murderer must be killed

This can be stated in active form. AT: "someone must execute the murderer" (See: Active or Passive)

#### as testified to by the words of witnesses

This can be stated in active form. AT: "according to the testimony of witnesses" or "as witnesses testify to the murder" (See: Active or Passive)

#### But one witness' word alone may not cause any person to be put to death

The testimony of one witness is not enough to execute a person for murder. This can be stated in active form. AT: "But the word of only one witness is not enough for you to execute a person" (See: Active or Passive)

**translationWords**

- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- statute, statutes
- generation
- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 35 General Notes
- Numbers 35 translationQuestions

## Numbers 35:31-32

### UDB:

[31] If there is a murderer who truly should be executed, do not spare his life by accepting a ransom. He must be executed.

[32] If someone has run to a city where he will be safe, do not allow him to give you money in order that you will permit him to return to his home before the high priest dies.

### ULB:

[31] Also, you must not accept ransom for the life of a murderer who is guilty of murder. He must certainly be put to death. [32] You must not accept ransom for the one who has fled to a city of refuge. You must not in this way allow him to reside on his own property until the high priest dies.

### translationNotes

#### He must certainly be put to death

This can be stated in active form. AT: “You must execute him” (See: Active or Passive and Idiom)

#### You must not ... allow him to reside on his own property

This implied that the man would have left the city of refuge and returned home. AT: “You must not ... allow him to leave the city of refuge and return home to live on his own property” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### in this way

“by accepting a ransom”

### translationWords

- ransom, ransomed
- guilt, guilty

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 35 General Notes
- Numbers 35 translationQuestions

## Numbers 35:33-34

### UDB:

[33] You must execute people who truly murder others. If you did not do that, you would be causing the people who live in the land to become unacceptable to me. Anyone who deliberately kills an innocent person must be executed. [34] I am Yahweh, and I live among you Israelites, so do not spoil the land by allowing people to murder others without being punished.'"

### ULB:

[33] Do not pollute in this way the land where you live, because blood from murder pollutes the land. No atonement can be made for the land when blood has been shed on it, except by the blood of the one who shed it. [34] So you must not defile the land in which you live because I am living in it. I, Yahweh, live among the people of Israel.'"

### translationNotes

#### Do not pollute in this way the land where you live, because blood from murder pollutes the land

Making the land unacceptable to Yahweh is spoken of as if it were physically polluting the land. AT: "Do not make the land where you live unacceptable to me in this way, because blood from murder makes the land unacceptable to me" (See: Metaphor)

#### in this way

This means by disobeying the laws concerning a person who kills someone.

#### No atonement can be made for the land when blood has been shed on it, except by the blood of the one who shed it

This refers to when a person intentionally kills another person. This can be stated in active form. AT: "When someone has shed blood in the land, only the execution of the murderer can make atonement for the land" (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- blood
- atonement, atone, atones, atoned
- defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 35 General Notes
- Numbers 35 translationQuestions

# Numbers 36 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

### Female heirs

Women who inherited land from their father must marry men from their tribe so the inheritance does not leave the tribe. (See: inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir)

### Links:

- **Numbers 36:01 Notes**

## Numbers 36:1-2

### UDB:

[1] The family leaders of the clan of Gilead of the tribe of Manasseh went to Moses and the other family leaders of the Israelite people. [2] They said to Moses, "Yahweh commanded you, our leader, to apportion the land to the Israelite tribes by casting lots to decide which group would get which area. Yahweh also commanded you to give the land that belonged to our fellow Israelite Zelophehad to his daughters.

### ULB:

[1] Then the leaders of the ancestors' families of the clan of Gilead son of Machir (who was Manasseh's son), who were from the clans of the descendants of Joseph, came and spoke before Moses and before the leaders who were the heads of the ancestor's families of the people of Israel. [2] They said, "Yahweh commanded you, our master, to give a share of land by lot to the people of Israel. You were commanded by Yahweh to give the share of Zelophehad our brother to his daughters.

### translationNotes

#### Machir

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 26:29. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### You were commanded by Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Yahweh commanded you" (See: Active or Passive)

#### Zelophehad

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this man's name in Numbers 26:33. (See: How to Translate Names)

### translationWords

- family, families
- clan, clans
- Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites
- Manasseh
- Joseph (OT)
- Moses
- head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded

- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs
- lots, casting lots

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 36 General Notes
- Numbers 36 translationQuestions

## Numbers 36:3-4

### UDB:

[3] But if his daughters marry men from the other Israelite tribes, that land will no longer belong to our tribe. People of other tribes will get it. So some of our land will no longer belong to us. [4] When the year of the celebration of Jubilee comes, when all the land that has been bought by someone is returned to its original owners, the land that belonged to Zelophehad will belong to the tribes of the men that his daughters marry. So some of our land, the land that we received from our fathers, will be taken from us, and we will never own it again."

### ULB:

[3] But if his daughters marry men in another tribe of the people of Israel, then their share of land will be removed from our ancestor's share. It will be added to the share of the tribes that they join. In that case, it will be removed from the assigned share of our inheritance. [4] In that case, when the year of Jubilee of the people of Israel comes, then their share will be joined to the share of the tribe that they have joined. In this way, their share will be taken away from the share of our ancestors' tribe."

### translationNotes

#### will be removed from our ancestor's share

This can be stated in active form. AT: "will no longer belong to our ancestor's share" (See: Active or Passive)

#### It will be added

This can be stated in active form. AT: "It will belong to" (See: Active or Passive)

#### it will be removed from the assigned share of our inheritance

This can be stated in active form. AT: "it will no longer be a part of our inheritance" (See: Active or Passive)

#### the year of Jubilee of the people

This refers to a celebration which happens once every fifty years. In this celebration, all land that someone sold or traded must return to the original owner. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

#### their share will be joined

This can be stated in active form. AT: "their share will belong" (See: Active or Passive)

**their share will be taken away from the share of our ancestors' tribe**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "they will take our tribe's share of the land" (See: Active or Passive)

**translationWords**

- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 36 General Notes
- Numbers 36 translationQuestions

## Numbers 36:5-6

### UDB:

[5] Yahweh told Moses what to reply to them, so Moses said this to them, "These men from the tribe of Manasseh are right. [6] This is what Yahweh is saying to the daughters of Zelophehad, 'Each of you may marry anyone you want to, but you must marry only someone from your own tribe.'

### ULB:

[5] So Moses gave a command to the people of Israel, at Yahweh's word. He said, "What the tribe of Joseph's descendants says is right. [6] This is what Yahweh commands concerning Zelophehad's daughters. He says, 'Let them be married to whom they think best, but they must marry only within the family of their father's tribe.'

### translationNotes

#### at Yahweh's word

"according to what Yahweh said"

#### Let them be married to whom they think best

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Let them marry whom they want" (See: Active or Passive)

#### they must marry only within the family of their father's tribe

This can be stated in active form. AT: "but they may only marry someone from their father's tribe" (See: Active or Passive)

### translationWords

- word, words

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 36 General Notes
- Numbers 36 translationQuestions

## Numbers 36:7

### UDB:

[7] In that way, the land that belongs to Israelites will not be passed from one tribe to another tribe. Each Israelite will keep the land in the tribe that belonged to his ancestors.

### ULB:

[7] No share of the people of Israel must change from one tribe to another. Each one of the people of Israel must continue with the share of his ancestor's tribe.

### translationNotes

#### No share

The word "share" represents the portion of land that each tribe received as an inheritance. AT: "No portion of the land" (See: Metonymy)

### translationWords

- Israel, Israelites

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 36 General Notes
- Numbers 36 translationQuestions

## Numbers 36:8-9

### UDB:

[8] A woman who inherits her father's land may get married, but she must marry someone from her own tribe. In that way, every Israelite will keep the land that belonged to his ancestors. [9] The land must not be passed from one tribe to another tribe. Each Israelite tribe must keep the land that it received from its ancestors."

### ULB:

[8] Every woman of the people of Israel who owns a share in her tribe must marry someone from the clans belonging to her father's tribe. This is so that everyone of the people of Israel may own an inheritance from his ancestors. [9] No share may change hands from one tribe to another. Everyone of the tribes of the people of Israel must keep his own inheritance."

### translationNotes

#### who owns a share in her tribe

"who owns a share of land in her tribe"

#### may own an inheritance

The land that each clan possesses is spoken of as if it were an inheritance that they received. (See: Metaphor)

#### No share may change hands from one tribe to another

Transferring ownership from one tribe to another is spoken of as if the property passed from one person's hands to another person's hands. AT: "No one may transfer the ownership of any share of land from one tribe to another" (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- clan, clans
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of

**Links:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 36 General Notes
- Numbers 36 translationQuestions

## Numbers 36:10-12

### UDB:

10 Zelophehad's daughters obeyed what Yahweh told Moses. 11 The five daughters—Mahlah, Tirzah, Hoglah, Milkah and Noah—married their cousins, their father's relatives. 12 The men whom they married were from the tribe of Manasseh, so their land continued to belong to their father's family and tribe.

### ULB:

10 So Zelophehad's daughters did as Yahweh had commanded Moses. 11 Mahlah, Tirzah, Hoglah, Milkah, and Noah, the daughters of Zelophehad, married descendants of Manasseh. 12 They married into the clans of the descendants of Manasseh son of Joseph. In this way, their inheritances remained in the tribe to which their father's clan belonged.

### translationNotes

#### Mahlah, Tirzah, Hoglah, Milkah, and Noah

See how you translated these women's names in Numbers 26:33. (See: How to Translate Names)

#### their inheritances

The land that each of Zelophehad's daughters possessed is spoken of as if it were an inheritance that they received. AT: "the lands that they received as an inheritance" (See: Metaphor)

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Moses
- Tirzah
- Manasseh
- Joseph (OT)

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 36 General Notes
- Numbers 36 translationQuestions

## Numbers 36:13

### UDB:

[13] Those were the commands and decrees that Yahweh gave to Moses to tell to the Israelites, while they were on the plains of Moab, close to the Jordan River, across from Jericho.

### ULB:

[13] These are the commands and the decrees that Yahweh gave by Moses to the people of Israel in the plains of Moab by the Jordan at Jericho.

### translationNotes

#### plains

a large area of flat land

### translationWords

- decree, decrees, decreed
- Moab, Moabite, Moabitess
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Jericho

### Links:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 36 General Notes
- Numbers 36 translationQuestions

# translationQuestions

## Numbers 1

#### Who did Yahweh tell Moses to count in the census?

He told Moses to count all the men of Israel, every male who was twenty years old or older. [1:1]

#### Who did Yahweh tell Moses to count in the census?

He told Moses to count all the men of Israel, every male who was twenty years old or older. [1:2]

#### Who did Yahweh tell Moses to count in the census?

He told Moses to count all the men of Israel, every male who was twenty years old or older. [1:3]

#### Who would serve Moses as tribe leaders?

A man from every tribe, a clan head, would serve as his tribe's leader. [1:4]

#### How did each man identify his ancestry?

He had to name the clans and families descended from his ancestors. [1:18]

#### How many men from the tribes twenty years old or older who could fight in a war were recorded?

There were 603,550 men from the tribes. [1:46]

#### The men from what tribe were not to be counted?

The men from the tribe of Levi were not counted. [1:47]

#### For what were the Levites assigned to care?

They were assigned to care for the tabernacle, for all the furnishings in the tabernacle, and for everything in it. [1:50]

#### What were the Levites to do to any stranger who came near the tabernacle?

The Levites were to kill strangers that came near the tabernacle. [1:51]

**Where were the people of Israel to set up their tents?**

Each man was to set up his tent near the banner that belonged to his armed group. [1:52]

**Where were the Levities to set up their tents?**

They were to set up their tents around the tabernacle of the covenant decrees. [1:53]

**Did the people do what Yahweh commanded?**

Yes, they did everything commanded by Yahweh through Moses. [1:54]

## Numbers 2

**Where did Yahweh tell Moses and Aaron for the tribes to put their tents?**

Yahweh told the tribes to put their tents around the banner of their armed group and around a smaller flag indicating their tribe. Their camps were to face the tent of meeting. [2:1]

**Where did Yahweh tell Moses and Aaron for the tribes to put their tents?**

Yahweh told the tribes to put their tents around the banner of their armed group and around a smaller flag indicating their tribe. Their camps were to face the tent of meeting. [2:2]

**Where did Moses say the 74,600 men of the army of the tribe of Judah must camp, and who must lead their army?**

They must camp around Judah's banner to the east of the tent of meeting where the sun rises, and that Nahshon must lead their army. [2:3]

**Where did Moses say the 74,600 men of the army of the tribe of Judah must camp, and who must lead their army?**

They must camp around Judah's banner to the east of the tent of meeting where the sun rises, and that Nahshon must lead their army. [2:4]

**Where must the 54,400 men of the tribe of Issachar camp, and who must lead their army?**

They must camp next to Judah, and Nethanel must lead the army. [2:5]

**Where must the 54,400 men of the tribe of Issachar camp, and who must lead their army?**

They must camp next to Judah, and Nethanel must lead the army. [2:6]

**Where must the 57,400 men of the tribe of Zebulun camp and who must lead their army?**

They must camp next to Issachar, and Eliab must lead the army. [2:7]

**Where must the 57,400 men of the tribe of Zebulun camp and who must lead their army?**

They must camp next to Issachar, and Eliab must lead the army. [2:8]

**Who is to go first out of the camp?**

All the armies that camp with Judah would go first out of the camp. [2:9]

**Where must the 46,500 men of the tribe of Reuben camp, and who must lead their army?**

They must camp around the banner of Rueben on the south side, and Elizur must lead the army. [2:10]

**Where must the 46,500 men of the tribe of Reuben camp, and who must lead their army?**

They must camp around the banner of Rueben on the south side, and Elizur must lead the army. [2:11]

**Where must the 59,300 men of the tribe of Simeon camp, and who must lead their army?**

They must camp next to Rueben, and Shelumiel must lead their army. [2:12]

**Where must the 59,300 men of the tribe of Simeon camp, and who must lead their army?**

They must camp next to Rueben, and Shelumiel must lead their army. [2:13]

**Where must the 45,650 men of the tribe of Gad camp, and who must lead their army?**

They must camp next, and Eliasaph must lead their army. [2:14]

**Where must the 45,650 men of the tribe of Gad camp, and who must lead their army?**

They must camp next, and Eliasaph must lead their army. [2:15]

**Who is to go second out of the camp?**

All the armies that camp together with Reuben must go out second. [2:16]

**How many people were numbered in the camp of Ephraim?**

There were 108,100 people numbered in the camp of Ephraim. [2:24]

**When was the camp of Ephraim supposed to set out in relation to the other camps?**

The camp of Ephraim was supposed to set out third. [2:24]

**Who was the leader of the people of Dan?**

The leader of the people of Dan was Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai. [2:25]

**Whom did Moses and Aaron not count among the people of Israel and why?**

Moses did not count the Levites among the people of Israel because this was as Yahweh had commanded Moses. [2:32]

**Whom did Moses and Aaron not count among the people of Israel and why?**

Moses did not count the Levites among the people of Israel because this was as Yahweh had commanded Moses. [2:33]

**What did the people of Israel do?**

The people of Israel did everything that Yahweh commanded Moses—camped by their banners and went out from camp by their clans in the order of their ancestor's families. [2:34]

## Numbers 3

### Of what was this the history?

This was the history of the descendants of Aaron and Moses. [3:1]

### What were the names of Aaron's sons?

The names of Aaron's sons were Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar. [3:2]

### Why did Nadab and Abihu fall dead before Yahweh?

Nadab and Abihu fell dead before Yahweh when they offered unacceptable fire to him. [3:4]

### Which of Aaron's sons served as priests with Aaron?

Eleazar and Ithamar served with their father Aaron as priests. [3:4]

### Which tribe did Yahweh say was to help Aaron serve as priest?

The tribe of Levi was to help Aaron. [3:6]

### What were the duties of the tribe of Levi?

They were to perform the duties on behalf of Aaron and the whole community, care for all furnishings, and help the tribes with the tabernacle service. [3:7]

### What were the duties of the tribe of Levi?

They were to perform the duties on behalf of Aaron and the whole community, care for all furnishings, and help the tribes with the tabernacle service. [3:8]

### Whom did Yahweh give to help Aaron and his sons?

Yahweh gave the Levites to Aaron and his sons to serve as priests for the people of Israel. [3:9]

### Whom did Yahweh give to help Aaron and his sons?

Yahweh gave the Levites to Aaron and his sons to serve as priests for the people of Israel. [3:10]

**Whom did Yahweh set apart for himself?**

Yahweh set apart for himself the Levites and all the firstborn in Israel, both people and animals. [3:11]

**Whom did Yahweh set apart for himself?**

Yahweh set apart for himself the Levites and all the firstborn in Israel, both people and animals. [3:12]

**Whom did Yahweh set apart for himself?**

Yahweh set apart for himself the Levites and all the firstborn in Israel, both people and animals. [3:13]

**When did God set apart all the firstborn of Israel?**

He set apart for himself all the firstborn in Israel on the day that he attacked all the firstborn in the land of Egypt. [3:13]

**Whom did Yahweh command Moses to count in the tribe of Levi?**

Yahweh commanded Moses to count every male in Levi who was one month old and older. [3:15]

**Whom did Yahweh command Moses to count in the tribe of Levi?**

Yahweh commanded Moses to count every male in Levi who was one month old and older. [3:16]

**Who were the sons of Levi?**

The sons of Levi were Gershon, Kohath, and Merari. [3:17]

**Where were the clans of the Gershonites to camp?**

The clans of the Gershonites were to camp on the west side of the tabernacle. [3:23]

**Who was to lead the clans of the descendants of the Gershonites?**

Eliasaph the son of Lael was to lead the clans of the descendants of the Gershonites. [3:24]

**Who was to care for the tabernacle curtains, the tent, the tent covering, the entrance curtain, the courtyard hangings, the courtyard entrance curtain, and the courtyard, ropes, and all that was in the tent of meeting?**

The clans of the Gershonites who camped on the west side of the tabernacle were to care for the tabernacle coverings, curtain, and ropes. [3:25]

**Who was to care for the tabernacle curtains, the tent, the tent covering, the entrance curtain, the courtyard hangings, the courtyard entrance curtain, and the courtyard, ropes, and all that was in the tent of meeting?**

The clans of the Gershonites who camped on the west side of the tabernacle were to care for the tabernacle coverings, curtain, and ropes. [3:26]

**What were the clans from Kohath who camped on the south side of the tabernacle do?**

They were to take care of the sanctuary, the sanctuary curtain, and everything in the sanctuary. [3:31]

**Who was Eleazar the son of Aaron the priest to supervise?**

He was to supervise the men who led the Levites and the men who cared for the sanctuary. [3:32]

**Who was to lead the clans of Merari who camped on the north side of the tabernacle?**

Zuriel son of Abihail was to lead the clans of Merari. [3:35]

**What were the clans from Merari who camped on the north side of the tabernacle do?**

They were to care for the boards of the tabernacle, the crossbars, posts, bases, all of the hardware, and everything that went with them. [3:36]

**What were the clans from Merari who camped on the north side of the tabernacle do?**

They were to care for the boards of the tabernacle, the crossbars, posts, bases, all of the hardware, and everything that went with them. [3:37]

**What were Moses and Aaron and sons who were camped on the east of the tabernacle do?**

They were to do the duties of the sanctuary and the duties of the people of Israel. [3:38]

**What was to happen to any foreigner who approached the sanctuary?**

Any foreigner who approached the sanctuary was to be put to death. [3:38]

**Whom did Moses and Aaron count?**

Moses and Aaron counted all the males in the clans of Levi who were one month old and older. [3:39]

**Whom did Moses take for Yahweh instead of the firstborn of Israel and instead of their livestock?**

Moses took the Levites and their livestock instead of Israel's firstborn men and livestock. [3:41]

**Then whom did Moses count?**

Moses counted all the firstborn males of Israel by name, aged one month old and older. [3:43]

**To whom did all the Levites belong?**

The Levites belonged to Yahweh. [3:45]

**How many sanctuary shekels did Moses collect per firstborn to buy back each of the 273 firstborn people of Israel who exceeded the number of the Levites?**

Moses collected 5 shekels each to buy back each of the 273 firstborn people of Israel who exceeded the number of the Levites. [3:46]

**To whom did Moses give the money to buy back the first born of the people of Israel?**

He gave the money to Aaron and his sons as Yahweh had commanded him. [3:51]

**How much did Moses do of what he was told to do by Yahweh's word?**

Moses did everything he was told to do by Yahweh's word. [3:51]

## Numbers 4

### What were Moses and Aaron to conduct?

Moses and Aaron were to conduct a census of the male descendants of Kohath from among the Levites who were 30 to 50 years old. [4:1]

### What were Moses and Aaron to conduct?

Moses and Aaron were to conduct a census of the male descendants of Kohath from among the Levites who were 30 to 50 years old. [4:2]

### What were Moses and Aaron to conduct?

Moses and Aaron were to conduct a census of the male descendants of Kohath from among the Levites who were 30 to 50 years old. [4:3]

### What were the descendants of Kohath to do to serve in the tent of meeting?

They were to care for the most holy things reserved for Yahweh in the tent of meeting. [4:4]

### What were Aaron and his sons to take down when the camp moved forward?

They were to go into the tent to take down the curtain that separated the most holy place from the holy place, cover the ark of the covenant with sea cow skins and a blue cloth, and then insert poles to carry it. [4:5]

### What were Aaron and his sons to take down when the camp moved forward?

They were to go into the tent to take down the curtain that separated the most holy place from the holy place, cover the ark of the covenant with sea cow skins and a blue cloth, and then insert poles to carry it. [4:6]

### On what were Aaron and his sons to spread a blue cloth and then put on that the dishes, spoons, bowls, and jars for pouring?

They were to spread a blue cloth on the bread of presence and then put on that the dishes, spoons, bowls, and jars for pouring. [4:7]

### What was always to be on the table?

Bread was always to be on the table of the bread of the presence. [4:7]

**How were the lampstands and all its accessories to be prepared for moving?**

They put a blue cloth cover over the lampstand with all its accessories, covered it with sea cow skins, and put it on a carrying frame. [4:9]

**How were the lampstands and all its accessories to be prepared for moving?**

They put a blue cloth cover over the lampstand with all its accessories, covered it with sea cow skins, and put it on a carrying frame. [4:10]

**Then what were they to use after that to cover the bread of presence and what were they to insert in it to carry the table?**

They were cover the bread of presence then with a scarlet cloth and again with sea cow skins, and then they were to insert poles with which to carry it. [4:11]

**How was the gold altar and its equipment prepared for moving?**

The gold altar and all of its equipment were to be wrapped in blue cloth, covered with sea cow skins, and then insert the carrying poles. [4:11]

**How was all the equipment for the work in the sanctuary to be prepared?**

All the equipment for the work in the sanctuary was to be wrapped in a blue cloth, covered with sea cow skins, and then put on the carrying frame. [4:12]

**What did they remove from the altar, and what must they spread on the altar?**

They removed the ashes from the altar and spread a purple cloth on it. [4:13]

**Where was all the equipment that they used in the work of the altar placed?**

All the equipment that they used in the work of the altar was placed on the carrying frame. [4:14]

**With what would was the altar covered before they inserted the carrying poles?**

The altar was covered with sea cow skins before they inserted the carrying poles. [4:14]

**Who came to carry the sanctuary after Aaron and his sons completed covering the sanctuary and all its equipment when the camp was ready to move forward?**

The descendants of Kohath came to carry the sanctuary after Aaron and his sons completed covering it and the camp was ready to move forward. [4:15]

**For what did Eleazar son of Aaron have to care and supervise?**

He had to care for the oil and the light as well as supervise the care of the sweet incense, the regular grain offering, the anointing oil, the entire tabernacle and all that was in it. [4:16]

**From among whom could the Kohathite clans not be removed that they would live and not die?**

The Kohathite clans could not be removed from among the Levites that they would live and not die. [4:18]

**From among whom could the Kohathite clans not be removed that they would live and not die?**

The Kohathite clans could not be removed from among the Levites that they would live and not die. [4:19]

**About what did Yahweh warn Moses and Aaron that the Kohathite tribal clans could not go in to see or they would die?**

The Kohathites tribal clans could not go in to see the sanctuary or they would die. [4:20]

**Who only was allowed to go into the sanctuary?**

Only Aaron and his sons were allowed to go into the sanctuary. [4:20]

**What does Yahweh tell Moses to do concerning counting of those who served in the tent of meeting from the Gershon clans?**

Moses was to conduct a census counting those who are thirty years old to fifty years old. [4:22]

**What does Yahweh tell Moses to do concerning counting of those who served in the tent of meeting from the Gershon clans?**

Moses was to conduct a census counting those who are thirty years old to fifty years old. [4:23]

**What was the work of the Gershonites?**

The work of the Gershonites was to carry all the curtains and coverings of the tabernacle and the tent of meeting and its covering of sea cow skin as well as the curtains of the court and its doorway and their ropes and all the instruments for their service. [4:24]

**What was the work of the Gershonites?**

The work of the Gershonites was to carry all the curtains and coverings of the tabernacle and the tent of meeting and its covering of sea cow skin as well as the curtains of the court and its doorway and their ropes and all the instruments for their service. [4:25]

**What was the work of the Gershonites?**

The work of the Gershonites was to carry all the curtains and coverings of the tabernacle and the tent of meeting and its covering of sea cow skin as well as the curtains of the court and its doorway and their ropes and all the instruments for their service. [4:26]

**Who was to direct all service of the descendants of the Gershonites who were being led by Ithamar the priest?**

Aaron and his sons must direct all the service of the descendants of the Gershonites. [4:27]

**Who was to direct all service of the descendants of the Gershonites who were being led by Ithamar the priest?**

Aaron and his sons must direct all the service of the descendants of the Gershonites. [4:28]

**What was the Merari clan to do in their service for the tent of meeting?**

They were to care for the framing of the tabernacle, along with the posts, their hardware, and their ropes plus make a list of what they must carry. [4:31]

**What was the Merari clan to do in their service for the tent of meeting?**

They were to care for the framing of the tabernacle, along with the posts, their hardware, and their ropes plus make a list of what they must carry. [4:32]

**What did Moses, Aaron, and the leaders of Israel do to obey Yahweh?**

They counted all the men of the Kohathites who were thirty to fifty years old by the type of work he was assigned to do in the tabernacle, and they counted who would carry and care for the items in the tent of meeting. [4:34]

**What did Moses, Aaron, and the leaders of Israel do to obey Yahweh?**

They counted all the men of the Kohathites who were thirty to fifty years old by the type of work he was assigned to do in the tabernacle, and they counted who would carry and care for the items in the tent of meeting. [4:35]

**Who else was counted in their clans from 30-50 years old?**

The descendants of Gershon were counted in their clans. [4:41]

**Who else did Moses and Aaron count in their clans from 30-50 years old?**

The descendants of Merari were counted in their clans. [4:42]

**Who else did Moses and Aaron count in their clans from 30-50 years old?**

The descendants of Merari were counted in their clans. [4:43]

**Who else did Moses and Aaron count in their clans from 30-50 years old?**

The descendants of Merari were counted in their clans. [4:44]

**When Moses counted each Levite by clans from 30-50 years old, of what did he keep count?**

Moses kept count of each man who would work in the tabernacle and who would carry and care for the items in the tent of meeting. [4:47]

**When Moses counted each man and kept count of each man's type of work and responsibility, who did he obey?**

When Moses counted each man and kept count of each man's type of work and responsibility, he obeyed Yahweh. [4:49]

## Numbers 5

**For what problems did Yahweh say that Moses should send both men and women away from the camp?**

Yahweh said that Moses should send away everyone who had infectious skin diseases or oozing sores and everyone who had touched a dead body and therefore were unclean. [5:2]

**For what problems did Yahweh say that Moses should send both men and women away from the camp?**

Yahweh said that Moses should send away everyone who had infectious skin diseases or oozing sores and everyone who had touched a dead body and therefore were unclean. [5:3]

**What did Yahweh say to Moses that men and women who commit sins to another person should do?**

Everyone who had committed sins to another person was to confess the sin, pay back the price of his guilt to the one he had wronged, and add one fifth more. [5:7]

**What was the payment and what did he do with the payment if the wronged person had no relative to receive the payment?**

He had to present the price along with a ram to a priest who would then own it. [5:8]

**What was the payment and what did he do with the payment if the wronged person had no relative to receive the payment?**

He had to present the price along with a ram to a priest who would then own it. [5:9]

**What was the payment and what did he do with the payment if the wronged person had no relative to receive the payment?**

He had to present the price along with a ram to a priest who would then own it. [5:10]

**What did Yahweh tell Moses to do with a wife whose husband thought she had sinned against him?**

The man brought his wife to the priest with a drink offering for her and a grain offering of barley flour as a possible indicator of sin. [5:15]

**What did the priest do first?**

He had to place the woman before Yahweh, then take a jar of holy water and mix dust from the floor of the tabernacle into the water. [5:16]

**What did the priest do first?**

He had to place the woman before Yahweh, then take a jar of holy water and mix dust from the floor of the tabernacle into the water. [5:17]

**Then what did the priest do?**

The priest uncovered and untied her hair and put the grain offering of jealousy in her hands. The priest, holding the bitter water, caused her to swear an oath that brought down a curse on her if she had been unfaithful. [5:18]

**Then what did the priest do?**

The priest uncovered and untied her hair and put the grain offering of jealousy in her hands. The priest, holding the bitter water, caused her to swear an oath that brought down a curse on her if she had been unfaithful. [5:19]

**What did the curse cause if she were guilty?**

The curse caused her thigh to waste away and her abdomen to swell. [5:22]

**What was the priest to do with the bitter water that had the curses in it?**

The priest was to make the woman drink the bitter water. [5:24]

**What did the priest do with the grain offering?**

The priest took the grain offering from the woman's hand, held it up to Yahweh, gave a portion of it to Yahweh, and burned it on the altar. [5:25]

**What did the priest do with the grain offering?**

The priest took the grain offering from the woman's hand, held it up to Yahweh, gave a portion of it to Yahweh, and burned it on the altar. [5:26]

**What did the priest do with the bitter water?**

He gave the bitter water to the woman to drink. [5:26]

**What happened to the woman if she had committed a sin against her husband?**

The woman's abdomen swelled, her thigh wasted away, and she was cursed among her people. [5:27]

**What will happen to the woman if she had not been defiled?**

She was free and was able to conceive children. [5:28]

**What is the law of jealousy?**

It is a law for a woman who strays away from her husband and is defiled. It is also a law for a man with a spirit of jealousy when he is jealous of his wife. [5:29]

**What is the law of jealousy?**

It is a law for a woman who strays away from her husband and is defiled. It is also a law for a man with a spirit of jealousy when he is jealous of his wife. [5:30]

## Numbers 6

**Who separated himself with the vow of a Nazirite to Yaweh?**

A man or woman gave a vow of a Nazirite to separate himself to Yahweh. [6:2]

**What did a person who had made the vow of the Nazirite not eat during the days of his separation to Yahweh?**

He did not eat wine, strong drink, vinegar, grape juice, grapes, and raisins—any thing that had grapes in it. [6:3]

**What did a person who had made the vow of the Nazirite not eat during the days of his separation to Yahweh?**

He did not eat wine, strong drink, vinegar, grape juice, grapes, and raisins—any thing that had grapes in it. [6:4]

**What did he not use during the days of his separation?**

During the days of his separation he did not use a razor on his head. [6:5]

**During the days of his separation to Yahweh what must the one who takes a Nazirite vow not come near to?**

One who takes a Nazirite vow must not come near a dead body. [6:6]

**To whom was he reserved during the days he was separated and holy.**

During the time of his separation he was holy, reserved for Yahweh. [6:8]

**What did a Nazirite do seven days after he was defiled by a dead body?**

After seven days a Nazirite shaved his head. [6:9]

**What did a defiled Nazirite first need to bring for an atonement on the eighth to the priest at the entrance to the tent of meeting on the day he consecrated himself?**

On the eighth day he needed to bring for an atonement two doves or two young pigeons to the priest at the entrance to the tent of meeting. Then he had to consecrate himself on that same day. [6:10]

**What did a defiled Nazirite first need to bring for an atonement on the eighth to the priest at the entrance to the tent of meeting on the day he consecrated himself?**

On the eighth day he needed to bring for an atonement two doves or two young pigeons to the priest at the entrance to the tent of meeting. Then he had to consecrate himself on that same day. [6:11]

**For what were the two offerings?**

The two offering were as a sin offering and a burnt offering for atonement. [6:11]

**What guilt offering did he have bring to rededicate himself to Yahweh for the time of his separation?**

To rededicate himself to Yahweh for the time of his separation, he had to bring a male lamb one year old as a guilt offering. [6:12]

**What sin offering did the defiled Nazirite need to bring to the entrance of the tent of meeting with his male lamb for a guilt offering?**

He needed to bring a sin offering of a female one year old lamb without blemish, a ram without blemish as a fellowship offering, a basket of bread without leaven, a grain offering, and a drink offering to Yahweh. [6:14]

**What sin offering did the defiled Nazirite need to bring to the entrance of the tent of meeting with his male lamb for a guilt offering?**

He needed to bring a sin offering of a female one year old lamb without blemish, a ram without blemish as a fellowship offering, a basket of bread without leaven, a grain offering, and a drink offering to Yahweh. [6:15]

**Who had to present the offerings to Yahweh for the Nazirite?**

The priest had to present them before Yahweh. [6:16]

**Who had to present the offerings to Yahweh for the Nazirite?**

The priest had to present them before Yahweh. [6:17]

**What did the Nazirite have to do with the hair that he shaved from his head?**

He had to take the hair and put it on the fire under the fellowship offerings. [6:18]

**What did the priest put in the Nazirite's hands to lift high as an offering before Yahweh to present to Yahweh?**

In the Nazirite's hands, the priest put the boiled shoulder of the ram, one loaf of bread without yeast out of the basket, and one wafer without yeast to present to Yahweh. [6:19]

**What did the priest put in the Nazirite's hands to lift high as an offering before Yahweh to present to Yahweh?**

In the Nazirite's hands, the priest put the boiled shoulder of the ram, one loaf of bread without yeast out of the basket, and one wafer without yeast to present to Yahweh. [6:20]

**To whom was this offering, plus the breast and thigh that was raised, reserved afterwards?**

This offering, plus the breast and thigh that were raised, were reserved for the priest. [6:20]

**What could the Nazirite drink after that?**

The Nazirite could drink wine. [6:20]

**What blessings were Aaron and his sons to give the people from Yahweh?**

Aaron and his sons were to give the people a blessing of Yahweh's light and peace. [6:25]

**What blessings were Aaron and his sons to give the people from Yahweh?**

Aaron and his sons were to give the people a blessing of Yahweh's light and peace. [6:26]

## Numbers 7

**What did Moses anoint and sanctify for Yahweh on the day that the tabernacle and altar were completed?**

He anointed and sanctified the tabernacle, all its furnishings, the altar and all it's utensils for Yahweh. [7:1]

**What did the leaders of Israel bring as sacrifices in front of the tabernacle?**

They brought six covered carts and twelve oxen as sacrifices in front of the tabernacle. [7:3]

**To whom did Moses give the offerings?**

Moses gave the offerings to the Levites, to each one as his work needed them. [7:5]

**What did Gershon and his descendants receive because of what their work needed?**

Gershon and his descendants received two carts and four oxen. [7:7]

**What did Merari and his descendants receive because of what their work needed?**

Merari and his descendants received four carts and eight oxen. [7:8]

**Why didn't the descendants of Kohath receive any of the carts and oxen given as offerings?**

The descendants of Kohath didn't receive any of the carts and oxen given as offering because they carried the equipment and objects reserved for the tabernacle on their shoulders. [7:9]

**When was each leader to offer their goods for the dedication of the altar?**

On their own day each leader offered their sacrifices in front of the altar. [7:10]

**Who was the first of the 12 tribes of Israel that offered sacrifices for the dedication of the altar?**

Judah was the first of the 12 tribes of Israel that offered sacrifices for the dedication of the altar. [7:12]

**On the 2nd day, which of the 12 tribes of Israel offered sacrifices for the dedication of the altar?**

On the 2nd day, Issachar of the 12 tribes of Israel offered sacrifices for the dedication of the altar. [7:18]

**On the 3rd day, which of the 12 tribes of Israel offered sacrifices for the dedication of the altar?**

On the 3rd day, Zebulun of the 12 tribes of Israel offered sacrifices for the dedication of the altar. [7:24]

**On the 4th day, which of the 12 tribes of Israel offered sacrifices for the dedication of the altar?**

On the 4th day, Reuben of the 12 tribes of Israel offered sacrifices for the dedication of the altar. [7:30]

**On the 5th day, which of the 12 tribes of Israel offered sacrifices for the dedication of the altar?**

On the 5th day, Simeon of the 12 tribes of Israel offered sacrifices for the dedication of the altar. [7:36]

**On the 6th day, which of the 12 tribes of Israel offered sacrifices for the dedication of the altar?**

On the 6th day, Gad of the 12 tribes of Israel offered sacrifices for the dedication of the altar. [7:42]

**On the 8th day, which of the 12 tribes of Israel offered sacrifices for the dedication of the altar?**

On the 8th day, Manasseh of the 12 tribes of Israel offered sacrifices for the dedication of the altar. [7:54]

**On the 9th day, which of the 12 tribes of Israel offered sacrifices for the dedication of the altar?**

On the 9th day, Benjamin of the 12 tribes of Israel offered sacrifices for the dedication of the altar. [7:60]

**On the 11th day, which of the 12 tribes of Israel offered sacrifices for the dedication of the altar?**

On the 11th day, Asher of the 12 tribes of Israel offered sacrifices for the dedication of the altar. [7:60]

**On the 12th day, which of the 12 tribes of Israel offered sacrifices for the dedication of the altar?**

On the 12th day, Naphtali of the 12 tribes of Israel offered sacrifices for the dedication of the altar. [7:60]

**On the 10th day, which of the 12 tribes of Israel offered sacrifices for the dedication of the altar?**

On the 10th day, Dan of the 12 tribes of Israel offered sacrifices for the dedication of the altar. [7:66]

**From what place did Yahweh speak to Moses when he was in the tent of meeting?**

Yahweh spoke to Moses from above the atonement lid on the ark of the covenant decrees, between the two cherubims. [7:89]

## Numbers 8

#### What was Yahweh's command to Aaron about the seven lamps?

Yahweh commanded that the lamps must give light in front of the lampstand. [8:2]

#### Who showed Moses the pattern for the lamp?

Yahweh showed Moses the pattern for the lamp. [8:4]

#### What did Yahweh ask Moses do to the Levites?

Yahweh told Moses to take the Levites from among the people of Israel and purify them." [8:5]

#### What did Moses do to the Levites to purify them?

Moses sprinkled them with water of atonement, shaved their entire bodies, and washed their clothes. [8:7]

#### What was the offering that the Levites brought?

The Levites brought two young bulls and a grain offering with fine flour mixed with oil. [8:8]

#### What did Yahweh tell Moses to ask the people of Israel to do to the Levites to purify them?

Yahweh told the people of Israel to lay their hands on the Levites. [8:10]

#### Why did they present the Levites as though they were raised high before Yaweh?

They presented the Levites on behalf of the people so that the Levites might serve Yahweh. [8:11]

#### What kinds of offerings were the bulls for the Levites?

The bulls were a sin offering and a burnt offering to atone for the Levites. [8:12]

#### Where did the Levites place their hands?

The Levites placed their hands on the heads of the bulls. [8:12]

**What tribe was separated, purified, and lifted up as an offering to Yahweh so they could serve in the tent of meeting?**

The Levite tribe was separated, purified, and lifted up as an offering to Yahweh so they could serve in the tent of meeting. [8:14]

**What tribe was separated, purified, and lifted up as an offering to Yahweh so they could serve in the tent of meeting?**

The Levite tribe was separated, purified, and lifted up as an offering to Yahweh so they could serve in the tent of meeting. [8:15]

**When did Yahweh set apart all the firstborn people and animals for himself?**

Yahweh set apart all the firstborn of people and animals for himself since the day he took the lives of all the firstborn of the Egyptians in the land of Egypt. [8:17]

**Whom did Yahweh give to the people of Israel to atone for the people so that no plague would harm them when they came near the sanctuary?**

He gave the Levites, instead of the firstborn, to Aaron and his sons to do the work and to atone for the people in the tent of meeting. [8:19]

**Did Moses, Aaron, and the whole community do everything that Yahweh had commanded concerning Levites?**

Yes, they did everything that Yahweh had commanded Moses concerning the Levites. [8:20]

**What did Yahweh say to Moses about the age limits of serving in the tent meeting?**

Levites who were twenty-five years old could serve until they were fifty years. [8:24]

**What could they do when they could not serve in the tabernacle after 50?**

Levites after 50 years old could help their brothers. [8:26]

## Numbers 9

#### Who spoke to Moses in the wilderness of Sinai?

Yahweh spoke to Moses in the wilderness of Sinai. [9:1]

#### When did Yahweh spoke to Moses?

Yahweh spoke to Moses in the first month of the second year after they came out from the land of Egypt. [9:1]

#### When were the people of Israel to observe the Passover while they were in the wilderness of Sinai?

Every year they were to observe the Passover on the fourteenth day of the first month. [9:3]

#### With what question did Moses go to Yahweh?

Moses went to Yahweh with a question because there were men who were unclean but wanted to keep the Passover. [9:7]

#### What was the answer to Moses' question to Yahweh?

Yahweh told Moses that if a man was unclean because of a dead body or because he was on a long journey, he could still keep the Passover. [9:10]

#### When were those men to keep the Passover rather than on the 14th day of the 1st month?

Those men who were unclean or on a long journey kept the Passover on the 14th day of the 2nd month. [9:11]

#### What were some rules for keeping the Passover?

They ate the Passover with bread without yeast and bitter herbs and left none of it until morning while not breaking a bone of the animal. [9:11]

#### What were some rules for keeping the Passover?

They ate the Passover with bread without yeast and bitter herbs and left none of it until morning while not breaking a bone of the animal. [9:12]

**What caused a man to be cut off from his people?**

A person who was clean and not on a journey but failed to keep the Passover that Yahweh required would be cut off from his people. [9:13]

**What was the Passover law for a stranger in the land of Israel?**

He had to keep the Passover, do all the commands, and obey the laws required. [9:14]

**What happened to the cloud over the tabernacle at night?**

The cloud appeared as a fire at night. [9:15]

**What happened to the cloud over the tabernacle at night?**

The cloud appeared as a fire at night. [9:16]

**How did the people know to go or to stop traveling?**

When the cloud was taken up from over the tent, the people would travel; when the cloud stopped, the people stayed in their camp. [9:17]

**What would the people do when the cloud remained on the tabernacle for many days?**

The people would obey Yahweh's instructions and not travel. [9:19]

**When was the only time the people could journey?**

The people could only journey when the cloud lifted at Yahweh's command. [9:20]

**When was the only time the people could journey?**

The people could only journey when the cloud lifted at Yahweh's command. [9:21]

**When did the people of Israel stay in their camp and not travel?**

When the cloud stayed on the tabernacle, the people of Israel stayed in their camp and did not travel. [9:22]

**How did the people of Israel find out Yahweh's commands?**

The people of Israel found out Yahweh's commands through Moses. [9:23]

## Numbers 10

#### Why did Yahweh tell Moses to make two silver trumpets?

Yahweh told Moses to make two silver trumpets to call the community together or to move their camps. [10:2]

#### Who was to blow the trumpets?

The priests were to blow the trumpets. [10:3]

#### What was the signal for only the leaders to gather to Moses?

When the priests blew only one trumpet, that was the signal for only the leaders to gather to Moses. [10:4]

#### What was the signal for people on the east side to begin their journey?

The signal for people on the east side to begin their journey was a loud trumpet blow. [10:5]

#### What was the signal for the camps on the south side to begin their journey?

The signal for the camps on the south side to begin their journey was a second loud signal. [10:6]

#### What did a soft blow of the trumpet signal?

The community was to gather together. [10:7]

#### Who was always to blow the trumpets?

The sons of Aaron, the priests, were the only ones to blow the trumpets. [10:8]

#### When they went to war and sounded an alarm with the trumpets, what would Yahweh do?

When they went to war and sounded an alarm with the trumpet, Yahweh would remember them and save them from their enemies. [10:9]

#### What was a reminder to God, at the times of celebration, that Yahweh was their God?

They would blow the trumpets in honor of their burnt offerings and fellowship offerings. [10:10]

**What happened in the second year, in the second month, on the twentieth day of the month?**

In the second year, in the second month, on the twentieth day of the month, the cloud lifted from the tabernacle. [10:11]

**Where did the people of Israel go after leaving the wilderness of Sinai?**

The people went from the wilderness of Sinai to the wilderness of Paran. [10:12]

**What camp moved first?**

The camp of Judah moved out first. [10:14]

**Who cared for the tabernacle?**

The descendants of Gershon and of Merari. [10:17]

**Who carried the sanctuary's holy equipment?**

The Kohathites carried the holy equipment. [10:21]

**Under what banner were the next armies to set out?**

The armies under the banner of Ephraim were the next to set out. [10:22]

**Under what banner was the last army that set out?**

The armies that camped under the banner of Dan's descendants were the last that set out. [10:25]

**Who was Reuel?**

Reuel was the father of Moses' wife. [10:29]

**Who did Moses invite to come with the people of Israel?**

Moses invited Hobab his wife's father's son. [10:29]

**Where did Hobab want to go instead?**

Hobab wanted to go to his own land and to his own people. [10:30]

**Why did Moses want Hobab to go with them?**

Moses wanted Hobab to go with them because he knew how to camp in the wilderness. [10:31]

**What was over them as they journeyed in the daylight with the ark of the covenant?**

Yahweh's cloud was over as they journeyed in the daylight with the ark of the covenant. [10:33]

**What was over them as they journeyed in the daylight with the ark of the covenant?**

Yahweh's cloud was over as they journeyed in the daylight with the ark of the covenant. [10:34]

**What did Moses ask Yahweh to do as they set out on their journey?**

He asked Yahweh to scatter his enemies and make those who hated him run from him. [10:35]

**What did Moses say to Yahweh when they stopped?**

He asked Yahweh to return to Israel's many tens of thousands. [10:36]

## Numbers 11

**To what words of the people was Yahweh listening?**

The people complained about their troubles as Yahweh listened. [11:1]

**What did Moses do when the people called out to him about the fire?**

When they called out to Moses, he prayed to Yahweh, and the fire stopped. [11:2]

**What were the people of Israel asking for when they began to weep?**

The people of Israel wept and said, “Who will give us meat to eat?” [11:4]

**Where did the people find manna?**

The people walked through the camp ground and gathered manna. [11:8]

**When would the manna fall on the camp?**

When the dew fell on the camp in the night, the manna also fell. [11:9]

**How did Moses say Yahweh had treated him?**

Moses said Yahweh had treated his servant so badly. [11:11]

**For what were the people asking when they wept in front of Moses?**

They wept in front of Moses and asked for meat to eat. [11:13]

**Who did Yahweh tell Moses to bring to him?**

Yahweh told Moses to bring to him seventy of Israel’s elders. [11:16]

**What did Yahweh say the leaders would do after he put some of the Spirit on them?**

Yahweh said that the leaders would bear the burden of the people with Moses. [11:17]

**Who would supply the meat for the people to eat?**

Yahweh would give them meat, and they would eat it. [11:18]

**For how long did Yahweh say the people would eat meat?**

The people would eat meat for a whole month. [11:20]

**What did Yahweh say Moses would see about Yahweh's word?**

Yahweh said Moses would see whether or not Yahweh's word was true. [11:23]

**What did the seventy elders do when the Spirit rested on them?**

When the Spirit rested on the seventy elders, they prophesied. [11:25]

**What happened to the two men who remained in the camp?**

The Spirit also rested on the men who had remained in the camp. [11:26]

**What did Joshua ask Moses to do about the two men who were prophesying in the camp?**

Joshua asked Moses to stop them from prophesying. [11:28]

**How far from the camp did the quail fall?**

The quail fell near the camp, about a day's journey on one side and a day's journey on the other side. [11:31]

**How long were the people busy gathering the quail?**

The people were busy gathering quails all that day, all the night, and all the next day. [11:32]

**How did Yahweh act in anger, while the people were still chewing the meat?**

While the people were chewing, Yahweh became angry at them and attacked them with a very great disease. [11:33]

## Numbers 12

#### Why did Miriam and Aaron speak against Moses?

Miriam and Aaron spoke against Moses because of the Cushite woman whom he had married. [12:1]

#### What is said to emphasize that Moses was humble?

The man Moses was very humble, more humble than anyone else on earth. [12:3]

#### To where did Yahweh call Moses, Aaron, and Miriam?

Yahweh called Moses, Aaron, and Miriam out to the tent of meeting. [12:4]

#### In what and where did Yahweh appear to talk with them?

Yahweh came down in a pillar of cloud and stood at the entrance to the tent. [12:5]

#### How did Yahweh reveal himself to his prophets among the people?

When a prophet of Yahweh was with the people, Yahweh revealed himself to the prophet in visions and dreams. [12:6]

#### How did Yahweh speak differently to Moses than to other prophets?

Yahweh spoke to Moses directly, not with visions or riddles. [12:8]

#### How did God react to Aaron and Miriam?

His anger burned against them. [12:9]

#### What did Aaron notice about Miriam when Yahweh left and the cloud rose from over the tent?

When the cloud rose from over the tent, Miriam was suddenly leprous—she was as white as snow. [12:10]

#### What did Aaron say about what they had said to Moses?

Aaron said that they had spoken foolishly and sinned. [12:11]

**How did Aaron describe what Miriam's leprous body was like?**

He described her like a dead newborn whose flesh was half consumed. [12:12]

**What did Yahweh say was normal punishment if a father spat in a daughter's face.**

Yahweh says that if her father had spit in her face, she would be disgraced for seven days. [12:14]

**Where did Miriam have to stay for 7 days and what did the people not do until Miriam return to camp?**

Miriam was shut outside the camp for 7 days and the people did not journey until Miriam had returned to the camp. [12:15]

## Numbers 13

### Where did Yahweh tell Moses to send some men?

Yahweh told Moses to send some men to examine the land of Canaan, which he had given to the people of Israel. [13:2]

### What was the rank of the men who were sent from among the people of Israel?

All of the men were leaders from every tribe among the people of Israel. [13:2]

### What name did Moses use for Hoshea son of Nun who was chosen?

Moses called Hoshea son of Nun by the name of Joshua. [13:16]

### What did Moses tell the men to observe about the people who lived in the land?

Moses told the men to observe the people who lived there, whether they were strong or weak, few or many. [13:18]

### What did Moses tell the men to notice about the cities in the land?

Moses told them to see if the cities were like camps or fortified cities. [13:19]

### What did Moses tell the leaders to find out about the land and what were they to bring back?

Moses told the leaders to see whether the land was good for growing crops, whether there were trees, and to bring back samples of produce. [13:20]

### What did the men cut down in the Valley of Eschol?

When the men reached the Valley of Eshcol, they cut down a branch with a cluster of grapes. [13:23]

### How many men did it take to bring back the cluster of grapes, and what else did the people bring back?

It took two men to carry the grapes on a staff; their group also brought pomegranates and figs. [13:23]

**How long did the men spend examining the land?**

The men returned from examining the land after forty days. [13:25]

**To whom did they bring back word besides Moses and Aaron?**

They also brought back word to all the community of the people of Israel. [13:26]

**What did the men report about the people in the land?**

The men reported that the people who made their homes in the land were strong. [13:28]

**What word did the men return about the cities in the land?**

The men returned word that the cities were fortified and very large. [13:28]

**When did Caleb encourage the people to attack the land?**

Caleb encouraged the people to attack it at once. [13:30]

**Why did the other men who had gone with Caleb say they were not able to attack the people?**

The other men who had gone with Caleb said they were not able to attack the people because they were stronger than they were. [13:31]

**How did the men describe how small they felt compared to the giants of the land?**

The men said that in their own sight they were like grasshoppers in comparison with the giants of the land. [13:33]

## Numbers 14

**How did the community react to the news about the giants in the land?**

That night all the community wept loudly. [14:1]

**What did the whole community of Israel wish had happened when they criticized Moses and Aaron?**

They said to Moses and Aaron that they wished they had died in the land of Egypt or in the wilderness. [14:2]

**What did they think would have better instead of going into the land to which Yahweh had brought them?**

They thought it would have been better to return to Egypt with their wives and little ones. [14:3]

**What did the people talk with each other about doing?**

They talked about choosing another leader and returning to Egypt. [14:4]

**What did Moses and Aaron do in front of the assembly?**

Moses and Aaron lay face down in front of the assembly. [14:5]

**How did Joshua and Caleb react?**

Joshua and Caleb tore their clothes and spoke to all the people. [14:6]

**How did Joshua and Caleb react?**

Joshua and Caleb tore their clothes and spoke to all the people. [14:7]

**What did Joshua and Caleb tell the community would happen if Yahweh was pleased with them?**

They said that if Yahweh was pleased with them he would take them into that land and give it to them. [14:8]

**How did Joshua and Caleb describe the land?**

Joshua and Caleb described the land as a land that flowed with milk and honey. [14:8]

**Why did Joshua and Caleb say protection would be removed from the people of the land?**

They said that the protection of the people of the land would be removed from those people because Yahweh was with the people of Israel. [14:9]

**What did all the community want do do with Joshua and Caleb, and where did Yahweh's glory appear?**

All the community wanted to stone Joshua and Caleb to death. Yahweh's glory appeared at the tent of meeting. [14:10]

**How did Yahweh offer to bless the clan of Moses after attacking them with plague and disinheriting the people of Israel?**

Yahweh told Moses he would make his clan a nation that would be greater and mightier than the people of Israel were. [14:12]

**What did Moses say the Egyptians would do when they heard about Yahweh's destroying Israel?**

Moses said the Egyptians would tell the inhabitants in this land. [14:13]

**What did Moses say the nations would say if Yahweh killed the people of Israel in the wilderness?**

He said they would say that because Yahweh could not take this people into the land that he swore to give them, he killed them in the wilderness. [14:16]

**Why does Moses plead with Yahweh to pardon the people's sin?**

Moses pleaded with Yahweh to pardon the people's sin because of the greatness of his covenant faithfulness. [14:19]

**What did Yahweh say would happen because he had pardoned them in keeping with Moses' request?**

Yahweh said that as He lived, all the earth would be filled with his glory. [14:20]

**What did Yahweh say would happen because he had pardoned them in keeping with Moses' request?**

Yahweh said that as He lived, all the earth would be filled with his glory. [14:21]

**What had all those people done who had seen Yahweh's glory and the signs of his power that he had done in Egypt and in the wilderness?**

All the people who had seen his glory and signs had tempted him 10 times and had not listened to his voice. [14:22]

**What was going to happen to those people who had despised Yahweh?**

The people who had despised Yahweh would not see the land about which Yahweh had made an oath to their ancestors. [14:23]

**What did Caleb do because he had another spirit, and what would happen to Caleb?**

Caleb had another spirit so he followed Yahweh fully; therefore he would go into the land that he had examined and his descendants would possess it. [14:24]

**Where did Yahweh tell the people to go the next day?**

Yahweh told the people to turn tomorrow and go to the wilderness by the way of the Red Sea. [14:25]

**What age of people did Yahweh say would fall dead in the wilderness?**

Yahweh said that the dead bodies of the people from twenty years old and upward would fall in the wilderness. [14:29]

**Who were the only two men over 20 that Yahweh said he would take into the land that he had promised for their home?**

He said he would only take Caleb and Joshua into the land that he had promised for their home. [14:30]

**Whom else did Yahweh say he would take into the land?**

He said that he would take into the land the little ones whom the parents had said would be victims. [14:31]

**How many years would the people to bear the consequence of their sin and why that number?**

They would bear the consequences of their sins for forty years because the men had examined the land for 40 days. [14:34]

**What happened to the men who had gone to look at the land?**

The men whom Moses had sent to look at the land all died by Yahweh's plague. [14:36]

**What happened to the men who had gone to look at the land?**

The men whom Moses had sent to look at the land all died by Yahweh's plague. [14:37]

**Who remained alive of the men that went to look at the land?**

Of the men who had gone to look at the land, only Joshua and Caleb remained alive. [14:38]

**Why did Moses tell the people not to go into the land?**

Moses told them not to go because they were violating Yahweh's command and because Yahweh was not with them to stop their enemies from defeating them. [14:41]

**Why did Moses tell the people not to go into the land?**

Moses told them not to go because they were violating Yahweh's command and because Yahweh was not with them to stop their enemies from defeating them. [14:42]

**Who did not leave the camp to go up into the hill country with the people?**

Neither Moses nor the ark of the covenant of Yahweh left the camp when they went up into the hill country. [14:44]

## Numbers 15

#### What did the offerings at the feasts produce for Yahweh?

The offering at the feasts produced a sweet aroma for Yahweh. [15:3]

#### What grain offering were they to bring with the offering of a ram?

With the offering of a ram, they were to bring a grain offering of flour mixed with oil. [15:4]

#### What drink offering were the people to bring with their burnt offering or with the sacrifice of each lamb?

The people were told to prepare wine as the drink offering with their burnt offering or with the sacrifice of each lamb. [15:5]

#### Who was told to follow those laws about offerings?

All who were native-born Israelites were told to prepare the sacrifices and offerings as Yahweh had described here. [15:12]

#### Who was told to follow those laws about offerings?

All who were native-born Israelites were told to prepare the sacrifices and offerings as Yahweh had described here. [15:13]

#### How did the law and decree apply to the foreigner who stayed with the people of Israel?

The same law and decree applied to the traveler and foreigner who stayed with the people of Israel. [15:15]

#### How did the law and decree apply to the foreigner who stayed with the people of Israel?

The same law and decree applied to the traveler and foreigner who stayed with the people of Israel. [15:16]

#### What were the people to do with the first of their dough?

The people were to raise up a loaf from the first of their dough? [15:20]

**How often did Yahweh command the people to raise up an offering from the first dough?**

He said that they must give a raised offering throughout the people's generations. [15:21]

**What was the community to do about an unintentional sin?**

All the community had to offer one young bull, a grain offering and drink offering, and one male goat as a sin offering. [15:24]

**For whom did the priest need to make an atonement and why?**

The priest had to make an atonement for all the community of the people because the sin was an unintentional error. [15:25]

**For whom did the priest need to make an atonement and why?**

The priest had to make an atonement for all the community of the people because the sin was an unintentional error. [15:26]

**What had to be done to the person who did anything in defiance and why?**

The person who did anything in defiance had to be be cut off from among his people because he had despised Yahweh's word and broken his commandment. [15:30]

**What had to be done to the person who did anything in defiance and why?**

The person who did anything in defiance had to be be cut off from among his people because he had despised Yahweh's word and broken his commandment. [15:31]

**What did the community do to the man found gathering wood on the Sabbath?**

The community brought him outside the camp and stoned him to death. [15:35]

**What did the community do to the man found gathering wood on the Sabbath?**

The community brought him outside the camp and stoned him to death. [15:36]

**What were the descendants of Israel commanded to make for themselves on their clothes?**

The descendants of Israel were commanded to make tassels to hang on the borders of their clothes with a blue cord. [15:38]

**Of what would the tassels be a reminder to do?**

The tassels would be a reminder that they wold keep all of Yahweh's commandments and not follow after their own hearts and eyes. [15:39]

**Of what else would the tassels would be a reminder?**

The tassels would be a reminder to obey all of Yahweh's commands and that they would be holy, reserved for God. [15:40]

**What did Yahweh say he did to become the people of Israel's God?**

Yahweh said that he had brought them out of the land of Egypt, to become their God. [15:41]

## Numbers 16

**Who—along with Dathan, Abiram, and On—gathered some men against Moses?**

Korah gathered some men against Moses? [16:1]

**Who joined Korah, Dathan, Abiram, and On to rise up against Moses?**

Two hundred and fifty leaders of the Israelite people rose up with them against Moses. [16:2]

**Which two men did Korah and the others think were lifting themselves above the rest of Yahweh's community?**

They thought that Moses and Aaron were lifting themselves above the rest of Yahweh's community. [16:3]

**What did Moses do when he heard what the leaders had said to him?**

Moses lay face down when he heard what the leaders had said to him. [16:4]

**Whom did Moses say would show Korah and those with him had been chosen to be Yahweh's priest, by bringing him up to himself in the morning?**

Moses told Korah and those with him that Yahweh would show whom he had chosen as a priest, by bringing that man up to himself in the morning. [16:5]

**Whom did Moses instruct to bring censers to show whom Yahweh had chosen to be the holy one, and what were they to do with their censers?**

Moses instructed Korah all his group to bring censers on the next day and put fire and incense in them before Yahweh to show whom Yahweh had chosen to be the holy one. [16:6]

**Whom did Moses instruct to bring censers to show whom Yahweh had chosen to be the holy one, and what were they to do with their censers?**

Moses instructed Korah all his group to bring censers on the next day and put fire and incense in them before Yahweh to show whom Yahweh had chosen to be the holy one. [16:7]

**What was the work that Yahweh had separated the Levites from the community of Israel to do?**

Yahweh of Israel had separated the Levites from the community of Israel to bring them near to himself, to do work in Yahweh's tabernacle, and to stand before the community to serve them. [16:8]

**What was the work that Yahweh had separated the Levites from the community of Israel to do?**

Yahweh of Israel had separated the Levites from the community of Israel to bring them near to himself, to do work in Yahweh's tabernacle, and to stand before the community to serve them. [16:9]

**Whom were Korah and the Levites gathered against when they demanded Aaron's priesthood and complained against Aaron?**

Korah and the Levites were gathered against Yahewh when they demanded Aaron's priesthood and complained against Aaron. [16:10]

**Whom were Korah and the Levites gathered against when they demanded Aaron's priesthood and complained against Aaron?**

Korah and the Levites were gathered against Yahewh when they demanded Aaron's priesthood and complained against Aaron. [16:11]

**What did Dathan and Abiram say when Moses called them to come, and what did they say about Moses?**

Dathan and Abiram said they would not come to Moses. They said that Moses had brought them out of a land flowing with milk and honey to kill them in the wilderness, and that he wanted to rule them. [16:12]

**What did Dathan and Abiram say when Moses called them to come, and what did they say about Moses?**

Dathan and Abiram said they would not come to Moses. They said that Moses had brought them out of a land flowing with milk and honey to kill them in the wilderness, and that he wanted to rule them. [16:13]

**What did Moses ask in anger to Yahweh about Dathan and Abiram's offering, and what did Moses say he had not taken from them nor done?**

Moses asked Yahweh in anger that he not accept their offering, and Moses said he had not taken one donkey from them nor harmed any of them. [16:15]

**What did Moses tell the 250 men and Aaron to bring with them next day and where were they to come?**

Moses told Aaron and the 250 men with him to come before Yahweh with their censors. [16:16]

**What did Moses tell the 250 men and Aaron to bring with them next day and where were they to come?**

Moses told Aaron and the 250 men with him to come before Yahweh with their censors. [16:17]

**What appeared when Korah his followers assembled against Moses and Aaron and they stood at the entrance to the tent of meeting?**

When Korah his followers assembled against Moses and Aaron and stood at the entrance to the tent of meeting, the glory of Yahweh appeared to all the community. [16:19]

**What did Yahweh want Moses and Aaron to do?**

Yahweh wanted Moses and Aaron to separate themselves from among that community that he might consume the community immediately. [16:20]

**What did Yahweh want Moses and Aaron to do?**

Yahweh wanted Moses and Aaron to separate themselves from among that community that he might consume the community immediately. [16:21]

**What did Aaron and Moses do and say when the God of the spirits of all humanity instructed them to get away from the people who had gathered at the entrance of the tent?**

Moses and Aaron lay face down and asked the God of the spirits of all humanity if he had to be angry with all the community when one man had sinned. [16:22]

**What did Yahweh tell Moses to tell the community to do?**

Yahweh told Moses to tell the community to get away from the tents of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram. [16:23]

**What did Yahweh tell Moses to tell the community to do?**

Yahweh told Moses to tell the community to get away from the tents of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram. [16:24]

**Who followed Moses when he went to Dathan and Abiram and told the community to leave the tents of those wicked men and touch nothing of theirs?**

The elders followed Moses when he went to Dathan and Abiram and told the community to leave the tents of those wicked men and touch nothing of theirs. [16:25]

**What did he tell them would happen to the community if they stayed near their tents?**

He said the community would be consumed by all their sins. [16:25]

**Who followed Moses when he went to Dathan and Abiram and told the community to leave the tents of those wicked men and touch nothing of theirs?**

The elders followed Moses when he went to Dathan and Abiram and told the community to leave the tents of those wicked men and touch nothing of theirs. [16:26]

**What did he tell them would happen to the community if they stayed near their tents?**

He said the community would be consumed by all their sins. [16:26]

**Who came out of their tents and stood in the entrances to their tents with their wives, sons, and their little ones?**

Dathan and Abiram came out and stood at the entrance to their tents, with their wives, sons, and their little ones. [16:27]

**How would the people know that Yahweh had sent Moses to do all those works and that he hadn't done them by his accord?**

If the men died a natural death, then Yahweh had not sent Moses. If Yahweh created and opening in the ground and swallowed them up to go down alive into sheol, then the all people would understand that those men had despised Yahweh. [16:28]

**How would the people know that Yahweh had sent Moses to do all those works and that he hadn't done them by his accord?**

If the men died a natural death, then Yahweh had not sent Moses. If Yahweh created and opening in the ground and swallowed them up to go down alive into sheol, then the all people would understand that those men had despised Yahweh. [16:29]

**How would the people know that Yahweh had sent Moses to do all those works and that he hadn't done them by his accord?**

If the men died a natural death, then Yahweh had not sent Moses. If Yahweh created and opening in the ground and swallowed them up to go down alive into sheol, then the all people would understand that those men had despised Yahweh. [16:30]

**What happened as soon as Moses stopped speaking to Korah and his men?**

As soon as Moses stopped speaking, the ground opened and swallowed Korah, the men, their families, and their possessions. [16:31]

**What happened as soon as Moses stopped speaking to Korah and his men?**

As soon as Moses stopped speaking, the ground opened and swallowed Korah, the men, their families, and their possessions. [16:32]

**What happened to everyone in their families?**

Everyone in their families went down alive into sheol, the earth closed over them, and they perished from the midst of the community. [16:33]

**What did all Israel do, and of what were they afraid?**

All Israel fled because they were afraid the earth might swallow them up. [16:34]

**What happened to the 250 men who had offered incense to the Lord?**

Fire flashed out from Yahweh and devoured the 250 men who had offered incense. [16:35]

**What did Yahweh tell Moses to tell Eleazar, son of Aaron the priest, to do and why?**

Yahweh told Moses to tell Eleazar to take the censors out of the smoldering remains and scatter the embers because the censers were holy, reserved for him. [16:37]

**What did Moses tell Eleazar to do with the metal of the censers of those that had lost their lives because of their sin?**

Eleazar was to hammer the metal from the censors to make a covering over the altar because they were set apart for Yahweh. [16:38]

**Of what would the covering for the altar be a sign?**

The covering for the altar would be a sign of Yahweh's presence to the people of Israel. [16:38]

**What reminder did the bronze censors become?**

They would become a reminder to the people of Israel, so that no person, not descended from Aaron, would come up to burn incense before Yahweh. [16:39]

**What reminder did the bronze censors become?**

They would become a reminder to the people of Israel, so that no person, not descended from Aaron, would come up to burn incense before Yahweh. [16:40]

**What did all the community of the people of Israel say the next morning to complain against Moses and Aaron?**

The next morning all the community of the people of Israel complained against Moses and Aaron saying that Moses and Aaron had killed Yahweh's people. [16:41]

**What happened when the community looked toward the tent of meeting?**

The cloud was covering the tent of meeting and Yahweh's glory appeared. [16:42]

**Where did Moses and Aaron go?**

Moses and Aaron went to the front of the tent of meeting. [16:43]

**What did Yahweh tell Moses as they stood in front of the sacred tent?**

Yahweh told Moses that they should get away from the community so that he could consume the community immediately. [16:45]

**What did Aaron and Moses do when they were told by Yahweh to get away from the people?**

Aaron and Moses lay face down on the ground when they were told to get away from the people. [16:45]

**What did Moses tell Aaron to do to stop the plague because of Yahweh's anger?**

Moses told Aaron to take the censer, put fire in it from the altar, put incense in it, and carry it quickly to the community for the people. [16:46]

**Where did Aaron run to make atonement as the plague spread, and what did he stand between?**

Aaron ran to the middle of the community as the plague spread to make atonement, and he stood between the dead and the living. [16:47]

**Where did Aaron run to make atonement as the plague spread, and what did he stand between?**

Aaron ran to the middle of the community as the plague spread to make atonement, and he stood between the dead and the living. [16:48]

**Besides those who had died in the matter of Korah, how many died by the plague?**

Besides those who had died in the matter of Korah, those who died by the plague were 14,700. [16:49]

**What happened when Aaron returned to the entrance of the tent?**

The plague ended when Aaron returned to the entrance of the sacred tent. [16:50]

## Numbers 17

### What did Yahweh tell the people of Israel to take from each tribe and to do with that which they took?

Yahweh instructed Moses to tell the people of Israel to take twelve staffs, one from each leader of a tribe, and write the name of the leader on his staff. [17:2]

### Whose name did Yahweh instruct Moses to put on the staff of Levi?

Yahweh instructed Moses to write Aaron's name on Levi's staff. [17:3]

### What was Moses to do with the twelve staffs?

Moses was to place the staffs in the tent of meeting in front of the covenant decrees. [17:4]

### What did Yahweh say would happen to the staff of the man whom Yahweh chose?

The staff of the man, whom Yahweh chose, would bud. [17:4]

### What would happen when Yahweh caused the staff to bud?

Yahweh would cause the complaints which the people of Israel were speaking against Moses to stop. [17:5]

### When Moses talked to the people of Israel, who gave their staffs to Moses?

All the tribal leaders gave him their staffs, including Aaron. [17:6]

### What happened to one of the staffs when Moses deposited the staffs before Yahweh in the tent of the covenant decrees?

When Moses put the staffs before Yahweh in the tent of the covenant decrees, Aaron's staff budded and produced blossoms and ripe almonds. [17:8]

### What did Moses do with all the staffs?

Moses brought out all the staffs from before Yahweh, and each man found his rod and took it. [17:9]

**What did Yahweh tell Moses to do with Aaron's staff?**

Yahweh told Moses to put Aaron's staff in front of the covenant decrees. [17:10]

**Why did Yahweh tell Moses to put Aaron's staff in front of the covenant decrees?**

Yahweh told Moses to put Aaron's staff in front of the covenant decrees to keep it as a sign of guilt against the people who rebelled so that Moses would end complaints against Yahweh. [17:10]

**Of what were the people of Israel afraid?**

The people of Israel were afraid they would die when everyone approached Yahweh's tabernacle. [17:12]

**Of what were the people of Israel afraid?**

The people of Israel were afraid they would die when everyone approached Yahweh's tabernacle. [17:13]

## Numbers 18

### For what did Yahweh say that only Aaron, his sons, and his ancestor's clan would be responsible?

Yahweh told Aaron that he, his sons, and his ancestor's clan would be responsible for all sins committed against the sanctuary. [18:1]

### Who did God say would be responsible for all sins committed by anyone in the priesthood?

Only Aaron and his sons would be responsible for all sins committed by anyone in the priesthood. [18:1]

### Which tribe would help Aaron and his sons when they served in front of the tent of the covenant decrees?

The tribe of Levi, the tribe of Aaron's ancestors, would join to help Aaron and his sons when they served in front of the tent of the covenant decrees. [18:2]

### Where could the Levites not go as they served Aaron and the tent?

The Levites could not go near anything in the sanctuary nor in the altar. [18:3]

### What would happen if the Levites came near to anything in the sanctuary or altar?

If the Levites came near to anything in the sanctuary or altar, they and Aaron would die. [18:3]

### Who could not come near Aaron?

A foreigner could not come near Aaron. [18:4]

### For what would the Levites take responsibility?

The Levites would join Aaron to take care of the tent of meeting and all the work connected with the tent. [18:4]

### Why did Aaron and his sons have to take care of the sanctuary and the altar?

Aaron and his sons had to take care of the sanctuary and the altar so that Yahweh's anger did not come on the people of Israel again. [18:5]

**What gifts did Yahweh give to Aaron and his sons and why did he give them?**

Yahweh chose the Levites as a gift to Aaron, given to Yahweh, to do the work connected to the tent of meeting. [18:6]

**Who only were allowed to exercise the priesthood regarding everything connected with the altar and everything inside the curtain?**

Only Aaron and his sons could exercise the priesthood regarding everything connected with the altar and everything inside the curtain. [18:7]

**What would happen to any foreigner who approached the altar of Yahweh inside the curtain?**

Any foreigner who approached the altar of Yahweh inside the curtain would be put to death. [18:7]

**What holy offerings to Yahweh would be given to Aaron and his sons as their ongoing share?**

The things from the most holy offerings that people of Israel gave to Yahweh that were not completely burned up would be Aaron and his sons' ongoing share. [18:8]

**What holy offerings to Yahweh would be given to Aaron and his sons as their ongoing share?**

The things from the most holy offerings that people of Israel gave to Yahweh that were not completely burned up would be Aaron and his sons' ongoing share. [18:9]

**What other offerings would be for him and his sons?**

Every sacrifice that the people brought—including every grain offering, every sin offering, and every guilt offering—would be for Aaron and his sons. [18:9]

**How was every male Levite to eat those offerings?**

Every male Levite was to eat those offerings as something most holy, solemnly reserved for Yahweh. [18:10]

**To whom did Yahweh give, as their ongoing share, the gifts set apart from all the raised offerings of the people of Israel?**

Yahweh gave the gifts set apart from all the raised offerings of the people of Israel to Aaron's ritually clean sons and daughters as their ongoing share. [18:11]

**What other things was given to Aaron's family?**

All the best of the oil, the new wine, the grain, the first fruits, and the first ripe produce of their land that the people brought to Yahweh would belong to Aaron and those that were clean in his family. [18:12]

**What other things was given to Aaron's family?**

All the best of the oil, the new wine, the grain, the first fruits, and the first ripe produce of their land that the people brought to Yahweh would belong to Aaron and those that were clean in his family. [18:13]

**What would the people have to buy back?**

The people had to buy back every firstborn son and firstborn male of unclean animals. [18:15]

**At what time were the people to buy back the firstborn males?**

The people were to buy back the firstborn males after they became one month old. [18:16]

**What animals were not to be bought back but were holy, reserved for Yahweh as a sacrifice which Aaron and his sons would eat?**

Firstborn cows, sheep, or goats were not to be bought back because they were holy, reserved for Yahweh and their meat would be for Aaron and his sons. [18:17]

**What animals were not to be bought back but were holy, reserved for Yahweh as a sacrifice which Aaron and his sons would eat?**

Firstborn cows, sheep, or goats were not to be bought back because they were holy, reserved for Yahweh and their meat would be for Aaron and his sons. [18:18]

**What did Yahweh say would be given to Aaron and his sons and to his daughters as an ongoing share because those offerings stood as a covenant of salt, a binding covenant forever before Yahweh with Aaron and his descendants?**

Yahweh gave all the presented offerings of holy things to Aaron and his sons and daughters, as an ongoing share, as a covenant of salt as a binding covenant forever, before Yahweh with Aaron and Aaron's descendants. [18:19]

**Why does Yahweh tell Aaron he would not have an inheritance in the land among the people?**

Yahweh told Aaron he would have no inheritance in the land because Yahweh was his share and inheritance. [18:20]

**What else had Yahweh given the descendants of Levi as their inheritance in return for their service at the tent of meeting?**

Yahweh had given all the tithes of Israel to the descendants of Levi as their inheritance in return for their service at the tent of meeting. [18:21]

**Whom did Yahweh say would die from then on if the people came near Yahweh's tent of meeting?**

Yahweh told Aaron that from now on the people of Israel could not come near the tent of meeting, or they would die. [18:22]

**What was the offering that the Levites gave to Yahweh when they received an offering of grain or wine from the people of Israel?**

The offering that the Levites gave back to Yahweh was a tenth of the grain or wine offering. [18:27]

**To whom did the Levites give a presented offering to Yahweh from all the tithes that they had received from the people of Israel?**

The Levites gave to Aaron a presented offering to Yahweh from all the tithes that they had received from the people of Israel. [18:28]

**What would happen if the Levites profaned the holy offerings of the people of Israel?**

If the Levites profaned the holy offerings of the people of Israel, they would die. [18:32]

## Numbers 19

### What statute or law did Yahweh command the Israelite people?

Yahweh commanded the Israelite people to bring a red heifer without blemish which had never carried a yoke. [19:2]

### Where did Eleazar the priest take the heifer which someone killed in front of him?

Eleazar the priest had to take the heifer, which someone would kill in front of him, outside the camp. [19:3]

### What did Eleazar do with the blood of the heifer?

Eleazar took some of the blood on his finger and sprinkled it seven times toward the front of the tent of meeting. [19:4]

### What did another priest have to do with the heifer?

Another priest had to burn the heifer's hide, flesh, blood, and dung in front of Eleazar. [19:5]

### Where did the priest throw cedar wood, hyssop, and scarlet wool?

The priest had to throw cedar wood, hyssop, and scarlet wool into the middle of the burning heifer. [19:6]

### How long did Eleazar stay unclean after he had washed his clothes, bathed in water, and gone back to the camp?

Eleazar stayed unclean until the evening after he had washed his clothes, bathed in water, and gone back to the camp. [19:7]

### How long did the priest who had burned the heifer stay unclean after he had washed his clothes, bathed in water, and gone back to the camp?

The priest who had burned the heifer remained unclean until the evening after he had washed his clothes, bathed in water, and gone back to the camp. [19:8]

### What did someone who was clean do with the ashes from the heifer?

Someone who was clean gathered the heifer's ashes and put them outside the camp in a clean place. [19:9]

**What happened to the ashes that were placed outside the camp in a clean place?**

These ashes were kept for the community of Israel to mix with water for purification from sin since they came from a sin offering. [19:9]

**What was the permanent law about the one who gathered the heifer's ashes?**

The one who gathered the heifer's ashes washed his clothes and remained unclean until the evening. [19:10]

**How long would anyone who touched a dead body of a man be unclean?**

Anyone who touched a dead body would be unclean until the seventh day. [19:11]

**How did the person who touched a dead body purify himself?**

Anyone who touched a dead body purified himself on the third and seventh days in order to be clean the seventh day. [19:12]

**What happened to anyone who touched a dead body and did not purify himself on the third day?**

The person who did not purify himself on the third day after touching a dead body would not be clean on the seventh day. [19:12]

**Why would the person who touched a dead body, but did not purify himself, remain unclean; and what would happen to that man?**

The person who touched a dead body and did not purify himself would remain unclean because he had defiled Yahweh's tabernacle. That man would be cut off from Israel and he would remain unclean. [19:13]

**What happened to any person who went into a tent where someone had died or who was already in the tent when someone died?**

Both those who went into the tent where someone had died and those who were already in the tent would be unclean for seven days. [19:14]

**What happened to containers that were uncovered when someone died inside a tent?**

Every open container became unclean when someone died inside a tent. [19:15]

**What was the law for anyone outside a tent who touched someone who had been killed with a sword or who had touched another a dead body, a human bone, or a grave?**

The Israelite who touched someone who had been killed with a sword or who had touched a dead body, a human bone, or a grave would be unclean for seven days. [19:16]

**What had to be used for the unclean person, and in what was it mixed?**

Ashes from the burnt sin offering had to be used and were mixed in a jar with fresh water. [19:17]

**What did someone do with the ashes from the burnt sin offering that were mixed in a jar with fresh water.**

Using hyssop, someone who was clean had to sprinkle some of that water on the tent and on the things and people who were in the tent where someone had died. This water was also sprinkled on the person who had touched a human bone, a dead body, or a grave. [19:18]

**What happened to the one who sprinkled the water for impurity, and how long was he unclean?**

The one who sprinkled the water for impurity had to wash his clothes, and he was unclean until evening. [19:21]

**What happened to anyone who touched something that the unclean person had touched?**

Anyone who touched something that the unclean person had touched would be unclean until that evening. [19:22]

## Numbers 20

**Who went into the wilderness of Sin in the first month and stayed at Kadesh?**

The people of Israel went into the wilderness of Sin. [20:1]

**What happened to Miriam at Kadesh?**

Miriam died and was buried at Kadesh. [20:1]

**What happened to make the people complain against Moses and Aaron?**

There was no water for the people. [20:2]

**What happened to make the people complain against Moses and Aaron?**

There was no water for the people. [20:3]

**What did the people, the community of Yahweh, ask Moses and Aaron?**

The people asked Moses and Aaron why they brought them and their animals into the wilderness to die. [20:4]

**What did the people not have in this wilderness of Sin?**

The people did not have seed, figs, vines, pomegranates or water to drink. [20:5]

**What appeared to Moses and Aaron when they went to the entrance of the tent of meeting and lay face down?**

Yahweh's brilliant glory appeared to them when they lay face down at the entrance of the tent. [20:6]

**Why did Yahweh tell Moses to take his staff, assemble the community and speak to the rock before the eyes of the people?**

Yahweh told Moses to do this so that the rock would produce water for the people and their cattle to drink. [20:7]

**Why did Yahweh tell Moses to take his staff, assemble the community and speak to the rock before the eyes of the people?**

Yahweh told Moses to do this so that the rock would produce water for the people and their cattle to drink. [20:8]

**Why did Yahweh tell Moses to take his staff, assemble the community and speak to the rock before the eyes of the people?**

Yahweh told Moses to do this so that the rock would produce water for the people and their cattle to drink. [20:9]

**What did Moses call the people before he struck the rock?**

Moses called the people rebels. [20:10]

**What happen when Moses struck the rock twice with his staff?**

When Moses struck the rock much water came out of the rock and the community and their cattle drank the water. [20:10]

**What happen when Moses struck the rock twice with his staff?**

When Moses struck the rock much water came out of the rock and the community and their cattle drank the water. [20:11]

**What did Yahweh tell Moses and Aaron would happen because they did not trust Yahweh or sanctify him in the eyes of the people of Israel?**

Yahweh told them they would not bring the assembly of the people into the land Yahweh had given to them. [20:12]

**What did Yahweh tell Moses and Aaron would happen because they did not trust Yahweh or sanctify him in the eyes of the people of Israel?**

Yahweh told them they would not bring the assembly of the people into the land Yahweh had given to them. [20:13]

**To whom did Moses send messengers telling of the difficulties the people had encountered?**

Moses sent messengers to the king of Edom. [20:14]

**To whom did Moses send messengers telling of the difficulties the people had encountered?**

Moses sent messengers to the king of Edom. [20:15]

**To whom did Moses send messengers telling of the difficulties the people had encountered?**

Moses sent messengers to the king of Edom. [20:16]

**What did Moses ask of the king of Edom to allow the people to do?**

Moses asked the king if he would allow the people of Israel to pass through the land. [20:17]

**What did Moses say the people not do until they had passed through the king's border?**

Moses said the people would not turn to the right or to the left until they had passed the king's border. [20:17]

**What was the king's reply to Moses?**

The king's reply was that the people of Israel could not pass through his land and he would attack them with the sword if they tried to pass through it. [20:18]

**What was the reply of the people of Israel to the king of Edom?**

The people of Israel replied that they would just go along the highway, pay for any water that their livestock might drink and they would only walk through and not do anything else. [20:19]

**What did the king of Edom do after he refused to let the people of Israel pass through his land?**

The king of Edom came against Israel with a strong hand with many soldiers. [20:20]

**What did the king of Edom do after he refused to let the people of Israel pass through his land?**

The king of Edom came against Israel with a strong hand with many soldiers. [20:21]

**What did Israel do when the king of Edom refused to allow them to cross over the border?**

Israel turned away from the land of Edom. [20:21]

**Where did the people of Israel go when they journered from Kadesh?**

The people of Israel journeyed to Mount Hor. [20:22]

**What did Yahweh tell Moses and Aaron at Mount Hor about the consequence of their rebellion?**

Yahweh told them that Aaron must be gathered to his people and Aaron would not enter the land given to the people of Israel because they both rebelled against Yahweh's word at the Waters of Meribah. [20:23]

**What did Yahweh tell Moses and Aaron at Mount Hor about the consequence of their rebellion?**

Yahweh told them that Aaron must be gathered to his people and Aaron would not enter the land given to the people of Israel because they both rebelled against Yahweh's word at the Waters of Meribah. [20:24]

**Who did Yahweh say Moses and Aaron should bring with them to Mount Hor?**

Yahweh told Moses and Aaron to bring Eleazar, Aaron's son, with them to Mount Hor. [20:25]

**Why did Yahweh tell them to take Aaron's priestly garment off him and put them on Eleazar his son?**

Yahweh told them that Aaron must die and be gathered to his people. [20:26]

**What did the community do after Moses did as Yahweh commanded and they saw that Aaron was dead?**

When all the community saw that Aaron was dead, the entire nation wept for Aaron for thirty days. [20:27]

**What did the community do after Moses did as Yahweh commanded and they saw that Aaron was dead?**

When all the community saw that Aaron was dead, the entire nation wept for Aaron for thirty days. [20:28]

**What did the community do after Moses did as Yahweh commanded and they saw that Aaron was dead?**

When all the community saw that Aaron was dead, the entire nation wept for Aaron for thirty days. [20:29]

## Numbers 21

**What did the Canaanite king of Arad do when he heard that Israel was traveling by the road to Atharim?**

The king of Arad fought against Israel and took some of them captive. [21:1]

**What did Yahweh do in response to Israel's vow that they would destroy the cities of the king of Arad completely if Yahweh would give Israel victory over them?**

Yahweh listened to Israel and gave them victory over the Canaanites. [21:2]

**What did Yahweh do in response to Israel's vow that they would destroy the cities of the king of Arad completely if Yahweh would give Israel victory over them?**

Yahweh listened to Israel and gave them victory over the Canaanites. [21:3]

**What was name of the place called where Israel destroyed the Canaanites and their cities?**

The name of the place was called Hormah. [21:3]

**What happened to the people's hearts as they traveled from Mount Hor by the road to the Red Sea to go around the land of Edom?**

The people's hearts became very discouraged. [21:4]

**What was the complaint of the people against God and Moses?**

The people complained against God and Moses and asked why they had been brought out of Egypt to die in the wilderness because they had no bread, they had no water, and they hated the food. [21:5]

**What happened to the people when Yahweh sent poisonous snakes among the people?**

The snakes bit the people and many people died. [21:6]

**What did the people ask Moses to do after they confessed that they had sinned and had spoken against Yahweh and Moses?**

The people asked Moses to pray to Yahweh to take the snakes away from them. [21:7]

**What did Yahweh tell Moses to do after Moses prayed for the people?**

Yahweh told Moses to make a snake and attach it to a pole. [21:8]

**What happened if a person looked at the bronze snake after he was bitten by a snake?**

The person survived who looked at the bronze snake after he was bitten. [21:9]

**What did the people find at Beer?**

There was a well there where Yahweh had told Moses to gather the people together for Yahweh to give them water. [21:16]

**About what did Israel sing?**

They sang about the well that the leaders had dug to give them water. [21:17]

**About what did Israel sing?**

They sang about the well that the leaders had dug to give them water. [21:18]

**To whom did the Israelites send messengers?**

The Israelites sent messengers to Sihon king of the Amorites. [21:21]

**What did Israelite's messengers request of Sihon?**

The Israelites requested that they pass through his land without drinking from his wells and staying on the king's highway. [21:22]

**How did the king respond to the request of the Israelites?**

The king refused to allow Israel to pass through his border. He gathered his army and attacked Israel in the wilderness. [21:23]

**What did Israel do in response to Sihon's attack?**

The Israelites attacked the army of Sihon with the edge of the sword and took their land. [21:24]

**Where did Israel begin to live?**

Israel began to live in the land of the Amorites. [21:31]

**What happened after Moses sent men to look at Jazer?**

The Israel took its villages and drove out the Amorites who were there. [21:32]

**What did Og do when Israel turned and went up by the road of Bashan?**

Og and all his army went out to fight the Israelites at Edrei. [21:33]

**What did Yahweh say to Moses about Og and his army?**

Yahweh told Moses not to fear Og and to do to him as the Israelites did to Sihon king of the Amorites because Yahweh had given them victory over him, his army, and his land. [21:34]

**How did Moses and the people of Israel respond to Yahweh's instructions?**

Moses and the people killed Og, his sons, his army and his people and then took over his land. [21:35]

## Numbers 22

**What city was near the place where the people of Israel camped in the plains of Moab on the other side of Jordan River?**

The city of Jericho was on the other side of the Jordan River near the place where they camped. [22:1]

**Why were the people of Moab afraid of the people of Israel?**

The people of Moab were afraid of the people of Israel because they had seen all that they had done to the Amorites, and because there were many people. [22:2]

**Why were the people of Moab afraid of the people of Israel?**

The people of Moab were afraid of the people of Israel because they had seen all that they had done to the Amorites, and because there were many people. [22:3]

**Of what country was Balak king?**

Balak was the king of Moab. [22:4]

**What did Balak want Balaam to do to the nation that came from Egypt?**

Balak wanted Balaam to curse the nation that came from Egypt. [22:5]

**Why did Balak want Balaam to curse the nation that had come from Egypt?**

He wanted Balaam to curse that nation because they covered the face of the earth, they were next to him, and they were too strong for him. [22:5]

**What did Balak want Balaam to do to the nation that came from Egypt?**

Balak wanted Balaam to curse the nation that came from Egypt. [22:6]

**Why did Balak want Balaam to curse the nation that had come from Egypt?**

He wanted Balaam to curse that nation because they covered the face of the earth, they were next to him, and they were too strong for him. [22:6]

**What did Balak know that Balaam could do?**

Balak knew that whomever Balaam blessed would be blessed, and whomever he cursed would be cursed. [22:6]

**What Balaam say when he heard Balak's message?**

Balaam said that the messengers should stay there overnight and he would bring to them what Yahweh said to him. [22:8]

**What did Balaam tell Yahweh about the request of those men who came to him from Balak?**

Balaam told God that Balak asked him to curse the people of Israel so Balak could fight them and drive them out. [22:11]

**What did God tell Balaam to do about going with the messengers and about cursing the people of Israel?**

God told Balaam that he was not to go with the men and that he was not to curse the people of Israel. [22:12]

**What did Balaam tell Balak's leaders in the morning?**

Balaam told Balak's leaders to go back to their land because Yahweh refused to allow him to go with them. [22:13]

**What did the leaders tell Balak when they went back to him?**

The leaders told Balak that Balaam refused to come with them. [22:14]

**How did Balak try to get Balaam to come to him when he sent more honorable leaders to Balaam?**

Balak tried to get Balaam to curse Israel by paying him extremely well, giving him great honor, and doing whatever he told him to do. [22:17]

**What did Balaam say to Balak's men in reply to their request?**

Balaam told them that he could not go beyond the word of Yahweh, his God, and could do neither less nor more than what he old me. [22:18]

**Why did Balaam tell Balak's men they should wait overnight?**

Balaam told Balak's men to wait there that night so that he might learn anything further that Yahweh said to him. [22:19]

**What did God tell Balaam to do when he came to Balaam at night?**

When God came to Balaam that night, he told Balaam to get up and go with Balak's men but to do only what God told him to do. [22:20]

**What did Balaam do in the morning?**

Balaam got up, saddled his donkey, and went with the leaders of Moab in the morning. [22:21]

**Why did God's anger kindled?**

God's anger was kindled because Balaam went with them. [22:22]

**What did the angel of Yahweh do?**

The angel of Yahweh placed himself in the road as someone hostile to Balaam. [22:22]

**What did Balaam's donkey see standing in the road?**

Balaam's donkey saw the angel of Yahweh standing in the road with his drawn sword in his hand. [22:23]

**What did Balaam's donkey do when he saw the angel of Yahweh, and what did Balaam do to his donkey?**

Balaam's donkey turned off the road and went into a field; Balaam struck the donkey to turn her back to the road. [22:23]

**What was on the right and left of the angel of Yahweh when he stood in a narrow part of the road between some vineyards?**

A wall was on the angel's right side and another wall was on his left side. [22:24]

**What did the donkey do when he saw the angel of Yahweh with the drawn sword in the narrow place of the road, and then how did Balaam respond to what his donkey did?**

When the donkey saw the angel of Yahweh, she struck the wall and pinned Balaam's foot against it; then Balaam struck her again. [22:25]

**What did the donkey do when she saw the angel of Yahweh in another narrow place where there was no way to turn to either side, and what did Balaam do?**

The donkey laid down under Balaam; Balaam struck the donkey with his staff. [22:27]

**What did the donkey ask Balaam when Yahweh opened her mouth so she could talk?**

The donkey asked Balaam what she had done to him that made him strike her three times. [22:28]

**How did Balaam reply to the donkey, and what did he wish he could do to her?**

Balaam replied to the donkey that he had struck her because she acted so stupidly, and he wished that he had a sword in his hand so that he could kill her. [22:29]

**What did Balaam see and do when Yahweh opened his eyes?**

Balaam saw the angel of Yahweh standing in the road with his drawn sword in his hand so Balaam lowered his head and lay face down. [22:31]

**Why did the angel of Yahweh tell Balaam about why his donkey acted the way she did?**

The angel told Balaam that when his donkey saw the angel she turned away three times. [22:32]

**Why did the angel of Yahweh tell Balaam about why his donkey acted the way she did?**

The angel told Balaam that when his donkey saw the angel she turned away three times. [22:33]

**What did the angel say would have happened to Balaam if his donkey had not turned away?**

The angel told Balaam that if his donkey had not turned away the angel would have killed Balaam and spared the donkey's life. [22:33]

**What did Balaam confess to the angel, and what did he offer to do?**

Balaam confessed that he had sinned and offered to return to the place from which he had come. [22:34]

**How did the angel reply to Balaam?**

The angel replied that Balaam should go ahead with the men but only speak the words that the angel told him to speak. [22:35]

**What did Balak do when he heard that Balaam had come?**

Balak went out to meet Balaam. [22:36]

**What did Balak ask Balaam when he met him at the city of Aron, a city on Moab's border?**

Balak asked Balaam why he had not come when Balak summoned him, and did Balaam not think Balak was able to honor him. [22:37]

**What did Balaam tell Balak that he could only say?**

Balam told Balak that he could only say the words that God put into his mouth. [22:38]

**What did Balak do when he and Balaam arrived at Kiriath Huzoth?**

When they arrived at Kiriath Huzoth, Balak sacrificed oxen and sheep and gave some meat to Balaam and the leaders who were with him. [22:39]

**What did Balak do when he and Balaam arrived at Kiriath Huzoth?**

When they arrived at Kiriath Huzoth, Balak sacrificed oxen and sheep and gave some meat to Balaam and the leaders who were with him. [22:40]

**What could Balaam see when Balak took him up to the shrines of Baal?**

Balaam could see only a part of the Israelites in their camp. [22:41]

## Numbers 23

#### What did Balaam the prophet tell Balak the king to do?

Balaam told Balak to build seven altars for him and prepare seven bulls and seven rams. [23:1]

#### What did Balak do about Balaam's request?

Balak did as Balaam requested, and they offered a bull and a ram on each altar. [23:2]

#### What did Balaam tell Balak that Yahweh might do when Balaam went aside?

Balaam told Balak that Yahweh might come to meet him and then he would tell Balak whatever Yahweh showed him. [23:3]

#### What did Yahweh tell Balaam to do?

Yahweh told Balaam to return to Balak to speak a message to him. [23:5]

#### What two questions did Balaam ask in the first part of the message God gave him?

Balaam asked, "How can I curse those whom God has not cursed? How can I oppose those whom Yahweh does not oppose?" [23:7]

#### What two questions did Balaam ask in the first part of the message God gave him?

Balaam asked, "How can I curse those whom God has not cursed? How can I oppose those whom Yahweh does not oppose?" [23:8]

#### What did Balaam say about how Israel considered themselves?

Balaam said that the Israel did not consider themselves to be just an ordinary nation. [23:9]

#### What did Balaam say about the size of Israel?

He said no one could number even one fourth of Israel. [23:10]

#### What kind of death did Balaam wish to die?

Balaam wished to die the death of a righteous person, and that he wanted his life's end to be like Israel's end. [23:10]

**What did Balak say that Balaam had done instead of cursing his enemies?**

Balak said that Balaam had blessed his enemies instead of cursing them. [23:11]

**How did Balaam reply when Balak said he had blessed his enemies instead of cursing them?**

Balaam answered that he was careful to say only what Yahweh put in his mouth. [23:12]

**What did Balak want Balaam to do when Balak took Balaam to another place where he could see the nearest part of Israel, Balak's enemies?**

Balak wanted Balaam to curse Balak's enemies. [23:13]

**Where did Balak take Balaam, and what did he do there?**

Balak took Balaam to the top of Mount Pisgah and he built seven more altars there and offered up a bull and a ram on each altar. [23:14]

**What did Balaam tell Balak he was going to do while Balak stood by his burnt offering?**

Balaam said that he was going to meet with Yahweh. [23:15]

**What was the message that Yahweh put in Balaam's mouth?**

Balaam said that God does not lie and he does not change his mind. [23:19]

**What did Balaam say that he could not do about God's command to bless Israel?**

Balaam said that he could not reverse God's command to bless Israel. [23:20]

**Who did Balaam say was with the Israelites?**

Balaam said that Yahweh was with the Israelites. [23:21]

**What did Balaam say God's strength is like?**

He said God's strength is like the strength of a wild ox. [23:22]

**What things could not work against nor harm Israel?**

Sorcery and fortune telling could not work against nor harm Israel. [23:23]

**What had to be said about Jacob and Israel?**

It had to be said, “Look what God has done!” [23:23]

**How did Balaam describe what the people of Israel were like?**

The people of Israel were like lions that attackrd and ate their victims. [23:24]

**What did Balak say to Balaam after Balaam gave his prophecy?**

Balak said to Balaam that he should neither curse nor bless the Israelites at all. [23:25]

**What did Balaam tell Balak was the only thing that he could say?**

Balaam told Balak that he could say only what Yahweh told him to say. [23:26]

**What did Balak think Balaam might be able to do if he took Balaam to another place?**

Balak thought God might allow Balaam to curse the Israelites from another place. [23:27]

**So now where did Balak take Balaam?**

Balak took Balaam to the top of Mount Peor. [23:28]

**What did Balaam tell Balak to do this time and what did Balak do?**

Balaam told Balak to build seven altars so Balak did as Balaam said and offered a bull and a ram on each altar. [23:29]

**What did Balaam tell Balak to do this time and what did Balak do?**

Balaam told Balak to build seven altars so Balak did as Balaam said and offered a bull and a ram on each altar. [23:30]

## Numbers 24

**What did Balaam the prophet not do when he saw that blessing Israel pleased Yahweh?**

Balaam did not use sorcery but looked toward the wilderness. [24:1]

**What happened when Balaam raised his eyes and saw Israel camped, each in their own tribe?**

When Balaam raised his eyes and saw Israel camped, the Spirit of God came on Balaam and he received a prophecy. [24:2]

**What happened when Balaam raised his eyes and saw Israel camped, each in their own tribe?**

When Balaam raised his eyes and saw Israel camped, the Spirit of God came on Balaam and he received a prophecy. [24:3]

**What did Balaam do when he saw a vision from the Almighty?**

Balaam bowed down with his eyes open. [24:4]

**What did Balaam say about Jacob's tents?**

Balaam said that the tents of Jacob were beautiful. [24:5]

**How did Balaam describe the beauty of the place where Israel lived?**

Balaam described valleys like gardens by the riverside, like aloes planted by Yahweh, and like cedars beside the waters. [24:6]

**With what did God bless Israel in the land in which they lived?**

God blessed Israel with flowing water that would also water the seeds they planted. [24:7]

**What would happen to the kingdom of Israel?**

Their kingdom would be honored. [24:7]

**From what place did God bring his people?**

God brought his people out of Egypt. [24:8]

**What did Balaam say about the strength of Israel?**

Balaam said the Israel's strength was like a wild ox. [24:8]

**What would happen to the nations who fought against Israel?**

Balaam said Israel would eat up the nations who fought against him, break their bones to pieces, and shoot them with his arrows [24:8]

**What did Balaam prophesy would happen to those who blessed or cursed Israel?**

Those who blessed Israel would be blessed and those who cursed Israel would be cursed. [24:9]

**How did Balak show his anger against Balaam?**

Balak struck his hands together in anger. [24:10]

**Who did Balak say kept Balaam from getting the promised reward?**

Balak said that Yahweh kept Balaam from getting his reward. [24:11]

**What did Balaam tell Balak he could not do even if Balak gave him his palace full of silver and gold?**

Balaam told Balak that he could not go beyond Yahweh's word to say anything bad or good, or to say anything that he might want to say. [24:13]

**What did Balaam say was the only thing that he could say?**

Balaam said that he could only say what Yahweh told him to say. [24:13]

**About what did Balaam warn Balak before he returned to his own people?**

Balaam warned Balak what Israel was going to do to Balak's people in the days that were coming. [24:14]

**From whom did Balaam say that his prophecy, words, knowledge, and visions came?**

Balaam said that his prophecy, words, knowledge, and visions came from God, the Most High, the Almighty. [24:16]

**What did Balaam say would come out of Jacob and rise out of Israel?**

Balaam said that a star would come out of Jacob, and a scepter would rise out of Israel. [24:17]

**What did Balaam say that star and scepter would do to Moab's leaders and all the descendants of Seth?**

Balaam said that that star and scepter would shatter and destroy Moab's leaders and all the descendants of Seth. [24:17]

**What would happen to Edom and Seir when Israel conquered them with force?**

Edom and Seir would become possessions of Israel, and Israel would conquer them with force. [24:18]

**What would come out of Jacob and what would he do?**

A king who would have dominion would come out of Jacob and he would destroy the survivors of their city. [24:19]

**What would happen to Amalek, the greatest of nations?**

The final end of Amalek, the greatest of nations, would be destruction. [24:20]

**What did Balaam prophesy would happen to Kain and the Kenites who lived in a strong place in the rocks?**

Kain would be ruined when Assyria carried them away captive. [24:21]

**What did Balaam prophesy would happen to Kain and the Kenites who lived in a strong place in the rocks?**

Kain would be ruined when Assyria carried them away captive. [24:22]

**What would come from the coast of Kittim which would attack Assyria and conquer Eber, and then what would happen to them?**

Ships would come from the coast Kittim which would attack Assyria and conquer Eber; but they, too, would end in destruction. [24:24]

**When Balaam ended his final prophecy, what did he do and what did Balak do?**

Balaam got up and returned to his home. Balak also went away. [24:25]

## Numbers 25

**What caused Yahweh's anger to be kindled against Israel?**

The men began to sleep with the women of Moab and people ate and bowed down to the Moabite gods. [25:1]

**What caused Yahweh's anger to be kindled against Israel?**

The men began to sleep with the women of Moab and people ate and bowed down to the Moabite gods. [25:2]

**What did Yahweh tell Moses to do to Israel's leaders who worshiped Baal of Peor?**

Yahweh told Moses to kill all the Israelite leaders who had joined in worshiping Baal of Peor and to hang those leaders up before Yahweh. [25:4]

**Where was the community of the people of Israel when one of the men brought a Midianite woman among his family?**

When one of the men brought a Midianite woman among his family, the people of Israel were weeping at the entrance to the tent of meeting. [25:6]

**What did Phinehas, son of Eleazar do when he saw the Israelite man and the Midianite woman?**

When Phinehas saw the Israelite man and the Midianite woman, he rose up from among the community and took a spear in his hand. [25:7]

**What happened to the Israelite who brought a Midianite woman into the camp in the sight of Moses?**

Phineas the priest took a spear and thrust a spear into the bodies of both the man and the woman. [25:8]

**What did God do to stop them from sleeping with the Moabite women and worshiping Baal of Peor, and how many died ?**

God sent a plague so that those who died were 24,000 in number. [25:8]

**What did God do to stop them from sleeping with the Moabite women and worshiping Baal of Peor, and how many died ?**

God sent a plague so that those who died were 24,000 in number. [25:9]

**Why was Yahweh's rage turned away from the people of Israel?**

Yahweh's rage was turned away because Phinehas was passionate with Yahweh's zeal. [25:11]

**What was the first name Yahweh called his a covenant of everlasting priesthood?**

Yahweh called his covenant of everlasting priesthood, his covenant of peace. [25:12]

**Why did Yahweh make a covenant of everlasting priesthood with Phinehas?**

Yahweh made a covenant with Phinehas because he was zealous for Yahweh and had atoned for the people of Israel. [25:13]

**Why did Yahweh tell Moses to treat the Midianites as enemies and attack them?**

God told Moses to treat the Midianites as enemies and attack them because they had treated Israel like enemies with their deceitfulness. [25:17]

**Why did Yahweh tell Moses to treat the Midianites as enemies and attack them?**

God told Moses to treat the Midianites as enemies and attack them because they had treated Israel like enemies with their deceitfulness. [25:18]

**How did Yahweh refer to Cozbi, the daughter of a leader in Midian who was killed on the day of the plague?**

He referred to Cozbi, the daughter of a leader in Midian who was killed on the day of the plague, as their sister. [25:18]

## Numbers 26

#### What did Yahweh tell Moses and Eleazar to do after the plague?

Yahweh told them to count all the people of Israel from twenty years old and up, by their tribes, who were able to go to war. [26:2]

#### What did Moses and Eleazar tell the people Yahweh had commanded them to do?

They told the people they needed to count the people from 20 years old and up, who had come out of the land of Egypt. [26:4]

#### Who was the firstborn of Israel?

The firstborn of Israel was Reuben. [26:5]

#### How many men did the clans of Reuben's descendants number?

The clans of Reuben's descendants numbered 43,730 men. [26:7]

#### Who were the sons of Eliab, descendant of Reuben, and what did his sons do?

Eliab's sons were Nemuel, Dathan and Abiram. Dathan and Abiram rebelled against Yahweh by following Korah who had challenged Moses and Aaron. [26:9]

#### What happened to all the followers of Korah that became a warning sign?

The earth swallowed them up and fire devoured 250 men. [26:10]

#### Whose line did not die out?

Korah's line did not die out. [26:11]

#### Who was listed next of Israel's sons, and how many did their descendants number?

The clans of Simon was the next of Israel's sons; they numbered 22,200 total men. [26:14]

#### How many did the male descendants of Gad number?

The male descendants of gad numbered 40,500 men. [26:18]

**What happened to Judah's sons, Er and Onan?**

They died in the land of Canaan. [26:19]

**How many men were in the other descendants of Judah?**

The other descendants of Judah numbered 76,500 men. [26:22]

**What was the number of the men of the clans from Issachar's descendants?**

The number of the men of the clans from Issachar's descendants was 64,300 men. [26:25]

**What was the number of the men from Zebulun's descendants?**

The number of the men from Zebulun's descendants were 60,500 men. [26:27]

**Who were Joseph's children?**

The children of Joseph were Manasseh and Ephraim. [26:28]

**How many daughters did Zelophehad son of Hepher have although he had no sons?**

Zelophehad son of Hepher had no sons and had five daughters. [26:33]

**How many men came from the descendants of Manasseh?**

The men that came from the descendants of Manasseh numbered 52,700 men. [26:34]

**How many men came from the descendants of Ephraim?**

The men that came from the descendants of Ephraim numbered 32,500 men. [26:37]

**How many men came from the descendants of Benjamin?**

The men that came from the descendants of Benjamin numbered 45,600 men. [26:41]

**How many men came from the descendants of Dan?**

The men that came from the descendants of Dan were numbered 64,400 men. [26:43]

**How many men came from the descendants of Asher?**

The men that came from the descendants of Asher numbered 53,400 men. [26:47]

**How many men were numbered from the descendants of Naphtali?**

The men that came from the descendants of Naphtali were numbered 45,400 men. [26:50]

**What was the complete count of the men of the people of Israel?**

The complete count of men from among the people of Israel was 601,730. [26:51]

**How did Yahweh say the land would be divided?**

Yahweh said to divide the land among those men as an inheritance according to the number of their names. [26:53]

**Who would get more and who would get less land for their inheritance?**

The clans who were larger in number would be given more inheritance and the clans who were smaller in number would be given less inheritance. [26:54]

**What way would be used to divide the land?**

The land would be divided by random lots from among their ancestor's tribes. [26:55]

**From what clan were Gershon, Kohath, and Marari?**

Gershon, Kohath, and Marari were from the Levite clans. [26:57]

**From what clan did the Libnites, Hebronites, Mahlites, Mushites, and Korahites descend?**

The Libnites, Hebronites, Mahlites, Mushites, and Korahites were descended from Levi. [26:58]

**Who was Amran's ancestor?**

Amram's ancestor was Kohath. [26:58]

**Who were the children of Amram and Jochebed, a descendant of Levi who was born in Egypt?**

Their children were Aaron, Moses, and Miriam, their sister. [26:59]

**Who was the father of Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar?**

Aaron was the father of Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar. [26:60]

**What happened to Nadab and Abihu and why did they die?**

Nadab and Abihu died when they offered unacceptable fire before Yahweh. [26:61]

**What was the number of males from Levi that were one month old and older?**

The number of males from Levi who were one month old and older was 23,000. [26:62]

**Why was the number of males one month old and up not counted among Israel's descendants?**

The males one month old and up were not counted among Israel's descendants because they had no land inheritance among the people of Israel. [26:62]

**Where did Moses and Eleazar the priest count the people of Israel?**

Moses and Eleazar counted the people of Israel in the plains of Moab by the Jordan at Jericho. [26:63]

**How many men were found who had been counted by Moses and Aaron the priest when the descendants of Israel had been counted in the wilderness of Sinai?**

There was no man counted that had been counted by Moses and Aaron when the descendants of Israel had been counted in the wilderness of Sinai. [26:64]

**Why wasn't Moses and Aaron able to count these descendants?**

Yahweh had said that those people would die in the wilderness, except for Caleb and Joshua. [26:65]

## Numbers 27

#### Why did Zelophehad die in the wilderness?

Zelophehad died in the wilderness not because he was one of those who gathered against Yahweh in the company of Korah, but he died because of his own sin. [27:3]

#### What did the daughters of Zelophehad want Moses to give them?

The daughters of Zelophehad wanted Moses to give them land among their father's relatives. [27:4]

#### What did Yahweh say should happen to the inheritance of a man when he dies and has no son?

When a man died without a son, then his inheritance must pass to his daughter. [27:8]

#### If a man died and has no son or daughter, who received his inheritance next?

If a man had no son or daughters, his inheritance passed to his brothers. [27:9]

#### Why was Moses to be gathered with his people instead of going into the land which Yahweh had given them?

Moses was to be gathered with his people because he and Aaron rebelled against the command of Yahweh by striking the rock in anger. [27:12]

#### Why was Moses to be gathered with his people instead of going into the land which Yahweh had given them?

Moses was to be gathered with his people because he and Aaron rebelled against the command of Yahweh by striking the rock in anger. [27:13]

#### Why was Moses to be gathered with his people instead of going into the land which Yahweh had given them?

Moses was to be gathered with his people because he and Aaron rebelled against the command of Yahweh by striking the rock in anger. [27:14]

#### Why did Moses ask Yahweh to appoint a man over the community?

Moses asked that Yahweh appoint a man over the community so they would not be like sheep that have no shepherd. [27:15]

**Why did Moses ask Yahweh to appoint a man over the community?**

Moses asked that Yahweh appoint a man over the community so they would not be like sheep that have no shepherd. [27:16]

**Why did Moses ask Yahweh to appoint a man over the community?**

Moses asked that Yahweh appoint a man over the community so they would not be like sheep that have no shepherd. [27:17]

**Why did Yahweh instruct Moses to lay his hand on Joshua, son of Nun?**

Yahweh instructed Moses to choose Joshua because he was a man in whom Yahweh's spirit lived. [27:18]

**Why did Yahweh instruct Moses to lay his hand on Joshua, son of Nun?**

Yahweh instructed Moses to choose Joshua because he was a man in whom Yahweh's spirit lived. [27:19]

**How much authority did Yahweh command Moses to give to Joshua?**

Moses was to give Joshua the authority to seek Yahweh's will by the decisions of the Urim and command all Israel to obey him. [27:20]

**How much authority did Yahweh command Moses to give to Joshua?**

Moses was to give Joshua the authority to seek Yahweh's will by the decisions of the Urim and command all Israel to obey him. [27:21]

**How did Moses respond to Yahweh's command?**

Moses placed Joshua before Eleazar the priest and all the community and laid his hands on him as he commanded him to lead as Yahweh had instructed him. [27:22]

**How did Moses respond to Yahweh's command?**

Moses placed Joshua before Eleazar the priest and all the community and laid his hands on him as he commanded him to lead as Yahweh had instructed him. [27:23]

## Numbers 28

**What did Yahweh say the sacrifices produced for him?**

Yahweh said the sacrifices produced a sweet aroma for him. [28:2]

**What two animals, one in the morning and one in the evening, were to be offered in the regular burnt offerings each day?**

The sacrifices in the regular burnt offerings in the mornings and in the evenings were to be male lambs without blemish. [28:3]

**What two animals, one in the morning and one in the evening, were to be offered in the regular burnt offerings each day?**

The sacrifices in the regular burnt offerings in the mornings and in the evenings were to be male lambs without blemish. [28:4]

**What else did they have to offer with the regular burnt offering?**

They had to offer a tenth of an ephah of fine flour as a grain offering mixed with a fourth of a hin of beaten oil. [28:5]

**What was the drink offering to Yahweh that had to be added to those regular burnt offerings and what did they do with it?**

One fourth of a hin of strong drink had to be added to these sacrifices and poured out in the holy place. [28:7]

**What was the drink offering to Yahweh that had to be added to those regular burnt offerings and what did they do with it?**

One fourth of a hin of strong drink had to be added to these sacrifices and poured out in the holy place. [28:8]

**What had to be offered on the Sabbath day?**

On the Sabbath day, two male lambs, each a year old without blemish and fine flour mixed with oil, and a drink offering had to be offered. [28:9]

**What had to be offered on the Sabbath day?**

On the Sabbath day, two male lambs, each a year old without blemish and fine flour mixed with oil, and a drink offering had to be offered. [28:10]

**What special animal sacrifices had to be made at the beginning of each month?**

At the beginning of the month the animals of the special sacrifices were two young bulls, one ram, and seven one year old male lambs without blemish. [28:11]

**What were the grain offerings given with the two bulls and for the one ram?**

The grain offerings for each of the two bulls was three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil, and the grain offering for one ram was two tenths of fine flour mixed with oil. [28:12]

**What was the grain offering for each lamb?**

Each lamb had a grain offering of a tenth of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil. [28:13]

**How often were these special burnt offerings to be given?**

These special burnt offerings were to be given every month throughout the year. [28:14]

**What was offered with the regular burnt offering and the drink offering?**

One male goat was offered as a sin offering to Yahweh. [28:15]

**When did Yahweh's Passover come?**

Yahweh's Passover came during the first month, on the fourteenth day of the month. [28:16]

**On what day was the feast to be held and what kind of bread was eaten for seven days?**

The feast was to be held on the fifteenth day of the first month, and they ate bread without yeast for seven days. [28:16]

**On what day was the feast to be held and what kind of bread was eaten for seven days?**

The feast was to be held on the fifteenth day of the first month, and they ate bread without yeast for seven days. [28:17]

**What did they do to honor Yahweh on the first day of the Passover, and what did they not do that day?**

They had a holy assembly to honor Yahweh; on that day they did no normal work. [28:18]

**What animal sacrifices had to be made during the seven days of the Passover?**

They offered two young bulls, one ram, and seven one year old male lambs without blemish. [28:19]

**What grain offerings did they give with the two young bulls and with the ram?**

With the bulls they offered three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil and with the ram they offered two tenths. [28:20]

**What did they offer with the lambs?**

With each lamb they offered a tenth of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil. [28:21]

**Why was the male goat given?**

The male goat was given as a sin offering to make atonement for themselves. [28:22]

**What happened on the seventh day of the feast of the Passover?**

On the seventh day of the feast of the Passover they had to have a holy assembly to honor Yahweh and do no normal work on that day. [28:25]

**What did they have to offer of the day of the first fruits in their Festival of Weeks and what did they do on that day?**

On the day of the first fruits, they offered a new grain offering to Yahweh in their Festival of Weeks, and had a holy assembly to honor Yahweh and did no normal work on that day. [28:26]

## Numbers 29

**Why did the people of Israel have a holy assembly on the first day of the seventh month; what did they not do and what did they do on that day?**

On the first day of the seventh month the people of Israel had a holy assembly to honor Yahweh; they did no normal work and they blew trumpets. [29:1]

**On that day, what animals did they offer and why did they offer it?**

On that day, they offered a burnt offering of one young bull, one ram, and seven male lambs a year old—each without blemish—to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh. [29:2]

**What was the grain offering that they offered with the animals?**

With the animals they offered a grain offering of fine flour mixed with oil. [29:3]

**Why did they offer one male goat?**

They offered one male goat as a sin offering to make atonement for themselves. [29:4]

**When were they to make this sin offering, in addition to all of the usual offerings they were to make each month?**

They were to make this sin offering in the seventh month, in addition to all of the usual offerings they were to make each month. [29:6]

**What did Yahweh say the people of Israel had do on the tenth day of the seventh month?**

On the tenth day of the seventh month the people of Israel had to have a holy assembly to honor Yahweh, humble themselves, and do no work. [29:7]

**What animals did they have to offer as a burnt offering to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh on the fifteenth day of the seventh month?**

On the fifteenth day of the seventh month the people of Israel had to offer offer one young bull, one ram, and seven male lambs a year old—without any blemish. [29:8]

**What did the people of Israel have to put with each of the animals?**

The people of Israel had to put flour mixed with oil with each of the animals. [29:9]

**What did the people of Israel have to put with each of the animals?**

The people of Israel had to put flour mixed with oil with each of the animals. [29:10]

**Why was the male goat given?**

The male goat was given as a sin offering. [29:11]

**On what day was there another holy assembly to honor Yahweh in which they did no normal work and this time kept the festival for him for seven days?**

On the fifteenth day of the seventh month there was another holy assembly to honor Yahweh in which they did no normal work and kept the festival for him seven days. [29:12]

**On this day how many bulls, rams and male lambs a year old without any blemishes did they offer?**

On this day they offered thirteen young bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs a year old, each without blemish. [29:13]

**In addition to the grain offerings, drink offerings, and other animal sacrifices, what other animal was offered as a sin offering?**

In addition to the grain offerings, drink offerings, and other animal sacrifices, a male goat was offered as a sin offering. [29:16]

**How many bulls did they offer on the second day of the assembly?**

On the second day of the assembly, they offered twelve young bulls. [29:17]

**How many bulls did they offer on the third day of the assembly?**

On the third day of the assembly they offered eleven bulls, and all the sacrifices of the previous day. [29:20]

**How many bulls did they offer on the third day of the assembly?**

On the third day of the assembly they offered eleven bulls, and all the sacrifices of the previous day. [29:21]

**How many bulls did they offer on the third day of the assembly?**

On the third day of the assembly they offered eleven bulls, and all the sacrifices of the previous day. [29:22]

**How many bulls did they offer on the fourth day of the assembly in addition to all the sacrifices of the previous day?**

On the fourth day of the assembly the people of Israel had to offer ten bulls as well as all the sacrifices of the previous day. [29:23]

**How many bulls did they offer on the fourth day of the assembly in addition to all the sacrifices of the previous day?**

On the fourth day of the assembly the people of Israel had to offer ten bulls as well as all the sacrifices of the previous day. [29:24]

**How many bulls did they offer on the fourth day of the assembly in addition to all the sacrifices of the previous day?**

On the fourth day of the assembly the people of Israel had to offer ten bulls as well as all the sacrifices of the previous day. [29:25]

**How did the people of the Israel have to celebrate the fifth day of the assembly?**

On the fifth day of the assembly the people of Israel had offer nine bulls and all the sacrifices of the previous day. [29:26]

**How did the people of the Israel have to celebrate the fifth day of the assembly?**

On the fifth day of the assembly the people of Israel had offer nine bulls and all the sacrifices of the previous day. [29:27]

**How did the people of the Israel have to celebrate the fifth day of the assembly?**

On the fifth day of the assembly the people of Israel had offer nine bulls and all the sacrifices of the previous day. [29:28]

**How did the people of Israel celebrate the sixth day of the assembly?**

On the sixth day of the assembly the people of Israel had to offer eight bulls and all the sacrifices of the previous day. [29:29]

**How did the people of Israel celebrate the sixth day of the assembly?**

On the sixth day of the assembly the people of Israel had to offer eight bulls and all the sacrifices of the previous day. [29:30]

**How did the people of Israel celebrate the sixth day of the assembly?**

On the sixth day of the assembly the people of Israel had to offer eight bulls and all the sacrifices of the previous day. [29:31]

**How were the people of Israel to celebrate the seventh day of the assembly?**

On the seventh day of the assembly the people of Israel were to offer seven bulls and all the sacrifices of the previous day. [29:32]

**How were the people of Israel to celebrate the seventh day of the assembly?**

On the seventh day of the assembly the people of Israel were to offer seven bulls and all the sacrifices of the previous day. [29:33]

**How were the people of Israel to celebrate the seventh day of the assembly?**

On the seventh day of the assembly the people of Israel were to offer seven bulls and all the sacrifices of the previous day. [29:34]

**How were the people of Israel to celebrate the eighth day of the assembly?**

On the eighth day of the assembly the people of Israel were to have another solemn assembly and do no normal work. [29:35]

**What animals were they to offer on the eighth day for their burnt offering by fire to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh?**

They had to offer one bull, one ram, and seven male lambs a year old, each without blemish. [29:36]

**What else did they have to offer in addition to the bull, ram, and seven male lambs a year old and without blemish?**

In addition to the bull, ram, and seven male lambs which were a year old and without blemish, they were to offer grain offerings and drink offerings as well as one male goat as a sin offering. [29:37]

**What else did they have to offer in addition to the bull, ram, and seven male lambs a year old and without blemish?**

In addition to the bull, ram, and seven male lambs which were a year old and without blemish, they were to offer grain offerings and drink offerings as well as one male goat as a sin offering. [29:38]

**Besides their burnt offerings, grain offerings, drink offerings, and fellowship offerings, what other offerings did they have?**

Besides their burnt offerings, grain offerings, drink offerings, and fellowship offerings, they had vows and freewill offerings. [29:39]

**What did Moses tell the people of Israel?**

Moses told the people of Israel everything that Yahweh had commanded him to say. [29:40]

## Numbers 30

**What must a person who makes a vow not do?**

He must not break his word. [30:1]

**What must a person who makes a vow not do?**

He must not break his word. [30:2]

**If a young woman who lives in her father's house makes a vow to Yahweh and her father hears her vow but says nothing to reverse the vow, is the vow in force?**

Yes, it is in force. [30:3]

**If a young woman who lives in her father's house makes a vow to Yahweh and her father hears her vow but says nothing to reverse the vow, is the vow in force?**

Yes, it is in force. [30:4]

**If a young woman who lives in her father's house makes a vow to Yahweh and her father stops her on the day that he hears of it, is the vow in force?**

No, the vow is not in force. [30:5]

**If a young woman who is married makes her vows and her husband hears about it and does nothing to stop her, are the vows in force?**

Yes, the vows are in force. [30:6]

**If a young woman who is married makes her vows and her husband hears about it and does nothing to stop her, are the vows in force?**

Yes, the vows are in force. [30:7]

**If a young woman's husband stops her on the day that he hears about her vows, are the vows in force?**

No, the vows are not in force. [30:8]

**If a widow or a divorced woman makes a vow to Yahweh, is the vow in force?**

Yes, the vow is in force. [30:9]

**If a woman in her husband's family makes a vow and her husband hears of it and says nothing to her, is the vow in force?**

Yes, her vows must remain in force. [30:10]

**If a woman in her husband's family makes a vow and her husband cancels it on the day that he hears about it, is the vow in force?**

No, her vow will not remain in force. [30:10]

**If a woman in her husband's family makes a vow and her husband hears of it and says nothing to her, is the vow in force?**

Yes, her vows must remain in force. [30:11]

**If a woman in her husband's family makes a vow and her husband cancels it on the day that he hears about it, is the vow in force?**

No, her vow will not remain in force. [30:12]

**If a woman in her husband's family makes a vow and her husband hears of it and says nothing to her, is the vow in force?**

Yes, her vows must remain in force. [30:13]

**If a woman in her husband's family makes a vow and her husband cancels it on the day that he hears about it, is the vow in force?**

No, her vow will not remain in force. [30:13]

**If a woman in her husband's family makes a vow and her husband hears of it and says nothing to her, is the vow in force?**

Yes, her vows must remain in force. [30:14]

**If a wife's husband tries to cancel her vow a long time after he has heard about it, is the vow in force?**

Yes, it will be in force, and if he breaks it, he will be responsible for her sin and suffer the penalty for breaking it. [30:15]

## Numbers 31

**What did Yahweh tell Moses would happen after he avenged the people of Israel against the Midianites?**

Yahweh told Moses that Moses would die and be gathered to his people. [31:1]

**What did Yahweh tell Moses would happen after he avenged the people of Israel against the Midianites?**

Yahweh told Moses that Moses would die and be gathered to his people. [31:2]

**How many soldiers was each tribe to send to war against Midian?**

Each tribe was to send a thousand soldiers. [31:3]

**How many soldiers was each tribe to send to war against Midian?**

Each tribe was to send a thousand soldiers. [31:4]

**How many soldiers was each tribe to send to war against Midian?**

Each tribe was to send a thousand soldiers. [31:5]

**What happened in Israel's battle against Midian?**

Every Midianite was killed, including their kings and Balaam. [31:6]

**What happened in Israel's battle against Midian?**

Every Midianite was killed, including their kings and Balaam. [31:7]

**What happened in Israel's battle against Midian?**

Every Midianite was killed, including their kings and Balaam. [31:8]

**What did the army of Israel take as plunder from Midian?**

The army of Israel took the women of Midian, their children, and all their cattle, flocks, and goods as plunder. [31:9]

**Why was Moses angry with the officers of the army of Israel?**

Moses was angry with the officers because they let had all the women of Midian live. [31:13]

**Why was Moses angry with the officers of the army of Israel?**

Moses was angry with the officers because they let had all the women of Midian live. [31:14]

**Why was Moses angry with the officers of the army of Israel?**

Moses was angry with the officers because they let had all the women of Midian live. [31:15]

**Why was Moses angry that the officers of the army of Israel had let the women of Midian live?**

Moses was angry because the women of Midian had caused the people of Israel, through Balaam's advice, to commit sin against Yahweh. [31:16]

**Who did Moses command the officers of the army of Israel to kill?**

Moses told the officers to kill every male among the little ones and every woman who had slept with a man. [31:17]

**Who did Moses tell the officers of the army they could take for themselves?**

Moses told the officers of the army they could take for themselves all the young girls who had never slept with a man. [31:18]

**How long did the soldiers who had killed anyone or touched a dead body have to camp outside the camp of Israel?**

They were to stay outside the camp for seven days. [31:18]

**Which men in the army of Israel had to purify themselves?**

All the men in the army who had killed anyone or touched a dead person had to purify themselves. [31:19]

**How long did the soldiers who had killed anyone or touched a dead body have to camp outside the camp of Israel?**

They were to stay outside the camp for seven days. [31:19]

**On which days were those soldiers and their prisoners camped outside the camp of Israel supposed to purify themselves?**

Those camped outside the camp of Israel had to purify themselves on the third and and seventh days. [31:19]

**Which men in the army of Israel had to purify themselves?**

All the men in the army who had killed anyone or touched a dead person had to purify themselves. [31:20]

**Between what two groups did Moses ask Eleazar the priest to divide the plunder from the war?**

Moses asked Eleazar to divide the plunder from the war between the soldiers who went out to battle and all the rest of the community. [31:25]

**Between what two groups did Moses ask Eleazar the priest to divide the plunder from the war?**

Moses asked Eleazar to divide the plunder from the war between the soldiers who went out to battle and all the rest of the community. [31:26]

**Between what two groups did Moses ask Eleazar the priest to divide the plunder from the war?**

Moses asked Eleazar to divide the plunder from the war between the soldiers who went out to battle and all the rest of the community. [31:27]

**What was the tax that the soldiers were to pay to Eleazar the priest?**

The soldiers were to pay a tax of one out of every five hundred persons, cattle, donkeys, sheep, or goats. [31:28]

**What was the tax that the soldiers were to pay to Eleazar the priest?**

The soldiers were to pay a tax of one out of every five hundred persons, cattle, donkeys, sheep, or goats. [31:29]

**What was the tax the people of Israel were to give to the Levites who took care of the tabernacle?**

The people of Israel were to pay a tax of one out of every fifty persons,cattle, donkeys, sheep, and goats. [31:30]

**What was the tax the people of Israel were to give to the Levites who took care of the tabernacle?**

The people of Israel were to pay a tax of one out of every fifty persons,cattle, donkeys, sheep, and goats. [31:31]

**Why did the officers of the army of Israel bring Yahweh offerings?**

They brought the offerings to make atonement for themselves before Yahweh. [31:50]

**Why did the officers of the army of Israel bring Yahweh offerings?**

They brought the offerings to make atonement for themselves before Yahweh. [31:51]

**Why was all the gold from the commanders of thousands and from the captains of hundreds given over to Yahweh?**

It was placed in the tent of meeting to remind Yahweh of the people of Israel. [31:52]

**Why was all the gold from the commanders of thousands and from the captains of hundreds given over to Yahweh?**

It was placed in the tent of meeting to remind Yahweh of the people of Israel. [31:53]

**Why was all the gold from the commanders of thousands and from the captains of hundreds given over to Yahweh?**

It was placed in the tent of meeting to remind Yahweh of the people of Israel. [31:54]

## Numbers 32

**Why did the descendants of Reuben and Gad go and speak to Moses?**

The descendants of Reuben and Gad went and spoke to Moses because they saw that the land of Jazer and Gilead was a wonderful place for livestock and the descendants of Reuben and Gad had large numbers of livestock. [32:1]

**Why did the descendants of Reuben and Gad go and speak to Moses?**

The descendants of Reuben and Gad went and spoke to Moses because they saw that the land of Jazer and Gilead was a wonderful place for livestock and the descendants of Reuben and Gad had large numbers of livestock. [32:2]

**Why did the descendants of Reuben and Gad go and speak to Moses?**

The descendants of Reuben and Gad went and spoke to Moses because they saw that the land of Jazer and Gilead was a wonderful place for livestock and the descendants of Reuben and Gad had large numbers of livestock. [32:3]

**Why did Moses think the descendants of Gad and Reuben wanted to stay in Jazer and Gilead?**

He thought they wanted to settle there and let their brothers go to war. [32:6]

**What did Moses think would happen to the hearts of the people of Israel if the people of Gad and Reuben settled there?**

He thought the hearts of the people would become discouraged. [32:7]

**What had their fathers done when Moses sent them from Kadesh Barnea to examine the land?**

They had seen the land and then discouraged the hearts of the people of Israel so they refused to enter the land. [32:9]

**Why did Yahweh take an oath that none of the men of Israel from twenty years old and up except Caleb and Joshua would see the land which he had sworn to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob?**

Yahweh took this oath because he was angry that the men of Israel had not completely followed him. [32:10]

**Why did Yahweh take an oath that none of the men of Israel from twenty years old and up except Caleb and Joshua would see the land which he had sworn to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob?**

Yahweh took this oath because he was angry that the men of Israel had not completely followed him. [32:11]

**Why did Yahweh take an oath that none of the men of Israel from twenty years old and up except Caleb and Joshua would see the land which he had sworn to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob?**

Yahweh took this oath because he was angry that the men of Israel had not completely followed him. [32:12]

**What did Yahweh do because he was angry with the men of Israel?**

He made them wander around in the wilderness for forty years. [32:13]

**What promise did the descendants of Reuben and Gad make to Moses if he would allow them to build fences for their cattle and cities for their families?**

They promised to be armed to go with Israel's army and not return until they had led Israel into their place. [32:16]

**What promise did the descendants of Reuben and Gad make to Moses if he would allow them to build fences for their cattle and cities for their families?**

They promised to be armed to go with Israel's army and not return until they had led Israel into their place. [32:17]

**What did Moses decide to do about the request the descendants of Reuben and Gad had made?**

He told them that if they would go to war with the men of Israel and drive out the enemies in the land, then they could return to the land they possessed and be guiltless towards Yahweh and Israel. [32:20]

**What did Moses decide to do about the request the descendants of Reuben and Gad had made?**

He told them that if they would go to war with the men of Israel and drive out the enemies in the land, then they could return to the land they possessed and be guiltless towards Yahweh and Israel. [32:21]

**What did Moses decide to do about the request the descendants of Reuben and Gad had made?**

He told them that if they would go to war with the men of Israel and drive out the enemies in the land, then they could return to the land they possessed and be guiltless towards Yahweh and Israel. [32:22]

**What would happen if the descendants of Reuben and Gad did not cross over and fight with the men of Israel to take the land Yahweh had given to them?**

If they did not cross over and fight with the men of Israel, then they would not receive the land in Gilead, but would acquire their possessions in the land of Canaan. [32:28]

**What would happen if the descendants of Reuben and Gad did not cross over and fight with the men of Israel to take the land Yahweh had given to them?**

If they did not cross over and fight with the men of Israel, then they would not receive the land in Gilead, but would acquire their possessions in the land of Canaan. [32:29]

**What would happen if the descendants of Reuben and Gad did not cross over and fight with the men of Israel to take the land Yahweh had given to them?**

If they did not cross over and fight with the men of Israel, then they would not receive the land in Gilead, but would acquire their possessions in the land of Canaan. [32:30]

**What did the descendants of Reuben and Gad and the half tribe of Manasseh promise to the leaders of the people of Israel?**

They promised to cross over into the land of Canaan. [32:31]

**What did the descendants of Reuben and Gad and the half tribe of Manasseh promise to the leaders of the people of Israel?**

They promised to cross over into the land of Canaan. [32:32]

**Whose land did Moses give to the descendants of Gad and Reuben, and also to the half tribe of Manasseh?**

He gave them the land of Sihon, king of the Amorites, and of Og, king of Bashan. [32:33]

## Numbers 33

**Why were the people of Israel able to openly leave Rameses without opposition from the Egyptians?**

They were able to leave openly because the Egyptians were busy burying all their firstborn. [33:3]

**Why were the people of Israel able to openly leave Rameses without opposition from the Egyptians?**

They were able to leave openly because the Egyptians were busy burying all their firstborn. [33:4]

**Why did the people of Israel choose to camp at Elim?**

They choose to camp there because twelve springs of water and seventy palm trees were there. [33:9]

**What could the people of Israel not find at Rephidim?**

There was no water found at Rephidim. [33:14]

**How long after Israel had come out of Egypt did Aaron die at Mount Hor?**

Aaron died forty years after the people of Israel had come out of Egypt. [33:38]

**How long after Israel had come out of Egypt did Aaron die at Mount Hor?**

Aaron died forty years after the people of Israel had come out of Egypt. [33:39]

**What did Yahweh command the people through Moses to do after they crossed over the Jordan into Canaan?**

Yahweh commanded them to drive out all of the land's inhabitants and destroy all their cast figures and shrines. [33:50]

**What did Yahweh command the people through Moses to do after they crossed over the Jordan into Canaan?**

Yahweh commanded them to drive out all of the land's inhabitants and destroy all their cast figures and shrines. [33:51]

**What did Yahweh command the people through Moses to do after they crossed over the Jordan into Canaan?**

Yahweh commanded them to drive out all of the land's inhabitants and destroy all their cast figures and shrines. [33:52]

**How did Yahweh want the people of Israel to divide up the land that they were to possess?**

Yahweh wanted the people of Israel to divide up the land by lot, giving a larger share of land to the large clans and a small share of land to the small clans. [33:53]

**How did Yahweh want the people of Israel to divide up the land that they were to possess?**

Yahweh wanted the people of Israel to divide up the land by lot, giving a larger share of land to the large clans and a small share of land to the small clans. [33:54]

**What would happen if the people of Israel did not drive out the land's inhabitants?**

The people whom they allowed to stay would make life difficult for them. [33:55]

**What would happen if the people of Israel did not drive out the land's inhabitants?**

The people whom they allowed to stay would make life difficult for them. [33:56]

## Numbers 34

**Who were the people who would receive the land of Canaan as their possession?**

The nine and one half tribes of Israel would receive the land of Canaan as their possession. [34:13]

**What would the descendants of Reuben and Gad and the half tribe of Manasseh receive as their share of the land?**

The descendants of Reuben and Gad and the half tribe of Manasseh would receive their share of land beyond the Jordan at Jericho eastward. [34:14]

**What would the descendants of Reuben and Gad and the half tribe of Manasseh receive as their share of the land?**

The descendants of Reuben and Gad and the half tribe of Manasseh would receive their share of land beyond the Jordan at Jericho eastward. [34:15]

**Who were the men who would divide the land for their inheritance?**

The men would be Eleazar the priest, Joshua son of Nun, and one leader from every tribe. [34:16]

**Who were the men who would divide the land for their inheritance?**

The men would be Eleazar the priest, Joshua son of Nun, and one leader from every tribe. [34:17]

**Who were the men who would divide the land for their inheritance?**

The men would be Eleazar the priest, Joshua son of Nun, and one leader from every tribe. [34:18]

**What did Yahweh command these men to do?**

He commanded them to divide the land of Canaan and to give each tribe of Israel its share. [34:29]

## Numbers 35

**What did Yahweh command each one of the tribes of Israel to do for the Levites?**

He commanded them to give to the Levites some of their own shares of land, cities to live in, and pastureland surrounding the cities. [35:1]

**What did Yahweh command each one of the tribes of Israel to do for the Levites?**

He commanded them to give to the Levites some of their own shares of land, cities to live in, and pastureland surrounding the cities. [35:2]

**How many cities were to be given to the Levites?**

Forty-eight cities were to be given to the Levites. [35:6]

**What was the purpose for six of the cities that the Levites would receive?**

They were to serve as cities of refuge to which accused murderers could flee. [35:6]

**How would the cities of refuge protect an accused man from his avenger?**

Anyone who killed someone unintentionally could flee to them and know they would not be killed without standing on trial before the community. [35:12]

**What would cause an accused man to certainly be put to death?**

He would be put to death if he struck his victim with an instrument of iron, a stone in his hand, or a wooden weapon and then his victim died. [35:16]

**What would cause an accused man to certainly be put to death?**

He would be put to death if he struck his victim with an instrument of iron, a stone in his hand, or a wooden weapon and then his victim died. [35:17]

**What would cause an accused man to certainly be put to death?**

He would be put to death if he struck his victim with an instrument of iron, a stone in his hand, or a wooden weapon and then his victim died. [35:18]

**What would happen if an accused man without a weapon injured someone so that they die?**

If an accused man without a weapon manhandles anyone or throws something at him while hiding, or strikes him down with his hand so that the victim dies, then the accused man must be put to death. [35:20]

**What would happen if an accused man without a weapon injured someone so that they die?**

If an accused man without a weapon manhandles anyone or throws something at him while hiding, or strikes him down with his hand so that the victim dies, then the accused man must be put to death. [35:21]

**What must the community do to rescue from the blood avenger an accused man, whose victim dies through unintentional harm?**

The community must rescue the accused man by returning him to the city of refuge to which he had originally fled. [35:25]

**When could a blood avenger kill the accused man and yet not be guilty of murder?**

If the blood avenger would find the accused man outside the border of the city of refuge to which he fled, then he could kill him and not be found guilty of murder. [35:26]

**When could a blood avenger kill the accused man and yet not be guilty of murder?**

If the blood avenger would find the accused man outside the border of the city of refuge to which he fled, then he could kill him and not be found guilty of murder. [35:27]

**When would an accused man be free to return to his own property?**

He would be free to return after the death of the high priest. [35:28]

**What is needed before a murderer can be put to death?**

The testimony of more than one witness is needed before a murderer can be put to death. [35:30]

**What ransom can people accept for the life of a murderer?**

The people are to accept no ransom for the life of a murderer or for one who has fled to a city of refuge. [35:31]

**What ransom can people accept for the life of a murderer?**

The people are to accept no ransom for the life of a murderer or for one who has fled to a city of refuge. [35:32]

**What is the only thing that can atone for land on which blood has been shed?**

Only the blood of the one who has shed the blood will atone for the land. [35:33]

**What is the only thing that can atone for land on which blood has been shed?**

Only the blood of the one who has shed the blood will atone for the land. [35:34]

## Numbers 36

**To whom had Yahweh commanded Moses to give the land of Zelophehad?**

Yahweh had commanded Moses to give Zelophehad's land to his daughters. [36:1]

**To whom had Yahweh commanded Moses to give the land of Zelophehad?**

Yahweh had commanded Moses to give Zelophehad's land to his daughters. [36:2]

**What would happen to Zelophehad's land if his daughters married men from other tribes in Israel?**

If they did that, then their share of land would belong to the tribe into which they married. [36:3]

**What would happen to the land that had belonged to a daughter who had married a man from another tribe when the jubilee came?**

When the jubilee came, the share that had belonged to the daughter would belong to her husband's tribe and be taken away from Zelophehad's tribe. [36:4]

**What command did Yahweh give through Moses concerning Zelophehad's daughters?**

He commanded that Zelophehad's daughters could marry only within their father's tribe. [36:5]

**What command did Yahweh give through Moses concerning Zelophehad's daughters?**

He commanded that Zelophehad's daughters could marry only within their father's tribe. [36:6]

**What must never happen to shares of land in Israel?**

No share of land in Israel can change from one tribe to another. Each man's share must stay within his ancestor's tribe. [36:7]

**Why did Yahweh command that every woman among the people of Israel who owned a share of land in her tribe must marry someone from the clans belonging to her father's tribe?**

Yahweh gave this command so that everyone among the people of Israel could own an inheritance from his ancestors. [36:8]

**Why did Yahweh command that every woman among the people of Israel who owned a share of land in her tribe must marry someone from the clans belonging to her father's tribe?**

Yahweh gave this command so that everyone among the people of Israel could own an inheritance from his ancestors. [36:9]

**How did Zelophehad's daughters comply with this command from Yahweh?**

They married into the clans of the descendants of Manasseh so their inheritance remained in the tribe of their father's clan. [36:10]

**How did Zelophehad's daughters comply with this command from Yahweh?**

They married into the clans of the descendants of Manasseh so their inheritance remained in the tribe of their father's clan. [36:11]

**How did Zelophehad's daughters comply with this command from Yahweh?**

They married into the clans of the descendants of Manasseh so their inheritance remained in the tribe of their father's clan. [36:12]

# translationWords

**Uses:**

- Numbers 05 General Notes

**Uses:**

- Numbers 7:1-3
- Numbers 7:15
- Numbers 7:27
- Numbers 7:39
- Numbers 7:51
- Numbers 7:63
- Numbers 7:75
- Numbers 22:2-4
- Numbers 22:38-40
- Numbers 23:21-22
- Numbers 24:8
- Numbers 31:32
- Numbers 31:42

**Uses:**

- Numbers 13:30-31

**Uses:**

- Numbers 19:1-2
- Numbers 19:9-10

## Aaron

### Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the priest priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: priest, Moses, Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:12-14
- Acts 07:38-40
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Luke 01:5-7
- Numbers 16:44-46

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:15** God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- **10:05** Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- **13:09** God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- **13:11** So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- **14:07** They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H175, G2

### Uses:

- Numbers 1:1-3
- Numbers 1:17-19
- Numbers 1:44-46

- Numbers 2:1-2
- Numbers 2:32-33
- Numbers 3:1-2
- Numbers 3:9-10
- Numbers 3:30-32
- Numbers 3:38-39
- Numbers 3:46-47
- Numbers 4:1-4
- Numbers 4:15-16
- Numbers 4:27-28
- Numbers 4:33
- Numbers 6:22-24
- Numbers 7:6-8
- Numbers 8:1-2
- Numbers 8:18-19
- Numbers 9:6-8
- Numbers 10:6-8
- Numbers 12:1-3
- Numbers 12:9-10
- Numbers 13:25-26
- Numbers 14:1-3
- Numbers 14:26-27
- Numbers 15:32-34
- Numbers 16:1-3
- Numbers 16:8-11
- Numbers 16:18-19
- Numbers 16:36-38
- Numbers 16:44-46
- Numbers 17:3-5
- Numbers 17:10-11
- Numbers 18:1-2
- Numbers 18:19-20
- Numbers 18:28-29
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Numbers 20:2-3
- Numbers 20:7-9
- Numbers 20:22-24
- Numbers 25:6-7
- Numbers 26:1-2
- Numbers 26:8-9
- Numbers 26:57-59
- Numbers 27:12-14
- Numbers 33:1-2

- Numbers 33:38-39

## Abraham, Abram

### Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Chaldea, Sarah, Isaac)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 03:6-9
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:1-4
- Genesis 22:1-3
- James 02:21-24
- Matthew 01:1-3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **05:04** Then God changed **Abram**'s name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **05:05** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **06:01** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **06:04** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:02** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H87, H85, G11

**Uses:**

- Numbers 32:10-11

## accuse, accuses, accused, accusing, accuser, accusers, accusation, accusations

**Definition:**

The terms “accuse” and “accusation” refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an “accuser.”

- A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called “the accuser.”

**Bible References:**

- Acts 19:38-41
- Hosea 04:4-5
- Jeremiah 02:9-11
- Luke 06:6-8
- Romans 08:33-34

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H3198, H8799, G1458, G2147, G2596, G2724

**Uses:**

- Numbers 35:6-7
- Numbers 35:16
- Numbers 35:24-25

## adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies

**Definition:**

An “adversary” is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- Adversary may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a tronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 05:14-16
- Isaiah 09:11-12
- Job 06:21-23
- Lamentations 04:12-13
- Luke 12:57-59
- Matthew 13:24-26

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G4567, G5227

**Uses:**

- Numbers 10:9
- Numbers 10:35-36
- Numbers 14:34-35
- Numbers 14:41-43
- Numbers 23:11-12
- Numbers 24:10-11
- Numbers 24:18-19
- Numbers 25:16-18

## alarm, alarms, alarmed

### Facts:

An alarm is something that warns people about something that could harm them. To “be alarmed” is to be very worried and frightened about something dangerous or threatening.

- King Jehoshapat was alarmed when he heard that the Moabites were planning to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- Jesus told his disciples not to be alarmed when they hear about disasters happening in the last days.
- The expression “sound an alarm” means to give a warning. In ancient times, a person could sound an alarm by making a noise.

### Translation Suggestions

- To “alarm someone” means to “cause someone to worry” or to “worry someone.”
- To “be alarmed” could be translated as “be worried” or “be frightened” or “be very concerned.”
- The expression “sound an alarm” could be translated by “publicly warn” or “announce that danger is coming” or “blow a trumpet to warn about danger.”

(See also: Jehoshaphat, Moab)

### Bible References:

- Daniel 11:44-45
- Jeremiah 04:19-20
- Numbers 10:9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7321, H8643

### Uses:

- Numbers 10:9

## alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners

**Definition:**

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.”

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

**Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 02:17-18
- Acts 07:29-30
- Deuteronomy 01:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:24-27
- Luke 17:17-19
- Matthew 17:24-25

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H312, H628, H776, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3363, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H5361, H6154, H8453, G241, G245, G526, G915, G1854, G3581, G3927, G3941

**Uses:**

- Numbers 3:9-10
- Numbers 3:38-39
- Numbers 9:13-14
- Numbers 11:4-6
- Numbers 15:14-16
- Numbers 15:25-26
- Numbers 18:3-5

- Numbers 19:9-10
- Numbers 35:14-15

## Almighty

### Facts:

The term “Almighty” literally means “all-powerful”; in the Bible, it always refers to God.

- The titles “the Almighty” or “the Almighty One” refer to God and reveal that he has complete power and authority over everything.
- This term is also used to describe God in the titles “Almighty God” and “God Almighty” and “Lord Almighty” and “Lord God Almighty.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “All-powerful” or “Completely Powerful One” or “God, who is completely powerful.”
- Ways to translate the phrase “Lord God Almighty” could include “God, the Powerful Ruler” or “Powerful Sovereign God” or “Mighty God who is Master over everything.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, lord, power)

### Bible References:

- Exodus 06:2-5
- Genesis 17:1-2
- Genesis 35:11-13
- Job 08:1-3
- Numbers 24:15-16
- Revelation 01:7-8
- Ruth 01:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7706, G3841

### Uses:

- Numbers 24:4-5
- Numbers 24:15-16

## altar, altars

### Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, false god, grain offering, sacrifice)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 08:20-22
- Genesis 22:9-10
- James 02:21-24
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 05:23-24
- Matthew 23:18-19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:09** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:06** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

### Uses:

- Numbers 3:24-26
- Numbers 4:9-11
- Numbers 4:24-26

- Numbers 5:24-26
- Numbers 7:1-3
- Numbers 7:10-11
- Numbers 7:84
- Numbers 7:87
- Numbers 16:36-38
- Numbers 16:44-46
- Numbers 18:3-5
- Numbers 18:17-18
- Numbers 23:1-3
- Numbers 23:4-6
- Numbers 23:13-15
- Numbers 23:28-30

## Amalek, Amalekite, Amalekites

### Facts:

The Amalekites were a nomadic people group who lived throughout the southern part of Canaan, from the Negev desert to the country of Arabia. This people group was descended from Amalek, the grandson of Esau.

- The Amalekites were bitter enemies of Israel from the time when Israel first came to live in Canaan.
- Sometimes the term "Amalek" is used figuratively to refer to all the Amalekites. (See: synecdoche)
- In one battle against the Amalekites, when Moses held up his hands, the Israelites were winning. When he got tired and his hands came down, they started losing. So Aaron and Hur helped Moses keep his hands up until the Israelite army had defeated the Amalekites.
- Both King Saul and King David led military expeditions against the Amalekites.
- After one victory over the Amalekites, Saul disobeyed God by keeping some of the plunder and by not killing the Amalekite king as God had commanded him to do.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Arabia, David, Esau, Negev, Saul (OT))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 04:42-43
- 2 Samuel 01:8-10
- Exodus 17:8-10
- Numbers 14:23-25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6002, H6003

### Uses:

- Numbers 13:27-29
- Numbers 14:23-25
- Numbers 14:41-43
- Numbers 24:20

## Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites

### Facts:

The “people of Ammon” or the “Ammonites” were a people group in Canaan. They were descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.

- The term “Ammonitess” refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as “Ammonite woman.”
- The Ammonites lived east of the Jordan River and were enemies of the Israelites.
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow him to do it.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: curse, Jordan River, Lot)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 19:1-3
- Ezekiel 25:1-2
- Genesis 19:36-38
- Joshua 12:1-2
- Judges 11:26-28
- Zephaniah 02:8-9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5983, H5984, H5985

### Uses:

- Numbers 21:24-26

## Amorite, Amorites

### Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

- Their name means "high one," which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the "sin of the Amorites," which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

### Bible References:

- Amos 02:9-10
- Ezekiel 16:1-3
- Genesis 10:15-18
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 09:9-10

### Examples from the Bible stories:

***15:07** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon. ***15:08** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them. ***15:09** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**. ***15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H567,

### Uses:

- Numbers 13:27-29
- Numbers 21:12-13
- Numbers 21:21-23
- Numbers 21:29-30
- Numbers 22:2-4

- Numbers 32:33
- Numbers 32:37-39

## ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather

**Definition:**

When used literally, the term “father” refers to a person’s male parent. There are also several figurative uses of this term.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to the male ancestors of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

**Translation Suggestions**

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader.”
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, son, Son of God)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:1-3
- Acts 07:31-32
- Acts 07:44-46
- Acts 22:3-5
- Genesis 31:29-30
- Genesis 31:41-42
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:11-12
- Joshua 24:3-4

- Malachi 03:6-7
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:7-8
- Matthew 03:7-9
- Matthew 10:21-23
- Matthew 18:12-14
- Romans 04:11-12

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G256, G540, G1080, G2495, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:1-3
- Numbers 1:16
- Numbers 32:8-9
- Numbers 32:13-15

## angel, angels, archangel

### Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term "archangel" refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word "angel" literally means "messenger."
- The term "archangel" literally means "chief messenger." The only angel referred to in the Bible as an "archangel" is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God's authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, "angel of Yahweh," has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean "angel who represents Yahweh" or "messenger who serves Yahweh." 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel's use of "I" as if Yahweh himself was talking.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "angel" could include "messenger from God" or "God's heavenly servant" or "God's spirit messenger."
- The term "archangel" could be translated as "chief angel" or "head ruling angel" or "leader of the angels."
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase "angel of Yahweh" should be translated using the words for "angel" and "Yahweh." This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include "angel from Yahweh" or "angel sent by Yahweh" or "Yahweh, who looked like an angel."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: chief, head, messenger, Michael, ruler, servant)

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:15-16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:22-23

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Genesis 48:14-16
- Luke 02:13-14
- Mark 08:38
- Matthew 13:49-50
- Revelation 01:19-20
- Zechariah 01:7-9

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **02:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:03** The **angel** responded to Zechariah,“I was sent by God to bring you this good news.”
- **23:06** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you.”
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising Godâ€¦
- **25:08** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** ”I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H47, H430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G32, G743, G2465

**Uses:**

- Numbers 20:14-16
- Numbers 22:21-23
- Numbers 22:24-25
- Numbers 22:31-33

## anger, angered, angry

**Definition:**

To “be angry” or to “have anger” means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, they are often sinful and selfish, but sometimes they have righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God’s anger (also called “wrath”) expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase “provoke to anger” means “cause to be angry.”

(See also: wrath)

**Bible References:**

- Ephesians 04:25-27
- Exodus 32:9-11
- Isaiah 57:16-17
- John 06:52-53
- Mark 10:13-14
- Matthew 26:6-9
- Psalms 018:7-8

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H599, H639, H1149, H2152, H2194, H2195, H2198, H2534, H2734, H2787, H3179, H3707, H3708, H3824, H4751, H4843, H5674, H5678, H6225, H7107, H7110, H7266, H7307, G23, G1758, G2371, G2372, G3164, G3709, G3710, G3711, G3947, G3949, G5520

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:53-54
- Numbers 11:1-3
- Numbers 11:9-10
- Numbers 11:33-35
- Numbers 12:9-10
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Numbers 16:15-17
- Numbers 16:44-46
- Numbers 18:3-5
- Numbers 22:21-23
- Numbers 24:10-11
- Numbers 25:1-3

## anoint, anointed, anointing

**Definition:**

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: Christ, consecrate, high priest, King of the Jews, priest, prophet )

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:20-21
- 1 John 02:27-29
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 04:27-28
- Amos 06:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 05:13-15

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H47, H430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G32, G218, G743, G1472, G2025, G3462, G5545, G5548

**Uses:**

- Numbers 3:3-4
- Numbers 4:15-16
- Numbers 7:1-3
- Numbers 7:10-11
- Numbers 7:84
- Numbers 16 General Notes
- Numbers 27 General Notes
- Numbers 35:24-25

## appoint, appoints, appointed

**Definition:**

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eterna life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 08:10-12
- Acts 03:19-20
- Acts 06:2-4
- Acts 13:48-49
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H561, H977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G322, G606, G1299, G1303, G1935, G2525, G2749, G4287, G4384, G4929, G5021, G5087

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:16
- Numbers 3:9-10
- Numbers 16 General Notes
- Numbers 27 General Notes

- Numbers 27:15-17
- Numbers 28:1-2

## Aram, Aramean, Arameans, Aramaic

**Definition:**

"Aram" was the name of two men in the Old Testament. It was also the name of a region northeast of Canaan, where modern-day Syria is located.

- The people living in Aram became known as "Arameans" and spoke "Aramaic." Jesus and other Jews of his time also spoke Aramaic.
- One of Shem's sons was named Aram. Another man named Aram was a cousin of Rebekah. It is probable that the region of Aram was named after one of these two men.
- Aram later became known by the Greek name "Syria."
- The term "Paddan Aram" means "plain of Aram" and this plain was located in the northern part of Aram.
- Some of Abraham's relatives lived in the city of Haran, which was located in "Paddan Aram."
- In the Old Testament, sometimes the terms "Aram" and "Paddan Aram" refer to the same region.
- The term "Aram Naharaim" may mean "Aram of Two Rivers." This region was located in the northern part of Mesopotamia and was to the east of "Paddan Aram."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Mesopotamia, Paddan Aram, Rebekah, Shem, Syria)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 01:17-19
- 2 Samuel 08:5-6
- Amos 01:5
- Ezekiel 27:16-18
- Genesis 31:19-21
- Hosea 12:11-12
- Psalm 060:1

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H758, H763, G689

**Uses:**

- Numbers 23:7-8

## ark

### Definition:

The term “ark” literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

- In the English Bible, the word “ark” is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
- Ways to translate this term could include “very large boat” or “barge” or “cargo ship” or “large, box-shaped boat.”
- The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as “basket.”
- In the phrase “ark of the covenant,” a different Hebrew word is used for “ark.” This could be translated as “box” or “chest” or “container.”
- When choosing a term to translate “ark,” it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: ark of the covenant, basket)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- Exodus 16:33-36
- Exodus 30:5-6
- Genesis 08:4-5
- Luke 17:25-27
- Matthew 24:37-39

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H727, H8392, G2787

### Uses:

- Numbers 10:35-36

## ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh

**Definition:**

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: ark, covenant, atonement, holy place, testimony)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 06:14-15
- Exodus 25:10-11
- Hebrews 09:3-5
- Judges 20:27-28
- Numbers 07:89
- Revelation 11:19

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H727, H1285, H3068

**Uses:**

- Numbers 3:30-32
- Numbers 4:5-6
- Numbers 7:89
- Numbers 10:33-34
- Numbers 14:44-45

## ash, ashes, dust

### Facts:

The term “ash” or “ashes” refers to the grey powdery substance that is left behind after wood is burned. It is sometimes used figuratively to refer to something that is worthless or useless.

- In the Bible sometimes the word “dust” is used when speaking about ashes. It can also refer to the fine, loose dirt that can form on dry ground.
- An “ash heap” is a pile of ashes.
- In ancient times, sitting in ashes was a sign of mourning or grieving.
- When grieving, it was the custom to wear rough, scratchy sackcloth and sit in ashes or sprinkle the ashes on the head.
- Putting ashes on the head was also a sign of humiliation or embarrassment.
- Striving for something worthless, is said to be like “feeding on ashes.”
- When translating “ashes,” use the word in the project language that refers to the burned-up remains after wood has burned.
- Note that an “ash tree” is a completely different term.

(See also: fire, sackcloth)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 20:9-10
- Jeremiah 06:25-26
- Psalms 102:9-10
- Psalms 113:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H80, H665, H666, H766, H1854, H6083, H6368, H7834, G2868, G4700, G5077, G5522

### Uses:

- Numbers 19:9-10
- Numbers 19:17-19

## Asher

### Facts:

Asher was the eighth son of Jacob. His descendants formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel and this tribe was also called “Asher.”

- Asher’s mother was Zilpah, the servant of Leah.
- His name means “happy” or “blessed.”
- Asher was also the name of the territory assigned to the tribe of Asher when the Israelites entered the promised land.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 04:15-17
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Genesis 30:12-13
- Luke 02:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H836

### Uses:

- Numbers 1:12
- Numbers 1:40
- Numbers 2:27
- Numbers 7:72
- Numbers 10:25-28
- Numbers 13:13-16
- Numbers 26:44
- Numbers 34:27-29

## assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled

### Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together to discuss problems, give advice, and make decisions.

- An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.
- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”
- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: hyperbole)

(See also: council)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:14-16
- Acts 07:38-40
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Nehemiah 08:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H622, H627, H1413, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H5789, H6116, H6633, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, H7284, G1577, G1997, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:17-19
- Numbers 14:4-5
- Numbers 20:6
- Numbers 20:12-13
- Numbers 28:16-18
- Numbers 29:1
- Numbers 29:7-8
- Numbers 29:17-19
- Numbers 29:23-25
- Numbers 29:29-31

## assign, assigned, assigning, assignment, assignments, reassign

**Facts:**

The term “assign” or “assigned” refers to appointing someone to do a specific task or designating something to be provided to one or more people.

- The prophet Samuel foretold that King Saul would “assign” the best young men of Israel to serve in the military.
- Moses “assigned” to each of the twelve tribes of Israel a portion of the land of Canaan for them to live on.
- Under the Old Testament law, certain tribes of Israel were assigned to serve as priests, artists, singers and builders.
- Depending on the context, “assign” could be translated as “give” or “appoint” or “choose for the task of.”
- The term “assigned” could be translated as “appointed” or “given the task.”

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: appoint, Samuel, Saul (OT))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 06:48
- Daniel 12:12-13
- Jeremiah 43:11-13
- Joshua 18:1-2
- Numbers 04:27-28
- Psalms 078:54-55

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2506, H3335, H4487, H4941, H5157, H5307, H5414, H5596, H5975, H6485, H7760, G3307

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:50
- Numbers 4:17-18
- Numbers 4:27-28
- Numbers 4:49

## Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrians, Assyrian Empire

### Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: Samaria)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11-14
- Genesis 25:17-18
- Isaiah 07:16-17
- Jeremiah 50:17-18
- Micah 07:11-13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

***20:02** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country. ***20:03** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**. ***20:04** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H804, H1121

### Uses:

- Numbers 24:21-22

## astray, go astray, went astray, lead astray, led astray, stray, strayed, strays

**Definition:**

The terms “stray” and “go astray” mean to disobey God’s will. People who are “led astray” have allowed other people or circumstances to influence them to disobey God.

- The word “astray” gives a picture of leaving a clear path or a place of safety to go down a wrong and dangerous path.
- Sheep who leave the pasture of their shepherd have “strayed.” God compares sinful people to sheep who have left him and “gone astray.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The phrase “go astray” could be translated as “go away from God” or “take a wrong path away from God’s will” or “stop obeying God” or “live in a way that goes away from God.”
- To “lead someone astray” could be translated as “cause someone to disobey God” or “influence someone to stop obeying God” or “cause someone to follow you down a wrong path.”

(See also: disobey, shepherd)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 03:7-8
- 2 Timothy 03:10-13
- Exodus 23:4-5
- Ezekiel 48:10-12
- Matthew 18:12-14
- Matthew 24:3-5
- Psalms 058:3-5
- Psalms 119:109-110

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5080, H7683, H7686, H8582, G4105

**Uses:**

- Numbers 5:18-19
- Numbers 5:29-30

## atonement lid

### Definition:

The “atonement lid” was a slab of gold that was used to cover the top of the ark of the covenant. In many English translations, it is also referred to as an “atonement cover.”

- The atonement lid was about 115 centimeters in length and 70 centimeters in width.
- Above the atonement lid were two gold cherubim with their wings touching.
- Yahweh said that he would meet with the Israelites above the atonement lid, under the outstretched wings of the cherubim. Only the high priest was permitted to meet with Yahweh in this way, as the representative of the people.
- Sometimes this atonement lid has been referred to as a “mercy seat” because it communicates God’s mercy in coming down to redeem sinful human beings.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “ark covering where God promises to redeem” or “place where God atones” or “lid of ark where God forgives and restores.”
- Can also mean “place of propitiation.”
- Compare this term with how you translated “atonement,” “propitiation,” and “redemption.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, atonement, cherubim, propitiation, redeem)

### Bible References:

- Exodus 25:15-18
- Exodus 30:5-6
- Exodus 40:17-20
- Leviticus 16:1-2
- Numbers 07:89

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3727, G2435

### Uses:

- Numbers 7:89

## atonement, atone, atones, atoned

**Definition:**

The terms “atone” and “atonement” refer to how God provided a sacrifice to pay for people’s sins and to appease his wrath for sin.

- In Old Testament times, God allowed temporary atonement to be made for the sins of the Israelites by the offering of a blood sacrifice, which involved killing an animal.
- As recorded in the New Testament, Christ’s death on the cross is the only true and permanent atonement for sin.
- When Jesus died, he took the punishment that people deserve because of their sin. He paid the atonement price with his sacrificial death.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “atone” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “pay for” or “provide payment for” or “cause someone’s sins to be forgiven” or “make amends for a crime.”
- Ways to translate “atonement” could include “payment” or “sacrifice to pay for sin” or “providing the means of forgiveness.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to payment of money.

(See also: atonement lid, forgive, propitiation, reconcile, redeem)

**Bible References:**

- Ezekiel 43:25-27
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Numbers 05:8-10
- Numbers 28:19-22

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H3722, H3725, G2643

**Uses:**

- Numbers 5:8-10
- Numbers 6:10-11
- Numbers 8:7-8
- Numbers 8:18-19
- Numbers 15:25-26

- Numbers 16:44-46
- Numbers 25:12-13
- Numbers 28:19-22
- Numbers 28:29-31
- Numbers 29:3-5
- Numbers 29:9-11
- Numbers 31:50-51
- Numbers 35:33-34

## authority, authorities

**Definition:**

The term “authority” refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word “authorities” can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God’s authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as, “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as, “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: citizen, command, obey, power, ruler)

**Bible References:**

- Colossians 02:10-12
- Esther 09:29
- Genesis 41:35-36
- Jonah 03:6-7
- Luke 12:4-5
- Luke 20:1-2
- Mark 01:21-22
- Matthew 08:8-10
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Titus 03:1-2

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H8633, G831, G1413, G1849, G1850, G2003, G2715, G5247

**Uses:**

- Numbers 27:20-21

## avenge, avenges, avenged, avenging, avenger, revenge, vengeance

**Definition:**

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The expression to “avenge” could also be translated as to “right a wrong” or to “get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: punish, just, righteous)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15-17
- Isaiah 47:3-5
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Psalms 018:46-47
- Romans 12:19-21

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H6544, H6546, H8199, G1349, G1556, G1557, G1558, G2917, G3709

**Uses:**

- Numbers 05 General Notes
- Numbers 31:1-2
- Numbers 31:3-5
- Numbers 35 General Notes
- Numbers 35:12-13
- Numbers 35:19-21
- Numbers 35:24-25

## Baal

### Facts:

"Baal" means "lord" or "master" and was the name of the primary false god that was worshiped by the Canaanites.

- There were also local false gods that had "Baal" as part of their names, such as "Baal of Peor." Sometimes all these gods together are referred to as "the Baals."
- Some people had names that included the word "Baal" in them.
- The worship of Baal included evil practices such as sacrificing children and using prostitutes.
- At different time periods throughout their history, the Israelites also became deeply involved in Baal worship, following the example of the pagan nations around them.
- During the reign of King Ahab, God's prophet Elijah set up a test to prove to the people that Baal does not exist and that Yahweh is the only true God. As a result, the prophets of Baal were destroyed and the people started worshiping Yahweh again.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ahab, Asherah, Elijah, false god, prostitute, Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:31-33
- 1 Samuel 07:3-4
- Jeremiah 02:7-8
- Judges 02:11-13
- Numbers 22:41

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:02** Ahab was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named **Baal**.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 prophets of **Baal**, came to Mount Carmel. Elijah said to the people, "How long will you keep changing your mind? If Yahweh is God, serve him! If **Baal** is God, serve him!"
- **19:07** Then Elijah said to the prophets of **Baal**, "Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire.
- **19:08** Then the prophets of **Baal** prayed to **Baal**, "Hear us, O **Baal**!"
- **19:12** So the people captured the prophets of **Baal**. Then Elijah took them away from there and killed them.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1120, G896

**Uses:**

- Numbers 22:41
- Numbers 25:1-3

## Balaam

### Facts:

Balaam was a pagan prophet whom King Balek hired to curse Israel while they were camped at the Jordan River in northern Moab, preparing to enter the land of Canaan.

- Balaam was from the city of Pethor, which was located in the region around the Euphrates River, about 400 miles away from the land of Moab.
- The Midianite king, Balek, was afraid of the strength and numbers of the Israelites, so he hired Balaam to curse them.
- As Balaam was traveling toward Israel, an angel of God stood in his path so that Balaam's donkey stopped. God also gave the donkey the ability to speak to Balaam.
- God did not allow Balaam to curse the Israelites and commanded him to bless them instead.
- Later however, Balaam still brought evil on the Israelites when he influenced them to worship the false god Baal-peor.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: bless, Canaan, curse, donkey, Euphrates River, Jordan River, Midian, Moab, Peor)

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:15-16
- Deuteronomy 23:3-4
- Joshua 13:22-23
- Numbers 22:5-6
- Revelation 02:14-15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1109, G903

### Uses:

- Numbers 22:5-6
- Numbers 22:7-8
- Numbers 22:9-11
- Numbers 22:12-14
- Numbers 22:15-17
- Numbers 22:18-20
- Numbers 22:21-23
- Numbers 22:24-25
- Numbers 22:26-27

- Numbers 23:1-3
- Numbers 23:11-12
- Numbers 23:25-27
- Numbers 24:1
- Numbers 24:10-11
- Numbers 24:20
- Numbers 24:25
- Numbers 31:6-8
- Numbers 31:16-17

## barley

### Definition:

The term “barley” refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as “grain called barley” or “barley grain.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: grain, thresh, wheat)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:12-14
- Job 31:38-40
- Judges 07:13-14
- Numbers 05:15
- Revelation 06:5-6

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8184, G2915, G2916

### Uses:

- Numbers 5:15

## Bashan

### Facts:

Bashan was a region of land east of the Sea of Galilee. It covered an area that is now part of Syria and the Golan Heights.

- An Old Testament city of refuge called “Golan” was located in the region of Bashan.
- Bashan was a very fertile region known for its oak trees and pasturing animals.
- Genesis 14 records that Bashan was the site of a war between several kings and their nations.
- During Israel’s wanderings in the desert after their escape from Egypt, they took possession of part of the region of Bashan.
- Years later, King Solomon obtained supplies from that region.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, oak, Sea of Galilee, Syria)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:11-14
- Amos 04:1-2
- Jeremiah 22:20-21
- Joshua 09:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1316

### Uses:

- Numbers 21:33-35
- Numbers 32:33

## beg, begged, begging, beggar

### Definition:

The term “beg” means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

- Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don’t know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
- A “beggar” is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, “plead” or “urgently ask” or “demand money” or “regularly ask for money.”

(See also: plead)

### Bible References:

- Luke 16:19-21
- Mark 06:56
- Matthew 14:34-36
- Psalm 045:12-13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

***10:04** God sent frogs all over Egypt. Pharaoh **begged** Moses to take away the frogs. ***29:08** ”The king called the servant and said, ’You wicked servant! I forgave your debt because you **begged** me.” ***32:07** The demons **begged** Jesus, “Please do not send us out of this region!” There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill. So, the demons **begged** Jesus, “Please send us into the pigs instead!” ***32:10** The man who used to have the demons **begged** to go along with Jesus. ***35:11** His father came out and **begged** him to come and celebrate with them, but he refused.” ***44:01** One day, Peter and John were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was **begging** for money.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H34, H7592, G154, G1871, G4319, G4434, G6075

### Uses:

- Numbers 14:17-19

## Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites

**Facts:**

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, “son of my right hand.”

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, Jacob, Joseph (OT), Paul, Rachel, twelve tribes of Israel)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 02:8-9
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:16-20
- Genesis 42:1-4
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 03:4-5

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1144, G958

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:10
- Numbers 1:36
- Numbers 2:22
- Numbers 7:60
- Numbers 10:21-24
- Numbers 13:9-12
- Numbers 26:38
- Numbers 34:21-23

## bind, bond, bound

**Definition:**

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: fulfill, peace, prison, servant, vow)

**Bible References:**

- Leviticus 08:6-7

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H247, H481, H519, H615, H631, H632, H640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G254, G331, G332, G1195, G1196, G1198, G1199, G1210, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2611, G2615, G3734, G3784, G3814, G4019, G4029, G4385, G4886, G4887, G5265

**Uses:**

- Numbers 30:1-2

## blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemed, blasphemous, blasphemies

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “blasphemy” refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To “blaspheme” someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as “slander” when it refers to blaspheming people.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- To “blaspheme” can be translated as to “say evil things against” or to “dishonor God” or to “slander.”
- Ways to translate “blasphemy” could include “speaking wrongly about others” or “slander” or “spreading false rumors.”

(See also: dishonor, slander)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 01:12-14
- Acts 06:10-11
- Acts 26:9-11
- James 02:5-7
- John 10:32-33
- Luke 12:8-10
- Mark 14:63-65
- Matthew 12:31-32
- Matthew 26:65-66
- Psalms 074:9-11

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1288, H1442, H2778, H5006, H5007, H5344, G987, G988, G989

**Uses:**

- Numbers 15:30-31

## blemish, blemishes, unblemished

### Facts:

The term “blemish” refers to a physical defect or imperfection on an animal or person. It can also refer to spiritual imperfections and faults in people.

- For certain sacrifices, God instructed the Israelites to offer an animal with no blemishes or defects.
- This is a picture of how Jesus Christ was the perfect sacrifice, without any sin.
- Believers in Christ have been cleansed from their sin by his blood and are considered to be without blemish.
- Ways to translate this term could include “defect” or “imperfection” or “sin,” depending on the context.

(See also: believe, clean, sacrifice, sin)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:18-19
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Deuteronomy 15:19-21
- Numbers 06:13-15
- Song of Solomon 04:6-7

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3971, H8400, H8549, G3470

### Uses:

- Numbers 6:13-15
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Numbers 28:3-5
- Numbers 28:9-10
- Numbers 28:11-13
- Numbers 28:19-22
- Numbers 28:29-31
- Numbers 29:2
- Numbers 29:7-8
- Numbers 29:17-19
- Numbers 29:23-25
- Numbers 29:29-31

## bless, blessed, blessing

### Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:14-17
- Acts 13:32-34
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Genesis 14:19-20
- Isaiah 44:3-4
- James 01:22-25
- Luke 06:20-21
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:5-6
- Romans 04:9-10

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **01:07** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **01:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **01:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **04:04** ”I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **04:07** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, ”May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

**Uses:**

- Numbers 6:22-24
- Numbers 22:5-6
- Numbers 23:11-12
- Numbers 23:19-20
- Numbers 23:25-27
- Numbers 24:1
- Numbers 24:9

## blood

### Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus’ blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: flesh)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 Samuel 14:31-32
- Acts 02:20-21
- Acts 05:26-28
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Genesis 04:10-12
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.

- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb's **blood**.
- **13:09** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's punishment passes over him.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131, G1420

**Uses:**

- Numbers 18:17-18
- Numbers 19:3-6
- Numbers 23:24
- Numbers 35:19-21
- Numbers 35:33-34

## body, bodies

### Definition:

The term “body” literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

- Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person’s head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say “spiritual body of Christ.”
- When Jesus says, “This is my body,” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: head, spirit)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:11-12
- 1 Corinthians 05:3-5
- Ephesians 04:4-6
- Judges 14:7-9
- Numbers 06:6-8
- Psalm 031:8-9
- Romans 12:4-5

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H990, H1320, H1460, H1465, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5085, H5315, H6106, H6297, H7607, G4430, G4954, G4983, G5559

**Uses:**

- Numbers 5:1-4
- Numbers 6:6-8
- Numbers 9:6-8
- Numbers 14:28-30
- Numbers 19:11-13
- Numbers 25:8-9

## bow and arrow, bows and arrows

### Definition:

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term "arrow" is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

### Bible References:

- Genesis 21:14-16
- Habakkuk 03:9-10
- Job 29:20-22
- Lamentations 02:3-4
- Psalms 058:6-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2671, H7198, G5115

### Uses:

- Numbers 24:8

## bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down

### Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To "bow down" means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include "bow the knee" (meaning to kneel) and "bow the head" (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is "bowed down" has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means "bend forward" or "bend the head" or "kneel."
- The term "bow down" could be translated as "kneel down" or "prostrate oneself."
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: humble, worship)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- Exodus 20:4-6
- Genesis 24:26-27
- Genesis 44:14-15
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:4-5
- Matthew 02:11-12
- Revelation 03:9-11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H86, H3721, H3766, H5186, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4781, G4794

**Uses:**

- Numbers 24:4-5
- Numbers 24:15-16
- Numbers 25:1-3

## bread

### Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term "loaf" occurs by itself, it means "loaf of bread."
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast.
- Bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. In the Bible this is called "unleavened bread" and was used for the Jews' passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: Synecdoche)
- The term "bread of the presence" referred to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as "bread showing that God lived among them."
- The figurative term "bread from heaven" referred to the special white food called "manna" that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert.
- Jesus also called himself the "bread that came down from heaven" and the "bread of life."
- When Jesus and his disciples were eating the Passover meal together before his death, he compared the unleavened Passover bread to his body which would be wounded and killed on a cross.
- Many times the term "bread" can be translated more generally as "food."

(See also: Passover, tabernacle, temple, unleavened bread, yeast)

### Bible References:

- Acts 02:46-47
- Acts 27:33-35
- Exodus 16:13-15
- Luke 09:12-14
- Mark 06:37-38
- Matthew 04:1-4
- Matthew 11:18-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

### Uses:

- Numbers 4:7-8

- Numbers 6:13-15
- Numbers 6:19-20
- Numbers 9:11-12
- Numbers 21:4-5
- Numbers 28:16-18

## bronze

### Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: armor, tabernacle, temple)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 07:15-17
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 02:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 01:14-16

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G5470, G5474, G5475

### Uses:

- Numbers 16:39
- Numbers 21:8-9
- Numbers 31:21-24

## brother, brothers

### Definition:

The term “brother” usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: apostle, God the Father, sister, spirit)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:26-28
- Genesis 29:9-10
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Nehemiah 03:1-2
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 01:9-11

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

**Uses:**

- Numbers 8:25-26
- Numbers 20:14-16

## burden, burdens, burdened, burdensome

**Definition:**

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term "burden" also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be "bearing" or "carrying" a "heavy burden."
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person's sin is a burden to him.
- The "burden of the Lord" is a figurative way of referring to a "message from God" that a prophet must deliver to God's people.
- The term "burden" can be translated by "responsibility" or "duty" or "heavy load" or "message," depending on the context.

**Bible References:**

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Galatians 06:3-5
- Genesis 49:14-15
- Matthew 11:28-30
- Matthew 23:4-5

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H92, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4858, H4864, H4942, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H5450, H6006, G4, G916, G922, G1117, G2347, G2599, G2655, G5413

**Uses:**

- Numbers 11:16-17

## burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire

### Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: altar, atonement, ox, priest, sacrifice)

### Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 08:20-22
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 03:3-5
- Mark 12:32-34

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G3646

### Uses:

- Numbers 6:10-11
- Numbers 6:16-17
- Numbers 7:15
- Numbers 7:27
- Numbers 7:39
- Numbers 7:51
- Numbers 7:63
- Numbers 7:75
- Numbers 7:87
- Numbers 8:12-13
- Numbers 10:10
- Numbers 15:1-3
- Numbers 15:8-10
- Numbers 15:11-13

- Numbers 15:22-24
- Numbers 15:25-26
- Numbers 23:1-3
- Numbers 23:4-6
- Numbers 23:13-15
- Numbers 28:1-2
- Numbers 28:3-5
- Numbers 28:6-8
- Numbers 28:9-10
- Numbers 28:11-13
- Numbers 28:19-22
- Numbers 28:29-31
- Numbers 29:2
- Numbers 29:6
- Numbers 29:12-13
- Numbers 29:20-22
- Numbers 29:26-28
- Numbers 29:32-34
- Numbers 29:35-36
- Numbers 29:37-38

## bury, buries, buried, burying, burial

**Definition:**

The term “bury” usually refers to putting a dead body into a hole or other burial place. The term “burial” is the act of burying something or can be used to describe a place used to bury something.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” are all ways to refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also:Jericho, tomb)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 09:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:32-33
- Luke 16:22-23
- Matthew 27:6-8
- Psalm 079:1-3

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H6900, H6912, H6913, G1779, G1780, G2290, G4916, G5027

**Uses:**

- Numbers 11:33-35
- Numbers 20:1
- Numbers 33:3-4

## Caleb

### Facts:

Caleb was one of the twelve Israelite spies whom Moses sent to explore the land of Canaan.

- He and Joshua told the people to trust God to help them defeat the Canaanites.
- Joshua and Caleb were the only men of their generation who were allowed to enter the Promised Land of Canaan.
- Caleb requested that the land of Hebron be given to him and his family. He knew that God would help him defeat the people who lived there.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Hebron, Joshua)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 04:13-16
- Joshua 14:6-7
- Judges 01:11-13
- Numbers 32:10-12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

***14:04** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like. ***14:06** Immediately **Caleb** and Joshua, the other two spies, said, “It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them! God will fight for us!” ***14:08** ”Except for Joshua and **Caleb**, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land.”

so that they could live at peace in that land.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3612, H3614

### Uses:

- Numbers 13:5-8
- Numbers 13:30-31
- Numbers 14:6-8
- Numbers 14:23-25

- Numbers 14:36-38
- Numbers 26:65
- Numbers 32:10-11
- Numbers 34:19-20

## call, calls, calling, called

**Definition:**

The terms “call” and “call out” literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- The term “called” is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, “He is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God knows a person’s name personally and has specifically chosen him.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know your name and have chosen you.”

(See also: pray)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 18:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- 2 Timothy 01:8-11
- Ephesians 04:1-3
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Matthew 02:13-15
- Philippians 03:12-14

{{tag>publish ktlink }

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

**Uses:**

- Numbers 10:1-2
- Numbers 11:1-3
- Numbers 12:4-5
- Numbers 15:40-41
- Numbers 16:12-14
- Numbers 20:12-13
- Numbers 22:5-6
- Numbers 24:10-11
- Numbers 32:40-42

## Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites

### Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ham, Promised Land)

### Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 09:18-19
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:5-7
- Genesis 47:1-2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:05** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **04:06** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **04:09** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **05:03** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G2581, G5478

**Uses:**

- Numbers 13:1-2
- Numbers 13:17-20
- Numbers 13:27-29
- Numbers 14:23-25
- Numbers 14:41-43
- Numbers 21:1-3
- Numbers 26:19
- Numbers 32:28-30
- Numbers 32:31-32
- Numbers 33:40
- Numbers 33:50-52
- Numbers 34:1-3
- Numbers 34:27-29
- Numbers 35:9-11

## captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity

### Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: Babylon, exile, prison, seize)

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:5-6
- Isaiah 20:3-4
- Jeremiah 43:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H2925, H6808, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, H7870, G161, G162, G163, G164, G2221

**Uses:**

- Numbers 21:1-3
- Numbers 24:21-22
- Numbers 31:9-10

## cast out, casting out, driving out, throw out, throwing out

### Definition:

To “cast out” or “drive out” someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

- The term “cast” means the same thing as “throw.” To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
- In a figurative sense, “cast out” or “cast away” someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, “force out” or “send away” or “get rid of.”
- To “cast out demons” could be translated as “cause the demons to leave” or “drive the evil spirits out” or “expel the demons” or “command the demon to come out.”

(See also: demon, demon-possessed, lots)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:17-19
- Mark 03:13-16
- Mark 09:28-29
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 12:24-25
- Matthew 17:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1272, H1644, H1920, H3423, H7971, H7993, G1544

### Uses:

- Numbers 21:31-32
- Numbers 22:5-6
- Numbers 32:20-22
- Numbers 33:50-52
- Numbers 33:55-56

## cedar, cedars, cedarwood

**Definition:**

The term “cedar” refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: fir, pure, sacrifice, temple)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 14:1-2
- 1 Kings 07:1-2
- Isaiah 02:12-13
- Zechariah 11:1-3

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H730

**Uses:**

- Numbers 19:3-6
- Numbers 24:6

## census

### Definition:

The term “census” refers to a formal counting of the number of people in a nation or empire.

- The Old Testament records different times when God ordered that the men of Israel be counted, such as when the Israelites first left Egypt and then again just before they entered Canaan.
- Often the purpose of a census was in order to know how many people should be paying taxes.
- For example, one time in Exodus the Israelite men were counted so that each one would pay a half shekel for taking care of the temple.
- When Jesus was a baby, the Roman government did a census to count all the people who lived throughout their empire, to require them to pay taxes.

### Translation Suggestions

- Possible ways to translate this term could include, “name counting” or “list of names” or “enrollment.”
- The phrase “take a census” could be translated as “register people’s names” or “enroll people” or “write down people’s names.”

(See also: nation, Rome)

### Bible References:

- Acts 05:35-37
- Exodus 30:11-14
- Exodus 38:24-26
- Luke 02:1-3
- Numbers 04:1-4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3789, H5674, H5921, H6485, H7218, G582, G583

### Uses:

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 1:1-3
- Numbers 4:1-4
- Numbers 4:21-23
- Numbers 7:1-3
- Numbers 14:28-30

## cherub, cherubim, cherubs

**Definition:**

The term “cherub,” and its plural form “cherubim,” refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. The Bible describes cherubim as having wings and flames.

- The cherubim display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
- After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubim with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.
- God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
- He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubim into the curtains of the tabernacle.
- In some passages, these creatures are also described as having four faces: of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.
- Cherubim are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “cherubim” could be translated as “creatures with wings” or “guardians with wings” or “winged spiritual guardians” or “holy, winged guardians.”
- A “cherub” should be translated as the singular of cherubim, as in, “creature with wings” or “winged spiritual guardian,” for example.
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “angel.”
- Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: angel)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 13:5-6
- 1 Kings 06:23-26
- Exodus 25:15-18
- Ezekiel 09:3-4
- Genesis 03:22-24

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H3742, G5502

**Uses:**

- Numbers 7:89

## children, child

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “child” is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. The term “children” is the plural form and it also has several figurative uses.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
- children of the light
- children of obedience
- children of the devil
- This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, “children of God” refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as, “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as, “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as, “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: descendant, promise, son, spirit, believe, beloved)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:27-29
- 3 John 01:1-4
- Galatians 04:19-20
- Genesis 45:9-11
- Joshua 08:34-35
- Nehemiah 05:4-5

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G1471, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5206, G5207, G5388

**Uses:**

- Numbers 14:31-33

## chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

**Definition:**

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones) or ”the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: appoint, Christ)

**Bible References:**

- 2 John 01:1-3
- Colossians 03:12-14
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:6-8
- Matthew 24:19-22

- Romans 08:33-34

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H970, H972, H977, H1254, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G138, G140, G1586, G1588, G1589, G1951, G4400, G4401, G4758, G4899, G5500

**Uses:**

- Numbers 17 General Notes

## cistern, cisterns, well, wells

### Definition:

The terms “well” and “cistern” refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

- A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
- A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
- Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A “broken cistern” happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
- Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people’s homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.
- Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.
- Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
- Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
- Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “well” could include “deep water hole” or “deep hole for spring water” or “deep hole for drawing water.”
- The term “cistern” could be translated as “stone water pit” or “deep and narrow pit for water” or “underground tank for holding water.”
- These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

(See also: Jeremiah, prison, strife)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:15-17
- 2 Samuel 17:17-18
- Genesis 16:13-14
- Luke 14:4-6
- Numbers 20:17

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H875, H883, H953, H1360, H3653, H4599, H4726, H4841, G4077, G5421

**Uses:**

- Numbers 20:17
- Numbers 21:16
- Numbers 21:21-23

## clan, clans

### Definition:

The term “clan” refers to a group of extended family members who come from a common ancestor.

- In the Old Testament, the Israelites were counted according to their clans, or family groups.
- Clans were normally named after their most well-known ancestor.
- Individual people were sometimes referred to by the name of their clan. An example of this is when Moses’ father-in-law Jethro is sometimes called by his clan name, Reuel.
- Clan could be translated as “family group” or “extended family” or “relatives.”

(See also: family, Jethro, tribe)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:33-35
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 36:15-16
- Genesis 36:29-30
- Genesis 36:40-43
- Joshua 15:20
- Numbers 03:38-39

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H441, H1004, H4940

### Uses:

- Numbers 1:1-3
- Numbers 1:16
- Numbers 1:22
- Numbers 1:28
- Numbers 1:34
- Numbers 1:40
- Numbers 2:34
- Numbers 3:17-20
- Numbers 3:27-29
- Numbers 3:38-39
- Numbers 4:1-4
- Numbers 4:17-18
- Numbers 4:27-28

- Numbers 4:33
- Numbers 4:38-40
- Numbers 4:46-48
- Numbers 10:3-5
- Numbers 13:21-22
- Numbers 14:11-12
- Numbers 26:5
- Numbers 26:12
- Numbers 26:23
- Numbers 26:30
- Numbers 26:35
- Numbers 26:38
- Numbers 26:44
- Numbers 26:54
- Numbers 27:4-5
- Numbers 27:9-11
- Numbers 31:25-27
- Numbers 32:28-30
- Numbers 33:53-54
- Numbers 34:16-18
- Numbers 36:1-2
- Numbers 36:8-9

## clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean

**Definition:**

The term "clean" literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, it is often used figuratively to mean, "pure," "holy," or "free from sin."

- "Cleanse" is the process of making something "clean." It could also be translated as "wash" or "purify."
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually "clean" and which ones were "unclean." Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term "clean" means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared "clean" again.
- Sometimes "clean" is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could be translated with the common word for "clean" or "pure" (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, "ritually clean" or "acceptable to God."
- "Cleanse" could be translated by "wash" or "purify."
- Make sure that the words used for "clean" and "cleanse" can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled."
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled."

- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, holy, sacrifice)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 07:1-3
- Genesis 07:8-10
- Deuteronomy 12:15-16
- Psalms 051:7-9
- Proverbs 20:29-30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Luke 05:12-13
- Acts 08:6-8
- Acts 10:27-29
- Colossians 03:5-8
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- James 04:8-10

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2839, G2840, G3394, G3689

**Uses:**

- Numbers 05 General Notes
- Numbers 5:1-4
- Numbers 5:27-28
- Numbers 6:6-8
- Numbers 6:9
- Numbers 9:6-8
- Numbers 9:13-14
- Numbers 18:10-11
- Numbers 18:14-16
- Numbers 19 General Notes
- Numbers 19:7-8
- Numbers 19:9-10
- Numbers 19:14-16

*translationWordsclean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean*

- Numbers 19:17-19
- Numbers 31:21-24

## column, columns, pillar, pillars

**Definition:**

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: foundation, false god, image)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 18:4-5
- Exodus 13:19-22
- Exodus 33:7-9
- Genesis 31:45-47
- Proverbs 09:1-2

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H352, H547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G4769

**Uses:**

- Numbers 3:36-37
- Numbers 12:4-5
- Numbers 14:13-14

## command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

### Definition:

The term to "command" means to order someone to do something. A "command" or "commandment" is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, "commandment" often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the "Ten Commandments."
- A command can be positive ("Honor your parents") or negative ("Do not steal").
- To "take command" means to "take control" or "take charge" of something or someone.

### Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, "law." Also compare with the definitions of "decree" and "statute."
- Some translators may prefer to translate "command" and "commandment" with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, law, Ten Commandments)

### Bible References:

- Luke 01:5-7
- Matthew 01:24-25
- Matthew 22:37-38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H560, H565, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4483, G4487, G5506

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:17-19
- Numbers 1:53-54
- Numbers 2:32-33
- Numbers 3:14-16
- Numbers 3:38-39
- Numbers 4:37
- Numbers 4:45
- Numbers 5:1-4
- Numbers 8:3-4
- Numbers 8:20-21
- Numbers 9:4-5
- Numbers 9:13-14
- Numbers 9:20-21
- Numbers 10:11-13
- Numbers 13:3-4
- Numbers 14:41-43
- Numbers 15:22-24
- Numbers 15:30-31
- Numbers 15:37-39
- Numbers 17:10-11
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Numbers 20:7-9
- Numbers 20:27-29
- Numbers 23:19-20
- Numbers 26:3-4
- Numbers 27:9-11
- Numbers 27:12-14
- Numbers 27:22-23
- Numbers 28:1-2
- Numbers 28:6-8
- Numbers 29:17-19
- Numbers 29:23-25
- Numbers 29:29-31
- Numbers 29:37-38
- Numbers 29:39-40
- Numbers 30:1-2
- Numbers 31:6-8
- Numbers 31:30-31
- Numbers 31:47
- Numbers 32:23-25
- Numbers 33:1-2

- Numbers 33:38-39
- Numbers 34:1-3
- Numbers 34:13-15
- Numbers 34:27-29
- Numbers 35:1-2
- Numbers 36:1-2
- Numbers 36:10-12

## commander, commanders

**Definition:**

The term “commander” refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

- A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
- This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
- Other ways to translate “commander” could include, “leader” or “captain” or “officer.”
- The term to “command” an army could be translated as to “lead” or to “be in charge of.”

(See also: command, ruler, centurion)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 11:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 11:11-12
- Daniel 02:14-16
- Mark 06:21-22
- Proverbs 06:6-8

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2710, H2951, H1169, H4929, H5057, H6346, H7101, H7262, H7218, H7227, H7229, H7990, H8269, G5506

**Uses:**

- Numbers 31:13-15
- Numbers 31:48-49

## commit, commits, committed, committing, commitment

### Definition:

The terms “commit” and “commitment” refers to making a decision or promising to do something.

- A person who promises to do something is also described as being “committed” to doing it.
- To “commit” to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has “committed” (or “given”) to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
- The terms “commit” and “committed” also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as “commit a sin” or “commit adultery” or “commit murder.”
- The expression “committed to him the task” could also be translated as “gave him the task” or “entrusted to him the task” or “assigned the task to him.”
- The term “commitment” could be translated by, “task that was given” or “promise that was made.”

(See also: adultery, faithful, promise, sin)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 28:6-7
- 1 Peter 02:21-23
- Jeremiah 02:12-13
- Matthew 13:40-43
- Psalm 058:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H539, H817, H1361, H1497, H1500, H1540, H1556, H2181, H2388, H2398, H2399, H2403, H4560, H4603, H5003, H5753, H5766, H5771, H6213, H6466, H7683, H7760, H7847, G264, G2038, G2716, G3429, G3431, G3860, G3872, G3908, G4102, G4160, G4203

### Uses:

- Numbers 18:1-2

## conceive, conceives, conceived, conception

**Definition:**

The terms “conceive” and “conception” usually refer to becoming pregnant with a child. It can also be used for animals that become pregnant.

- The phrase “conceive a child” could be translated as, “become pregnant” or some other term that is an acceptable way of referring to this.
- The related term “conception” could be translated as, “beginning of a pregnancy” or “moment of becoming pregnant.”
- These terms can also refer to creating something or thinking of something, such as an idea, a plan, or a task. Ways to translate this could include, “think of” or “plan” or “create,” depending on the context.
- Sometimes this term can be used figuratively as in, “when sin is conceived” which means “when sin is first thought of” or “at the very start of a sin” or “when a sin first begins.”

(See also: create, womb)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 21:1-4
- Hosea 02:4-5
- Job 15:34-35
- Luke 01:24-25
- Luke 02:21

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2029, H2030, H2032, H2232, H2254, H2803, H3179, G1080, G1722, G2602, G2845, G4815

**Uses:**

- Numbers 11:11-12

## confess, confessed, confesses, confession

### Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: faith, testimony)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 2 John 01:7-8
- James 05:16-18
- Leviticus 05:5-6
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Nehemiah 01:6-7
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 038:17-18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3034, H8426, G1843, G3670, G3671

### Uses:

- Numbers 5:5-7

## consecrate, consecrated, consecration

**Definition:**

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to “sanctify” or to “make holy,” but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word “consecrate” has a meaning that is similar to “purify,” especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God’s service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate “consecrate” could include, “set apart for God’s service” or “purify for service to God.”
- Also consider how the terms “holy” and “sanctify” are translated.

(See also: holy, pure, sanctify)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 04:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 44:19

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2763, H3027, H4390, H4394, H5144, H5145, H6942, H6944, G1457, G5048

**Uses:**

- Numbers 06 General Notes
- Numbers 6:10-11
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 08 General Notes
- Numbers 11:18-20

## consume, consumes, consumed, consuming

### Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

### Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as, “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as, “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See also: devour, wrath)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 07:16
- Jeremiah 03:23-25
- Job 07:8-10
- Numbers 11:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H398, H402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H1497, H1846, H2000, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3631, H3857, H4127, H4529, H4743, H5486, H5487, H5595, H6244, H6789, H7332, H7646, H7829, H8046, H8552, G355, G1159, G2618, G2654, G2719, G5315, G5723

### Uses:

- Numbers 11:1-3

- Numbers 12:11-12
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Numbers 14:34-35
- Numbers 16:20-22
- Numbers 16:44-46
- Numbers 25:10-11

## council, councils

**Definition:**

A council is a group of people who meet to discuss, give advice, and make decisions about important matters.

- A council is usually organized in an official and somewhat permanent way for a specific purpose, such as making decisions about legal matters.
- The "Jewish Council" in Jerusalem, also known as the "Sanhedrin," had 70 members, which included Jewish leaders such as chief priests, elders, scribes, Pharisees, and Sadducees who met regularly to decide matters of Jewish law. It was this council of religious leaders who put Jesus on trial and decided that he should be killed.
- There were also smaller Jewish councils in other cities.
- The apostle Paul was brought before a Roman council when he was arrested for teaching the gospel.
- Depending on the context, the word "council" could also be translated as "legal assembly" or "political assembly."
- To be "in council" means to be in a special meeting to decide something.
- Note that this is a different word than "counsel," which means, "wise advice."

(See also: assembly, counsel, Pharisee, law, priest, Sadducee, scribe)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:57-58
- Acts 24:20-21
- John 03:1-2
- Luke 22:66-68
- Mark 13:9-10
- Matthew 05:21-22
- Matthew 26:59-61

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4186, H5475, H7277, G1010, G4824, G4892

## court, courts, courtyard, courtyards

### Definition:

The terms “courtyard” and “court” refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term “court” also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase “king’s court” can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh’s dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “courtyard” could be translated as “enclosed space” or “walled-in land” or “temple grounds” or “temple enclosure.”
- Sometimes the term “temple” may need to be translated as “temple courtyards” or “temple complex” so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” could be translated as, “place where Yahweh lives” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped.”
- The term used for a king’s court could also be used to refer to Yahweh’s court.

(See also: Gentile, judge, king, tabernacle, temple)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:9-10
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- Luke 22:54-55
- Matthew 26:69-70
- Numbers 03:24-26
- Psalms 065:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1508, H2691, H5835, H6503, H7339, G833, G933, G2681, G4259

**Uses:**

- Numbers 3:24-26
- Numbers 3:36-37
- Numbers 4:24-26
- Numbers 4:31-32

## covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love

**Definition:**

This term is used to describe God's commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to his people.

- God made promises to the Israelites in formal agreements called "covenants."
- The "covenant faithfulness" or "covenant loyalty" of Yahweh refers to the fact that he keeps his promises to his people.
- God's faithfulness to keep his covenant promises is an expression of his grace toward his people.
- The term "loyalty" is another word that refers to being committed and dependable, to do and say what has been promised, and what will benefit someone else.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The way this term is translated will also depend on how the terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, "faithful love" or "loyal, committed love" or "loving dependability."

(See also: covenant, faithful, grace, Israel, people of God, promise)

**Bible References:**

- Ezra 03:10-11
- Numbers 14:17-19

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2617

**Uses:**

- Numbers 14:17-19

## covenant, covenants, new covenant

**Definition:**

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."

- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: covenant, promise)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 09:11-13
- Genesis 17:7-8
- Genesis 31:43-44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:22-25
- Luke 01:72-75
- Luke 22:19-20
- Acts 07:6-8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 03:4-6
- Galatians 03:17-18
- Hebrews 12:22-24

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **04:09** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **05:04** ”I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac.”
- **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **07:10** The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.”
- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, ”If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **13:04** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:05** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.

- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:50
- Numbers 9:15-17
- Numbers 10:11-13
- Numbers 17:3-5
- Numbers 17:10-11
- Numbers 18:1-2
- Numbers 18:19-20
- Numbers 25:12-13

## cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen

**Definition:**

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: yoke)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 01:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:1-3
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 01:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 11:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15-16
- Luke 14:4-6
- Hebrews 09:13-15

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H47, H441, H504, H929, H1165, H1241, H1241, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H5697, H6499, H6499, H6510, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8377, H8450, H8450, G1016, G1151, G2353, G2934, G3447, G3448, G4165, G5022, G5022

**Uses:**

- Numbers 7:15
- Numbers 7:27
- Numbers 7:39
- Numbers 7:51
- Numbers 7:63
- Numbers 7:75
- Numbers 7:87
- Numbers 8:7-8
- Numbers 15:8-10
- Numbers 15:22-24
- Numbers 18:17-18
- Numbers 20:7-9
- Numbers 23:1-3
- Numbers 23:13-15
- Numbers 23:28-30
- Numbers 28:11-13
- Numbers 28:26-28
- Numbers 29:2
- Numbers 29:7-8
- Numbers 29:17-19
- Numbers 29:23-25
- Numbers 29:29-31
- Numbers 31:9-10
- Numbers 31:28-29
- Numbers 32:16-17
- Numbers 35:3-4

## create, creates, created, creation, creator

**Definition:**

The term “create” means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as, “when God created the world at the beginning of time,” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news to “all creation” means to preach the good news to “all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase “Let all creation rejoice” means “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as “God, who created you.”

(See also: God, good news, world)

**Bible References:**

se, “since the creation of the world” means, ”since the time when God created the world was created.

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 04:17-19
- Colossians 01:15-17

- Galatians 06:14-16
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Genesis 14:19-20

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G2041, G2602, G2675, G2936, G2937, G2939, G4160, G5480

**Uses:**

- Numbers 16:28-30

## crown, crowns, crowned

**Definition:**

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term to "crown" means to put a crown on someone's head; figuratively it means, to "honor."

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king's power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus' head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, to "crown" means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his "joy and crown." In this expression, "crown" is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, "crown" could be translated as "prize" or "honor" or "reward."
- The figurative use of to "crown" could be translated as to "honor" or to "decorate."
- If a person is "crowned" this could be translated as "a crown was put on his head."
- The expression, "he was crowned with glory and honor" could be translated as, "glory and honor were bestowed on him" or "he was given glory and honor" or "he was endowed with glory and honor."

(See also: glory, king, olive)

**Bible References:**

- John 19:1-3
- Lamentations 05:15-16
- Matthew 27:27-29
- Philippians 04:1-3
- Psalms 021:3-4
- Revelation 03:9-11

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2213, H3803, H3804, H4502, H5145, H5849, H5850, H6936, G1238, G4735, G4737

## cure, cured, heal, heals, healed, healing, healings, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy

**Definition:**

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. Thsi kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: miracle)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 05:14-16
- Acts 08:6-8
- Luke 05:12-13
- Luke 06:17-19
- Luke 08:43-44
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 13:15

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

***19:14** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him. ***21:10** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk. ***26:06** Jesus continued saying, ”And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.” ***26:08** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them. ***32:14** She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, ”I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!” ***44:03** Immediately, God **healed** the

lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God. ***44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah." ***49:02** ] Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H724, H1369, H1455, H2280, H2421, H2896, H3444, H3545, H4832, H4974, H7495, H7499, H7500, H7725, H7965, H8549, H8585, H8644, H622, G1295, G1743, G2322, G2323, G2386, G2390, G2392, G2511, G3647, G4982, G4991, G5198, G5199

**Uses:**

- Numbers 12:13-15

## curse, cursed, curses, cursing

**Definition:**

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as, “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as, “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as, “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- “Cursed be the day I was born” could also be translated as, “I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: bless)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Galatians 03:10-12
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Genesis 03:14-15
- Genesis 03:17-19
- James 03:9-10
- Numbers 22:5-6
- Psalms 109:28-29

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **02:09** God said to the snake, "You are **cursed**!"
- **02:11** "Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food."
- **04:04** "I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you."
- **39:07** Then Peter vowed, saying, "May God **curse** me if I know this man!"
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672, G6035

**Uses:**

- Numbers 5:18-19
- Numbers 5:24-26
- Numbers 22 General Notes
- Numbers 22:5-6
- Numbers 22:15-17
- Numbers 23 General Notes
- Numbers 23:7-8
- Numbers 23:11-12
- Numbers 23:25-27
- Numbers 24 General Notes
- Numbers 24:9

## curtain, curtains

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “curtain” refers to a very thick, heavy piece of material used in the making of the tabernacle and the temple.

- The tabernacle was built using four layers of curtains for the top and sides. These curtain coverings were made of cloth or animal skins.
- Cloth curtains were also used to form a wall surrounding the tabernacle courtyard. These curtains were made out of “linen” which was a kind of cloth made out of the flax plant.
- In both the tabernacle and temple building, a thick cloth curtain hung between the holy place and the most holy place. It was this curtain that was miraculously torn into two parts when Jesus died.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Since modern-day curtains are very different from the curtains used in the Bible, it may be more clear to use a different word or to add words that describe the curtains.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “curtain covering” or “covering” or “piece of thick cloth” or “animal skin covering” or “hanging piece of cloth.”

(See also: holy place, tabernacle, temple)

**Bible References:**

- Hebrews 10:19-22
- Leviticus 04:16-17
- Luke 23:44-45
- Matthew 27:51-53
- Numbers 04:5-6

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1852, H3407, H4539, H6532, H7050, G2665

**Uses:**

- Numbers 3:24-26
- Numbers 4:5-6
- Numbers 4:24-26
- Numbers 18:6-7

## Cush

### Facts:

Cush was the oldest son of Noah's son Ham. He was also the ancestor of Nimrod. Two of his brothers were named Egypt and Canaan.

- In Old Testament times, "Cush" was the name of a large region of land south of Israel. It is probable that the land was named after Ham's son Cush.
- The ancient region of Cush covered an area of land that may have, at different times, included parts of the modern-day countries of Sudan, Egypt, Ethiopia, and possibly, Saudi Arabia.
- Another man named Cush is mentioned in the Psalms. He was a Benjamite.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Arabia, Canaan, Egypt, Ethiopia)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:8-10
- Ezekiel 29:8-10
- Genesis 02:13-14
- Genesis 10:6-7
- Jeremiah 13:22-24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3568, H3569, H3570

### Uses:

- Numbers 12:1-3

## cut off, cuts off, cutting off

**Definition:**

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, to “cut off” could be translated as, to “destroy” or to “send away” or to “separate from” or to “destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 17:12-14
- Judges 21:6-7
- Proverbs 23:17-18

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1468, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H1824, H1826, H2498, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6202, H6789, H6990, H7082, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G609, G851, G1581, G2407, G5257

**Uses:**

- Numbers 9:13-14
- Numbers 15:30-31
- Numbers 19:11-13
- Numbers 19:20-22

## Dan

### Facts:

Dan was the fifth son of Jacob and was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.The region settled by the tribe of Dan in the northern part of Canaan also was given this name.

- During the time of Abram, there was a city named Dan located west of Jerusalem.
- Years later, during the time the nation of Israel entered the promised land, a different city named Dan was located about 60 miles north of Jerusalem.
- The term “Danites” refers to the descendants of Dan, who were also members of his clan.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Jerusalem, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 12:34-35
- 1 Kings 04:24-25
- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 14:13-14
- Genesis 30:5-6

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1835, H1839, H2051

### Uses:

- Numbers 1:12
- Numbers 1:38
- Numbers 2:25
- Numbers 2:31
- Numbers 7:66
- Numbers 10:25-28
- Numbers 13:9-12
- Numbers 26:42
- Numbers 34:21-23

## day, days

### Definition:

The term “day” literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.”
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of “day” could include, “time” or “season” or “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: judgment day, last day)

### Bible References:

- Acts 20:4-6
- Daniel 10:4-6
- Ezra 06:13-15
- Ezra 06:19-20
- Matthew 09:14-15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H3118, H6242, G2250

### Uses:

- Numbers 1:1-3
- Numbers 7:18
- Numbers 7:24
- Numbers 7:30
- Numbers 7:42
- Numbers 7:84
- Numbers 9:1-3
- Numbers 9:11-12
- Numbers 10:11-13
- Numbers 28:3-5
- Numbers 28:16-18

- Numbers 28:26-28
- Numbers 29:1
- Numbers 29:7-8
- Numbers 29:12-13
- Numbers 29:17-19
- Numbers 29:20-22
- Numbers 29:23-25
- Numbers 29:26-28
- Numbers 29:29-31
- Numbers 29:32-34
- Numbers 29:35-36
- Numbers 33:3-4
- Numbers 33:38-39

## deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceptive

**Definition:**

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit.”

- Another term “deception” also refers to the act of causing someone to believe something that is not true.
- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: true)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 1 Timothy 02:13-15
- 2 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:62-64
- Micah 06:11-12

{{tag>publish review}

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H6121, H6231, H6280, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8501, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1389, G1818, G3884, G4105, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423

**Uses:**

- Numbers 25:16-18

## declare, declares, declared, declaring, declaration, declarations

**Definition:**

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something.

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: proclaim)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 16:23-24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 02:15-16
- Ezekiel 05:11-12
- Matthew 07:21-23

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H262, H559, H560, H816, H874, H952, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H6575, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G394, G518, G669, G1107, G1213, G1229, G1335, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1732, G1834, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G3140, G3670, G3724, G3822, G3853, G3870, G3955, G5319, G5419

**Uses:**

- Numbers 15:32-34

## decree, decrees, decreed

**Definition:**

A decree is a proclamation or law that is publicly declared to all the people.

- God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- Like laws and commands, decrees must be obeyed.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.
- To decree something means to give an order that must be obeyed. This could be translated as to "order" or to "command" or to "formally require" or to "publicly make a law."
- Something that is "decreed" to happen means that this "will definitely happen" or "has been decided upon and will not be changed" or "declared absolutely that this will happen."

(See also: command, declare, law, proclaim)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 15:13-15
- 1 Kings 08:57-58
- Acts 17:5-7
- Daniel 02:12-13
- Esther 01:21-22
- Luke 02:1-3

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H559, H633, H1697, H5715, H1504, H1510, H1881, H1882, H1696, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2711, H2782, H2852, H2940, H2941, H2942, H3791, H3982, H4055, H4406, H4941, H5407, H5713, H6599, H6680, H7010, H8421, G1378

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:50
- Numbers 9:1-3
- Numbers 9:15-17
- Numbers 10:11-13
- Numbers 15:14-16
- Numbers 15:22-24
- Numbers 17:3-5
- Numbers 17:10-11

- Numbers 18:1-2
- Numbers 27:9-11
- Numbers 29:6
- Numbers 31:21-24
- Numbers 36:13

## dedicate, dedicates, dedicated, dedication

**Definition:**

To dedicate is to set apart or commit something for a special purpose or function.

- David dedicated his gold and silver to the Lord.
- Often the word “dedication” refers to a formal event or ceremony to set apart something for a special purpose.
- The dedication of the altar included offering a sacrifice to God.
- Nehemiah led the Israelites in a dedication of Jerusalem’s repaired walls with a renewed promise to serve only Yahweh and to take care of his city. This event included giving thanks to God with musical instruments and singing.
- The term “dedicate” could also be translated as “specially assign a special purpose” or “commit something to be used for a specific use” or “commit someone to do a special task.”

(See also: commit)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 15:11-12
- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- 1 Kings 07:51
- 1 Timothy 04:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 02:4-5
- John 17:18-19
- Luke 02:22-24

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2596, H2597, H2598, H2764, H4394, H6942, H6944, G1456, G1457

**Uses:**

- Numbers 7:10-11

## defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled

**Definition:**

The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: clean, clean)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 23:8-9
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27-29
- Genesis 49:3-4
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- Mark 07:14-16
- Matthew 15:10-11

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, H2933, H2936, H5953, G733, G2839, G2840, G3392, G3435, G4696, G5351

**Uses:**

- Numbers 5:1-4
- Numbers 5:13-14
- Numbers 5:20-21
- Numbers 5:27-28
- Numbers 6:9
- Numbers 6:12
- Numbers 19:11-13
- Numbers 19:20-22
- Numbers 35:33-34

## descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants

### Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: Abraham, ancestor, Jacob, Noah, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:4-5
- Acts 13:23-25
- Deuteronomy 02:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

***02:09** ”The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.” ***04:09** ”I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.” ***05:10** ”Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.” ***17:07** ”Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants**!” ***18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David. ***21:04** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**. ***48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G1074, G1085, G4690

### Uses:

- Numbers 1:20
- Numbers 1:26
- Numbers 1:32
- Numbers 1:38

- Numbers 3:1-2
- Numbers 3:14-16
- Numbers 3:24-26
- Numbers 3:36-37
- Numbers 3:40-41
- Numbers 4:1-4
- Numbers 4:15-16
- Numbers 4:27-28
- Numbers 4:33
- Numbers 4:38-40
- Numbers 7:6-8
- Numbers 7:24
- Numbers 7:36
- Numbers 7:48
- Numbers 7:60
- Numbers 7:72
- Numbers 8:16-17
- Numbers 9:9-10
- Numbers 10:14-16
- Numbers 10:25-28
- Numbers 11:4-6
- Numbers 13:9-12
- Numbers 13:27-29
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Numbers 15:37-39
- Numbers 16:1-3
- Numbers 16:8-11
- Numbers 16:39
- Numbers 18:6-7
- Numbers 18:19-20
- Numbers 24:17
- Numbers 25:12-13
- Numbers 26:5
- Numbers 26:12
- Numbers 26:23
- Numbers 26:30
- Numbers 26:35
- Numbers 26:38
- Numbers 26:44
- Numbers 26:57-59
- Numbers 26:60-62
- Numbers 32:1-3
- Numbers 32:23-25

- Numbers 34:13-15
- Numbers 34:19-20

## desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses

**Definition:**

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place" or "remote place" or "uninhabited place."

**Bible References:**

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:37-38
- Exodus 04:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 03:14-15
- Luke 01:80
- Luke 09:12-14
- Mark 01:1-3
- Matthew 04:1-4
- Matthew 11:7-8

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:1-3
- Numbers 1:17-19
- Numbers 3:3-4
- Numbers 3:14-16
- Numbers 9:1-3
- Numbers 10:11-13
- Numbers 10:31-32
- Numbers 12:16
- Numbers 13:3-4
- Numbers 13:21-22

- Numbers 14:1-3
- Numbers 14:15-16
- Numbers 14:23-25
- Numbers 14:31-33
- Numbers 15:32-34
- Numbers 16:12-14
- Numbers 20:1
- Numbers 20:4-5
- Numbers 21:4-5
- Numbers 21:10-11
- Numbers 21:17-18
- Numbers 23:28-30
- Numbers 24:1
- Numbers 26:63-64
- Numbers 27:2-3
- Numbers 27:12-14
- Numbers 32:13-15
- Numbers 33:5-7
- Numbers 33:8-10
- Numbers 33:11-14
- Numbers 33:40
- Numbers 34:1-3

## devastate, devastated, devastating, devastation, devastations

**Definition:**

The term “devastated” or “devastation” refers to having one’s property or land ruined or destroyed. It also often includes destroying or capturing the people living on that land.

- This refers to a very severe and complete destruction.
- For example, the city of Sodom was devastated by God as punishment for the sins of the people living there.
- The term “devastation” can also include causing great emotional grief resulting from the punishment or destruction.

**Translation Suggestions**

- The term “devastate” could be translated as “completely destroy” or “completely ruin.”
- Depending on the context, “devastation” could be translated as “complete destruction” or “total ruin” or “overwhelming grief” or “disaster.”

**Bible References:**

- Daniel 08:24-25
- Jeremiah 04:13-15
- Numbers 21:29-30
- Zephaniah 01:12-13

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1110, H1238, H2721, H1826, H3615, H3772, H7701, H7703, H7722, H7843, H8074, H8077

**Uses:**

- Numbers 21:29-30

## devour, devours, devoured, devouring

### Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:8-9
- Amos 01:9-10
- Exodus 24:16-18
- Ezekiel 16:20-22
- Luke 15:28-30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 021:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

### Uses:

- Numbers 16:33-35
- Numbers 21:27-28
- Numbers 26:10-11

## die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly

**Definition:**

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

### 1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person's spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

### 2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "spiritual death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: nominal adjective)

- The expression “put to death” could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: believe, faith, life, spirit)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 15:20-21
- 1 Thessalonians 04:16-18
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:19-20
- Colossians 02:13-15
- Colossians 02:20-23
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 34:27-29
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Romans 05:10-11
- Romans 05:12-13
- Romans 06:10-11

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** ”Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt.”
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** “Jesus replied, ”I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**.”
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** ”Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead.”
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**. *

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G581, G599, G615, G622, G684, G1634, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

**Uses:**

- Numbers 3:3-4

- Numbers 3:9-10
- Numbers 3:38-39
- Numbers 4:15-16
- Numbers 5:1-4
- Numbers 6:6-8
- Numbers 9:6-8
- Numbers 12:11-12
- Numbers 14:1-3
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Numbers 14:28-30
- Numbers 15:35-36
- Numbers 16:28-30
- Numbers 16:47-48
- Numbers 17:10-11
- Numbers 18:3-5
- Numbers 18:21-22
- Numbers 18:30-32
- Numbers 19:11-13
- Numbers 20:1
- Numbers 20:25-26
- Numbers 21:4-5
- Numbers 23:10
- Numbers 25:8-9
- Numbers 26:10-11
- Numbers 26:60-62
- Numbers 31:6-8
- Numbers 31:18-20
- Numbers 33:38-39
- Numbers 35:16
- Numbers 35:26-28

## disgrace, disgraces, disgraced, disgraceful

### Facts:

The term “disgrace” refers to a loss of honor and respect.

- When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- The term “disgraceful” is used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame.
- For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or dishonoring.”

(See also: dishonor, honor, shame)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:6-7
- Genesis 34:6-7
- Hebrews 11:23-26
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Psalms 022:6-8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H954, H1984, H2490, H2617, H2659, H2781, H2865, H3637, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6031, H7036, G149, G819, G3680, G3856

### Uses:

- Numbers 12:13-15

## divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer

**Definition:**

The terms “divination” and “soothsaying” refer to the practice of trying to get information from spirits in the supernatural world. A person who does this is sometimes called a “diviner” or “soothsayer.”

- In Old Testament times, God commanded the Israelites to not practice divination or soothsaying.
- God did permit his people to seek information from him using the Urim and Thummim, which were stones that he had designated to be used by the high priest for that purpose. But he did not allow his people to seek information through the help of evil spirits.
- Pagan diviners used different methods of trying to find out information from the spirit world. Sometimes they would examine the inside parts of a dead animal or throw animal bones on the ground, looking for patterns that they would interpret as messages from their false gods.
- In the New Testament, Jesus and the apostles also rejected divination, sorcery, witchcraft, and magic. All these practices involve using the power of evil spirits and are condemned by God.

(See also: apostle, false god, magic, sorcery)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 06:1-2
- Acts 16:16-18
- Ezekiel 12:24-25
- Genesis 44:3-5
- Jeremiah 27:9-11

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1870, H4738, H5172, H6049, H7080, H7081, G4436

**Uses:**

- Numbers 22:7-8

## divorce

### Definition:

A divorce is the legal act of ending a marriage. The term to “divorce” means to formally and legally separate from one’s spouse in order to end the marriage.

- The literal meaning of the term to “divorce” is to “send away” or to “formally separate from.” Other languages may have similar expressions to refer to divorce.
- A “certificate of divorce” could be translated as a “paper stating that the marriage has ended.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 08:8-11
- Leviticus 21:7-9
- Luke 16:18
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 05:31-32
- Matthew 19:3-4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1644, H3748, H5493, H7971, G630, G647, G863

### Uses:

- Numbers 30:9-11

## dominion

### Definition:

The term “dominion” refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan’s dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ’s death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “authority” or “power” or “control.”
- The phrase “have dominion over” could be translated as “rule over” or “manage.”

(See also: authority, power)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:10-11
- Colossians 01:13-14
- Jude 01:24-25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G2634, G2904, G2961, G2963

### Uses:

- Numbers 24:18-19

## donkey, mule

### Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:32-34
- 1 Samuel 09:3-4
- 2 Kings 04:21-22
- Deuteronomy 05:12-14
- Luke 13:15-16
- Matthew 21:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, H7409, G3678, G3688, G5268

### Uses:

- Numbers 16:15-17
- Numbers 22:21-23
- Numbers 22:31-33
- Numbers 31:28-29
- Numbers 31:32
- Numbers 31:42

## dove, pigeon

**Definition:**

Doves and pigeons are two kinds of small, gray-brown birds that look similar. A dove is often thought of as being lighter in color, almost white.

- Some languages have two different names for them, while others use the same name for both.
- Doves and pigeons were used in sacrifices to God, especially for people who could not afford to buy a larger animal.
- A dove brought the leaf of an olive tree to Noah when the flood waters were going down.
- Doves sometimes symbolize purity, innocence, or peace.
- If doves or pigeons are not known in the language area where the translation is being done, this term could be translated as “a small grayish brown bird called a dove” or “a small gray or brown bird, similar to a (name of local bird)”.
- If both a dove and a pigeon are referred to in the same verse, it is best to use two different words for these birds, if possible.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: olive, innocent, pure)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 08:8-9
- Luke 02:22-24
- Mark 01:9-11
- Matthew 03:16-17
- Matthew 21:12-14

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1469, H1686, H3123, H8449, G4058

**Uses:**

- Numbers 6:10-11

## dream

### Definition:

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

- Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
- Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
- In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
- A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: vision)

### Bible References:

- Acts 02:16-17
- Daniel 01:17-18
- Daniel 02:1-2
- Genesis 37:5-6
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Matthew 02:13-15
- Matthew 02:19-21

### Examples from the Bible stories:

***08:02** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had **dreamed** that he would be their ruler. ***08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two **dreams** that disturbed him greatly. None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the **dreams**. ***08:07** God had given Joseph the ability to interpret **dreams**, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. Joseph interpreted the **dreams** for him and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine." ***16:11** So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about something he had **dreamed**. The man's friend said, "This **dream** means that Gideon's army will defeat the Midianite army!" ***23:01** He (Joseph) did not want to shame her (Mary), so he planned to quietly divorce her. Before he could do that, an angel came and spoke to him in a **dream**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1957, H2472, H2492, H2493, G1797, G1798, G3677

**Uses:**

- Numbers 12:6-8

## drink offering

**Definition:**

A drink offering was a sacrifice to God that involved pouring wine on an altar. It was often offered together with a burnt offering and a grain offering.

- Paul refers to his life as being poured out like a drink offering. This means that he was totally dedicated to serving God and telling people about Jesus, even though he knew he would suffer and probably be killed because of that.
- Jesus' death on the cross was the ultimate drink offering, as his blood was poured out on the cross for our sins.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Another way to translate this term could be "offering of grape wine."
- When Paul says he is being "poured out like an offering" this could also be translated as "I am completely committed to teaching God's message to people, just like an offering of wine is poured out completely on the altar."

(See also: burnt offering, grain offering)

**Bible References:**

- Exodus 25:28-30
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Genesis 35:14-15
- Jeremiah 07:16-18
- Numbers 05:15

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5257, H5261, H5262

**Uses:**

- Numbers 5:15
- Numbers 6:13-15
- Numbers 15:4-5
- Numbers 15:22-24
- Numbers 28:6-8
- Numbers 28:9-10
- Numbers 28:14-15

- Numbers 28:23-25
- Numbers 28:29-31
- Numbers 29:6
- Numbers 29:9-11
- Numbers 29:14-16
- Numbers 29:20-22
- Numbers 29:26-28
- Numbers 29:32-34
- Numbers 29:37-38

## dung, manure

### Definition:

The term “dung” refers to human or animal solid waste, and is also called feces or excrement. When used as fertilizer for enriching the soil, it is called “manure.”

- These terms can also be used figuratively to refer to something that is worthless or not important.
- Dried animal dung is often used for fuel.
- The expression “be like dung on the face of the earth” could be translated as “be scattered like worthless dung over the land.”
- The “Dung Gate” in the South Wall of Jerusalem was probably the gate where garbage and trash were taken out of the city.

(See also: gate)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- 2 Kings 06:24-26
- Isaiah 25:9-10
- Jeremiah 08:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H830, H1119, H1557, H1561, H1686, H1828, H6569, H6675, G906, G4657

### Uses:

- Numbers 19:3-6

## earth, earthen, earthly

**Definition:**

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: metonymy)
- The expressions “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: spirit, world)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- Luke 12:51-53
- Matthew 06:8-10
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Zechariah 06:5-6

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G3749, G4578, G5517

**Uses:**

- Numbers 12:1-3

- Numbers 14:20-22
- Numbers 16:31-32
- Numbers 22:5-6
- Numbers 26:10-11

## Edom, Edomite, Edomites, Idumea

### Facts:

Edom was another name for Esau. The region where he lived also became known as “Edom” and later, “Idumea.” The “Edomites” were his descendants.

- The region of Edom changed locations over time. It was mostly located to the south of Israel and eventually extended into southern Judah.
- During New Testament times, Edom covered the southern half of the province of Judea. The Greeks called it “Idumea.”
- The name “Edom” means “red,” which may refer to the fact that Esau was covered with red hair when he was born. Or it may refer to the red lentil stew that Esau traded his birthright for.
- In the Old Testament, the country of Edom is often mentioned as an enemy of Israel.
- The entire book of Obadiah is about the destruction of Edom. Other Old Testament prophets also spoke negative prophecies against Edom.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: adversary, birthright, Esau, Obadiah, prophet)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 25:29-30
- Genesis 32:3-5
- Genesis 36:1-3
- Isaiah 11:14-15
- Joshua 11:16-17
- Obadiah 01:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H123, H130, H8165, G2401

### Uses:

- Numbers 20:14-16
- Numbers 20:20-21
- Numbers 21:4-5
- Numbers 24:18-19
- Numbers 33:35-37
- Numbers 34:1-3

## Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians

### Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:7-9
- Acts 07:9-10
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 41:27-29
- Genesis 41:55-57
- Matthew 02:13-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:04** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **08:08** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **08:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to **Egypt** to buy food.
- **08:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **09:01** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4713, H4714, G124, G125

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:1-3
- Numbers 3:11-13
- Numbers 8:16-17
- Numbers 9:1-3
- Numbers 11:4-6
- Numbers 11:18-20
- Numbers 13:21-22
- Numbers 14:1-3
- Numbers 14:13-14
- Numbers 14:20-22
- Numbers 15:40-41
- Numbers 20:4-5
- Numbers 20:14-16
- Numbers 21:4-5
- Numbers 22:5-6
- Numbers 22:9-11
- Numbers 23:21-22
- Numbers 24:8
- Numbers 26:3-4
- Numbers 26:57-59
- Numbers 32:10-11
- Numbers 33:1-2
- Numbers 33:38-39
- Numbers 34:4-5

## elder, elders

**Definition:**

Elders are spiritually mature men who have responsibilities of spiritual and practical leadership among God's people.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish elders continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers.
- Elders in these churches included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14-16
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23-26
- Mark 11:27-28
- Matthew 21:23-24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

**Uses:**

- Numbers 11:16-17
- Numbers 11:24-25
- Numbers 16:25-27
- Numbers 22:2-4

## Eleazar

### Facts:

Eleazar was the name of several men in the Bible.

- Eleazar was the third son of Moses' brother Aaron. After Aaron died, Eleazar became the high priest in Israel.
- Eleazar was also the name of one of David's "mighty men."
- Another Eleazar was one of Jesus' ancestors.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Aaron, high priest, David, mighty)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 24:1-3
- Judges 20:27-28
- Numbers 26:1-2
- Numbers 34:16-18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H499, G1648

### Uses:

- Numbers 3:1-2
- Numbers 3:30-32
- Numbers 4:15-16
- Numbers 16:36-38
- Numbers 19:3-6
- Numbers 20:25-26
- Numbers 26:1-2
- Numbers 27:2-3
- Numbers 27:22-23
- Numbers 31:6-8
- Numbers 31:11-12
- Numbers 31:21-24
- Numbers 31:28-29
- Numbers 31:39-41
- Numbers 32:1-3
- Numbers 32:28-30

- Numbers 34:16-18

## enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants

**Definition:**

The word for "servant" can also mean "slave" and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a person is a servant or a slave.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master's household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- Christians are also called "slaves to righteousness," which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave's commitment to obey his master.

(See: Metaphor)

(See also: commit, enslave, household, lord, obey, righteous, serve)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

***06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac. ***08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official. ***09:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt." ***19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**." ***29:03** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'" ***35:06** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving." ***47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God. ***50:04** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257

**Uses:**

- Numbers 11:11-12
- Numbers 12:6-8
- Numbers 14:23-25
- Numbers 22:21-23
- Numbers 31:48-49
- Numbers 32:4-5
- Numbers 32:23-25
- Numbers 32:26-27
- Numbers 32:31-32

## Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites

### Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel. (See: synecdoche)
- Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to “the hill country of Ephraim” or “the mountains of Ephraim.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: kingdom of Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:15-17
- Genesis 41:50-52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54-55

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H669, H673, G2187

### Uses:

- Numbers 1:10
- Numbers 1:32
- Numbers 2:18
- Numbers 2:24
- Numbers 7:48
- Numbers 10:21-24
- Numbers 13:5-8
- Numbers 26:28
- Numbers 26:35
- Numbers 34:24-26

## Esau

### Facts:

Esau was one of the twin sons of Isaac and Rebekah. He was the first baby born to them. His twin brother was Jacob.

- Esau sold his birthright to his brother Jacob in exchange for a bowl of food.
- Since Esau was born first, his father Isaac was supposed to give him a special blessing. But Jacob tricked Isaac into giving him that blessing instead. At first Esau was so angry that he wanted to kill Jacob, but later he forgave him.
- Esau had many children and grandchildren, and these descendants formed a large people group living in the land of Canaan.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Edom, Isaac, Jacob, Rebekah)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 25:29-30
- Genesis 26:34-35
- Genesis 27:11-12
- Genesis 32:3-5
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- Romans 09:10-13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

***06:07** When Rebekah's babies were born, the older son came out red and hairy, and they named him **Esau**. ***07:02** So **Esau** gave Jacob his rights as the oldest son. ***07:04** When Isaac felt the goat hair and smelled the clothes, he thought it was **Esau** and blessed him. ***07:05** **Esau** hated Jacob because Jacob had stolen his rights as oldest son and also his blessing. ***07:10** But **Esau** had already forgiven Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6215, G2269

## eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

### Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.
- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean “a very long time.”

- The term “forever and ever” emphasizes that something will always happen or exist.
- The phrase “forever and ever” is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include“unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: David, reign, life)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 17:7-8
- Genesis 48:3-4
- Exodus 15:17-18
- 2 Samuel 03:28-30
- 1 Kings 02:32-33
- Job 04:20-21
- Psalms 021:3-4
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 07:17-18
- Luke 18:18-21
- Acts 13:46-47
- Romans 05:20-21
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 01:1-2
- 1 John 05:11-12
- Revelation 01:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?"
- **28:01** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God's laws."
- **28:10** Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166, G1336

**Uses:**

- Numbers 18:19-20
- Numbers 25:12-13

## Euphrates River, the River

**Facts:**

The Euphrates is the name of one of the four rivers that flowed through the Garden of Eden. It is the river that is most often mentioned in the Bible.

- The modern day river named Euphrates is located in the Middle East and is the longest and most important river in Asia.
- Together with the Tigris River, the Euphrates borders a region of land known as Mesopotamia.
- The ancient city of Ur where Abraham came from was at the mouth of the Euphrates River.
- This river was one of the boundaries of the land that God promised to give to Abraham (Genesis 15:18).
- Sometimes the Euphrates is simply called “the River.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 05:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 09:25-26
- Exodus 23:30-33
- Genesis 02:13-14
- Isaiah 07:20-22

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5104, H6578, G2166

**Uses:**

- Numbers 22:5-6

## evil, wicked, wickedness

### Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, sin, good, righteous, demon)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:10-11
- 1 Timothy 06:9-10
- 3 John 01:9-10
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:1-3
- Job 08:19-20
- Judges 09:55-57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:7-8
- Psalms 022:16-17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** ”God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”

- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** "You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!"
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2617, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

**Uses:**

- Numbers 14:26-27
- Numbers 14:34-35
- Numbers 16:25-27
- Numbers 22:31-33
- Numbers 32:13-15

## ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Israel, lamb, sacrifice, shepherd)

### Bible References:

- Acts 08:32-33
- Genesis 30:31-32
- John 02:13-14
- Luke 15:3-5
- Mark 06:33-34
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 10:5-7
- Matthew 12:11-12
- Matthew 25:31-33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:08** Jesus said, ”All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ’I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

**Uses:**

- Numbers 5:8-10
- Numbers 6:13-15
- Numbers 6:19-20
- Numbers 7:15
- Numbers 7:27
- Numbers 7:39
- Numbers 7:51
- Numbers 7:63
- Numbers 7:75
- Numbers 7:87
- Numbers 15:6-7
- Numbers 18:17-18
- Numbers 22:38-40
- Numbers 23:1-3
- Numbers 23:13-15
- Numbers 23:28-30
- Numbers 27:15-17
- Numbers 28:11-13
- Numbers 28:26-28
- Numbers 29:2
- Numbers 29:7-8
- Numbers 29:17-19
- Numbers 29:23-25
- Numbers 29:29-31
- Numbers 31:28-29
- Numbers 31:32
- Numbers 31:42
- Numbers 32:23-25
- Numbers 32:34-36

## face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown

**Definition:**

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 05:4-6
- Genesis 33:9-11

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

**Uses:**

- Numbers 14:13-14
- Numbers 21:10-11
- Numbers 22:5-6

## faith

### Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: abstractnouns)
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: believe, faithful)

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:6-8
- Acts 06:7
- Galatians 02:20-21
- James 02:18-20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”

- **31:07** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, ”You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, ”Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”
- **38:09** Then Jesus said to Peter, ”Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

**Uses:**

- Numbers 13 General Notes
- Numbers 14 General Notes
- Numbers 21 General Notes

## faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness

### Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him.The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”
- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: adultery, believe, disobey, faith, believe)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40-42
- Numbers 12:6-8
- Joshua 02:14

- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:5-7
- Luke 12:45-46
- Luke 16:10-12
- Colossians 01:7-8
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23-24
- 3 John 01:5-8

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

**Uses:**

- Numbers 5:5-7
- Numbers 5:11-12
- Numbers 12:6-8
- Numbers 26 General Notes

## family, families

**Definition:**

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. It often also includes other relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- The Hebrew family was a religious community passing on traditions through worship and instruction.
- Usually the father was the major authority of the family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The term “family” is also used to refer to people who are related spiritually, such as people who are part of God’s family because they believe in Jesus.

(See also: clan, ancestor, house)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:17-18
- Exodus 01:20-22
- Joshua 02:12-13
- Luke 02:4-5

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1, H251, H272, H504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G1085, G3614, G3624, G3965

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:1-3
- Numbers 1:17-19
- Numbers 1:24
- Numbers 1:30
- Numbers 1:36
- Numbers 1:42
- Numbers 2:34
- Numbers 3:14-16
- Numbers 3:24-26

- Numbers 4:1-4
- Numbers 4:21-23
- Numbers 4:29-30
- Numbers 4:34-36
- Numbers 4:42-44
- Numbers 7:1-3
- Numbers 11:9-10
- Numbers 16:28-30
- Numbers 18:10-11
- Numbers 18:30-32
- Numbers 25:6-7
- Numbers 26:1-2
- Numbers 26:54
- Numbers 32:16-17
- Numbers 36:1-2

## favor, favors, favorable, favoritism

**Definition:**

To “favor” is to prefer. When someone favors a person, he regards that person positively and does more to benefit that person than he does to benefit others.

- The term “favoritism” means the attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoratism is considered unfair.
- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means they approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor”with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include, “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means “the one who is preferred or loved best.”

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 02:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 01:11
- Acts 24:26-27
- Genesis 41:14-16
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Genesis 50:4-6

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5869, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H6491, H7521, H7522, H7965, G1184, G3685, G4380, G5485, G5486

**Uses:**

- Numbers 6:25-27
- Numbers 32:4-5

## fear, fears, afraid

### Definition:

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” as well as related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to a deep respect of God and the showing of that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “fear” can be translated as to “be afraid” or to “deeply respect” or to “revere” or to “be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” is used instead.

(See also: marvel, awe, Lord, power, Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17-18
- Acts 02:43-45
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:18-21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14-17
- Jonah 01:8-10
- Luke 12:4-5
- Matthew 10:28-31
- Proverbs 10:24-25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032,

H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

**Uses:**

- Numbers 14:9-10
- Numbers 21:33-35
- Numbers 22:2-4

## feast, feasts, feasting

**Definition:**

The term “feast” refers to an event where a group of people eat a very large meal together, often for the purpose of celebrating something. The action to “feast” means to eat a large amount of food or to participate in eating a feast together.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In Bible times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- A feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Genesis 26:30-31
- Genesis 29:21-22
- Genesis 40:20-23
- Jude 01:12-13
- Luke 02:41-44
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:1-3

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H398, H2077, H2282, H2287, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4580, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G26, G755, G1062, G1173, G1403, G1456, G1858, G1859, G2165, G3521, G4910

**Uses:**

- Numbers 15:1-3
- Numbers 28:16-18

## fellowship offering, fellowship offerings

**Facts:**

In the Old Testament, the “fellowship offering” was a kind of sacrifice that was offered for different reasons, such as to give thanks to God or to fulfill a vow.

- This offering required the sacrifice of an animal that could be male or female. This was different from the burnt offering, which required a male animal.
- After giving a portion of the sacrifice to God, the person who brought the fellowship offering shared the meat with the priests and other Israelites.
- There was a meal associated with this offering which included unleavened bread.
- This is sometimes called the “peace offering.”

(See also: burnt offering, fulfill, grain offering, guilt offering, peace offering, priest, sacrifice, unleavened bread, vow)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 21:25-27
- 2 Chronicles 29:35-36
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Leviticus 03:3-5
- Numbers 06:13-15

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H8002

**Uses:**

- Numbers 6:13-15
- Numbers 7:15
- Numbers 7:27
- Numbers 7:39
- Numbers 7:51
- Numbers 7:63
- Numbers 7:75
- Numbers 7:87
- Numbers 10:10
- Numbers 15:8-10
- Numbers 29:39-40

## festival, festivals

**Definition:**

In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

- The word for “festival” in the Old Testament literally means “appointed time.”
- The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.
- In some English translations, the word “feast” is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.
- There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:
- Passover
- Festival of Unleavened Bread
- Firstfruits
- Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)
- Festival of Trumpets
- Day of Atonement
- Festival of Shelters
- The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.

(See also: feast)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 23:30-31
- 2 Chronicles 08:12-13
- Exodus 05:1-2
- John 04:43-45
- Luke 22:1-2

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1974, H2166, H2282, H2287, H6213, H4150, G1456, G1858, G1859

**Uses:**

- Numbers 9:4-5
- Numbers 10:10
- Numbers 29:12-13
- Numbers 29:39-40

## fig, figs

**Definition:**

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

**Bible References:**

- Habakkuk 03:17
- James 03:11-12
- Luke 13:6-7
- Mark 11:13-14
- Matthew 07:15-17
- Matthew 21:18-19

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G3653, G4808, G4810

**Uses:**

- Numbers 13:23-24
- Numbers 20:4-5

## fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots

**Definition:**

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term "fire" is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase "baptize with fire" could also be translated as "cause to experience suffering in order to be purified."

(See also: pure)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:9-10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:6-8
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:5-7
- Luke 03:15-16
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Nehemiah 01:3

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H215, H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

**Uses:**

- Numbers 3:3-4
- Numbers 6:18
- Numbers 9:15-17
- Numbers 11:1-3
- Numbers 14:13-14
- Numbers 15:1-3
- Numbers 15:8-10
- Numbers 16:6-7

- Numbers 16:18-19
- Numbers 16:33-35
- Numbers 16:44-46
- Numbers 18:17-18
- Numbers 21:27-28
- Numbers 26:10-11
- Numbers 26:60-62

## firstborn

### Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “first-born” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- Other ways to translate this term could include “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: inherit, sacrifice, son)

### Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15-17
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:32-34
- Luke 02:6-7
- Revelation 01:4-6

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G4416, G5207

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:20
- Numbers 3:1-2
- Numbers 3:11-13
- Numbers 3:40-41
- Numbers 3:46-47
- Numbers 8:16-17
- Numbers 18:14-16
- Numbers 26:5
- Numbers 33:3-4

## firstfruits

### Definition:

The term “firstfruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “firstfruits” of all believers in him, belivers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “firstfruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: firstborn)

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13-15
- Exodus 23:16-17
- James 01:17-18
- Jeremiah 02:1-3
- Psalms 105:34-36

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1061, H6529, H7225, G536

### Uses:

- Numbers 18:12-13
- Numbers 28 General Notes
- Numbers 28:26-28

## flesh

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: euphemism). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:15-17
- 2 John 01:7-8
- Ephesians 06:12-13
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Genesis 02:24-25
- John 01:14-15
- Matthew 16:17-18
- Romans 08:6-8

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

**Uses:**

- Numbers 12:11-12
- Numbers 19:3-6

## flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds

**Definition:**

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- For example, in English the term “herd” can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
- The term “flock” in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
- For verses that refer to “flocks and herds” it may be better to add “of sheep” or “of cattle” for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: goat, ox, pig, sheep, )

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:10-11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 02:8-9
- Matthew 08:30-32
- Matthew 26:30-32

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G34, G4167, G4168

**Uses:**

- Numbers 11:21-23
- Numbers 15:1-3
- Numbers 31:9-10
- Numbers 32:26-27
- Numbers 35:3-4

## fool, fools, foolish, folly

### Definition:

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: wise)

### Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 01:16-18
- Ephesians 05:15-17
- Galatians 03:1-3
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Matthew 07:26-27
- Matthew 25:7-9
- Proverbs 13:15-16
- Psalms 049:12-13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H191, H196, H200, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8602, H8604, G453, G454, G781, G801, G877, G878, G3471, G3472, G3473, G3474, G3912

### Uses:

- Numbers 12:11-12

## forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

**Definition:**

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
- The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: guilt)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 50:15-17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- Psalms 025:10-11
- Psalms 025:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:1-2
- Luke 05:20-21

- Acts 08:20-23
- Ephesians 04:31-32
- Colossians 03:12-14
- 1 John 02:12-14

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **07:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- **29:01** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- **29:08** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

**Word Data:**

- H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G859, G863, G5483

**Uses:**

- Numbers 14:17-19
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Numbers 15:25-26

## fountain, fountains, spring, springs, springing

**Definition:**

The terms “fountain” and “spring” usually refer to a large amount of water that flows out naturally from the ground.

- These words are also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to blessings flowing from God or to refer to something that cleanses and purifies.
- In modern times, a fountain is often a manmade object that has water flowing out of it, such as a drinking fountain. Make sure that the translation of this term refers to a natural source of flowing water.
- Compare the translation of this term with how the term “flood” is translated.

(See also: flood)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Peter 02:17-19
- Genesis 07:11-12
- Genesis 08:1-3
- Genesis 24:12-14
- Genesis 24:42-44
- James 03:11-12

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H794, H953, H1530, H1543, H1876, H3222, H4002, H4161, H4456, H4599, H4726, H5033, H5869, H5927, H6524, H6779, H6780, H7823, H8444, H8666, G242, G305, G393, G985, G1530, G1816, G4077, G4855, G5453

**Uses:**

- Numbers 33:8-10

## frankincense

**Definition:**

Frankincense is a fragrant spice made from tree resin. It is used to make perfumes and incense.

- In Bible times, frankincense was an important spice used to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- This spice is also valuable for its healing and calming qualities.
- When learned men came from an eastern country to visit baby Jesus in Bethlehem, frankincense was one of the three gifts they brought him.

(See also: Bethlehem, learned men)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 09:28-29
- Exodus 30:34-36
- Matthew 02:11-12
- Numbers 05:15

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3828, G3030

**Uses:**

- Numbers 5:15

## freewill offering, freewill offerings

**Definition:**

A freewill offering was a type of sacrifice to God that was not required by the Law of Moses. It was a person's own choice to give this offering.

- If the freewill offering was an animal to be sacrificed, the animal was permitted to have slight defects since it was a voluntary offering.
- The Israelites ate the sacrificed animal as part of a celebration feast.
- When a freewill offering could be given, this was a cause of rejoicing for Israel since it showed that the harvest had been good so that the people had plenty of food.
- The book of Ezra describes a different type of freewill offering that was brought for rebuilding the temple. This offering consisted of gold and silver money, as well as bowls and other objects made of gold and silver.

(See also: burnt offering, Ezra, feast, grain offering, guilt offering, law, sin offering)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 29:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 35:7-9
- Deuteronomy 12:17
- Exodus 36:2-4
- Leviticus 07:15-16

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5068, H5071

**Uses:**

- Numbers 15:1-3
- Numbers 29:39-40

## fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful

**Definition:**

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces–”that is children.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural ,“fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a women gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”

- The apostle Paul's expression "fruitful labor" could be translated as "work that brings very good results" or "efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus."
- The "fruit of the Spirit" could also be translated as "works that the Holy Spirit produces" or "words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone."

(See also: descendant, grain, grape, Holy Spirit, vine, womb)

**Bible References:**

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:11-13
- Luke 08:14-15
- Matthew 03:7-9
- Matthew 07:15-17

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3, H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2173, H2233, H2981, H3206, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H4395, H5108, H5208, H6500, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8256, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352, G6013

## fulfill, fulfilled

### Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: prophet, Christ, minister, call)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:26-27
- Acts 03:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 04:20-22
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 05:17-18
- Psalms 116:12-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:04** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:03** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:07** Jesus said, ”I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:05** ”This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:07** ”This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”

- **44:05** "Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1214, H5487, G1096, G4138

**Uses:**

- Numbers 3:38-39
- Numbers 6:5
- Numbers 15:8-10
- Numbers 18:6-7

## Gad

### Facts:

Gad was one of the sons of Jacob. Jacob was also named Isreal.

- Gad's family became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.
- The names of the cities Baalgad and Migdalgad are each two words in the original text and are sometimes written "Baal Gad" and "Migdal Gad."

(Translation suggestions:How to Translate Names)

(See also: census, prophet, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:18-19
- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 30:9-11
- Joshua 01:12-13
- Joshua 21:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1410, H1425, G1045

### Uses:

- Numbers 1:12
- Numbers 1:24
- Numbers 2:14
- Numbers 7:42
- Numbers 10:17-20
- Numbers 13:13-16
- Numbers 26:15
- Numbers 32:1-3
- Numbers 32:23-25
- Numbers 32:31-32
- Numbers 34:13-15

## gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways

**Definition:**

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

**Bible References:**

- Acts 09:23-25
- Acts 10:17-18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Genesis 24:59-60
- Matthew 07:13-14

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, H8651, G2374, G4439, G4440

**Uses:**

- Numbers 4:24-26

## generation

UNDER REVIEW

### Definition:

The term “generation” refers to a group of people who were all born around the same time period.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

### Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: descendant, evil, ancestor)

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:19-21
- Exodus 03:13-15
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 17:7-8
- Mark 08:11-13
- Matthew 11:16-17
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Matthew 24:34-35

### Uses:

- Numbers 10:6-8

- Numbers 14:17-19
- Numbers 15:14-16
- Numbers 15:37-39
- Numbers 18:23-24
- Numbers 32:13-15
- Numbers 35:29-30

## giant, giants

### Definition:

The word “giant” usually refers to a person who is extremely tall and strong.

- Goliath, a Philistine soldier who fought David, was called a giant because he was a very tall, large, and strong man.
- The Israelite spies who explored the land of Canaan said that the people living there were like giants.

(See also: Canaan, Goliath, Philistines)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 06:4
- Numbers 13:32-33

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1368, H5303, H7497

### Uses:

- Numbers 13:32-33

## gift, gifts

**Definition:**

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: spirit, Holy Spirit)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 12:1-3
- 2 Samuel 11:6-8
- Acts 08:20-23
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 11:17-18
- Acts 24:17-19
- James 01:17-18
- John 04:9-10
- Matthew 05:23-24
- Matthew 08:4

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5078, H5083, H5379, H7810, H8641, G334, G1390, G1394, G1431, G1434, G1435, G3311, G5486

**Uses:**

- Numbers 8:18-19
- Numbers 18:6-7
- Numbers 18:28-29

## Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites

**Definition:**

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Gad, Jephthah, Manasseh, Reuben, twelve tribes of Israel)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 02:21-22
- 1 Samuel 11:1-2
- Amos 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 02:36-37
- Genesis 31:19-21
- Genesis 37:25-26

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1568, H1569

**Uses:**

- Numbers 26:28
- Numbers 27:1
- Numbers 32:1-3
- Numbers 32:26-27
- Numbers 32:37-39
- Numbers 32:40-42
- Numbers 36:1-2

## glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies

**Definition:**

In general, the term “glory” means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be “glorious.”

- Sometimes “glory” refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression “glory of the shepherds” refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

The term “glorify” means to show or tell how great and important something or someone is. It literally means to “give glory to.”

- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done.
- They can also glorify God by living in a way that honors him and shows how great and magnificent he is.
- When the Bible says that God glorifies himself, it means that he reveals to people his amazing greatness, often through miracles.
- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to people the Son’s perfection, splendor, and greatness.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. When they are raised to life, they will be changed to reflect his glory and to display his grace to all creation.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “brightness” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: exalt, obey, praise)

**Bible References:**

- Exodus 24:16-18
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:1-2
- Luke 18:42-43
- Luke 02:8-9
- John 12:27-29
- Acts 03:13-14
- Acts 07:1-3
- Romans 08:16-17
- 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 04:18-20
- Colossians 03:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:5-6
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 04:15-16
- Revelation 15:3-4

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, "This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God."
- **37:08** Jesus responded, "Did I not tell you that you would see God's **glory** if you believe in me?"

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H117, H142, H155, H215, H1342, H1921, H1922, H1925, H1926, H1935, H1984, H2892, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2620, G2744, G2745, G2746, G2755, G2811, G4888

**Uses:**

- Numbers 14:9-10

- Numbers 14:20-22
- Numbers 16:18-19
- Numbers 16:41-43
- Numbers 20:6

## goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids

**Definition:**

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a "kid."

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
- Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
- The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
- Sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from their herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of its tendency to wander away from the one taking care of it.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second, live goat, and send it into the desert as a symbol that the animal was bearing the people's sins.

(See also: flock, sacrifice, sheep, righteous, wine)

**Bible References:**

- Exodus 12:3-4
- Genesis 30:31-32
- Genesis 31:10-11
- Genesis 37:31-33
- Leviticus 03:12-14
- Matthew 25:31-33

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H689, H1423, H1429, H1601, H3277, H3629, H5795, H5796, H6260, H6629, H6842, H6939, H7716, H8163, H8166, H8495, G122, G2055, G2056, G5131

**Uses:**

- Numbers 7:15
- Numbers 7:27
- Numbers 7:39
- Numbers 7:51

- Numbers 7:63
- Numbers 7:75
- Numbers 7:87
- Numbers 15:11-13
- Numbers 15:22-24
- Numbers 18:17-18
- Numbers 28:14-15
- Numbers 28:29-31
- Numbers 29:3-5
- Numbers 29:9-11
- Numbers 29:17-19
- Numbers 29:23-25
- Numbers 29:29-31
- Numbers 31:28-29

## God

### Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, false god, Son of God, Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:9-10
- Colossians 01:15-17
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2

- Genesis 01:1-2
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:18-20
- Jeremiah 05:4-6
- John 01:1-3
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Micah 04:4-5
- Philippians 02:5-8
- Proverbs 24:11-12
- Psalms 047:8-9

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **01:01** **God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15** **God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14** **God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

**Uses:**

- Numbers 6:12
- Numbers 6:18
- Numbers 10:9
- Numbers 12:13-15
- Numbers 15:40-41
- Numbers 16:8-11
- Numbers 16:20-22
- Numbers 21:4-5
- Numbers 22:9-11
- Numbers 22:12-14
- Numbers 22:18-20
- Numbers 22:21-23
- Numbers 22:38-40
- Numbers 23:4-6
- Numbers 23:19-20
- Numbers 24:8
- Numbers 25:8-9
- Numbers 25:12-13

## god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry

**Definition:**

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term "goddess" refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God's people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as "idolatrous" if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An "idolatrous kingdom" means a "kingdom of people who worship idols" or a "kingdom of people who worship earthly things."
- The term "idolatrous figure" is another word for a "carved image" or an "idol."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- There may already be a word for "god" or "false god" in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term "idol" could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case "g" is used to refer to false gods, and upper case "G" is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: God, Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, image, kingdom, worship)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 35:1-3

- Exodus 32:1-2
- Psalms 031:5-7
- Psalms 081:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 15:19-21
- Acts 19:26-27
- Romans 02:21-22
- Galatians 04:8-9
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Colossians 03:5-8
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H367, H410, H426, H430, H457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G1493, G1494, G1495, G1496, G1497, G2299, G2712

**Uses:**

- Numbers 15 General Notes
- Numbers 25 General Notes
- Numbers 25:1-3
- Numbers 33:3-4

## gold, golden

**Definition:**

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: altar, ark of the covenant, false god, silver, tabernacle, temple)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Peter 01:6-7
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 01:14-15
- Acts 03:4-6
- Daniel 02:31-33

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1220, H1222, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H4062, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

**Uses:**

- Numbers 4:9-11
- Numbers 7:12-14
- Numbers 7:20
- Numbers 7:24
- Numbers 7:30
- Numbers 7:36

- Numbers 7:42
- Numbers 7:48
- Numbers 7:60
- Numbers 7:72
- Numbers 7:84
- Numbers 8:3-4
- Numbers 22:18-20
- Numbers 24:12-14
- Numbers 31:21-24
- Numbers 31:50-51

## good, goodness

**Definition:**

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: evil, holy, profit, righteous)

**Bible References:**

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:11-13
- Genesis 02:9-10
- Genesis 02:15-17
- James 03:13-14
- Romans 02:3-4

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **01:04** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **01:11** God plantedâ€¦the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil."
- **01:12** Then God said, "It is not **good** for man to be alone."
- **02:04** "God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does."
- **08:12** "You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!"
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he tTable of Contentsrusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:01** "**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me '**good**?' There is only one who is **good**, and that is God."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H117, H145, H155, H202, H239, H410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1380, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2114, G2115, G2133, G2140, G2162, G2163, G2174, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2887, G2986, G3140, G3617, G3776, G4147, G4632, G4674, G4851, G5223, G5224, G5358, G5542, G5543, G5544

**Uses:**

- Numbers 10:29-30
- Numbers 13:17-20

## grace, gracious

**Definition:**

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

**Bible References:**

- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 06:8-9
- Acts 14:3-4
- Colossians 04:5-6
- Colossians 04:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 04:6-7
- John 01:16-18
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G2143, G5485, G5543

**Uses:**

- Numbers 6:25-27

- Numbers 27 General Notes

## grain offering, grain offerings

**Definition:**

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: burnt offering, guilt offering , sacrifice, sin offering)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19-20
- Leviticus 02:1-3

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4503, H8641

**Uses:**

- Numbers 4:15-16
- Numbers 5:15
- Numbers 5:24-26
- Numbers 6:13-15
- Numbers 7:12-14
- Numbers 7:24
- Numbers 7:36
- Numbers 7:48
- Numbers 7:60
- Numbers 7:72
- Numbers 7:87
- Numbers 8:7-8
- Numbers 15:4-5
- Numbers 15:22-24
- Numbers 18:8-9
- Numbers 28:3-5
- Numbers 28:9-10

- Numbers 28:11-13
- Numbers 28:19-22
- Numbers 28:26-28
- Numbers 28:29-31
- Numbers 29:3-5
- Numbers 29:6
- Numbers 29:9-11
- Numbers 29:14-16
- Numbers 29:20-22
- Numbers 29:26-28
- Numbers 29:32-34
- Numbers 29:37-38

## grain, grains, grainfields

**Definition:**

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: head, wheat)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 42:1-4
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 06:1-2
- Mark 02:23-24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 01:22

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G248, G2590, G3450, G4621, G4719

**Uses:**

- Numbers 18:12-13
- Numbers 18:25-27

## grape, grapes, grapevine

**Definition:**

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individiual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called “raisins” and they were used to make raisin cakes.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God’s kingdom.

(See also: vine, vineyard, wine)

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 23:24-25
- Hosea 09:10
- Job 15:31-33
- Luke 06:43-44
- Matthew 07:15-17
- Matthew 21:33-34

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H811, H891, H1154, H1155, H1210, H2490, H3196, H5563, H5955, H6025, H6528, G288, G4718

**Uses:**

- Numbers 6:1-4
- Numbers 13:17-20

## grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place

### Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: bury, death)

### Bible References:

- Acts 02:29-31
- Genesis 23:5-6
- Genesis 50:4-6
- John 19:40-42
- Luke 23:52-53
- Mark 05:1-2
- Matthew 27:51-53
- Romans 03:13-14

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:04** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:06** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, ”In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **37:07** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:09** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:04** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:05** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, ”Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.”

The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus' body had been laid. His body was not there!

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1164, H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G86, G2750, G3418, G3419, G5028

**Uses:**

- Numbers 19:14-16

## guilt offering, guilt offerings

**Definition:**

A guilt offering was an offering or sacrifice that God required an Israelite to make if he had accidentally did something wrong such as disrespect God or damage another person's property.

- This offering involved the sacrifice of an animal and the payment of a fine, with silver or gold money.
- In addition, the person at fault was responsible to pay for any damage that was done.

(See also: burnt offering, grain offering, sacrifice, sin offering)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 06:3-4
- 2 Kings 12:15-16
- Leviticus 05:5-6
- Numbers 06:12

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H817

**Uses:**

- Numbers 6:12
- Numbers 18:8-9

## guilt, guilty

### Definition:

The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate to “be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, to “be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

(See also: innocent, iniquity, punish, sin)

### Bible References:

- Exodus 28:36-38
- Isaiah 06:6-7
- James 02:10-11
- John 19:4-6
- Jonah 01:14-16

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, ”I find no **guilt** in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, ”He is not **guilty**.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, ”He is not **guilty**!”
- **40:04** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, ”Don’t you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.
- **49:10** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H816, H817, H818, H5352, H5355, G338, G1777, G3784, G5267

**Uses:**

- Numbers 5:5-7
- Numbers 5:31
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Numbers 17:10-11
- Numbers 18:30-32
- Numbers 35:26-28
- Numbers 35:31-32

## had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, sleeps with, slept with, sleeping with

### Definition:

In the Bible, these terms are euphemisms that refer to having sexual intercourse. (See: Euphemism)

- The expression "sleep with" someone commonly refers to having sexual relations with that person. The past tense is "slept with."
- In the Old Testament book "Song of Solomon," the ULB uses the term "lovemaking" to translate the word "love," which in that context refers to sexual relations. This term is related to the expression "make love to."

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may use different expressions for these terms in different contexts, depending on whether whether those involved are a married couple or whether they have some other relationship. It is important to make sure that the translation of this term has the correct meaning in each context.
- Depending on the context, expressions like these could be used to translate "sleep with": "lie with" or "make love to" or "be intimate with."
- Other ways to translate "have relations with" could include "have sexual relations with" or "have marital relations with."
- The term "lovemaking" could also be translated as "loving" or "intimacy." Or there may be an expression that is a natural way to translate this in the project language.
- It is important to check that the terms used to translate this concept are acceptable to the people who will be using the Bible translation.

(See also: sexual immorality)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:1-2
- 1 Samuel 01:19-20
- Deuteronomy 21:13-14
- Genesis 19:4-5
- Matthew 01:24-25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H160, H935, H1540, H2181, H2233, H3045, H3212, H6172, H7250, H7901, H7903, G1097

**Uses:**

- Numbers 5:13-14
- Numbers 5:18-19
- Numbers 25:1-3
- Numbers 31:16-17
- Numbers 31:18-20
- Numbers 31:32
- Numbers 31:42

## Hades, Sheol

### Definition:

The terms “Hades” and “Sheol” are used in the Bible to refer to death and the place where the souls of people go when they die. Their meanings are similar.

- The Hebrew term “Sheol” is often used in the Old Testament to refer generally to the place of death.
- In the New Testament, the Greek term “Hades” refers to a place for the souls of people who rebelled against God. These souls are referred to as going “down” to Hades. This is sometimes contrasted to going “up” to heaven, where the souls of people who believe in Jesus live.
- The term “Hades” is coupled with the term “death” in the book of Revelation. In the end times, both death and Hades will be thrown into the Lake of Fire, which is hell.

### Translation Suggestions

- The Old Testament term “Sheol” could be translated as “place of the dead” or “place for dead souls.” Some translations translate this as “the pit” or “death,” depending on the context.
- The New Testament term “Hades” could also be translated as “place for unbelieving dead souls” or “place of torment for the dead” or “place for the souls of unbelieving dead people.”
- Some translations keep the words “Sheol” and “Hades,” spelling them to fit the sound patterns of the language of translation. (See: How to Translate Unknowns).
- A phrase could also be added to each term to explain it, examples of doing this are, “Sheol, place where dead people are” and “Hades, place of death.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: death, heaven, hell, tomb)

### Bible References:

- Acts 02:29-31
- Genesis 44:27-29
- Jonah 02:1-2
- Luke 10:13-15
- Luke 16:22-23
- Matthew 11:23-24
- Matthew 16:17-18
- Revelation 01:17-18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7585, G86

**Uses:**

- Numbers 16:28-30
- Numbers 16:33-35

## Hamath, Hamathites, Lebo Hamath

### Facts:

Hamath was an important city in northern Syria, north of the land of Canaan. The Hamathites were descendants of Noah's son Canaan.

- The name "Lebo Hamath" probably refers to a mountain pass near the city of Hamath.
- Some versions translate "Lebo Hamath" as "entrance to Hamath."
- King David defeated enemies of King Tou of Hamath, causing them to be on good terms.
- Hamath was one of Solomon's storehouse cities where provisions were kept.
- The land of Hamath was where King Zedekiah was killed by King Nebuchadnezzar and where King Jehoahaz was captured by an Egyptian pharaoh.
- The term "Hamathite" could also be translated as "person from Hamath."

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, Canaan, Nebuchadnezzar, Syria, Zedekiah)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:3-4
- 2 Samuel 08:9-10
- Amos 06:1-2
- Ezekiel 47:15-17

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2574, H2577

### Uses:

- Numbers 13:21-22

## hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of

### Definition:

There are several figurative ways that "hand" is used in the Bible:

- To "hand" something to someone means to put something into that person's hands.
- The term "hand" is often used in reference to God's power and action, such as when God says "Has not my hand made all these things?" (See: metonymy)
- Expressions such as "hand over to" or "deliver into the hands of" refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Some other figurative uses of "hand" include:
- To "lay a hand on" means to "harm."
- To "save from the hand of" means to stop someone from harming someone else.
- The position of being "on the right hand" means "on the right side" or "to the right."
- The expression "by the hand of" someone means "by" or "through" the action of that person. For example, "by the hand of the Lord" means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term "laying on of hands" refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God's service or to pray for healing.
- When Paul says "written by my hand," it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

### Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression "handed him the scroll" could also be translated as "gave him the scroll" or "put the scroll in his hand." It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When "hand" refers to the person, such as in "the hand of God did this," it could be translated as "God did this."
- An expression such as "delivered them into the hands of their enemies" or "handed them over to their enemies," could be translated as, "allowed their enemies to conquer them" or "caused them to be captured by their enemies" or "empowered their enemies to gain control over them."
- To "die by the hand of" could be translated as "be killed by."
- The expression "on the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of."
- In regard to Jesus being "seated at the right hand of God," if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression

with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: "on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority."

(See also: adversary, bless, captive, honor, power)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:22-25
- Acts 08:14-17
- Acts 11:19-21
- Genesis 09:5-7
- Genesis 14:19-20
- John 03:34-36
- Mark 07:31-32
- Matthew 06:3-4

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H405, H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G710, G1188, G1448, G1451, G1764, G2021, G2092, G2176, G2902, G4084, G4474, G4475, G5495, G5496, G5497

**Uses:**

- Numbers 8:9-11
- Numbers 11:21-23
- Numbers 20:17
- Numbers 27:18-19
- Numbers 36:8-9

## hang, hangs, hanged, hanging, hangings, hung

**Definition:**

The term “hang” means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

- Death by hanging typically is done by tying a rope that is tied around a person’s neck and sustending him from an elevated object, like a tree limb. Judas killed himself by hanging.
- Although Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross, there was nothing around his neck: the soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
- To hang someone always refers to the way of killing someone by hanging them with a rope around their neck.

**Bible References:**

- 2 Samuel 17:23
- Acts 10:39-41
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Genesis 40:20-23
- Matthew 27:3-5

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2614, H3363, H8518, G519

**Uses:**

- Numbers 25:4-5

## head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded

### Definition:

In the Bible, the word "head" is used with several figurative meanings.

- Often this term is used to refer to being in authority over people, as in "you have made me the head over nations." This could be translated as "You have made me the ruler..." or "You have given me authority over..."
- Jesus is called the "head of the church." Just as a person's head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his "body," the Church.
- The New Testament teaches that a husband is the "head" or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
- The expression "no razor will ever touch his head" means" he will never cut or shave his hair."
- The term "head" can also refer to the beginning or source of something, as in the "head of the street."
- The expression "heads of grain" refers to the top parts of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
- Another figurative use for "head" is when it is used to represent the whole person, as in "this gray head," referring to an elderly person, or as in "the head of Joseph," which refers to Joseph. (See: synecdoche)
- The expression "let their blood be on his own head" means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "head" could be translated as "authority" or "the one who leads and directs" or "the one who is responsible for."
- The expression "head of" can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person's name. For example, "the head of Joseph" could simply be translated as "Joseph."
- The expression "will be on his own head" could be translated as "will be on him" or "he will be punished for" or "he will be held responsible for" or "he will be considered guilty for."
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "beginning" or "source" or "ruler" or "leader" or "top."

(See also: grain)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54

- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10-12
- Colossians 02:18-19
- Numbers 01:4-6

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H441, H1270, H1538, H1627, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:4-5
- Numbers 7:1-3
- Numbers 10:3-5
- Numbers 25:14-15
- Numbers 36:1-2

## heart, hearts

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

### Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: hard)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 03:16-18
- 1 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:20-23
- Acts 15:7-9
- Luke 08:14-15
- Mark 02:5-7
- Matthew 05:5-8
- Matthew 22:37-38

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G674, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

**Uses:**

- Numbers 15:37-39
- Numbers 32:6-7

## Hebron

### Facts:

Hebron was a city located in the high, rocky hills about 20 miles south of Jerusalem.

- The city was built around 2000 BC during the time of Abram. It was mentioned many times in the historical accounts given in the Old Testament.
- Hebron had a very important role in King David's life. Several of his sons, including Absalom, were born there.
- The city was destroyed around AD 70 by the Romans.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Absalom)

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 02:10-11
- Genesis 13:16-18
- Genesis 23:1-2
- Genesis 35:26-27
- Genesis 37:12-14
- Judges 01:8-10
- Numbers 13:21-22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2275, H2276, H5683

### Uses:

- Numbers 13:21-22

## high place, high places

**Definition:**

The term “high places” refers to the altars and shrines that were used for worshiping idols. They were usually built on higher ground, such as on a hill or mountainside.

- Many of the kings of Israel sinned against God by building altars to false gods on these high places. This led the people to become deeply involved in worshiping idols.
- It often happened that when a God-fearing king started ruling in Israel or Judah, often he would remove the high places or altars in order to stop the worship of these idols.
- However, some of these good kings were careless and did not remove the high places, which resulted in the entire nation of Israel would continue to worship idols.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate this term could include “elevated places for idol worship” or “hilltop idol shrines” or “idol altar mounds.”
- Make sure it is clear that this term refers to the idol altars, not just to the high place where those altars were located.

(See also: altar, false god, worship)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 09:12-13
- 2 Kings 16:3-4
- Amos 04:12-13
- Deuteronomy 33:29
- Ezekiel 06:1-3
- Habakkuk 03:18-19

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1116, H1181, H1354, H2073, H4791, H7311, H7413

**Uses:**

- Numbers 21:27-28

## high priest

### Definition:

The term “high priest” refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all the other Israelite priests.

- The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the temple to offer a special sacrifice once a year.
- The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
- When Jesus was being arrested, Caiaphas was the official high priest. Caiphas’ father-in-law Annas is also mentioned sometimes because he was a former high priest who probably still had power and authority over the people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “High priest” could be translated as “supreme priest” or “highest ranking priest.”
- Make sure this term is translated differently from the term “chief priest.”

(See also: Annas, Caiaphas, chief priests, priest, temple)

### Bible References:

- Acts 05:26-28
- Acts 07:1-3
- Acts 09:1-2
- Exodus 30:10
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Leviticus 16:32-33
- Luke 03:1-2
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:51-54

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:08** No one could enter the room behind the curtain except the **high priest**, because God lived there.
- **21:07** The Messiah who would come would be the perfect **high priest** who would offer himself as a perfect sacrifice to God.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the **high priest**, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **39:01** The soldiers led Jesus to the house of the **high priest** in order for the **high priest** to question him.

- **39:03** Finally, the **high priest** looked directly at Jesus and said, “Tell us, are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?”
- **44:07** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the **high priest** and the other religious leaders.
- **45:02** So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the **high priest** and the other leaders of the Jews, where more false witnesses lied about Stephen.
- **46:01** The **high priest** gave Saul permission to go to the city of Damascus to arrest Christians there and bring them back to Jerusalem.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great **High Priest**. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only sacrifice that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world. Jesus was the perfect **high priest** because he took the punishment for every sin that anyone has ever committed.

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H7218, H1419, H3548, G748, G749

**Uses:**

- Numbers 35:24-25

## Hittite, Hittites

### Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: descendant, Esau, foreigner, Ham, mighty, Solomon, Uriah)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 23:10-11
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Joshua 01:4-5
- Nehemiah 09:7-8
- Numbers 13:27-29

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

### Uses:

- Numbers 13:27-29

## holy place

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “the holy place” and “the most holy place” refer to the two parts of the tabernacle or temple building.

- The “holy place” was the first room, and it contained the altar of incense and the table with the special “bread of the presence” on it.
- The “most holy place” was the second, innermost room, and it contained the ark of the covenant.
- A thick, heavy curtain separated the outer room from the inner room.
- The high priest was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy place.
- Sometimes “holy place” refers to both the building and courtyard areas of either the temple or tabernacle. It could also refer generally to any place that is set apart for God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “holy place” could also be translated as “room set apart for God” or “special room for meeting God” or “place reserved for God.”
- The term “most holy place” could be translated as “room that is the most set apart for God” or “most special room for meeting God.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the general expression “a holy place” could include “a consecrated place” or “a place that God has set apart” or “a place in the temple complex, which is holy” or “a courtyard of God’s holy temple.”

(See also: altar of incense, ark of the covenant, bread, consecrate, courtyard, curtain, holy, set apart, tabernacle, temple)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:16-18
- Acts 06:12-15
- Exodus 26:31-33
- Exodus 31:10-11
- Ezekiel 41:1-2
- Ezra 09:8-9
- Hebrews 09:1-2
- Leviticus 16:17-19
- Matthew 24:15-18
- Revelation 15:5-6

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1964, H4720, H4725, H5116, H6918, H6944, G39, G40, G3485, G5117

**Uses:**

- Numbers 4:5-6
- Numbers 4:12-14
- Numbers 8:18-19
- Numbers 28:6-8
- Numbers 31:6-8

## Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

### Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: holy, spirit, God, Lord, God the Father, Son of God, gift)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:9-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- Acts 08:14-17
- Galatians 05:25-26
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:4-5
- Matthew 12:31-32
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 051:10-11

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:08** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.

- **26:03** Jesus read, "God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:03** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:08** "And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are are now seeing and hearing."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**."
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

**Uses:**

- Numbers 11:24-25
- Numbers 24:2-3
- Numbers 27:18-19

## holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

**Definition:**

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was oftensed to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”

- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, consecrate, sanctify, set apart)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 28:20-22
- 2 Kings 03:1-3
- Lamentations 04:1-2
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38
- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 11:7-10
- Romans 01:1-3
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 01:21-23
- 1 Thessalonians 03:11-13
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- 2 Timothy 03:14-15

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **09:12** ”You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- **13:01** ”If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- **13:05** ”Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- **22:05** ”So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

**Uses:**

- Numbers 4:1-4
- Numbers 4:15-16

- Numbers 5:8-10
- Numbers 5:16-17
- Numbers 6:6-8
- Numbers 6:19-20
- Numbers 10:21-24
- Numbers 15:40-41
- Numbers 16:1-3
- Numbers 18:8-9
- Numbers 18:28-29
- Numbers 20:12-13
- Numbers 27:12-14
- Numbers 28:16-18
- Numbers 29:1
- Numbers 29:7-8
- Numbers 35:24-25

## honey, honeycomb

**Definition:**

"Honey" is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God's words and decrees are said to be "sweeter than honey." (See also: Simile, Metaphor)
- Sometimes a person's words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: John (the Baptist), Jonathan, Philistines, Samson)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 06:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 05:6-7
- Proverbs 05:3-4

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G2781, G3192, G3193

**Uses:**

- Numbers 13:27-29
- Numbers 16:12-14

## honor, honors

### Definition:

The terms “honor” and to “honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term to “honor” could be translated as to “show special respect to” or to “cause to be praised” or to “show high regard for” or to “highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, glory, glory, praise)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:8
- Acts 19:15-17
- John 04:43-45
- John 12:25-26
- Mark 06:4-6
- Matthew 15:4-6

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G820, G1391, G1392, G1784, G2151, G2570, G3170, G4411, G4586, G5091, G5092, G5093, G5399

### Uses:

- Numbers 9:13-14

- Numbers 10:10
- Numbers 22:15-17
- Numbers 22:36-37
- Numbers 24:7
- Numbers 27:12-14
- Numbers 28:16-18
- Numbers 29:1
- Numbers 29:7-8

## house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers

### Definition:

The term "house" is often used figuratively in the Bible.

- Sometimes it means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Often "house" refers to a person's descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
- In Hebrews 3, "God's house" is used as a metaphor to refer to God's people or, more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
- The phrase "house of Israel" can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
- The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
- The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells."
- "House of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: David, descendant, house of God, household, kingdom of Israel, tabernacle, temple, Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 07:47-50
- Genesis 39:3-4
- Genesis 41:39-41
- Luke 08:38-39
- Matthew 10:5-7
- Matthew 15:24-26

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

**Uses:**

- Numbers 3:14-16
- Numbers 12:6-8

## humble, humbles, humbled, humility

**Definition:**

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: proud)

**Bible References:**

- James 01:19-21
- James 03:13-14
- James 04:8-10
- Luke 14:10-11
- Luke 18:13-14
- Matthew 18:4-6
- Matthew 23:11-12

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

***17:02** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God. ***34:10** ”God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G858, G4236, G4239, G4240, G5011, G5012, G5013, G5391

**Uses:**

- Numbers 12:1-3

## image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures

**Definition:**

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term "image" is a shortened form of "carved image."

- A "carved image" or "carved figure" is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A "cast metal figure" is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term "image" when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- When referring to an idol, the term "image" could also be translated as "statue" or "engraved idol" or "carved religious object."
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as "carved image" or "cast metal figure," even in places where only the term "image" or "figure" is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: false god, God, false god, image of God)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- Acts 07:43
- Isaiah 21:8-9
- Matthew 22:20-22
- Romans 01:22-23

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H457, H1544, H2553, H4541, H4676, H4853, H4906, H5257, H5262, H5566, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6755, H6816, H8403, H8544, H8655, G1504, G5179, G5481

**Uses:**

- Numbers 33:50-52

## incense, incenses

### Definition:

The term “incense” refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that is burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made by mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The “altar of incense” was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate “incense” could include “fragrant spices” or “good-smelling plants.”

(See also: altar of incense, burnt offering, frankincense)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 03:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:10-11
- 2 Kings 14:4-5
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 01:8-10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2553, H3828, H4196, H4289, H5208, H6988, H6999, H7002, H7004, H7381, G2368, G2369, G2370, G2379, G3031

### Uses:

- Numbers 4:15-16
- Numbers 7:12-14
- Numbers 7:20
- Numbers 7:24
- Numbers 7:30
- Numbers 7:36
- Numbers 7:42
- Numbers 7:48
- Numbers 7:60
- Numbers 7:72

- Numbers 7:84
- Numbers 16:6-7
- Numbers 16:15-17
- Numbers 16:33-35
- Numbers 16:44-46

## inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

**Definition:**

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The “inheritance” is what is received.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God’s people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to “inherit the land.” This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will “inherit salvation” and “inherit eternal life.” It is also expressed as, “inherit the kingdom of God.” This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
- The Bible says that wise people will “inherit glory” and righteous people will “inherit good things.”
- To “inherit the promises” means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
- This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who “inherit the wind” or “inherit folly.” This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- When God’s people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as “valued ones belonging to him.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions” or “person chosen to receive (God’s) spiritual possessions or blessings.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “blessings from God” or “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 2 Samuel 21:2-3
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- Jeremiah 02:7-8
- Luke 15:11-12
- Matthew 19:29-30
- Psalm 079:1-3

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **35:03** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

**Uses:**

- Numbers 16:12-14
- Numbers 18:19-20
- Numbers 18:25-27
- Numbers 26:52-53
- Numbers 26:60-62
- Numbers 27:6-8
- Numbers 32:18-19
- Numbers 32:31-32
- Numbers 33:53-54
- Numbers 34 General Notes
- Numbers 34:16-18
- Numbers 36 General Notes

- Numbers 36:3-4
- Numbers 36:8-9

## iniquity, iniquities

**Definition:**

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: sin, transgress, trespass)

**Bible References:**

- Daniel 09:12-14
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16-17
- Habakkuk 02:12-14
- Matthew 13:40-43
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 03:9-11

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G92, G93, G458, G3892, G4189

**Uses:**

- Numbers 14:17-19

## Isaac

### Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name "Isaac" means "he laughs." When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham's faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac's son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, descendant, eternity, fulfill, Jacob, Sarah, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 04:28-29
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19-20
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:6-8
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:17-18
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:31-33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

***05:04** "Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**." ***05:06** When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham's faith by saying, "Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me." ***05:09** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**. ***06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac.** ***06:05** **Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins. ***07:10** Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3327, H3446, G2464

**Uses:**

- Numbers 32:10-11

## Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob

### Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, deceive, Esau, Isaac, Israel, Rebekah, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:11-13
- Acts 07:44-46
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 04:4-5
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:31-33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:01** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **07:07** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **07:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **08:01** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3290, G2384

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:20
- Numbers 23:7-8
- Numbers 23:10
- Numbers 23:21-22
- Numbers 23:23
- Numbers 24:4-5
- Numbers 24:17
- Numbers 26:5
- Numbers 32:10-11

## Israel, Israelites

### Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, nation, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- Acts 02:34-36
- Acts 07:22-25
- Acts 13:23-25
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:28-31
- Matthew 02:4-6
- Matthew 27:9-10
- Philippians 03:4-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

***08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**. ***09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities. ***09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy. ***10:01** They said, ”This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’” ***14:12** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses. ***15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites. ***15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders. ***16:16** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols. ***43:06** ”Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:1-3
- Numbers 1:16
- Numbers 1:44-46
- Numbers 1:51-52
- Numbers 2:1-2
- Numbers 2:32-33
- Numbers 3:7-8
- Numbers 3:38-39
- Numbers 3:44-45
- Numbers 4:46-48
- Numbers 5:1-4
- Numbers 5:11-12
- Numbers 6:1-4
- Numbers 6:22-24
- Numbers 7:1-3
- Numbers 7:84
- Numbers 8:5-6
- Numbers 8:14-15
- Numbers 8:20-21
- Numbers 9:1-3
- Numbers 9:9-10
- Numbers 9:15-17
- Numbers 9:22-23
- Numbers 10:3-5
- Numbers 10:11-13
- Numbers 10:25-28
- Numbers 10:35-36
- Numbers 11:4-6
- Numbers 11:16-17
- Numbers 11:28-30
- Numbers 13:1-2
- Numbers 13:23-24
- Numbers 13:32-33
- Numbers 14:1-3
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Numbers 14:26-27
- Numbers 14:39-40

- Numbers 15:1-3
- Numbers 15:11-13
- Numbers 15:25-26
- Numbers 15:32-34
- Numbers 16:1-3
- Numbers 16:8-11
- Numbers 16:25-27
- Numbers 16:33-35
- Numbers 16:36-38
- Numbers 17:1-2
- Numbers 17:8-9
- Numbers 18:3-5
- Numbers 18:10-11
- Numbers 18:19-20
- Numbers 18:30-32
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Numbers 19:9-10
- Numbers 20:1
- Numbers 20:12-13
- Numbers 20:14-16
- Numbers 20:20-21
- Numbers 21:1-3
- Numbers 21:10-11
- Numbers 21:17-18
- Numbers 21:24-26
- Numbers 21:31-32
- Numbers 22:1
- Numbers 22:12-14
- Numbers 22:41
- Numbers 23:7-8
- Numbers 24:1
- Numbers 24:4-5
- Numbers 25:1-3
- Numbers 25:10-11
- Numbers 26:1-2
- Numbers 26:51
- Numbers 26:60-62
- Numbers 27:6-8
- Numbers 27:20-21
- Numbers 28:1-2
- Numbers 29:39-40
- Numbers 30:1-2
- Numbers 31:1-2

- Numbers 31:9-10
- Numbers 31:30-31
- Numbers 31:42
- Numbers 31:52-54
- Numbers 32:4-5
- Numbers 32:28-30
- Numbers 33:1-2
- Numbers 33:38-39
- Numbers 33:50-52
- Numbers 34:1-3
- Numbers 34:13-15
- Numbers 34:27-29
- Numbers 35:1-2
- Numbers 35:8
- Numbers 35:14-15
- Numbers 35:33-34
- Numbers 36:1-2
- Numbers 36:7

## Issachar

### Facts:

Issachar was the fifth son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

- The tribe of Issachar was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Issachar's land was bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Zebulun, Manasseh, and Gad.
- It was located just south of the Sea of Galilee.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Gad, Manasseh, Naphtali, twelve tribes of Israel, Zebulun)

### Bible References:

- Exodus 01:1-5
- Ezekiel 48:23-26
- Genesis 30:16-18
- Joshua 17:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3485, G2466

### Uses:

- Numbers 1:7
- Numbers 1:28
- Numbers 2:5
- Numbers 7:18
- Numbers 10:14-16
- Numbers 13:5-8
- Numbers 26:23
- Numbers 34:24-26

## jealous, jealousy

**Definition:**

The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone.

- These terms are often used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward a spouse who has been unfaithful in their marriage.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God’s strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
- God is also “jealous” for his name, desiring that it be treated with honor and reverence.
- Another meaning of jealous involves being angry that someone else is successful or more popular. This is close in meaning to the word “envious.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate “jealous” could include “strong protective desire” or “possessive desire.”
- The term “jealousy” could be translated as “strong protective feeling” or “possessive feeling.”
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful of someone else.
- In the context of people’s wrong feelings of anger toward toward other people who are more successful, the terms “envious” and “envy” could be used. But these terms should not be used for God.

(See also: envy)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Corinthians 12:20-21
- Deuteronomy 05:9-10
- Exodus 20:4-6
- Ezekiel 36:4-6
- Joshua 24:19-20
- Nahum 01:2-3
- Romans 13:13-14

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H7065, H7067, H7068, H7072, G2205, G3863

**Uses:**

- Numbers 05 General Notes
- Numbers 5:13-14
- Numbers 5:24-26
- Numbers 11:28-30

## Jebus, Jebusite, Jebusites

**Facts:**

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, and its name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Ham, Jerusalem, Melchizedek)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 01:13-16
- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 10:15-18
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Judges 01:20-21

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2982, H2983

**Uses:**

- Numbers 13:27-29

## Jehoshaphat

### Facts:

Jehoshaphat was the name of at least two men in the Old Testament.

- The best known man by this name was King Jehoshaphat who was the fourth king to rule over the kingdom of Judah.
- He restored peace between Judah and Israel and destroyed the altars of false gods.
- Another Jehoshaphat was a “recorder” for David and Solomon. His job included writing documents for the king to sign and recording the history of the important events that happened in the kingdom.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: altar, David, false god, Israel, Judah, priest, Solomon)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:10-12
- 1 Kings 04:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 17:1-2
- 2 Kings 01:17-18
- 2 Samuel 08:15-18
- Matthew 01:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3092, H3146, G2498

## Jericho

### Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: Canaan, Jordan River, Joshua, miracle, Salt Sea)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:77-79
- Joshua 02:1-3
- Joshua 07:2-3
- Luke 18:35-37
- Mark 10:46-48
- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

***15:01** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**. ***15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**. ***15:05** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3405, G2410

### Uses:

- Numbers 22:1
- Numbers 26:3-4
- Numbers 26:63-64
- Numbers 31:11-12
- Numbers 33:47-49
- Numbers 34:13-15
- Numbers 35:1-2
- Numbers 36:13

## Jethro, Reuel

**Facts:**

The names “Jethro” and “Reuel” both refer to the father of Moses’ wife, Zipporah. There were also two other men named “Reuel” in the Old Testament.

- When Moses was a shepherd in the land of Midian, he married the daughter of a Midianite man named Reuel.
- Later on Reuel is referred to as “Jethro, the priest of Midian.” It could be that “Reuel” was his clan name.
- When God spoke to Moses from a flaming bush, Moses was tending Jethro’s sheep,
- Some time later, after God had rescued the Israelites from Egypt, Jethro came out to the Israelites in the wilderness and gave Moses good advice about judging the affairs of the people.
- He believed in God when he heard about all the miracles God had done for the Israelites in Egypt.
- One of Esau’s sons was named Reuel.
- Another man named Reuel is mentioned in the genealogy of the Israelites who returned to resettle in Judah after their captivity in Babylon had ended.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: captive, clan, desert, Egypt, Esau, miracle, Moses, desert)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 01:34-37
- Exodus 02:18-20
- Exodus 03:1-3
- Exodus 18:1-4
- Numbers 10:29-30

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H3503, H7467

**Uses:**

- Numbers 10:29-30

## Jordan River, Jordan

**Facts:**

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as "the Jordan."

(See also: Canaan, Salt Sea, Sea of Galilee)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 01:26-28
- John 03:25-26
- Luke 03:3
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Matthew 03:13-15
- Matthew 04:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

***15:02** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land. ***15:03** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho. ***19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3383, G2446

**Uses:**

- Numbers 13:27-29
- Numbers 22:1
- Numbers 26:3-4
- Numbers 26:63-64

- Numbers 31:11-12
- Numbers 32:4-5
- Numbers 32:18-19
- Numbers 32:28-30
- Numbers 33:47-49
- Numbers 34:10-12
- Numbers 35:1-2
- Numbers 35:9-11
- Numbers 35:14-15
- Numbers 36:13

## Joseph (OT)

**Facts:**

Joseph was the eleventh son of Jacob and the first son of his mother Rachel.

- Joseph was his father's favorite son.
- His brothers were jealous of him and sold him into slavery.
- While in Egypt, Joseph was falsely accused and put into prison.
- In spite of his difficulties, Joseph remained faithful to God.
- God brought him to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save people in a time when there was little food. The people of Egypt, as well as his own family, were kept from starving.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, Jacob)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 04:4-5

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

***08:02** **Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler. ***08:04** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt. ***08:05** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him. ***08:07** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. ***08:09** **Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests. ***09:02** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G2500, G2501

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:10

- Numbers 1:32
- Numbers 13:9-12
- Numbers 26:28
- Numbers 26:35
- Numbers 27:1
- Numbers 32:33
- Numbers 34:21-23
- Numbers 36:1-2
- Numbers 36:10-12

## Joshua

**Facts:**

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Haggai, Jericho, Moses, Promised Land, Zechariah (OT))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 07:25-27
- Deuteronomy 03:21-22
- Exodus 17:8-10
- Joshua 01:1-3
- Numbers 27:18-19

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

***14:04** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like. ***14:06** Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!" ***14:08** Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land." ***14:14** Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.

***14:15** **Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God. ***15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3091, G2424

**Uses:**

- Numbers 11:28-30
- Numbers 13:13-16
- Numbers 14:6-8
- Numbers 14:28-30
- Numbers 26:65
- Numbers 27:18-19
- Numbers 27:22-23
- Numbers 32:10-11
- Numbers 32:28-30
- Numbers 34:16-18

## Judah

### Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Jew, Judah, Judea, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 01:9-10
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:1-2
- Luke 03:33-35
- Ruth 01:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

### Uses:

- Numbers 1:7
- Numbers 1:26
- Numbers 2:3
- Numbers 2:9
- Numbers 7:12-14
- Numbers 10:14-16
- Numbers 13:5-8
- Numbers 26:19
- Numbers 34:19-20

## judge, judges, judgment, judgments

**Definition:**

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, just, law, law)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 04:17-18
- 1 Kings 03:7-9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:13-15
- James 02:1-4
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:1-3

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G144, G350, G968, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1349, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4232

**Uses:**

- Numbers 35:24-25

## just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification

**Definition:**

"Just" and "justice" refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

The terms "unjust" and "unjustly" refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An "injustice" is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being "partial" or "prejudiced" because he is not treating people equally.

The terms "justify" and "justification" refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- "Justification" refers to what God does when he forgives a person's sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."
- Depending on the context, "unjust" could also be translated as "unfair" or "partial" or "unrighteous."
- The phrase "the unjust" could be translated as "the unjust ones" or "unjust people" or "people who treat others unfairly" or "unrighteous people" or "people who disobey God."
- The term "unjustly" could be translated as, "in an unfair manner" or "wrongly" or "unfairly."
- Ways to translate "injustice" could include, "wrong treatment" or "unfair treatment" or "acting unfairly." (See: abstractnouns)

- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: forgive, guilt, judge, righteous, righteous)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 44:16-17
- 1 Chronicles 18:14-17
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:1-3
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 03:8
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 11:18-19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:3-5
- Luke 18:6-8
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:39-41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:3-4
- Romans 04:1-3
- Galatians 03:6-9
- Galatians 03:10-12
- Galatians 05:3-4
- Titus 03:6-7
- Hebrews 06:9-10
- James 02:21-24
- Revelation 15:3-4

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **17:09** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H2555, H3477, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G91, G93, G94, G1342, G1344, G1345, G1346, G1347, G1738

**Uses:**

- Numbers 31 General Notes
- Numbers 35 General Notes

## Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh

### Facts:

The names Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, and Meribah Kadesh all refer to an important city in Israel's history which was located in the southern part of Israel, near the region of Edom.

- The city of Kadesh was an oasis, a place where there was water and fertile soil in the middle of a desert named Zin.
- Moses sent twelve spies into the land of Canaan from Kadesh Barnea.
- Israel also encamped at Kadesh during the wandering in the wilderness.
- Kadesh Barnea was where Miriam died.
- It was at Meribah Kadesh where Moses disobeyed God and hit a rock to get water for the Israelites, instead of speaking to it as God had told him to do.
- The name "kadesh" comes from the Hebrew word meaning "holy" or "set apart."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: desert, Edom, holy)

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 48:27-29
- Genesis 14:7-9
- Genesis 16:13-14
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Joshua 10:40-41
- Numbers 20:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4809, H6946, H6947

### Uses:

- Numbers 13:25-26
- Numbers 20:1
- Numbers 20:14-16
- Numbers 20:22-24
- Numbers 27:12-14
- Numbers 32:8-9
- Numbers 33:35-37
- Numbers 34:4-5

## kin, kinfolk, kindred, kinsfolk, kinsman, kinsmen

**Definition:**

The term “kin” refers to a person’s blood relatives, considered as a group. The word “kinsman” refers specifically to a male relative.

- “Kin” can only refer to a person’s close relatives, such as parents and siblings, or it can also include more distant relatives, such as an aunts, uncles, or cousins.
- In ancient Israel, if a man died, his nearest male relative was expected to marry his widow, manage his property, and help carry on his family name. This relative was called a “kinsman-redeemer.”
- This term “kin” could also be translated as, “relative” or “family member.”

**Bible References:**

- Romans 16:9-11
- Ruth 02:19-20
- Ruth 03:8-9

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H251, H1350, H4129, H4130, H7138, H7607, G4773

**Uses:**

- Numbers 16:8-11

## king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly

**Definition:**

The term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king was usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king died, it was usually his oldest son who became the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term “king” was used to refer to someone who was not a true king, such as “King Herod” in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule over his people.
- Jesus was called “king of the Jews,” “king of Israel,” and “king of kings.”
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as “supreme chief” or “absolute leader” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” could be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, kingdom, kingdom of God)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- 2 Samuel 05:3-5
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:21-22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:5-7
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 05:33-35
- Matthew 14:8-9

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

***08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly. ***16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them. ***16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had. ***17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him. ***21:06** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**. ***48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

**Uses:**

- Numbers 20:14-16
- Numbers 20:20-21
- Numbers 21:1-3
- Numbers 21:21-23
- Numbers 21:33-35
- Numbers 22:2-4
- Numbers 23:7-8
- Numbers 23:21-22
- Numbers 24:7
- Numbers 24:18-19
- Numbers 31:6-8
- Numbers 33:40

## kingdom, kingdoms

### Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, king, kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, Judah, Judah, priest)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36-37
- Mark 03:23-25
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:18-19
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Revelation 01:9-11

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation."
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon's death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

**Uses:**

- Numbers 24:7
- Numbers 32:33

## know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge

### Definition:

To "know" means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression "make known" is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
- Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
- The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46-47
- 2 Corinthians 02:14-15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4

- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:4-5
- Luke 01:76-77

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1231, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G2589, G3877, G4267, G4894

**Uses:**

- Numbers 5:13-14
- Numbers 15:22-24
- Numbers 16:28-30
- Numbers 20:14-16
- Numbers 24:15-16

## Korah, Korahite, Korahites

**Definition:**

Korah was the name of three men in the Old Testament.

- One of the sons of Esau was named Korah. He became a leader in his community.
- Korah was also a descendant of Levi and so served in the tabernacle as a priest. He became jealous of Moses and Aaron and led a group of men to rebel against them.
- A third man named Korah is listed as a descendant of Judah.

(See also: Aaron, authority, Caleb, descendant, Esau, Judah, priest)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 01:34-37
- Numbers 16:1-3
- Numbers 16:25-27
- Psalm 042:1-2

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7141

**Uses:**

- Numbers 16:1-3
- Numbers 16:8-11
- Numbers 16:18-19
- Numbers 16:25-27
- Numbers 16:39
- Numbers 16:49-50
- Numbers 26:8-9
- Numbers 27:2-3

## lamb, Lamb of God

**Definition:**

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: sheep, shepherd)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Samuel 12:1-3
- Ezra 08:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:18-20
- John 01:29-31
- John 01:35-36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:3-4
- Revelation 15:3-4

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

*05:07 As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, "Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?" *11:02 God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it. *24:06 The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, "Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world." *45:08 He read, "They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word. *48:08 When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place. *48:09 When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7716, G721, G2316

**Uses:**

- Numbers 6:12
- Numbers 7:15
- Numbers 7:27
- Numbers 7:39
- Numbers 7:51
- Numbers 7:63
- Numbers 7:75
- Numbers 7:87
- Numbers 15:4-5
- Numbers 15:11-13
- Numbers 28:3-5
- Numbers 28:11-13
- Numbers 28:26-28
- Numbers 29:2
- Numbers 29:7-8
- Numbers 29:17-19
- Numbers 29:23-25
- Numbers 29:29-31

## lamp, lamps

### Definition:

The term “lamp” generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

The type of lamp that was used in Bible times is a small container with a fuel source, usually oil, that gives light when it burns.

- An ordinary oil lamp usually consisted of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.

(See also: lampstand, life, light)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:34-36
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 08:16-18
- Matthew 05:15-16
- Matthew 06:22-24
- Matthew 25:1-4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3940, H3974, H4501, H5215, H5216, G2985, G3088

### Uses:

- Numbers 4:9-11
- Numbers 8:1-2

## lampstand, lampstands

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lampstand” generally refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

- A simple lampstand usually held one lamp and was made of clay, wood, or metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
- In the Jerusalem temple there was a special gold lampstand which had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

### Translation Suggestions

- This term could be also translated as “lamp pedestal” or “structure for holding a lamp” or “lamp holder.”
- For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as “seven-lamp lampstand” or “gold pedestal with seven lamps.”
- It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: bronze, gold, lamp, light, silver, temple)

### Bible References:

- Daniel 05:5-6
- Exodus 37:17-19
- Mark 04:21-23
- Matthew 05:15-16
- Revelation 01:12-13
- Revelation 01:19-20

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4501, G3087

### Uses:

- Numbers 3:30-32
- Numbers 4:9-11
- Numbers 8:1-2

## law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

**Definition:**

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms "law" and "God's law" are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the "law" can refer to:
- the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
- all the laws given to Moses
- the first five books of the Old Testament
- the entire Old Testament (also referred to as "scriptures" in the New Testament).
- all of God's instructions and will
- The phrase "the law and the prophets" is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or "Old Testament")

**Translation Suggestions:**

- These terms could be translated using the plural, "laws," since they refer to many instructions.
- The "law of Moses" could be translated as "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Depending on the context, "the law of Moses" could also be translated as "the law that God told to Moses" or "God's laws that Moses wrote down" or "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Ways to translate "the law" or "law of God" or "God's laws" could include "laws from God" or "God's commands" or "laws that God gave" or "everything that God commands" or "all of God's instructions."
- The phrase "law of Yahweh" could also be translated as "Yahweh's laws" or "laws that Yahweh said to obey" or "laws from Yahweh" or "things Yahweh commanded."

(See also: instruct, Moses, Ten Commandments, lawful, Yahweh)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 15:5-6
- Daniel 09:12-14
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- Galatians 02:15-16
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 05:17-18
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

- Romans 03:19-20

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **13:07** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.\
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.\
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.\
- **16:01** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.\
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.\
- **27:01** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"\
- **28:01** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."\

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

**Uses:**

- Numbers 35:29-30

## law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles

**Definition:**

A “law” is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A “principle” is a guideline for decision-making and behavior.

- Both “law” and “principle” can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person’s behavior.
- This meaning of “law” is different from its meaning in the term “law of Moses,” where it refers to commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- When a general law is being referred to, “law” could be translated as “principle” or “general rule.”

(See also: law, law)

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 04:1-2
- Esther 03:8-9
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Genesis 26:4-5
- John 18:31-32
- Romans 07:1

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H6310, H7560, H8451, G1785, G3548, G3551, G4747

**Uses:**

- Numbers 5:29-30
- Numbers 6:13-15
- Numbers 6:21
- Numbers 9:13-14
- Numbers 15:14-16
- Numbers 15:27-29
- Numbers 18:23-24
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Numbers 19:9-10
- Numbers 19:20-22

- Numbers 27:9-11
- Numbers 31:21-24

## leper, lepers, leprosy, leprous

**Definition:**

The term “leprosy” is used in the Bible to refer to several different skin diseases. A “leper” is a person who has leprosy. The term “leprous” describes a person or body part that is infected with leprosy.

- Certain kinds of leprosy cause the skin to become discolored with white patches, as when Miriam and Naaman had leprosy.
- In modern times, leprosy often causes hands, feet, and other body parts to become damaged and deformed.
- According to the instructions that God gave to the Israelites, when a person had leprosy, he was considered “unclean” and had to stay away from other people so that they would not become infected with the disease.
- A leper would often call out “unclean” so that others would be warned not to come near him.
- Jesus healed many lepers, and also people who had other kinds of diseases.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “leprosy” in the Bible can be translated as “skin disease” or “dreaded skin disease.”
- Ways to translate “leprous” could include “full of leprosy” or “infected with skin disease” or “covered with skin sores.”

(See also: Miriam, Naaman, clean)

**Bible References:**

- Luke 05:12-13
- Luke 17:11-13
- Mark 01:40-42
- Mark 14:3-5
- Matthew 08:1-3
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 11:4-6

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H6879, H6883, G3014, G3015

**Uses:**

- Numbers 12:9-10

## Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical

**Definition:**

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term “Levite” refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named “Levi” were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus’ disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: Matthew, priest, sacrifice, temple, twelve tribes of Israel)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 08:3-5
- Acts 04:36-37
- Genesis 29:33-34
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31-32

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:47-49
- Numbers 1:53-54
- Numbers 2:17
- Numbers 2:32-33
- Numbers 3:5-6
- Numbers 3:11-13
- Numbers 3:38-39
- Numbers 3:44-45
- Numbers 4:1-4

- Numbers 4:17-18
- Numbers 4:46-48
- Numbers 7:4-5
- Numbers 8:5-6
- Numbers 8:12-13
- Numbers 8:18-19
- Numbers 8:23-24
- Numbers 8:25-26
- Numbers 16:1-3
- Numbers 16:8-11
- Numbers 17:3-5
- Numbers 18:1-2
- Numbers 18:21-22
- Numbers 26:57-59
- Numbers 31:30-31
- Numbers 31:47
- Numbers 35:1-2
- Numbers 35:8

## life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

**Definition:**

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by "physical life" and "spiritual life."

### 1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam's body, and he became a living being.
- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."

### 2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus with God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called "eternal life" to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- The term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives' could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, "life" could be translated as "spiritual life" or "eternal life," depending on the context.
- The concept of "spiritual life" could also be translated as "God making us alive in our spirits" or "new life by God's Spirit" or "being made alive in our inner self."
- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally."

(See also: death, everlasting)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Acts 10:42-43
- Genesis 02:7-8
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Hebrews 10:19-22
- Jeremiah 44:1-3
- John 01:4-5
- Judges 02:18-19
- Luke 12:22-23
- Matthew 07:13-14

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

**Uses:**

- Numbers 4:17-18
- Numbers 5:1-4
- Numbers 8:16-17
- Numbers 13:17-20
- Numbers 14:20-22
- Numbers 14:28-30
- Numbers 15:1-3
- Numbers 15:14-16

- Numbers 16:28-30
- Numbers 16:47-48
- Numbers 20:14-16
- Numbers 21:1-3
- Numbers 21:33-35
- Numbers 22:28-30
- Numbers 24:4-5
- Numbers 30:3-4

## light, lights, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten, enlightened

**Definition:**

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: Metaphor)

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: darkness, holy, righteous, true)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:7-8
- 2 Corinthians 04:5-6
- Acts 26:15-18
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- John 01:4-5
- Matthew 05:15-16
- Matthew 06:22-24
- Nehemiah 09:12-13
- Revelation 18:23-24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H4237, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H6348, H7052, H7837, G681, G796, G1645, G2985, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

**Uses:**

- Numbers 6:25-27
- Numbers 8:1-2

## lions, lion, lioness, lionesses

### Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: David, leopard, Samson, sheep)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
- 1 Kings 07:27-29
- Proverbs 19:11-12
- Psalms 017:11-12
- Revelation 05:3-5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H738, H739, H744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G3023

### Uses:

- Numbers 23:24
- Numbers 24:9

## livestock

### Facts:

The term “livestock” refers to animals which are raised to provide food and other useful products. Some types of livestock are also trained as work animals.

- Kinds of livestock include sheep, cattle, goats, horses, and donkeys.
- In Biblical times, wealth was partly measured by how much livestock a person had.
- Livestock are used to produce items such as wool, milk, cheese, housing materials, and clothing.
- This term could also be translated as “farm animals.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: cow, donkey, goat, horse, ox, sheep)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 03:15-17
- Genesis 30:29-30
- Joshua 01:14-15
- Nehemiah 09:36-37
- Numbers 03:40-41

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H929, H4399, H4735

### Uses:

- Numbers 3:40-41
- Numbers 20:18-19
- Numbers 32:1-3
- Numbers 32:26-27

## lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs

**Definition:**

The term "lord" refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

- This word is sometimes translated as "master" when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as "sir" in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When "Lord" is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of "sir" or "master.")

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as "Lord God Almighty" or "Lord Yahweh" or "Yahweh our Lord."
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as "Lord Jesus" and "Lord Jesus Christ," which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term "Lord" in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh" and the New Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord."
- In the ULB and UDB, the title "Lord" is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean "Lord." It is never used as a translation of God's name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate "Lord" as "Master" or "Ruler" or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term "Lord God" could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of "master" when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as "master."
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, "lord" could be translated with a respectful form of address such as "sir." This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as "Lord" (capitalized) in English.

(See also: God, Jesus, ruler, Yahweh)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 39:1-2
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:1-4
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Ezekiel 18:29-30
- Daniel 09:9-11
- Daniel 09:17-19
- Malachi 03:1-3
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 06:22-23
- Ephesians 06:9
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- Jude 01:5-6
- Revelation 15:3-4

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:03** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

**Uses:**

- Numbers 11:28-30
- Numbers 12:11-12
- Numbers 32:23-25
- Numbers 36:1-2

## lots, casting lots

**Definition:**

A “lot” is a marked object that is chosen from among other similar objects as a way of deciding something. “Casting lots” referred to tossing marked objects onto the ground or other surface.

- Often the lots were small marked stones or pieces of broken pottery.
- Some cultures “draw” or “pull out” lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- The practice of casting lots was used by the Israelites to find out what God wanted them to do.
- As in the time of Zechariah and Elizabeth, it was also used to choose which priest would perform a specific duty in the temple at a specific time.
- The soldiers who crucified Jesus cast lots to decide who would get to keep Jesus’ robe.
- The phrase “casting lots” can be translated as “tossing lots” or “drawing lots” or “rolling lots.” Make sure the translation of “cast” does not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- Depending on the context, the term “lot” could also be translated as “marked stone” or “pottery piece” or “stick” or “piece of straw.”
- If a decision is made “by lot” this could be translated as, “by drawing (or throwing) lots.”

(See also: Elizabeth, priest, Zechariah (OT), Zechariah (NT))

**Bible References:**

- Jonah 01:6-7
- Luke 01:8-10
- Luke 23:33-34
- Mark 15:22-24
- Matthew 27:35-37
- Psalms 022:18-19

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1486, H2256, H5307, G2624, G2819, G2975, G3091

**Uses:**

- Numbers 26:54
- Numbers 33:53-54
- Numbers 34:13-15
- Numbers 36:1-2

## Manasseh

### Facts:

There were five men by the name of Manasseh in the Old Testament:

- Manasseh was the name of Joseph's firstborn son.
- Both Manasseh and his younger brother Ephraim were adopted by Joseph's father, Jacob which gave their descendants the privilege of being among the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The descendants of Manasseh formed one of the tribes of Israel.
- The tribe of Manasseh was often called the "half-tribe of Manasseh" because only part of the tribe settled in the land of Canaan, on the west side of the Jordan River. The other part of the tribe settled on the east side of the Jordan.
- One of the kings of Judah was also named Manasseh.
- King Manasseh was an evil king who sacrificed his own children as burnt offerings to false gods.
- God punished King Manasseh by allowing him to be captured by an enemy army. Manasseh turned back to God and destroyed the altars where idols were worshiped.
- Two men named Manasseh lived during the time of Ezra. These men were required to divorce their pagan wives, who had influenced them to worship false gods.
- One other Manasseh was the grandfather of some Danites who were priests for false gods.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: altar, Dan, Ephraim, Ezra, false god, Jacob, Judah, pagan, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 15:8-9
- Deuteronomy 03:12-13
- Genesis 41:50-52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- Judges 01:27-28

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4519, H4520, G3128

### Uses:

- Numbers 1:10
- Numbers 1:34
- Numbers 2:20
- Numbers 7:54

- Numbers 10:21-24
- Numbers 13:9-12
- Numbers 26:28
- Numbers 27:1
- Numbers 32:33
- Numbers 32:40-42
- Numbers 34:13-15
- Numbers 34:21-23
- Numbers 36:1-2
- Numbers 36:10-12

## manna

### Definition:

Manna was a white, grain-like food that God provided for the Israelites to eat during the 40 years of living in the wilderness after they left Egypt.

- Manna looked like white flakes which appeared each morning on the ground under the dew. It tasted sweet, like honey.
- The Israelites gathered the manna flakes every day except on the Sabbath.
- On the day before the Sabbath, God told the Israelites to gather twice the amount of manna so they wouldn't have to gather it on their day of rest.
- The word "manna" means "what is it?"
- In the Bible, manna is also referred to as "bread from heaven" and "grain from heaven."

### Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could include "thin white flakes of food" or "food from heaven."
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: bread, desert, grain, heaven, Sabbath)

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 08:3
- Exodus 16:26-27
- Hebrews 09:3-5
- John 06:30-31
- Joshua 05:12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4478, G3131

### Uses:

- Numbers 11:4-6

## member, members

### Definition:

The term “member” refers to one part of a complex body or group.

- The New Testament describes Christians as “members” of the body of Christ. Believers in Christ belong to a group that is made up of many members.
- Jesus Christ is the “head” of the body and individual believers function as the members of the body. The Holy Spirit gives each member of the body a special role to help the entire body to function well.
- Individuals who participate in groups such as the Jewish Council and the Pharisees are also called “members” of these groups.

(See also: body, Pharisee, council)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:14-15
- 1 Corinthians 12:14-17
- Numbers 16:1-3
- Romans 12:4-5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1121, H3338, H5315, H8212, G1010, G3196, G3609

### Uses:

- Numbers 16:1-3
- Numbers 18:1-2

## messenger, messengers

### Facts:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, apostle, John (the Baptist))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 06:21
- 2 Kings 01:1-2
- Luke 07:27-28
- Matthew 11:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G32, G652

### Uses:

- Numbers 20:14-16
- Numbers 21:21-23
- Numbers 22:5-6
- Numbers 24:12-14

## Midian, Midianite, Midianites

### Facts:

Midian was a son of Abraham and his wife Keturah. It is also the name of a people group and region located in the northern Arabian Desert to the south of the land of Canaan. The people of that group were called “Midianites.”

- When Moses first left Egypt, he went to the region of Midian where he met the daughters of Jethro and helped them water their flocks. Later Moses married one of Jethro’s daughters.
- Joseph was taken to Egypt by a group of Midianite slave traders.
- Many years later the Midianites attacked and raided the Israelites in the land of Canaan. Gideon led the Israelites in defeating them.
- Many of the modern-day Arabian tribes are descendants of this group.

(See also Arabia, Egypt, flock, Gideon, Jethro, Moses)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:29-30
- Exodus 02:15-17
- Genesis 25:1-4
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Genesis 37:27-28
- Judges 07:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

***16:03** But then the people forgot about God and started worshiping idols again. So God allowed the **Midianites**, a nearby enemy people group, to defeat them. ***16:04** The Israelites were so scared, they hid in caves so the **Midianites** would not find them. ***16:11** The man’s friend said, ”This dream means that Gideon’s army will defeat the **Midianite** army!” ***16:14** God confused the **Midianites**, so that they started attacking and killing each other.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4080, H4084, H4092

### Uses:

- Numbers 10:29-30
- Numbers 22:2-4
- Numbers 22:7-8

- Numbers 25:6-7
- Numbers 25:14-15
- Numbers 31:1-2
- Numbers 31:9-10

## might, mighty, mightier, mightily

### Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, miracle, power, strength)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:22-25
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H46, H47, H117, H193, H202, H352, H386, H410, H430, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1370, H1396, H1397, H1401, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2394, H2428, H3201, H3524,

H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H5807, H5868, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H6697, H6743, H7227, H7580, H7989, H8623, H8624, H8632, G972, G1411, G1413, G1414, G1415, G1498, G1752, G1754, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3168, G3173, G5082

**Uses:**

- Numbers 14:11-12

## mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded

**Definition:**

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

**Translation Suggestions**

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression “keep in mind” could be translated as “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”
- The expression “double-minded” could also be translated as “doubting” or “unable to decide” or “with conflicting thoughts.”

(See also: believe, heart, soul)

**Bible References:**

- Luke 10:25-28
- Mark 06:51-52
- Matthew 21:28-30
- Matthew 22:37-38
- James 04:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H3629, H3820, H3824, H5162, H7725, G1271, G1374, G3328, G3525, G3540, G3563, G4993, G5590

*translationWordsmind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, like*

**Uses:**

- Numbers 10:9
- Numbers 15:40-41
- Numbers 23:19-20

## Miriam

### Facts:

Miriam was the older sister of Aaron and Moses.

- When she was young, Miriam was instructed by her mother to watch over her baby brother Moses who was in a basket among the reeds of the Nile River. When the pharaoh's daughter found the baby and needed someone to take care of him for her, Miriam brought her mother to do it.
- Miriam led the Israelites in a dance of joy and thanksgiving after they had escaped from the Egyptians by crossing the Red Sea.
- Years later as the Israelites were wandering in the desert, Miram and Aaron began speaking badly about Moses because he had married a Cushite woman.
- Because of her rebellion in speaking against Moses, God caused Miriam to become sick with leprosy. But later God healed her when Moses interceded for her.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Aaron, Cush, intercede, Moses, Nile River, Pharaoh, rebel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:1-3
- Deuteronomy 24:8-9
- Micah 06:3-5
- Numbers 12:1-3
- Numbers 20:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4813

### Uses:

- Numbers 12:1-3
- Numbers 12:9-10
- Numbers 20:1
- Numbers 26:57-59

## Moab, Moabite, Moabitess

### Facts:

Moab was the son of Lot's elder daughter. It also became the name of the land where he and his family lived. The term "Moabite" refers to a person who is descended from Moab or who lives in the country of Moab.

- The country of Moab was located east of the Salt Sea.
- Moab was southeast from the town of Bethlehem where Naomi's family lived.
- The people in Bethlehem called Ruth a "Moabitess" because she was a woman from the country of Moab. This term could also be translated as "Moabite woman" or "woman from Moab."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethlehem, Judea, Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 19:36-38
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 01:1-2
- Ruth 01:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4124, H4125

### Uses:

- Numbers 21:10-11
- Numbers 21:19-20
- Numbers 21:29-30
- Numbers 22:1
- Numbers 22:2-4
- Numbers 22:7-8
- Numbers 22:9-11
- Numbers 22:12-14
- Numbers 22:21-23
- Numbers 22:36-37
- Numbers 23:4-6
- Numbers 23:16-18
- Numbers 24:17
- Numbers 25:1-3

- Numbers 26:3-4
- Numbers 26:63-64
- Numbers 31:11-12
- Numbers 33:44-46
- Numbers 35:1-2
- Numbers 36:13

## month, months, monthly

**Definition:**

The term “month” refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

- In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about 29 days. In this system there are 12 or 13 months in a year. Despite the year being 12 or 13 months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
- The “new moon,” or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
- All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
- The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into 12 months, with the length of each month ranging from 28 to 31 days.

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 20:32-34
- Acts 18:9-11
- Hebrews 11:23-26
- Numbers 10:10

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2320, H3391, H3393, G3376

**Uses:**

- Numbers 10:10
- Numbers 26:60-62
- Numbers 28:11-13

## Moses

### Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:20-21
- Acts 07:29-30
- Exodus 02:9-10
- Exodus 09:1-4
- Matthew 17:3-4
- Romans 05:14-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

***09:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire. ***12:05** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you." ***12:07** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters. ***12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God. ***13:07** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

\

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:1-3
- Numbers 1:17-19
- Numbers 1:44-46
- Numbers 1:53-54
- Numbers 2:1-2
- Numbers 2:32-33
- Numbers 3:1-2
- Numbers 3:11-13
- Numbers 3:38-39
- Numbers 3:44-45
- Numbers 4:1-4
- Numbers 4:17-18
- Numbers 4:34-36
- Numbers 5:1-4
- Numbers 5:11-12
- Numbers 6:1-4
- Numbers 6:22-24
- Numbers 7:1-3
- Numbers 7:10-11
- Numbers 7:84
- Numbers 8:1-2
- Numbers 8:20-21
- Numbers 9:1-3
- Numbers 9:9-10
- Numbers 9:22-23
- Numbers 10:1-2
- Numbers 10:11-13
- Numbers 10:29-30
- Numbers 10:35-36
- Numbers 11:1-3
- Numbers 11:9-10
- Numbers 11:16-17
- Numbers 11:24-25
- Numbers 12:1-3
- Numbers 12:11-12
- Numbers 13:1-2
- Numbers 13:13-16
- Numbers 13:25-26
- Numbers 14:1-3
- Numbers 14:11-12
- Numbers 14:26-27

- Numbers 14:36-38
- Numbers 14:44-45
- Numbers 15:1-3
- Numbers 15:17-19
- Numbers 15:32-34
- Numbers 16:1-3
- Numbers 16:8-11
- Numbers 16:18-19
- Numbers 16:25-27
- Numbers 16:36-38
- Numbers 16:44-46
- Numbers 17:1-2
- Numbers 17:8-9
- Numbers 18:25-27
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Numbers 20:2-3
- Numbers 20:7-9
- Numbers 20:14-16
- Numbers 20:22-24
- Numbers 21:4-5
- Numbers 21:16
- Numbers 21:31-32
- Numbers 25:4-5
- Numbers 25:10-11
- Numbers 25:16-18
- Numbers 26:1-2
- Numbers 26:8-9
- Numbers 26:52-53
- Numbers 26:63-64
- Numbers 27:1
- Numbers 27:12-14
- Numbers 27:22-23
- Numbers 28:1-2
- Numbers 29:39-40
- Numbers 30:1-2
- Numbers 30:15-16
- Numbers 31:1-2
- Numbers 31:11-12
- Numbers 31:21-24
- Numbers 31:39-41
- Numbers 31:50-51
- Numbers 32:1-3
- Numbers 32:16-17

- Numbers 32:20-22
- Numbers 32:23-25
- Numbers 33:1-2
- Numbers 33:50-52
- Numbers 34:1-3
- Numbers 34:13-15
- Numbers 35:1-2
- Numbers 35:9-11
- Numbers 36:1-2
- Numbers 36:10-12

## Most High

### Facts:

The term “Most High” is a title for God. It refers to his greatness or authority.

- The meaning of this term is similar to the meaning of “Sovereign” or “Supreme.”
- The word “high” in this title does not refer to physical height or distance. It refers to greatness.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can also be translated as “Most High God” or “Most Supreme being” or “God Most High” or “Greatest One” or “Supreme One” or “God, who is Greater than all.”
- If a word like “high” is used, make sure it does not refer to being physically high or tall.

(See also: God)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:47-50
- Acts 16:16-18
- Daniel 04:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:7-8
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Hebrews 07:1-3
- Hosea 07:16
- Lamentations 03:34-36
- Luke 01:30-33

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5945, G5310

### Uses:

- Numbers 24:15-16

## mourn, mourns, mourned, mourning, mourner, mourners, mournful, mournfully

**Facts:**

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, sin)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 01:11-13
- Genesis 23:1-2
- Luke 07:31-32
- Matthew 11:16-17

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H56, H57, H60, H205, H578, H584, H585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1669, H1671, H1897, H1899, H1993, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H6969, H7300, H8386, G2354, G2875, G3602, G3996, G3997

**Uses:**

- Numbers 14:39-40

## name, names, named

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the word “name” was used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: metonymy)

**Translation Suggestions:**

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: call)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:12-14
- 2 Timothy 02:19-21
- Acts 04:5-7
- Acts 04:11-12
- Acts 09:26-27
- Genesis 12:1-3
- Genesis 35:9-10
- Matthew 18:4-6

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:1-3
- Numbers 1:17-19
- Numbers 3:1-2
- Numbers 6:25-27
- Numbers 25:14-15
- Numbers 26:33

## Naphtali

### Facts:

Naphtali was the sixth son of Jacob. His descendants formed the tribe of Naphtali, which was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- Sometimes the name Naphtali was used to refer to the land where the tribe lived. (See: synecdoche)
- The land of Naphtali was located in the northern part of Israel, next to the tribes of Dan and Asher. its eastern border was on the western shoreline of the Sea of Chinnereth.
- This tribe was mentioned in both the Old and New Testaments of the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Asher, Dan, Jacob, Sea of Galilee, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:15-17
- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Genesis 30:7-8
- Judges 01:33
- Matthew 04:12-13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5321, G3508

### Uses:

- Numbers 1:12
- Numbers 1:42
- Numbers 2:29
- Numbers 7:78
- Numbers 10:25-28
- Numbers 13:13-16
- Numbers 26:48
- Numbers 34:27-29

## nation, nations

**Definition:**

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A "nation" usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a "nation" could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word "nation" was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were "nations" that would fight against each other. This could be translated as "the founders of two nations" or the "ancestors of two people groups."
- The word translated as "nation" was also sometimes used to refer to "Gentiles" or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the word "nation" could also be translated as "people group" or "people" or "country."
- If a language has a term for "nation" that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term "nations" can often be translated as "people groups."
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as "Gentiles" or "nonJews."

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Canaan, Gentile, Greek, people group, Philistines, Rome)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6-7
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 02:5-7
- Acts 13:19-20
- Acts 17:26-27
- Acts 26:4-5
- Daniel 03:3-5
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29

- Genesis 35:11-13
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:2-5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43-44
- Romans 04:16-17

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

**Uses:**

- Numbers 14:11-12
- Numbers 20:27-29
- Numbers 22:5-6
- Numbers 23:9
- Numbers 24:8
- Numbers 24:20

## Nazirite, Nazirites, Nazirite vow

### Facts:

The term “Nazirite” refers to a person who has taken a “Nazirite vow.” Mostly men took this vow, but women could also take it.

- A person who took the Nazirite vow agreed to not have any food or drink made from grapes for period that had been agreed upon for the fulfillment of the vow. During this period he was also not to get his hair cut and not go near a dead body.
- When the required length of time had passed, and the vow had been fulfilled, the Nazirite would go to the priest and provide an offering. This would include the cutting and burning of his hair. All other restrictions would also be removed.
- Samson is a well-known man in the Old Testament who was under the Nazirite vow.
- The angel announcing John the Baptist’s birth told Zechariah that his son would not drink strong drink, which may indicate that John was under the Nazirite vow.
- According to a passage in the book of Acts the apostle Paul may also have at one time taken this vow, according to one passage in the book of Acts.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: John (the Baptist), sacrifice, Samson, vow, Zechariah (OT))

### Bible References:

- Acts 18:18-19
- Amos 02:11-12
- Judges 13:3-5
- Numbers 06:1-4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5139

### Uses:

- Numbers 6:1-4
- Numbers 6:13-15
- Numbers 6:19-20

## Negev

### Facts:

The Negev is a desert region in the southern part of Israel, southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The original word means “the South,” and some English versions translate it this way.
- It could be that the “South” is not located where the Negev Desert is today.
- When Abraham lived in the city of Kadesh, he was in the Negev or southern region.
- Isaac was living in the Negev when Rebekah traveled to meet him and become his wife.
- The Jewish tribes of Judah and Simeon lived in this southern region.
- The largest city in the Negev region was Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Beersheba, Israel, Judah, Kadesh, Salt Sea, Simeon)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Genesis 24:61-62
- Joshua 03:14-16
- Numbers 13:17-20

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5045, H6160

### Uses:

- Numbers 13:17-20
- Numbers 13:21-22
- Numbers 13:27-29
- Numbers 21:1-3

## noble, nobles, nobleman, noblemen

**Definition:**

The term “noble” refers to something that is excellent and of high quality. A “nobleman” is a person who belongs to a high political or social class. A man “of noble birth” is one who was born a nobleman.

- A nobleman was often an officer of the state, a close servant to the king.
- The term “nobleman” could also be translated by, “king’s official” or “government officer.”

**Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 23:20-21
- Daniel 04:36-37
- Ecclesiastes 10:16-17
- Luke 19:11-12
- Psalm 016:1-3

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H117, H678, H1281, H1419, H2715, H3358, H3513, H5057, H5081, H6440, H6579, H7336, H7261, H8282, H8269, H8321, G937, G2104, G2903

**Uses:**

- Numbers 21:17-18

## oak, oaks

### Definition:

An oak, or oak tree, is a tall shade tree with a large trunk and wide spreading branches.

- Oak trees have strong, hard wood that was used to build ships and to make farming plows, oxen yokes and walking sticks.
- The seed of an oak tree is called an acorn.
- The trunks of certain oak trees could bemeasured up to 6 meters around.
- Oak trees were symbolic of long life and had other spiritual meanings. In the Bible, they were often associated with holy places.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Many translations will find it important to use the term “oak tree” rather than just the word “oak.”
- If oak trees are not known in the receptor area, “an oak” could be translated as “an oak, which is a large shade tree like…,” then give the name of a local tree that has similar characteristics.
- See: How to Translate Unknowns

(See also: holy)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:3-4
- Genesis 13:16-18
- Genesis 14:13-14
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Judges 06:11-12

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H352, H424, H427, H436, H437, H438

## oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by

### Definition:

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. An oath involves a commitment to being faithful and truthful.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In the Bible, the term "swear" means to speak an oath.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Sometimes these terms are used together, as in "swear an oath."
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- A modern-day meaning of the word "swear" means is "use foul language." This is not its meaning in the Bible.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, covenant, vow)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 21:22-24
- Genesis 24:1-4
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:29-31
- Luke 01:72-75
- Mark 06:26-29

- Matthew 05:36-37
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:71-72

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G332, G3660, G3727, G3728

**Uses:**

- Numbers 5:18-19
- Numbers 11:11-12
- Numbers 14:15-16
- Numbers 14:23-25
- Numbers 30:1-2
- Numbers 30:9-11
- Numbers 32:10-11

## obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient

**Definition:**

The term “obey” means to do what is required or commanded. The term “obedient” describes someone who obeys. “Obedience” is the characteristic that an obedient person has.Sometimes the command is about not doing something, as in “do not steal.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: citizen, command, disobey, kingdom, law)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 05:29-32
- Acts 06:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 01:22-25
- James 02:10-11
- Luke 06:46-48
- Matthew 07:26-27
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **03:04** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **05:06** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **05:10** ”Because you (Abraham) have **obeyed** me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **05:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:07** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

*obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedie*

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G544, G3980, G3982, G4198, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5442

**Uses:**

- Numbers 4:37
- Numbers 4:45
- Numbers 5:1-4
- Numbers 9:1-3
- Numbers 9:13-14
- Numbers 9:20-21
- Numbers 13:3-4
- Numbers 15:22-24
- Numbers 15:40-41
- Numbers 16:8-11
- Numbers 27:20-21
- Numbers 29:6

## oil

**Definition:**

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: olive, sacrifice)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Samuel 01:21-22
- Exodus 29:1-2
- Leviticus 05:11
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Mark 06:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1880, H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G1637, G3464

**Uses:**

- Numbers 4:9-11
- Numbers 5:15
- Numbers 6:13-15
- Numbers 7:12-14
- Numbers 7:24
- Numbers 7:36
- Numbers 7:48
- Numbers 7:60
- Numbers 7:72
- Numbers 8:7-8
- Numbers 11:7-8
- Numbers 15:4-5
- Numbers 18:12-13

- Numbers 28:3-5
- Numbers 28:9-10
- Numbers 28:11-13
- Numbers 29:3-5
- Numbers 29:9-11
- Numbers 29:14-16
- Numbers 35:24-25

## olive, olives

### Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: lamp, the sea, Mount of Olives)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 06:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 08:10-12
- James 03:11-12
- Luke 16:5-7
- Psalms 052:8-9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G65, G1636, G1637, G2565

### Uses:

- Numbers 11:7-8

## oppress, oppresses, oppressed, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors

**Definition:**

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated as, “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: bind, enslave, persecute)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:6-7
- Ecclesiastes 04:1
- Job 10:1-3
- Judges 02:18-19
- Nehemiah 05:14-15
- Psalms 119:133-134

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H4939, H5065, H6115, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, G2616, G2669

*translationWordsoppress, oppresses, oppressed, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors*

**Uses:**

- Numbers 10:9

## ordain, ordained, ordinary, ordination

**Definition:**

To ordain means to formally appoint a person for a special task or role. It also means to formally make a rule or decree.

- The term “ordain” often refers to formally appointing somebody as a priest, minister, or rabbi.
- For example, God ordained Aaron and his descendants to be priests.
- It can also mean to institute or establish something, such as a religious feast or covenant.
- Depending on the context, to “ordain” could be translated as to “assign” or to “appoint” or to “command” or to “make a rule” or to “institute.”

(See also: command, covenant, decree, law, law, priest)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 12:31-32
- 2 Samuel 17:13-14
- Exodus 28:40-41
- Numbers 03:3-4
- Psalms 111:7-9

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H3245, H4390, H4483, H6186, H6213, H6466, H6680, H7760, H8239, G1299, G2525, G2680, G3724, G4270, G4282, G4309, G5021, G5500

**Uses:**

- Numbers 3:3-4

## oversee, oversees, overseen, overseer, overseers

### Definition:

The term “overseer” refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people.

- In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
- In the New Testament, this term is used to describe leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
- Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his “flock.”
- The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
- In the New Testament, the terms “overseers,” “elders,” and “shepherds/pastors” are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.

### Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could be “supervisor” or “caretaker” or “manager.”
- When referring to a leader of a local group of God’s people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “spiritual supervisor” or “someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers” or “person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church.”

(See also: church, elder, pastor, shepherd)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 26:31-32
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- Acts 20:28-30
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Philippians 01:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5329, H6485, H6496, H7860, H8104, G1983, G1984, G1985

### Uses:

- Numbers 7:1-3

## palace, palaces

**Definition:**

The term “palace” refers to the building or house where a king lived, along with his family members and servants.

- The high priest also lived in a palace complex, as mentioned in the New Testament.
- Palaces were very ornate, with beautiful architecture and furnishings.
- The buildings and furnishings of a palace were constructed of stone or wood, and often were overlaid with expensive wood, gold, or ivory.
- Many other people also lived and worked in the palace complex, which usually included several buildings and courtyards.

(See also: courtyard, high priest, king)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 28:7-8
- 2 Samuel 11:2-3
- Daniel 05:5-6
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Psalms 045:8-9

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H643, H759, H1001, H1002, H1004, H1055, H1406, H1964, H1965, H2038, H2918, H8651, G833, G933, G4232

**Uses:**

- Numbers 22:18-20
- Numbers 24:12-14

## palm, palms

### Definition:

The term “palm” refers to a type of tall tree with long, flexible, leafy branches extending from the top in a fan-like pattern.

- The palm tree in the Bible usually refers to a type of palm tree that produces a fruit called a “date.” The leaves have a feather-like pattern.
- Palm trees typically grow in places that have a hot, humid climate. Their leaves stay green all year long.
- As Jesus was entering Jerusalem riding on a donkey, the people laid palm branches on the ground in front of him.
- Palm branches signified peace and the celebration of a victory.

(See also: donkey, Jerusalem, peace)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:29-30
- Ezekiel 40:14-16
- John 12:12-13
- Numbers 33:8-10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3712, H8558, H8560, H8561, G5404

### Uses:

- Numbers 33:8-10

## Paran

### Facts:

Paran was a desert or wilderness area east of Egypt and south of the land of Canaan. There was also a Mount Paran, which may have been another name for Mount Sinai.

- The slave Hagar and her son Ishmael went to live in the wilderness of Paran after Sarah ordered Abraham to send them away.
- When Moses led the Israelites out of Egypt, they passed through the wilderness of Paran.
- It was from Kadesh-Barnea in the wilderness of Paran that Moses sent twelve men to spy out the land of Canaan and bring back a report.
- The wilderness of Zin was north of Paran and the wilderness of Sin was south of Paran.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, desert, Egypt, Kadesh, Sinai)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:18-19
- 1 Samuel 25:1
- Genesis 21:19-21
- Numbers 10:11-13
- Numbers 13:3-4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H364, H6290

### Uses:

- Numbers 10:11-13
- Numbers 12:16
- Numbers 13:3-4
- Numbers 13:25-26

## Passover

### Facts:

The “Passover” is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God “passed over” the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God “passed over” their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Passover” could be translated by combining the words “pass” and “over” or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Kings 23:21-23
- Deuteronomy 16:1-2
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Ezra 06:21-22
- John 13:1-2
- Joshua 05:10-11
- Leviticus 23:4-6
- Numbers 09:1-3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:14** God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the **Passover** every year.
- **38:01** Every year, the Jews celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- **38:04** Jesus celebrated the **Passover** with his disciples.

- **48:09** When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.
- **48:10** Jesus is our **Passover** Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the **Passover** celebration.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6453, G3957

**Uses:**

- Numbers 09 General Notes
- Numbers 9:1-3
- Numbers 9:9-10
- Numbers 28 General Notes
- Numbers 28:16-18
- Numbers 28:23-25
- Numbers 33:3-4

## peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers

**Definition:**

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26-28
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Galatians 05:22-24
- Luke 07:48-50
- Luke 12:51-53
- Mark 04:38-39
- Matthew 05:9-10
- Matthew 10:11-13

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

***15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.

***15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders. ***16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land. ***21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people. ***48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He

will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever. ***50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5117, H7521, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G425, G31514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

**Uses:**

- Numbers 6:25-27
- Numbers 25:12-13

## Pentecost, Festival of Weeks

### Facts:

The “Festival of Weeks” was a Jewish festival that took place fifty days after Passover. It was later referred to as “Pentecost.”

- The Feast of Weeks was seven weeks (fifty days) after the Feast of Firstfruits. In the New Testament times, this festival was called “Pentecost” which has “fifty” as part of its meaning.
- The Festival of Weeks was held to celebrate the beginning of the grain harvest. It was also a time to remember when God first gave the Law to the Israelites on the tablets of stone given to Moses.
- In the New Testament, the Day of Pentecost is especially significant because it was when the believers of Jesus received the Holy Spirit in a new way.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: festival, firstfruits, harvest, Holy Spirit, raise)

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 08:12-13
- Acts 02:1-4
- Acts 20:15-16
- Deuteronomy 16:16-17
- Numbers 28:26-28

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2282, H7620, G4005

### Uses:

- Numbers 28:26-28

## people group, peoples, the people, a people

**Definition:**

The term “peoples” or “people groups” refers to groups of people who share a common language and culture. The phrase “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- When God set apart “a people” for himself, it means that he chose certain people to belong to him and serve him.
- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, a phrase such as “your people” can mean “your people group” or “your family” or “your relatives.”
- The term “peoples” is often used to refer to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations the term “nations” is also used in this way.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: descendant, nation, tribe, world)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- 1 Samuel 08:6-7
- Deuteronomy 28:9-10

- Genesis 49:16-18
- Ruth 01:16-18

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:03** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups**!" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G246, G1074, G1085, G1218, G1484, G2560, G2992, G3793

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:1-3
- Numbers 2:32-33
- Numbers 5:1-4
- Numbers 5:20-21
- Numbers 6:1-4
- Numbers 8:5-6
- Numbers 8:14-15
- Numbers 8:20-21
- Numbers 9:1-3
- Numbers 9:9-10
- Numbers 9:15-17
- Numbers 9:22-23
- Numbers 10:6-8
- Numbers 10:11-13

- Numbers 10:25-28
- Numbers 13:1-2
- Numbers 13:17-20
- Numbers 13:25-26
- Numbers 13:32-33
- Numbers 14:1-3
- Numbers 14:11-12
- Numbers 15:1-3
- Numbers 15:30-31
- Numbers 16:1-3
- Numbers 16:36-38
- Numbers 17:1-2
- Numbers 17:8-9
- Numbers 18:3-5
- Numbers 18:10-11
- Numbers 18:19-20
- Numbers 18:30-32
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Numbers 19:9-10
- Numbers 20:1
- Numbers 20:12-13
- Numbers 20:22-24
- Numbers 21:1-3
- Numbers 21:10-11
- Numbers 21:24-26
- Numbers 21:33-35
- Numbers 22:1
- Numbers 23:9
- Numbers 24:12-14
- Numbers 25:4-5
- Numbers 26:1-2
- Numbers 26:51
- Numbers 27:6-8
- Numbers 28:1-2
- Numbers 28:14-15
- Numbers 30:1-2
- Numbers 31:1-2
- Numbers 31:42
- Numbers 32:16-17
- Numbers 32:40-42
- Numbers 33:1-2
- Numbers 33:55-56

## people of God, my people

**Definition:**

The term “people of God” refers to people whom God has called out from the world to have a special relationship with him.

- When God says “my people” he is talking about the people whom he has chosen and who have a relationship with him.
- God’s people are chosen by him and are set apart from the world to live in a way that is pleasing to him. He also calls them his children.
- In the Old Testament, “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel which was chosen by God and set apart from among the other nations of the world to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, “people of God” especially refers to all those who believe in Jesus and are called the Church. This includes both Jews and Gentiles.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: Israel, people group)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 07:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- Jeremiah 06:20-22
- Joel 03:16-17
- Micah 06:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H430, H5971, G2316, G2992

**Uses:**

- Numbers 16:41-43
- Numbers 23 General Notes
- Numbers 24 General Notes
- Numbers 24:12-14

## Peor, Mount Peor, Baal Peor

### Definition:

The terms “Peor” and “Mount Peor” refer to a mountain located northeast of the Salt Sea, in the region of Moab.

- The name “Beth Peor” was the name of a city, probably located on that mountain or near it. This was where Moses died after God showed him the Promised Land.
- “Baal Peor” was a false god of the Moabites that they worshiped at Mount Peor. The Israelites also started worshiping this idol and God punished them for it.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Baal, false god, Moab, Salt Sea, worship)

### Bible References:

- Numbers 23:28-30
- Numbers 31:16-17
- Psalms 106:28-29

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1047, H1187, H6465

### Uses:

- Numbers 23:28-30
- Numbers 31:16-17

## perish, perished, perishing, perishable

**Definition:**

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or other disaster. In the Bible, it especially has the meaning of being punished for eternity in hell.

- People who are “perishing” are those who are destined for hell because they have refused to believe in Jesus for their salvation.
- John 3:16 teaches that “perish” means to not live eternally in heaven.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include “die eternally” or “be punished in hell” or “be destroyed.”
- Make sure that the translation of “perish” can mean living eternally in hell and does not only mean “cease to exist.”

(See also: death, everlasting)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Peter 01:22-23
- 2 Corinthians 02:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- Jeremiah 18:18-20
- Psalms 049:18-20
- Zechariah 09:5-7
- Zechariah 13:8-9

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H6, H7, H8, H1478, H1820, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G1311, G2704, G4881, G5356

**Uses:**

- Numbers 16:33-35
- Numbers 17:12-13
- Numbers 21:29-30

## Pharisee, Pharisees

### Facts:

The Pharisees were an important, powerful group of Jewish religious leaders in Jesus' time.

- Many of them were middle class businessmen and some of them were also priests.
- Of all the Jewish leaders, the Pharisees were the most strict in obeying the Laws of Moses and other Jewish laws and traditions.
- They were very concerned about keeping the Jewish people separated from the influence of the Gentiles around them. The name "Pharisee" comes from the word to "separate."
- The Pharisees believed in life after death; they also believed in the existence of angels and other spiritual beings.
- The Pharisees and Sadducees actively opposed Jesus and the early Christians.

(See also: council, Jewish leaders, law, Sadducee)

### Bible References:

- Acts 26:4-5
- John 03:1-2
- Luke 11:43-44
- Matthew 03:7-9
- Matthew 05:19-20
- Matthew 09:10-11
- Matthew 12:1-2
- Matthew 12:38-40
- Philippians 03:4-5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G5330

## Philistines

### Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ashdod, Ashkelon, David, Ekron, Gath, Gaza, Goliath, Salt Sea)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 13:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 09:25-26
- Genesis 10:11-14
- Psalm 056:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6429, H6430

## Phinehas

### Facts:

Phineas was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One of Aaron's grandsons was a priest named Phinehas, who strongly opposed the worship of false gods in Israel.
- Phineas saved the Israelites from a plague that Yahweh had sent to punish them for marrying Midianite women and worshiping their false gods.
- On several occasions Phinehas went with the Israelite army to destroy the Midianites.
- The other Phinehas mentioned in the Old Testament was one of the evil sons of Eli the priest during the time of the prophet Samuel.
- Phinehas and his brother Hophni were both killed when the Philistines attacked Israel and stole the Ark of the Covenant.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: ark of the covenant, Jordan River, Midian, Philistines, Samuel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:3-4
- Ezra 08:1-3
- Joshua 22:13-14
- Numbers 25:6-7

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6372

### Uses:

- Numbers 25:6-7
- Numbers 25:10-11
- Numbers 31:6-8

## plague, plagues

**Definition:**

Plagues are events which cause suffering or death to a large number of people. Often a plague is a disease that spreads quickly and causes many people to die before it can be stopped.

- Many plagues have natural causes, but some were sent by God to punish people for sin.
- In the time of Moses, God sent ten plagues against Egypt to force Pharaoh to let Israel leave Egypt. These plagues included water turning into blood, physical diseases, destruction of crops by insects and hail, three days of complete darkness, and death of the firstborn sons.
- This could also be translated as “widespread disasters” or “widespread disease,” depending on the context.

(See also: hail, Israel, Moses, Pharaoh)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Samuel 24:13-14
- Exodus 09:13-14
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Luke 21:10-11
- Revelation 09:18-19

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1698, H4046, H4194, H4347, H5061, H5062, H5063, H7752, G3061, G3148, G4127

**Uses:**

- Numbers 8:18-19
- Numbers 14:11-12
- Numbers 14:36-38
- Numbers 16:44-46
- Numbers 25:8-9
- Numbers 25:16-18
- Numbers 26:1-2
- Numbers 31:16-17

## plea, pleas, plead, pleads, pleaded, pleading, pleadings

**Facts:**

The terms “plead” and “pleading” refer to urgently asking someone to do something. A “plea” is an urgent request.

- Pleading often implies that the person feels in very great need or strongly desires help.
- People can plead or make an urgent appeal to God for mercy or to ask him to grant something, either for themselves or someone else.
- Other ways to translate this could include “beg” or “implore” or “urgently ask.”
- The term “plea” could also be translated as “urgent request” or “strong urging.”
- Make sure it is clear in the context that this term does not refer to begging for money.

**Bible References:**

- 2 Corinthians 08:3-5
- Judges 06:31-32
- Luke 04:38-39
- Proverbs 18:17-18

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1777, H2603, H3198, H4941, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6664, H6419, H7378, H7379, H7775, H8199, H8467, H8469, G1189, G1793, G2065, G3870

## pomegranate, pomegranates

### Facts:

A pomegranate is a kind of fruit that has a thick, tough skin filled with many seeds that are covered with edible red pulp.

- The outer rind is reddish in color and the pulp surrounding the seeds is shiny and red.
- Pomegranates are very commonly grown in countries with a hot, dry climate, such as Egypt and Israel.
- Yahweh promised the Israelites that Canaan was a land with abundant water and fertile soil so that food was plentiful there, including pomegranates.
- The construction of Solomon's temple included bronze decorations in the shape of pomegranates.

(See also: bronze, Canaan, Egypt, Solomon, temple)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 25:16-17
- Deuteronomy 08:7-8
- Jeremiah 52:22-23
- Numbers 13:23-24 Egypt

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7416

### Uses:

- Numbers 13:23-24
- Numbers 20:4-5

## possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess

### Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy’ or ”live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: Canaan, worship)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:70
- 1 Kings 09:17-19
- Acts 02:43-45
- Deuteronomy 04:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37

- Matthew 13:44-46

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H270, H272, H834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G1139, G2192, G2697, G2722, G2932, G2933, G2935, G4047, G5224, G5564

**Uses:**

- Numbers 14:23-25
- Numbers 16:31-32
- Numbers 24:18-19
- Numbers 31:6-8
- Numbers 32:4-5
- Numbers 32:20-22
- Numbers 33:53-54

## power, powers

### Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”
- An expression like “save us from the power of our enemies” could be translated as “save us from being oppressed by our enemies” or “rescue us from being controlled by our enemies.” In this case, “power” has the meaning of using one’s strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, miracle)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:4-5
- Colossians 01:11-12
- Genesis 31:29-30
- Jeremiah 18:21-23
- Jude 01:24-25
- Judges 02:18-19
- Luke 01:16-17
- Luke 04:14-15
- Matthew 26:62-64
- Philippians 03:20-21
- Psalm 080:1-3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, ”The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”

- **26:01** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you."
- **43:06** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know."
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H410, H1369, H2220, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G1411, G1415, G1756, G1849, G1850, G2478, G2479, G2904, G3168

**Uses:**

- Numbers 14:11-12
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Numbers 22:38-40
- Numbers 35:24-25

## pray, prayer, prayers, prayed

**Definition:**

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, praise)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 03:8-10
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:23-26
- Colossians 04:2-4
- John 17:9-11
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

***06:05** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins. ***13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them. ***19:08** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!” ***21:07** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people. ***38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation. ***43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other. ***49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H559, H577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H5315, H5375, H6293, H6419, H6739, H6963, H7121, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

**Uses:**

- Numbers 11:1-3
- Numbers 21:6-7

## prey, prey on

### Definition:

The term “prey” refers to something that is hunted, usually an animal that is used for food.

- In a figurative sense, “prey” can refer to a person who is taken advantage of, abused, or oppressed by a more powerful person.
- To “prey on” people means to take advantage of them by oppressing them or stealing something from them.
- The term “prey” could also be translated as “hunted animal” or “hunted one” or “victim.”

(See also: oppress)

### Bible References:

- Jeremiah 12:7-9
- Psalms 104:21-22

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H400, H957, H961, H962, H2863, H2963, H2964, H4455, H5706, H5861, H7997, H7998

## priest, priests, priesthood

**Definition:**

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, chief priests, high priest, mediator, sacrifice)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 06:40-42
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:20-22

- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31-32
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:3-4
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:4-6

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

***04:07** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High" ***13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**. ***19:07** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire. ***21:07** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

**Uses:**

- Numbers 03 General Notes
- Numbers 3:3-4
- Numbers 3:9-10
- Numbers 3:30-32
- Numbers 4:15-16
- Numbers 4:27-28
- Numbers 4:33
- Numbers 5:8-10
- Numbers 5:15
- Numbers 5:20-21
- Numbers 5:29-30
- Numbers 6:10-11
- Numbers 6:16-17
- Numbers 7:6-8

- Numbers 10:3-5
- Numbers 15:25-26
- Numbers 16 General Notes
- Numbers 16:8-11
- Numbers 16:36-38
- Numbers 17 General Notes
- Numbers 18 General Notes
- Numbers 18:1-2
- Numbers 18:28-29
- Numbers 19:3-6
- Numbers 20:25-26
- Numbers 25:6-7
- Numbers 25:12-13
- Numbers 26:1-2
- Numbers 26:63-64
- Numbers 27:2-3
- Numbers 27:18-19
- Numbers 31:6-8
- Numbers 31:11-12
- Numbers 31:25-27
- Numbers 31:39-41
- Numbers 31:52-54
- Numbers 32:1-3
- Numbers 32:28-30
- Numbers 33:38-39
- Numbers 34:16-18

## prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments

**Definition:**

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: captive)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 25:4-5
- Ephesians 04:1-3
- Luke 12:57-59
- Luke 22:33-34
- Mark 06:16-17
- Matthew 05:25-26
- Matthew 14:3-5
- Matthew 25:34-36

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H612, H613, H615, H616, H631, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H4929, H5470, H6115, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G1198, G1199, G1200, G1201, G1202, G1210, G2252, G3612, G4788, G4869, G5083, G5084, G5438, G5439

*prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonmentstranslationV*

**Uses:**

- Numbers 21:29-30
- Numbers 31:11-12

## profane, profaned, profaning

**Definition:**

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb to "profane" could be translated as to "treat as unholy" or to "be irreverent toward" or to "dishonor."
- God told the Israelites that they "profaned" themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves "unclean" or "dishonored" by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective "profane" could be translated as "dishonoring" or "godless" or "unholy."

(See also: defile, holy, clean)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Timothy 02:16-18
- Ezekiel 20:8-9
- Malachi 01:10-12
- Matthew 12:5-6
- Numbers 18:30-32

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2455, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2613, H2930, H5234, H8610, G952, G953

**Uses:**

- Numbers 18:30-32

## promise, promises, promised

### Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
- A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: covenant, oath, vow)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 03:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:8-10
- James 01:12-13
- Numbers 30:1-2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, ”I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”Â
- **03:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **05:04** ”Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **08:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:01** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

**Uses:**

- Numbers 6:21
- Numbers 10:29-30
- Numbers 14:28-30
- Numbers 14:39-40
- Numbers 16:12-14
- Numbers 23:19-20
- Numbers 30 General Notes
- Numbers 30:1-2
- Numbers 30:6-7
- Numbers 30:13-14
- Numbers 32 General Notes

## Promised Land

### Facts:

The term “Promised Land” only occurs in the Bible stories, not the Bible text. It is an alternate way of referring to the land of Canaan which God had promised to give to Abraham and his descendants.

- When Abram was living in the city of Ur, God commanded him to go live in the land of Canaan. He and his descendants, the Israelites, lived there for many years.
- When a severe famine caused there to be no food in Canaan, the Israelites moved to Egypt.
- Four hundred years later, God rescued the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and brought them back to Canaan again, the land God had promised to give them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Promised Land” can be translated as the “land that God said he would give to Abraham” or “land that God promised to Abraham” or “land God promised to his people” or “land of Canaan.”
- In the Bible text, this term occurs as some form of “the land God promised.”

(See also: Canaan, promise)

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 08:1-2
- Ezekiel 07:26-27

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:01** They (Israelites) were no longer slaves, and they were going to the **Promised Land**!
- **14:01** After God had told the Israelites the laws he wanted them to obey as part of his covenant with them, God began leading them from Mount Sinai toward the **Promised Land**, which was also called Canaan.
- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the **Promised Land** to their descendants, but now there were many people groups living there.
- **14:14** Then God led the people to the edge of the **Promised Land** again.
- **15:02** The Israelites had to cross the Jordan River to enter into the **Promised Land**.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of Israel its own section of the **Promised Land**.
- **20:09** This period of time when God’s people were forced to leave the **Promised Land** is called the Exile.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H776, H3068, H3423, H5159, H5414, H7650

**Uses:**

- Introduction to Numbers
- Numbers 13 General Notes
- Numbers 15 General Notes
- Numbers 26 General Notes
- Numbers 32 General Notes

## prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

**Definition:**

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: synecdoche)
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, false prophet, fulfill, law, vision)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:24-26
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:22-23

- Matthew 02:17-18
- Matthew 05:17-18
- Psalm 051:1-2

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:05** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God. *

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

**Uses:**

- Numbers 11 General Notes
- Numbers 11:24-25
- Numbers 12 General Notes
- Numbers 12:6-8
- Numbers 22 General Notes
- Numbers 23:7-8
- Numbers 23:16-18
- Numbers 24:2-3
- Numbers 24:15-16
- Numbers 24:20

## prostitute, prostituted, prostitutes, harlot, whored

**Definition:**

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: euphemism)

(See also: adultery, false god, sexual immorality, false god)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 34:30-31
- Genesis 38:21-23
- Luke 15:28-30
- Matthew 21:31-32

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G4204

**Uses:**

- Numbers 15:37-39

## proverb, proverbs

### Definition:

A proverb is a short statement that expresses some wisdom or truth.

- Proverbs are powerful because they are easy to remember and repeat.
- Often a proverb will include practical examples from everyday life.
- Some proverbs are very clear and direct, while others are more difficult to understand.
- King Solomon was known for his wisdom and wrote over 1,000 proverbs.
- Jesus often used proverbs or parables when he taught people.
- Ways to translate “proverb” could include “wise saying” or “true word.”

(See also: Solomon, true, wise)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:32-34
- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- 2 Peter 02:20-22
- Luke 04:23-24
- Proverbs 01:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2420, H4911, H4912, G3850, G3942

### Uses:

- Numbers 21:27-28

## punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished

**Definition:**

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: just, repent, righteous, sin)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 04:17-18
- 2 Thessalonians 01:9-10
- Acts 04:21-22
- Acts 07:59-60
- Genesis 04:13-15
- Luke 23:15-17
- Matthew 25:44-46

their

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

***13:07** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them. ***16:02** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them. ***19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them. ***48:06** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed. ***48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him. ***49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that

he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever. ***49:11** Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5414, H6031, H6064, H6213, H6485, H7999, H8199, G1349, G1556, G1557, G2849, G3811, G5097

**Uses:**

- Numbers 14:17-19
- Numbers 33:3-4

## pure, purify, purification

### Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, clean, spirit)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:5-8
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- James 04:8-10
- Luke 02:22-24
- Revelation 14:3-5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G48, G49, G53, G54, G1506, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2514

**Uses:**

- Numbers 8:5-6
- Numbers 8:14-15
- Numbers 8:20-21
- Numbers 15 General Notes
- Numbers 19:9-10
- Numbers 19:17-19
- Numbers 31:18-20

## rage, rages, raged, raging

**Facts:**

Rage is excessive anger what is out of control. When someone rages, it means that person is expressing anger in a destructive way.

- Rage happens when the emotion of anger causes a person to lose self control.
- When controlled by rage, people commit destructive acts and say destructive things.
- The term to "rage" can also mean to move powerfully, in descriptions such as a "raging" storm or ocean waves that "rage."
- When the "nations rage," their to ungodly people disobey God and rebel against him.
- To be "filled with rage" means to have an overwhelming feeling of extreme anger.

(See also: angry, self-control)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 04:23-25
- Daniel 03:13-14
- Luke 04:28-30
- Numbers 25:10-11
- Proverbs 19:3-4

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H398, H1348, H1984, H1993, H2121, H2195, H2196, H2197, H2534, H2734, H2740, H3491, H3820, H5590, H5678, H7264, H7265, H7266, H7267, H7283, H7857, G1693, G2830, G3710, G5433

**Uses:**

- Numbers 25:10-11

## raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose

### Definition:

**raise, raise up**

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The figurative phrase “raise up” means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

**rise, arise**

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: resurrection, appoint, exalt)

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:40-42

- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 10:39-41
- Colossians 03:1-4
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:1-3
- Judges 02:18-19
- Luke 07:21-23
- Matthew 20:17-19

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:05** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:07** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:05** " You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:04** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6209, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, H7721, G305, G386, G393, G450, G1096, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891

**Uses:**

- Numbers 6:19-20
- Numbers 10:35-36
- Numbers 14:39-40
- Numbers 15:20-21
- Numbers 16:1-3
- Numbers 18:8-9

- Numbers 22:12-14
- Numbers 23:16-18
- Numbers 25:6-7

## ransom, ransomed

### Definition:

The term “ransom” refers to a sum of money or other payment that is demanded or paid for the release of a person who is held captive.

- As a verb, to “ransom” means to make a payment or to do something self-sacrificially in order to rescue someone who has been captured, enslaved or imprisoned. This meaning of “buy back” is similar to the meaning of “redeem.”
- Jesus allowed himself to be killed as a ransom to free sinful people from their enslavement to sin. This act of God buying back his people through paying the penalty of their sin is also called “redemption” in the Bible.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “ransom” could also be translated as to “pay to release” or to “pay a price to free” or to “buy back.”
- The phrase to “pay a ransom” could be translated as to “pay the price (of freedom)” or to “pay the penalty (to free people)” or to “make the required payment.”
- The noun “ransom” could be translated as “a buying back” or “a penalty paid” or “the price paid” (to free or buy back people or land).
- The terms a “ransom” and a “redemption” have the same meaning in English but are sometimes used slightly differently. Other languages may have only one term for this concept.
- Make sure this is translated differently from “atonement.”

(See also: atonement, redeem)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 02:5-7
- Isaiah 43:2-3
- Job 06:21-23
- Leviticus 19:20-22
- Matthew 20:25-28
- Psalms 049:6-8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H3724, H6299, H6306, G487, G3083

### Uses:

- Numbers 35:31-32

## rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

**Definition:**

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebel” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, governor)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14-15
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:37-38
- Luke 23:18-19

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

***14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead. ***18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam. ***18:09** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin. ***18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods. ***20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon. ***45:03** Then he (Stephen) said, ”You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G3893, G4955

**Uses:**

- Numbers 14:9-10
- Numbers 14:31-33
- Numbers 17:10-11
- Numbers 20:10-11
- Numbers 20:22-24
- Numbers 26:8-9
- Numbers 27:12-14

## receive, receives, received, receiving, receiver

### Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, lord, save)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 05:9-10
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 04:1-2
- Acts 08:14-17
- Jeremiah 32:33-35
- Luke 09:5-6
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Psalms 049:14-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace

between God and people.

- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, **receive** my spirit."
- **49:06** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1878, H2505, H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2210, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G3970, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G4732, G5264, G5274, G5562

**Uses:**

- Numbers 5:8-10
- Numbers 18:25-27
- Numbers 24:2-3

## redeem, redeems, redemption, redeemer

### Definition:

To “redeem” and “redemption” refer to buy back something or someone that was previously owned or held captive. “Redemption” is the action of doing that. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things.
- For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “the buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these terms. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary.

(See also: free, ransom)

### Bible References:

- Colossians 01:13-14
- Ephesians 01:7-8
- Ephesians 05:15-17
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Galatians 04:3-5
- Luke 02:36-38
- Ruth 02:19-20

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G59, G629, G1805, G3084, G3085

**Uses:**

- Numbers 3:46-47
- Numbers 3:49-51

## refuge, refugee, refugees, shelter, shelters, sheltered, sheltering

**Definition:**

The term “refuge” refers to a place or condition of safety and protection. A “refugee” is someone who is seeking a safe place. A “shelter” refers to a place that can protect from weather or danger.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a refuge where his people can be safe, protected, and cared for.
- The term “city of refuge” in the Old Testament referred to one of several cities where a person who accidentally killed someone could go for protection from people who would attack them in revenge.
- A “shelter” is often a physical structure such as a building or roof that can provide protection to people or animals.
- Sometimes “shelter” means “protection,” as when Lot said that his guests were “under the shelter” of his roof. He was saying that they should be safe because he was taking responsibility to protect them as members of his household.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “refuge” could be translated as “safe place” or “place of protection.”
- “Refugees” are people leaving their home to escape from a dangerous situation, and could be translated as “aliens,” “homeless people,” or “exiles.”
- Depending on the context, the term “shelter” could be translated as “something that protects” or “protection” or “protected place.”
- If it refers to a physical structure, “shelter” could also be translated as “protective building” or “house of safety.”
- The phrase “into safe shelter” could be translated as “into a safe place” or “into a place that will protect.”
- To “find shelter” or to “take shelter” or to “take refuge” could be translated as to “find a place of safety” or to “put oneself in a protected place.”

**Bible References:**

- 2 Samuel 22:3-4
- Deuteronomy 32:37-38
- Isaiah 23:13-14
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Numbers 35:24-25
- Psalm 046:1-3
- Psalms 028:6-8

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2620, H4268, H4498, H4585, H4733, H4869

**Uses:**

- Numbers 35:6-7
- Numbers 35:9-11
- Numbers 35:12-13
- Numbers 35:24-25
- Numbers 35:26-28

## reject, rejects, rejected, rejecting, rejection

### Definition:

To “reject” someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term “reject” can also mean to “refuse to believe in” something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses’ leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term “push away” is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “reject” could also be translated by “not accept” or “stop helping” or “refuse to obey” or “stop obeying.”
- In the expression “stone that the builders rejected,” the term “rejected” could be translated as “refused to use” or “did not accept” or “threw away” or “got rid of as worthless.”
- In the context of people who rejected God’s commandments, rejected could be translated as “refused to obey” his commands or “stubbornly chose to not accept” God’s laws.

(See also: command, disobey, obey, stiff-necked)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 04:12-14
- Hosea 04:6-7
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- John 12:48-50
- Mark 07:8-10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H947, H959, H2186, H2310, H3988, H5006, H5034, H5186, H5203, H5307, H5541, H5800, G96, G114, G483, G550, G579, G580, G593, G683, G720, G1609, G3868

### Uses:

- Numbers 11:18-20
- Numbers 14:31-33

## report, reports, reported

**Definition:**

The term to "report" means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A "report" is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- "Report" could also be translated as "tell" or "explain" or "tell the details of."
- The expression "Report this to no one" could be translated as, "Don't talk about this with anyone" or "Don't tell anyone about this."
- Ways to translate "a report" could include "an explanation" or "a story" or "a detailed account," depending on the context.

**Bible References:**

- Acts 05:22-23
- John 12:37-38
- Luke 05:15-16
- Luke 08:34-35
- Matthew 28:14-15

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, G189, G191, G312, G518, G987, G1225, G1310, G1426, G1834, G2036, G2162, G2163, G3004, G3056, G3140, G3141, G3377

**Uses:**

- Numbers 13:32-33
- Numbers 14:36-38

## rest, rests, rested, resting, restless

### Definition:

The term to “rest” literally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. The phrase “the rest of” refers to the remainder of something. A “rest” is to stop working.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as ” I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: remnant, Sabbath)

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:40-42
- Genesis 02:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Matthew 11:28-30
- Revelation 14:11-12

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677,

H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G1981, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2681, G2838, G3062, G4520

**Uses:**

- Numbers 10:33-34

## Reuben

### Facts:

Reuben was the firstborn son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

- When his brothers were planning to kill their younger brother Joseph, Reuben spared Joseph's life by telling them to put him into a pit instead.
- Reuben came back later to rescue Joseph, but the other brothers had sold him as a slave to merchants passing by.
- Reuben's descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Joseph (OT), Leah, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 29:31-32
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 42:21-22
- Genesis 42:37-38

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7205, H7206, G4502

### Uses:

- Numbers 1:4-5
- Numbers 1:20
- Numbers 2:10
- Numbers 2:16
- Numbers 7:30
- Numbers 10:17-20
- Numbers 13:3-4
- Numbers 16:1-3
- Numbers 26:5
- Numbers 32:1-3
- Numbers 32:23-25
- Numbers 32:31-32
- Numbers 34:13-15

## reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation

**Definition:**

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in the translation.
- The phrase “where there is no revelation” could be translated as “when God is not revealing himself to people” or “when God is not speaking to people” or “among people whom God has not communicating.”

(See also: good news, good news, dream, vision)

**Bible References:**

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 03:3-5
- Galatians 01:11-12
- Lamentations 02:13-14
- Matthew 10:26-27
- Philippians 03:15-16
- Revelation 01:1-3

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H241, H1540, H1541, G601, G602, G5537

**Uses:**

- Numbers 12:6-8

## reward, rewards, rewarded, rewarding, rewarder

**Definition:**

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To “reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement “the reward of the wicked.” In this context “reward” refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- To “reward” someone could be translated by to “repay” or to “punish” or to “give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: punish)

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 32:5-6
- Isaiah 40:9-10
- Luke 06:35-36
- Mark 09:40-41
- Matthew 05:11-12
- Matthew 06:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H319, H866, H868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4864, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7809, H7810, H7936, H7938, H7939, H7966, H7999, H8011, H8021, G469, G514, G591, G2603, G3405, G3406, G3408

**Uses:**

- Numbers 24:10-11

## righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

**Definition:**

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: parallelism)

**Translation Suggestions:**

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or ”doing perfectly good
- Sometimes “the righteous” was used figuratively and referred to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: evil, faithful, good, holy, integrity, just, law, law, obey, pure, righteous, sin, unlawful)

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 19:15-16
- Job 01:6-8
- Psalms 037:28-30
- Psalms 049:14-15
- Psalms 107:41-43
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:12-13
- Malachi 02:5-7
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- Galatians 03:6-9
- Colossians 03:22-25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- 2 Timothy 03:16-17
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:8-10
- 1 John 05:16-17

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.

- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118, G3716, G3717

**Uses:**

- Numbers 23:10

## rod, rods

### Definition:

The term “rod” refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that was used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

- A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
- In Psalm 23, King David used the terms “rod” and “staff” as metaphors to refer to God’s guidance and discipline for his people.
- A shepherd’s rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
- Another metaphorical expression, “rod of iron,” refers to God’s punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
- In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.
- In the Bible, a wooden rod was also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.

(See also: staff, sheep, shepherd)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:19-21
- 1 Samuel 14:43-44
- Acts 16:22-24
- Exodus 27:9-10
- Revelation 11:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2415, H4294, H4731, H7626, G2563, G4463, G4464

### Uses:

- Numbers 17:8-9

## Rome, Roman

### Facts:

In New Testament times, the city of Rome was the center of the Roman Empire. It is now the capital city of the modern-day country of Italy.

- The Roman Empire ruled over all the regions around the Mediterranean Sea, including Israel.
- The term "Roman" referred to anything relating to the regions that the government in Rome controlled, including Roman citizens and Roman officials.
- The apostle Paul was taken to the city of Rome as a prisoner because he preached the good news about Jesus.
- The New Testament book of "Romans" is a letter that Paul wrote to the Christians in Rome.

(See also: good news, the sea, Pilate, Paul)

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 01:15-18
- Acts 22:25-26
- Acts 28:13-15
- John 11:47-48

### Examples from the Bible stories:

***23:04** When the time was near for Mary to give birth, the **Roman** government told everyone to go for a census to the town where their ancestors had lived. ***32:06** Then Jesus asked the demon, "What is your name?" He replied, "My name is Legion, because we are many." (A "legion" was a group of several thousand soldiers in the **Roman** army.) ***39:09** Early the next morning, the Jewish leaders brought Jesus to the **Roman** governor, Pilate, hoping to have Jesus killed. ***39:12** The **Roman** soldiers whipped Jesus and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they mocked him by saying, "Look, the King of the Jews!"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G4514, G4516

## ruin, ruins, ruined

**Definition:**

To “ruin” something means to spoil, destroy, or cause to be useless. The term “ruin” or “ruins” refers to the rubble and spoiled remains of something that has been destroyed.

- The prophet Zephaniah spoke about the day of God’s wrath as a “day of ruin” when the world will be judged and punished.
- The book of Proverbs says that ruin and destruction await those who are ungodly.
- Depending on the context, to “ruin” could be translated as to “destroy” or to “spoil” or to “make useless” or to “break.”
- The term “ruin” or “ruins” could be translated as “rubble” or “broken-down buildings” or “destroyed city” or “devastation” or “brokenness” or “destruction,” depending on the context.

**Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 12:7-8
- 2 Kings 19:25-26
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 23:13-14

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H6, H1197, H1530, H1820, H1942, H2034, H2040, H2717, H2719, H2720, H2723, H2930, H3510, H3765, H3782, H3832, H4072, H4288, H4383, H4384, H4654, H4658, H4876, H4889, H5221, H5557, H5754, H5856, H6365, H7451, H7489, H7582, H7591, H7612, H7701, H7703, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, H8510, G2679, G2692, G3639, G4485

**Uses:**

- Numbers 24:21-22

## rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled

**Definition:**

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It is means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: authority, governor, king, synagogue)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 03:17-18
- Acts 07:35-37
- Luke 12:11-12
- Luke 23:35
- Mark 10:41-42
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 20:25-28
- Titus 03:1-2

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4427, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4623, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7300, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G746, G752, G755, G757, G758, G932, G936, G1018, G1203, G1299, G1778, G1785, G1849, G2232, G2233, G2525, G2583, G2888, G2961, G3545, G3841, G4165, G4173, G4291

**Uses:**

- Numbers 16:12-14

## Sabbath

### Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: rest)

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 02:5-6
- Leviticus 19:1-4
- Luke 13:12-14
- Mark 02:27-28
- Matthew 12:1-2
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:05** ”Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”

- **26:02** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:03** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4868, H7676, H7677, G4315, G4521

**Uses:**

- Numbers 15:32-34
- Numbers 28 General Notes
- Numbers 28:9-10

## sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression “offer yourselves as a living sacrifice” means, “live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him.”

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: altar, burnt offering, drink offering, false god, fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, priest, sin offering, worship)

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:6-8
- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 21:25-26
- Genesis 04:3-5
- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12-14
- Matthew 05:23-24

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4469, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

**Uses:**

- Numbers 5:8-10
- Numbers 6:10-11
- Numbers 6:16-17
- Numbers 7:1-3
- Numbers 7:10-11
- Numbers 7:18
- Numbers 7:27
- Numbers 7:36
- Numbers 7:45
- Numbers 7:54
- Numbers 7:63
- Numbers 7:72
- Numbers 7:81
- Numbers 8:12-13

- Numbers 8:20-21
- Numbers 9:6-8
- Numbers 9:13-14
- Numbers 10:10
- Numbers 15:1-3
- Numbers 15:8-10
- Numbers 15:17-19
- Numbers 15:25-26
- Numbers 16:15-17
- Numbers 18:8-9
- Numbers 18:17-18
- Numbers 18:25-27
- Numbers 22:38-40
- Numbers 23:4-6
- Numbers 25:1-3
- Numbers 26:60-62
- Numbers 28:1-2
- Numbers 28:11-13
- Numbers 31:28-29
- Numbers 31:50-51

## Salt Sea, Dead Sea

### Facts:

The Salt Sea (also called the Dead Sea) was located between southern Israel on its west and Moab on its east.

- The Jordan River flows south into the Salt Sea.
- Because it is smaller than most seas, it could be called “Salt Lake.”
- This sea has such a high concentration of minerals (or “salts”) that nothing can live in its waters. Its lack of plants and animals is the cause of the name “Dead Sea.”
- In the Old Testament, this sea is also called the “Sea of Arabah” and the “Sea of Negev” because of its location near the regions of Arabah and Negev.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ammon, Arabah, , Jordan River, Moab, Negev)

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 20:1-2
- Deuteronomy 03:17
- Joshua 03:14-16
- Numbers 34:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3220, H4417

### Uses:

- Numbers 34:1-3
- Numbers 34:10-12

## Samuel

### Facts:

Samuel was a prophet and the last judge of Israel. He anointed both Saul and David as kings over Israel.

- Samuel was born to Elkanah and Hannah in the town of Ramah.
- Hannah had been barren, so she had prayed earnestly that God would give her a son. Samuel was the answer to that prayer.
- Hannah promised that if, in answer to her desperate prayer that God would give her a male child, her request was granted, she would dedicate her son to Yahweh.
- To fulfill her promise to God, when Samuel was a young boy, Hannah sent him to live with and help Eli the priest in the temple.
- God raised up Samuel to be a great prophet.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Hannah, judge, prophet, Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 01:19-20
- 1 Samuel 09:23-24
- 1 Samuel 12:16-18
- Acts 03:24-26
- Acts 13:19-20
- Hebrews 11:32-34

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8050, G4545

## sanctuary

### Definition:

The term “sanctuary” literally means “holy place” and refers to a place that God has made sacred and holy. It also can refer to a place that provides protection and safety.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sanctuary” was often used to refer to the tabernacle or temple building where the “holy place” and “most holy place” were located.
- God referred to the sanctuary as the place where he lived among his people, the Israelites.
- He also called himself a “sanctuary” or safe place for his people where they can find protection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term has a basic meaning of “holy place” or “place that is set apart.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sanctuary” could be translated as “holy place” or “sacred building” or “God’s holy dwelling place” or “holy place of protection” or “sacred place of safety.”
- The phrase “shekel of the sanctuary” could be translated as “kind of shekel given for the tabernacle” or “shekel used in paying the tax to take care of the temple.”
- Note: Be careful that the translation of this term does not refer to a worship room in a modern-day church.

(See also: holy, Holy Spirit, holy, set apart, tabernacle, tax, temple, )

### Bible References:

- Amos 07:12-13
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Ezekiel 25:3-5
- Hebrews 08:1-2
- Luke 11:49-51
- Numbers 18:1-2
- Psalms 078:67-69

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4720, H6944, G39

### Uses:

- Numbers 3:24-26

- Numbers 3:38-39
- Numbers 3:46-47
- Numbers 7:12-14
- Numbers 7:24
- Numbers 7:36
- Numbers 7:48
- Numbers 7:60
- Numbers 7:72
- Numbers 7:84
- Numbers 10:21-24
- Numbers 18:1-2
- Numbers 18:14-16
- Numbers 19:20-22

## Saul (OT)

### Facts:

Saul was an Israelite man whom God chose to become the first king of Israel.

- Saul was tall and handsome, and a powerful soldier. He was the kind of man that the Israelites wanted to be their king.
- Although he served God at first, Saul later became proud and disobeyed God. As a result, God appointed David to take Saul's place as king and allowed Saul to be killed in battle.
- In the New Testament, there was a Jew named Saul who was also known as Paul and who became an apostle of Jesus Christ.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: king)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
- 1 Samuel 09:1-2
- 2 Samuel 01:1-2
- Acts 13:21-22
- Psalm 018:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

***17:01** **Saul** was the first king of Israel. He was tall and handsome, just like the people wanted. **Saul** was a good king for the first few years that he ruled over Israel. But then he became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place. ***17:04** **Saul** became jealous of the people's love for David. **Saul** tried many times to kill him, so David hid from **Saul**. ***17:05** Eventually, **Saul** died in battle, and David became king of Israel.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7586, G4549

## save, saves, saved, safe, salvation

**Definition:**

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, deliver, punish, sin, Savior)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 49:16-18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 080:1-3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- Luke 02:30-32

- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:11-12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:20-21
- Romans 01:16-17
- Romans 10:8-10
- Ephesians 06:17-18
- Philippians 01:28-30
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8668, G803, G804, G806, G1295, G1508, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

**Uses:**

- Numbers 10:9

## scepter, scepters

### Definition:

The term “scepter” refers to an ornamental rod or staff held by a ruler, such as a king.

- Scepters were originally a branch of wood with carved decorations. Later scepters were also made of precious metals such as gold.
- The scepter was a symbol of royalty and authority and also symbolized the honor and dignity associated with a king.
- In the Old Testament, God was described as having a scepter of righteousness because God rules as king over his people.
- An Old Testament prophecy referred to the Messiah as a symbolic scepter that would come from Israel to rule over all nations.
- This could also be translated as “ruling rod” or ”king’s rod.

(See also: authority, Christ, king, righteous)

### Bible References:

- Amos 01:5
- Esther 04:9-12
- Genesis 49:10
- Hebrews 01:8-9
- Numbers 21:17-18
- Psalms 045:5-7

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2710, H4294, H7626, H8275, G4464

### Uses:

- Numbers 21:17-18
- Numbers 24:17

## scroll, scrolls

### Definition:

In ancient times, a scroll was a type of book made of one long, rolled-up sheet of papyrus or leather.

- After writing on a scroll or reading from it, people rolled it up by using the rods attached to its ends.
- Scrolls were used for legal documents and scripture.
- Sometimes scrolls that were delivered by a messenger were sealed with wax. If the wax was still present when the scroll was received, then the receiver knew that no one had opened the scroll to read it or write on it since it had been sealed.
- Scrolls containing the Hebrew Scriptures were read aloud in the synagogues.

(See also: seal, synagogue, word of God)

### Bible References:

- Jeremiah 29:1-3
- Luke 04:16-17
- Numbers 21:14-15
- Revelation 05:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4039, H4040, H5612, G974, G975

### Uses:

- Numbers 5:23
- Numbers 21:14-15

## sea cow

### Definition:

The term “sea cow” refers to a large sea animal that eats sea grass and other vegetation on the ocean floor.

- A sea cow is grey with thick skin. It moves in the water by using its flippers.
- The skins or hides of the sea cow were used by people in Bible times for making tents. These animal hides were also used in the coverings for the tabernacle.
- It was nicknamed “sea cow” because it eats grass like a cow, but it is not similar to a cow in other ways.
- Related animals are the “dugong” and the “manatee.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: tabernacle)

### Bible References:

- Numbers 04:5-6
- Numbers 04:12-14
- Numbers 04:24-26

The person who received the scroll would see the unbroken seal and know that no one had opened it.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8476

### Uses:

- Numbers 4:5-6
- Numbers 4:7-8
- Numbers 4:9-11
- Numbers 4:12-14
- Numbers 4:24-26

## Sea of Galilee, Sea of Kinnereth, lake of Gennesaret, Sea of Tiberias

**Facts:**

The "Sea of Galilee" is a lake in eastern Israel. In the Old Testament it was called the "Sea of Kinnereth."

- The water of this lake flows south through the Jordan River down to the Salt Sea.
- Capernaum, Bethsaida, Gennesaret, and Tiberias were some of the towns located on the Sea of Galilee during New Testament times.
- Many events of Jesus' life took place on or near the Sea of Galilee.
- The Sea of Galilee was also referred to as the "Sea of Tiberias" and the "lake of Gennesaret."
- This term could also be translated as "lake in the region of Galilee" or "Lake Galilee" or "lake near Tiberias (Gennesaret)."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Capernaum, Galilee, Jordan River, Salt Sea)

**Bible References:**

- John 06:1-3
- Luke 05:1-3
- Mark 01:16-18
- Matthew 04:12-13
- Matthew 04:18-20
- Matthew 08:18-20
- Matthew 13:1-2
- Matthew 15:29-31

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3220, H3672, G1056, G1082, G2281, G3041, G5085

**Uses:**

- Numbers 34:10-12

## Sea of Reeds, Red Sea

### Facts:

The “Sea of Reeds” was the name of a body of water located between Egypt and Arabia. It is now called the “Red Sea.”

- The Red Sea is long and narrow. It is larger than a lake or river, but much smaller than an ocean.
- The Israelites had to cross the Red Sea when they were fleeing from Egypt. God performed a miracle and caused the waters of the sea to divide so that the people could walk across on dry land.
- The land of Canaan was north of this sea.
- This could also be translated as “Reed Sea.”

(See also: Arabia. Canaan, Egypt)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:35-37
- Exodus 13:17-18
- Joshua 04:22-24
- Numbers 14:23-25

### Examples from the Bible stories:

***12:04** When the Israelites saw the Egyptian army coming, they realized they were trapped between Pharaoh’s army and the **Red Sea**. ***12:05** Then God told Moses, ”Tell the people to move toward the **Red Sea**.” ***13:01** After God led the Israelites through the **Red Sea**, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called Sinai.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3220, H5488, G2063, G2281

### Uses:

- Numbers 14:23-25
- Numbers 21:4-5
- Numbers 33:8-10
- Numbers 33:11-14

## seal, seals, sealed, sealing, unsealed

**Definition:**

To seal an object means to keep it closed with something that makes it impossible to open without breaking the seal.

- Often a seal is marked with a design to show who it belongs to.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus' grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.
- Paul figuratively refers to the Holy Spirit as a "seal" showing that our salvation is secure.

(See also: Holy Spirit, tomb)

**Bible References:**

- Exodus 02:3-4
- Isaiah 29:11-12
- John 06:26-27
- Matthew 27:65-66
- Revelation 05:1-2

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2368, H2560, H2856, H2857, H2858, H5640, G2696, G4972, G4973

## seed, semen

### Definition:

A seed is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The term "seed" is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these is called semen.
- Related to this, "seed" is also used to refer to a person's offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people's hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term "seed" to refer to the Word of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for "seed" that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God's Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word "descendant" or "descendants" instead of seed. Some languages may have a word that means "children and grandchildren."
- For a man or woman's "seed," consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: euphemism)

(See also: descendant, offspring)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:30-32
- Genesis 01:11-13
- Jeremiah 02:20-22
- Matthew 13:7-9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2232, H2233, H2234, H3610, H6507, G4615, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

**Uses:**

- Numbers 20:4-5
- Numbers 24:7

## self-control, self-controlled, controlled self

**Definition:**

Self-control is the ability to control one's behavior in order to avoid sinning.

- It refers to good behavior, that is, avoiding sinful thoughts, speech, and actions.
- Self-control is a fruit or characteristic that the Holy Spirit gives to Christians.
- A person who is using self-control is able to stop himself from doing something wrong that he may want to do. God is the one who enables a person to have self-control.

(See also: fruit, Holy Spirit)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 07:8-9
- 2 Peter 01:5-7
- 2 Timothy 03:1-4
- Galatians 05:22-24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4623, H7307, G192, G193, G1466, G1467, G1468, G4997

## send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out

**Definition:**

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean to “cause…to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as to “send word” or to “send a message,” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father, who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as ”the one who commis

(See also: appoint, redeem)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 08:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 09:37-38
- Matthew 10:5-7
- Matthew 10:40-41
- Matthew 21:1-3

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H935, H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H3947, H4916, H4917, H5042, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7725, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G782, G375, G630, G649, G652, G657, G1026, G1032, G1544, G1599, G1821, G3333, G3343, G3936, G3992, G4311, G4341, G4369, G4842, G4882

**Uses:**

- Numbers 13:1-2
- Numbers 14:6-8
- Numbers 16:28-30
- Numbers 20:14-16

- Numbers 21:21-23
- Numbers 22:5-6
- Numbers 24:12-14
- Numbers 25:8-9

## serpent, serpents, snake, snakes, viper, vipers

### Facts:

These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and that moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term "serpent" usually refers to a large snake and "viper" refers to a type of snake that has venom which it uses to poison its prey.

- This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially someone who is deceitful.
- Jesus called the religious leaders "offspring of vipers" because they pretended to be righteous but deceived people and treated them unfairly.
- In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.
- After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, and both Eve and her husband Adam did sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before then they had had legs.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: curse, deceive, disobey, Eden, evil, offspring, prey, Satan, sin, tempt)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 03:1-3
- Genesis 03:4-6
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Mark 16:17-18
- Matthew 03:7-9
- Matthew 23:32-33

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H660, H2119, H5175, H6620, H6848, H8314, H8577, G2191, G2062, G3789

### Uses:

- Numbers 21:6-7

## serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice

### Definition:

The term “serve” means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to “worship.”

- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.”
- When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- The term “service” refers to the act of serving. It can also be used to refer to a “meeting” of Christians as they worship God together.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses.
- Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: covenant, law, servant)

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:22-24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402,

G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256### Uses:

- Numbers 1:4-5
- Numbers 3:3-4
- Numbers 3:9-10
- Numbers 4:1-4
- Numbers 4:21-23
- Numbers 4:33
- Numbers 4:41
- Numbers 8:9-11
- Numbers 8:22
- Numbers 16:8-11
- Numbers 18:1-2
- Numbers 18:21-22

## set apart

### Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to “set apart” could include to “specially select” or to “separate from among you” or to “take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: holy, sanctify, appoint)

### Bible References:

- Ephesians 03:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12-13
- Numbers 03:11-13
- Philippians 01:1-2
- Romans 01:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G40, G873

### Uses:

- Numbers 3:11-13
- Numbers 6:5
- Numbers 7:1-3
- Numbers 8:16-17

- Numbers 16:4-5
- Numbers 16:6-7
- Numbers 16:36-38
- Numbers 18:10-11
- Numbers 18:17-18

## Seth

### Facts:

In the book of Genesis, Seth was the third son of Adam and Eve.

- Eve said that Seth was given to her in place of her son Abel, who was murdered by his brother Cain.
- Noah was one of Seth's descendants, so everyone who has lived since the time of the Flood is also a descendant of Seth.
- Seth and his family were the first people to "call on the name of the Lord."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abel, Cain, call, descendant, ancestor, flood, Noah)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:1-4
- Luke 03:36-38
- Numbers 24:17

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8352, G4589

### Uses:

- Numbers 24:17

## shepherd, shepherds, shepherded, shepherding

### Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb to "shepherd" means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water. Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.

- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people's spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the "shepherd" of his people because he took care of all their needs and protected them. He also led and guided them. (See: Metaphor)
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the "good shepherd." The apostle Paul also referred to him as the "great shepherd" over the Church.
- Also, in the New Testament, the term "shepherd" was used to refer to a person who was a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as "pastor" is the same word that is translated as "shepherd." The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

### Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action "shepherd" could be translated as "take care of sheep" or "watch over sheep."
- The person "shepherd" could be translated as "person who takes care of sheep" or "sheep tender" or "sheep caregiver."
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include "spiritual shepherd" or "spiritual leader" or "one who is like a shepherd" or "one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep" or "one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep" or "one who takes care of God's sheep."
- In some contexts, "shepherd" could be translated as "leader" or "guide" or "caregiver."
- The spiritual expression to "shepherd" could be translated as to "take care of" or to "spiritually nourish" or to "guide and teach" or to "lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep)."
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for "shepherd" in the translation of this term.

(See also: believe, Canaan, church, Moses, pastor, sheep, spirit)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 49:24

- Luke 02:8-9
- Mark 06:33-34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 02:4-6
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 25:31-33
- Matthew 26:30-32

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **09:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.to
- **17:02** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:06** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- **23:08** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G750, G4165, G4166

**Uses:**

- Numbers 27:15-17

## sign, signs, proof, reminder

**Definition:**

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- "Reminders" are signs that "remind" people by helping them remember something, often something that was promised:
  - The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
  - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
  - An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.\
  - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
  - The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God's message.
  - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on its context, "sign" could also be translated as "signal" or "symbol" or "mark" or "evidence" or "proof" or "gesture."
- To "make signs with the hands" could also be translated as "motion with the hands" or "gesture with the hands" or "make gestures."
- In some languages, there may be one word for a "sign" that proves something and a different word for a "sign" that is a miracle.

(See also: miracle, apostle, Christ, covenant, circumcise)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 02:18-19
- Exodus 04:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 01:14-15
- Genesis 09:11-13
- John 02:17-19

- Luke 02:10-12
- Mark 08:11-13
- Psalms 089:5-6

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G364, G880, G1213, G1229, G1718, G1730, G1732, G1770, G3902, G4102, G4591, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5280

**Uses:**

- Numbers 14:11-12
- Numbers 14:20-22
- Numbers 15:37-39
- Numbers 16:36-38
- Numbers 17:10-11
- Numbers 26:10-11

## silver

### Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple.The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, temple)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 03:4-6
- Matthew 26:14-16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

### Uses:

- Numbers 7:12-14
- Numbers 7:18
- Numbers 7:24
- Numbers 7:36
- Numbers 7:42
- Numbers 7:48
- Numbers 7:60
- Numbers 7:72
- Numbers 7:84
- Numbers 10:1-2
- Numbers 22:18-20

- Numbers 24:12-14
- Numbers 31:21-24

## Simeon

### Facts:

In the Bible, there were several men named Simeon.

- In the Old Testament, the second son of Jacob (Israel) was named Simeon. His mother was Leah. His descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The tribe of Simeon occupied part of the southernmost territory in the promised land of Canaan. Its land was entirely surrounded by the land that belonged to Judah.
- When Joseph and Mary brought the baby Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem to dedicate him to God, an elderly man named Simeon praised God for allowing him to see the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Christ, dedicate, Jacob, Judah, temple)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 29:33-34
- Genesis 34:24-26
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Genesis 43:21-23
- Luke 02:25-26

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8095, H8099, G4826

### Uses:

- Numbers 1:4-5
- Numbers 1:22
- Numbers 2:12
- Numbers 7:36
- Numbers 10:17-20
- Numbers 13:5-8
- Numbers 25:14-15
- Numbers 26:12
- Numbers 34:19-20

## sin offering, sin offerings

### Definition:

The “sin offering” was one of several sacrifices that God required the Israelites to offer.

- This offering involved sacrificing a bull, burning its blood and fat on the altar, and taking the rest of the animal’s body and burning it on the ground outside the Israelite camp.
- The complete burning up of this animal sacrifice shows how holy God is and how terrible sin is.
- The Bible teaches that in order for there to be a cleansing from sin, blood must be shed to pay the cost for the sin that was committed.
- Animal sacrifices could not permanently bring about forgiveness of sin.
- Jesus’ death on the cross paid the penalty for sin, for all time. He was the perfect sin offering.

(See also: altar, cow, forgive, sacrifice, sin)

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 29:20-21
- Exodus 29:35-37
- Ezekiel 44:25-27
- Leviticus 05:11
- Numbers 07:15-17

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2401, H2402, H2398, H2403

### Uses:

- Numbers 6:10-11
- Numbers 6:16-17
- Numbers 7:15
- Numbers 7:27
- Numbers 7:39
- Numbers 7:51
- Numbers 7:63
- Numbers 7:75
- Numbers 7:87
- Numbers 8:7-8
- Numbers 15:22-24
- Numbers 18:8-9

- Numbers 19:9-10
- Numbers 19:17-19
- Numbers 28:14-15
- Numbers 28:19-22
- Numbers 29:3-5
- Numbers 29:9-11
- Numbers 29:14-16
- Numbers 29:20-22
- Numbers 29:26-28
- Numbers 29:32-34
- Numbers 29:37-38

## sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

**Definition:**

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebelling against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, evil, flesh, tax collector)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 1 John 02:1-3
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19-20
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Genesis 04:6-7
- Hebrews 12:1-3
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- Jeremiah 18:21-23
- Leviticus 04:13-15
- Luke 15:17-19
- Matthew 12:31-32
- Romans 06:22-23
- Romans 08:3-5

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinners** who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**.
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

**Uses:**

- Numbers 5:5-7
- Numbers 5:15
- Numbers 5:27-28
- Numbers 6:10-11
- Numbers 9:13-14
- Numbers 12:11-12
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Numbers 14:34-35
- Numbers 15:22-24
- Numbers 15:30-31
- Numbers 16:20-22
- Numbers 18:1-2
- Numbers 18:21-22
- Numbers 19:9-10
- Numbers 20 General Notes
- Numbers 20 General Notes
- Numbers 21:6-7
- Numbers 22:34-35
- Numbers 27:2-3
- Numbers 30:15-16
- Numbers 31:16-17
- Numbers 32 General Notes
- Numbers 32:13-15
- Numbers 32:23-25

## Sinai, Mount Sinai

### Facts:

Mount Sinai is a mountain that was probably located in the southern part of what is now called the Sinai Peninsula. It was also known as “Mount Horeb.”

- Mount Sinai is part of a large, rocky desert.
- The Israelites came to Mount Sinai as they were traveling from Egypt to the Promised Land.
- God gave Moses the Ten Commandments on Mount Sinai.

(See also: desert, Egypt, Horeb, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:29-30
- Exodus 16:1-3
- Galatians 04:24-25
- Leviticus 27:34
- Numbers 01:17-19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

***13:01** After God led the Israelites through the Red Sea, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called **Sinai**. ***13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves spiritually, God came down on top of **Mount Sinai** with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast. ***13:11** For many days, Moses was on top of **Mount Sinai** talking with God. ***15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at **Sinai**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2022, H5514, G3735, G4614

### Uses:

- Numbers 1:1-3
- Numbers 1:17-19
- Numbers 3:1-2
- Numbers 3:14-16
- Numbers 9:1-3
- Numbers 10:11-13
- Numbers 26:63-64

- Numbers 28:6-8
- Numbers 33:15-18

## soldier, soldiers, warrior, warriors

### Facts:

The terms “warrior” and “soldier” both can refer to someone who fights in an army. But there are also some differences.

- Usually the term “warrior” is a general, broad term to refer to a man who is gifted and courageous in battle.
- Yahweh is figuratively described as a “warrior.”
- The term “soldier” more specifically refers to someone who belongs to a certain army or who is fighting in a certain battle.
- Roman soldiers in Jerusalem were there to keep order and to carry out duties such as executing prisoners. They guarded Jesus before crucifying him and some were ordered to stand guard at his tomb.
- The translator should consider whether there are two words in the project language for “warrior” and “soldier” that also differ in meaning and use.

(See also: courage, crucify, Rome, tomb)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:4-5
- Acts 21:32-33
- Luke 03:14
- Luke 23:11-12
- Matthew 08:8-10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: , H352, H510, H1368, H1416, H1995, H2389, H2428, H2502, H3715, H4421, H5431, H5971, H6518, H6635, H7273, H7916, G4686, G4753, G4754, G4757, G4758, G4961

## Solomon

### Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bathsheba, David, Israel, Judah, kingdom of Israel, temple)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:47-50
- Luke 12:27-28
- Matthew 01:7-8
- Matthew 06:27-29
- Matthew 12:42

### Examples from the Bible stories:

***17:14** Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him **Solomon**. ***18:01** After many years, David died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule. God spoke to **Solomon** and asked him what he wanted most. When **Solomon** asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. **Solomon** learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy. ***18:02** In Jerusalem, **Solomon** built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. ***18:03** But **Solomon** loved women from other countries. ... When **Solomon** was old, he also worshiped their gods. ***18:04** God was angry with **Solomon** and, as a punishment for **Solomon's** unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after **Solomon's** death.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8010, G4672

## son, sons

**Definition:**

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their "son" for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An "adopted son" is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- "Son" was often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term "son" can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger than the speaker.
- Sometimes "sons of God" was used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God called Israel his "firstborn son." This refers to God's choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God's message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase "son of" often has the figurative meaning "person having the characteristics of." Examples of this include "sons of the light," "sons of disobedience," "a son of peace," and "sons of thunder."
- The phrase "son of" is also used to tell who a person's father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using "son of" to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, "Azariah son of Zadok" and "Azariah son of Nathan" in 1 Kings 4, and "Azariah son of Amaziah" in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate "son" by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term "Son of God," the project language's common term for "son" should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term "descendant" could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the "descendant of David" or in genealogies where sometimes "son" referred to a male descendant who was not an actual son.
- Sometimes "sons" can be translated as "children," when both males and females are being referred to. For example, "sons of God" could be translated as "children of God" since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression "son of" could also be translated as "someone who has the characteristics of" or "someone who is like" or "someone who has" or "someone who acts like."

(See also: Azariah, descendant, ancestor, firstborn, Son of God, sons of God)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 18:14-17
- 1 Kings 13:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 05:4-7
- Galatians 04:6-7
- Hosea 11:1-2
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Matthew 03:16-17
- Matthew 05:9-10
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, ”I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, ”Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians’ firstborn **sons**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** ”Is this the **son** of Joseph?â€š” they said.

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:4-5
- Numbers 3:1-2
- Numbers 3:46-47
- Numbers 4:5-6
- Numbers 6:22-24
- Numbers 8:12-13
- Numbers 8:18-19

- Numbers 10:6-8
- Numbers 10:14-16
- Numbers 10:25-28
- Numbers 13:3-4
- Numbers 13:13-16
- Numbers 16:1-3
- Numbers 18:1-2
- Numbers 18:8-9
- Numbers 18:19-20
- Numbers 21:29-30
- Numbers 21:33-35
- Numbers 26:19

## sorcerer, sorcerers, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft

**Definition:**

"Sorcery" or "witchcraft" refers to using magic, which involves doing powerful things through the help of evil spirits. A "sorcerer" is someone who does these powerful, magical things.

- The use of magic and sorcery can involve both beneficial things (such as healing someone) and harmful things (such as putting a curse on someone). But all kinds of sorcery are wrong, because they use the power of evil spirits.
- In the Bible, God says that the use of sorcery is as evil as other terrible sins (such as adultery, worshiping idols, and child sacrifice).
- The terms "sorcery" and "witchcraft" could also be translated as "evil spirit power" or "casting spells."
- Possible ways to translated "sorcerer" could include "worker of magic" or "person who casts spells" or "person who does miracles using evil spirit power."
- Note that "sorcery" has a different meaning than the term "divination," which refers to attempting to contact the spirit world.

(See also: adultery, demon, divination, false god, magic, sacrifice, worship)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 08:9-11
- Exodus 07:11-13
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Revelation 09:20-21

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3784, H3785, H3786, H6049, G3095, G3096, G3097, G5331, G5332, G5333

**Uses:**

- Numbers 23:23
- Numbers 24:1

## spear, spears, spearmen

**Definition:**

A spear is a weapon with a long wooden handle and sharp metal blade on one end that is thrown a long distance.

- Spears were commonly used for war in biblical times. They are sometimes still used in present-day conflicts between certain people groups.
- A spear was used by a Roman soldier to pierce the side of Jesus while he hung on the cross.
- Sometimes people throw spears to catch fish or other prey to eat.
- Similar weapons are the “javelin” or “lance.”
- Make sure that the translation of “spear” is different from the translation of “sword,” which is a weapon that is used for thrusting or stabbing, not throwing. Also, a sword has a long blade with a handle, while a spear has a small blade on the end of a long shaft.

(See also: prey, Rome, sword, warrior)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 13:19-21
- 2 Samuel 21:18-19
- Nehemiah 04:12-14
- Psalm 035:1-3

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1265, H2595, H3591, H6767, H7013, H7420, G3057

**Uses:**

- Numbers 25:6-7

## spirit, spirits, spiritual

**Definition:**

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings, which give nourishment to a person’s spirit, and “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The figurative expression “spiritual milk” could also be translated as “basic teachings from God” or “God’s teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does).”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as ”special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: angel, demon, Holy Spirit, soul)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 05:3-5
- 1 John 04:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23-24
- Acts 05:9-11
- Colossians 01:9-10
- Ephesians 04:23-24
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:39-41
- Philippians 01:25-27

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, ”It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands.” Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, ”Jesus, receive my **spirit**.”
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

**Uses:**

- Numbers 5:13-14
- Numbers 5:29-30
- Numbers 11 General Notes
- Numbers 11:16-17
- Numbers 14:23-25
- Numbers 16:20-22
- Numbers 27:15-17

## staff, staffs

### Definition:

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

- When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
- God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
- Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
- The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, so it differed from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals that were trying to attack the sheep.

(See also: Pharaoh, power, sheep, shepherd)

### Bible References:

- Exodus 04:1-3
- Exodus 07:8-10
- Luke 09:3-4
- Mark 06:7-9
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 27:27-29

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4132, H4294, H4731, H4938, H6086, H6418, H7626, G2563, G3586, G4464

### Uses:

- Numbers 13:23-24
- Numbers 17:1-2
- Numbers 17:8-9
- Numbers 20:7-9
- Numbers 21:17-18
- Numbers 22:26-27

## statute, statutes

### Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and ” command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: command, decree, law, ordinance, Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 06:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:14-16
- Numbers 19:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H2708, H6490, H7010

### Uses:

- Numbers 19:1-2
- Numbers 30:15-16
- Numbers 35:29-30

## stone, stones, stoning

**Definition:**

A stone is a small rock. To “stone” someone is to throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A “stoning” is an event in which someone was stoned.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: adultery, commit, crime, death, Lystra, testimony)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:57-58
- Acts 07:59-60
- Acts 14:5-7
- Acts 14:19-20
- John 08:4-6
- Luke 13:34-35
- Luke 20:5-6
- Matthew 23:37-39

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H68, H69, H810, H1382, H1496, H1530, H2106, H2672, H2687, H2789, H4676, H4678, H5553, H5601, H5619, H6344, H6443, H6697, H6864, H6872, H7275, H7671, H8068, G2642, G2991, G3034, G3035, G3036, G3037, G4074, G4348, G5586

**Uses:**

- Numbers 14:9-10
- Numbers 15:35-36

## strength, strengthen, strengthens, strengthened, strengthening

### Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

### Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
- “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
- “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
- “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
- “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
- “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
- “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
- “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
- “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
- “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
- “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
- “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.” (See also: faithful, persevere, right hand, save)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:10-11

- Luke 10:25-28
- Psalm 021:1-2

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H905, H1082, H1369, H1396, H1679, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H2633, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4206, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5332, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7293, H7296, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8510, H8632, H8633, G461, G772, G950, G1411, G1412, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1849, G1991, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G3756, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

**Uses:**

- Numbers 23:21-22
- Numbers 24:8

## strong drink, strong drinks

**Definition:**

The term “strong drink” refers to drinks that have been fermented and have alcohol in them. *Alcoholic drinks are made from either grain or fruit and have undergone fermentation.* Kinds of “strong drink” include grape wine, palm wine, beer, and apple cider. In the Bible, grape wine was the most frequently mentioned strong drink. *Priests and anyone who took a special vow such as the “Nazirite vow” were not permitted to drink fermented drinks.* This term could also be translated as “fermented drink” or “alcoholic drink.”

(See also: grape, Nazirite, vow, wine)

**Bible References:**

- Isaiah 05:11-12
- Leviticus 10:8-11
- Luke 01:14-15
- Numbers 06:1-4

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5435, H7941, G4608

**Uses:**

- Numbers 6:1-4
- Numbers 28:6-8

## stronghold, strongholds, fortifications, fortified, fortress, fortresses

**Definition:**

The terms “stronghold” and “fortress” both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. The term “fortified” describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses were manmade structures with defensive walls. They could also have been places with natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortified strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that made it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- “Stronghold” or “fortress” could be translated as “securely strong place” or “strongly protected place.”
- The term “fortified city” could be translated as “securely protected city” or “strongly built city.”
- This term was also used figuratively to refer to God as a stronghold or fortress for those who trust in him. (See: Metaphor)
- Another figurative meaning for the term “stronghold” referred to something that someone wrongly trusted in for security, such as a false god or other thing that was worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as “false strongholds.”
- This term should be translated differently from “refuge,” which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: false god, false god, refuge, Yahweh)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Corinthians 10:3-4
- 2 Kings 08:10-12
- 2 Samuel 05:8-10
- Acts 21:34-36
- Habakkuk 01:10-11

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H490, H553, H759, H1001, H1002, H1003, H1219, H1225, H2388, H4013, H4026, H4581, H4526, H4679, H4685, H4686, H4692, H4693, H4694, H4869, H5794, H5797, H5800, H6438, H6696, H6877, H7682, G3794

**Uses:**

- Numbers 13:17-20

- Numbers 13:27-29
- Numbers 21:24-26
- Numbers 32:16-17
- Numbers 32:34-36

## Succoth

### Definition:

Succoth was the name of two Old Testament cities. The word, “succoth” (or “sukkoth”) means “shelters.”

- The first city called Succoth was located on the east side of the Jordan River.
- Jacob stayed at Succoth with his family and flocks, building shelters for them there.
- Hundreds of years later, Gideon and his exhausted men stopped at Succoth as they were chasing the Midanites, but the people there refused to give them any food.
- The second Succoth was located on the northern border of Egypt and was a place where the Israelites stopped after they crossed the Red Sea as they were escaping from slavery in Egypt.

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 07:46-47
- Exodus 12:37-40
- Joshua 13:27-28
- Judges 08:4-5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5523, H5524

### Uses:

- Numbers 33:5-7

## sword, swords, swordsmen

### Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

### Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: Metaphor)
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)

### Bible References:

- Acts 12:1-2
- Genesis 27:39-40
- Genesis 34:24-26
- Luke 02:33-35
- Luke 21:23-24
- Matthew 10:34-36
- Matthew 26:55-56
- Revelation 01:14-16

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

**Uses:**

- Numbers 14:1-3
- Numbers 14:41-43
- Numbers 19:14-16
- Numbers 20:18-19
- Numbers 21:24-26
- Numbers 22:21-23
- Numbers 22:31-33
- Numbers 31:6-8

## synagogue

### Definition:

A synagogue is a building where Jewish people meet together to worship God.

- Since ancient times, a synagogue's services have included times of prayer, scripture reading, and teaching about the scriptures.
- The Jews originally started building synagogues as places to pray and worship God in their own cities, because many of them lived far away from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Jesus often taught in synagogues and healed people there.
- The word "synagogue" can be used figuratively to refer to the group of people meeting there.

(See also: heal, Jerusalem, Jew, pray, temple, word of God, worship)

### Bible References:

- Acts 06:8-9
- Acts 14:1-2
- Acts 15:19-21
- Acts 24:10-13
- John 06:57-59
- Luke 04:14-15
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 13:54-56

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4150, G656, G752, G4864

## Syria

### Facts:

Syria is a country located northeast of Israel. During the time of the New Testament, it was a province under the rule of the Roman Empire.

- In the Old Testament time period, the Syrians were strong military enemies of the Israelites.
- Naaman was a commander of the Syrian army who was cured of leprosy by the prophet Elisha.
- Many inhabitants of Syria are descendants of Aram, who was descended from Noah's son Shem.
- Damascus, the capital city of Syria, was mentioned many times in the Bible.
- Saul went to the city of Damascus with plans to persecute Christians there, but Jesus stopped him.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Aram, commander, Damascus, descendant, Elisha, leprosy, Naaman, persecute, prophet)

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:22-23
- Acts 15:39-41
- Acts 20:1-3
- Galatians 01:21-24
- Matthew 04:23-25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H130, H726, H758, H761, H762, H804, H1834, H4601, H7421, G4947, G4948

## tabernacle

**Definition:**

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

- God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
- Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take the tabernacle apart and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
- The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
- The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
- The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
- The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when the temple was built in Jerusalem by Solomon.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The word “tabernacle” means “dwelling place.” Other ways to translate it could include, “sacred tent” or “tent where God was” or “God’s tent.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “temple.”

(See also: altar, altar of incense, ark of the covenant, temple, tent of meeting)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 21:28-30
- 2 Chronicles 01:2-5
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 07:44-46
- Exodus 38:21-23
- Joshua 22:19-20
- Leviticus 10:16-18

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H168, H4908, H5520, H5521, H5522, H7900, G4633, G4634, G4636, G4638

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:50
- Numbers 3:7-8
- Numbers 3:21-23
- Numbers 3:33-35
- Numbers 04 General Notes
- Numbers 4:15-16
- Numbers 4:24-26
- Numbers 4:31-32
- Numbers 4:46-48
- Numbers 5:16-17
- Numbers 07 General Notes
- Numbers 7:1-3
- Numbers 08 General Notes
- Numbers 9:15-17
- Numbers 9:22-23
- Numbers 10 General Notes
- Numbers 10:11-13
- Numbers 10:17-20
- Numbers 16:8-11
- Numbers 17:12-13
- Numbers 19:11-13
- Numbers 31:30-31
- Numbers 31:47

## tax, taxes, taxed, taxation, taxpayers

**Definition:**

The terms “tax” and “taxes” refer to money or goods that people pay to a government that is in authority over them.

- The amount of money that is paid as a tax is usually based on the value of an item or on how much a person’s property is worth.
- If taxes are not paid, the government can take legal action against a person to get the money that is owed.
- Joseph and Mary traveled to Bethlehem to be counted in the census held to tax everyone living in the Roman empire.
- The term “tax” could also be translated as, “required payment” or “government money” or “temple money,” depending on the context.
- To “pay taxes” could also be translated as to “pay money to the government” or “receive money for the government” or “make the required payment.” To “collect taxes” could be translated as to ”receive money for the government.
- A “tax collector” is someone who works for the government and receives the money that people are required to pay it.

(See also: Bethlehem, census, citizen, Rome, tax collector)

**Bible References:**

- Luke 20:21-22
- Mark 02:13-14
- Matthew 09:7-9
- Numbers 31:28-29
- Romans 13:6-7

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2670, H4060, H4371, H4522, H4864, H6186, G583, G5411

**Uses:**

- Numbers 31:28-29
- Numbers 31:36-38

## temple

### Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term "temple" referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term "temple of the Holy Spirit" is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were "in the temple," it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as "in the temple courtyards" or "in the temple complex."
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate "temple" as "temple building," to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate "temple" could include, "God's holy house" or "sacred worship place."
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as "the house of Yahweh" or "the house of God."

(See also: sacrifice, Solomon, Babylon, Holy Spirit, tabernacle, courtyard, Zion, house)

### Bible References:

- Acts 03:1-3
- Acts 03:7-8
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:45-46
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Psalm 079:1-3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:06** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered

sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.

- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:04** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’ ”
- **40:07** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1004, H1964, H1965, H7541, G1493, G2411, G3485

## tempt, temptation

### Definition:

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

- A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
- People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
- Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
- Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
- Someone who is "tempting God" is not trying to get him to do something wrong, but rather, is continuing in stubborn disobedience of him to the point that God must respond by punishing him. This is also called "testing God."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "tempt" can be translated as, "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
- Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong.
- To "tempt God" could be translated as to "put God to the test" or to "test God" or to "try God's patience" or to "cause God to have to punish" or to "stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: disobey, Satan, sin, test)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:4-5
- Hebrews 04:14-16
- James 01:12-13
- Luke 04:1-2
- Luke 11:3-4
- Matthew 26:39-41

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:01** Then Satan came to Jesus and **tempted** him to sin.
- **25:08** Jesus did not give in to Satan's **temptations**, so Satan left him.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into **temptation**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H974, H4531, H5254, G551, G1598, G3985, G3986, G3987

**Uses:**

- Numbers 14:20-22

## tent of meeting

### Facts:

The term “tent of meeting” refers to a tent which was a temporary place where God met with Moses before the tabernacle was built.

- The tent of meeting was set up outside the camp of the Israelites.
- When Moses went into the tent of meeting to meet with God, a pillar of cloud would stand at the entrance to the tent as a sign of God’s presence there.
- After the Israelites built the tabernacle, the temporary tent was no longer needed and the term “tent of meeting” was sometimes used to refer to the tabernacle.

(See also: Israel, Moses, pillar, tabernacle, tent)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:28-29
- Joshua 19:51
- Leviticus 01:1-2
- Numbers 04:31-32

### Examples from the Bible stories:

***13:08** God gave the Israelites a detailed description of a tent he wanted them to make. It was called the **Tent of Meeting**, and it had two rooms, separated by a large curtain. ***13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God’s law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the **Tent of Meeting** as a sacrifice to God. ***14:08** God was very angry and came to the **Tent of Meeting**. ***18:02** Instead of at the **Tent of Meeting**, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the Temple.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H168, H4150

### Uses:

- Numbers 1:1-3
- Numbers 2:1-2
- Numbers 2:17
- Numbers 3:7-8
- Numbers 3:24-26
- Numbers 3:38-39
- Numbers 4:1-4

- Numbers 4:15-16
- Numbers 4:24-26
- Numbers 4:31-32
- Numbers 4:37
- Numbers 4:46-48
- Numbers 6:10-11
- Numbers 6:18
- Numbers 7:4-5
- Numbers 7:89
- Numbers 8:9-11
- Numbers 8:18-19
- Numbers 8:23-24
- Numbers 8:25-26
- Numbers 10:3-5
- Numbers 11:16-17
- Numbers 12:4-5
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Numbers 16:18-19
- Numbers 16:41-43
- Numbers 16:49-50
- Numbers 17:3-5
- Numbers 18:3-5
- Numbers 18:21-22
- Numbers 18:30-32
- Numbers 19:3-6
- Numbers 20:6
- Numbers 25:6-7
- Numbers 27:2-3
- Numbers 31:52-54

## tent, tents, tentmakers

**Definition:**

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constucted from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies." (See: synecdoche)

(See also: Abraham, Canaan, curtain, Paul, Sinai, tabernacle, tent of meeting)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 05:10
- Daniel 11:44-45
- Exodus 16:16-18
- Genesis 12:8-9

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H167, H168, H2583, H3407, H6898

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:51-52
- Numbers 3:24-26
- Numbers 4:5-6
- Numbers 9:15-17
- Numbers 11:9-10
- Numbers 11:24-25
- Numbers 12:4-5

- Numbers 16:23-24
- Numbers 17:6-7
- Numbers 18:1-2
- Numbers 19:14-16
- Numbers 24:4-5
- Numbers 25:8-9

## tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes

**Definition:**

The terms “tenth” and “tithe” refer to “ten percent” or “one-out-of-ten portion” of one’s money, crops, livestock, or other possessions, which is given to God.

- In the Old Testament, God instructed the Israelites to set aside a tenth of their belongings to give as an offering of thanksgiving to him.
- This offering was used to support the Levite tribe of Israel who served the Israelites as priests and caretakers of the tabernacle and later, the temple.
- In the New Testament, God does not require giving a tithe, but instead he instructs believers to generously and cheerfully help people in need and support the work of Christian ministry.
- This could also be translated as “one-tenth” or “one out of ten.”

(See also: believe, Israel, Levite, livestock, Melchizedek, minister, sacrifice tabernacle, temple)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 14:19-20
- Genesis 28:20-22
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- Isaiah 06:13
- Luke 11:42
- Luke 18:11-12
- Matthew 23:23-24

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H4643, H6237, H6241, G586, G1181, G1183

**Uses:**

- Numbers 5:15
- Numbers 15:4-5
- Numbers 18:21-22
- Numbers 18:28-29
- Numbers 28:3-5
- Numbers 28:11-13
- Numbers 28:19-22
- Numbers 28:29-31

## terror, terrorize, terrorized, terrors, terrify, terrified, terrifying

**Definition:**

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as, “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: adversary, fear, judge, plague, Yahweh)

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 02:24-25
- Exodus 14:10-12
- Luke 21:7-9
- Mark 06:48-50
- Matthew 28:5-7

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H367, H926, H928, H1091, H1161, H1204, H1763, H2111, H2189, H2283, H2731, H2847, H2851, H2865, H3372, H3707, H4032, H4048, H4172, H4288, H4637, H6184, H6206, H6343, H6973, H8541, G1629, G1630, G2258, G4422, G4426, G5401

**Uses:**

- Numbers 22:2-4

## test, tests, tested

**Definition:**

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: tempt)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 04:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 05:19-22
- Acts 15:10-11
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Isaiah 07:13-15
- James 01:12-13
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Philippians 01:9-11
- Psalm 026:1-3

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G1242, G1263, G1303, G1957, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G4303, G4828, G6020

**Uses:**

- Numbers 13 General Notes

## testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses

**Definition:**

When a person gives "testimony" he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To "testify" is to give "testimony."

- Often a person "testifies" about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives "false testimony" does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term "testimony" refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus' followers testified about the events of Jesus' life, death, and resurrection.

The term "witness" refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term "eyewitness" emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To "witness" something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness "gives witness" or "bears witness." This has the same meaning as "testify."
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a "false witness." He is said to "give false witness" or to "bear false witness."
- The expression "be a witness between" means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "testify" or "give testimony" could also be translated as, "tell the facts" or "tell what was seen or heard" or "tell from personal experience" or "give evidence" or "tell what happened."
- Ways to translate "testimony" could include, "report of what happened" or "statement of what is true" or "evidence" or "what has been said" or "prophecy."
- The phrase, "as a testimony to them" could be translated as, to "show them what is true" or to "prove to them what is true."
- The phrase, "as a testimony against them" could be translated as, "which will show them their sin" or "exposing their hypocrisy" or "which will prove that they are wrong."
- To "give false testimony" could be translated as "say false things about" or "state things that are not true."
- The term "witness" or "eyewitness" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "person seeing it" or "the one who saw it happen" or "those who saw and heard (those things)."
- Something that is "a witness" could be translated as "guarantee" or "sign of our promise" or "something that testifies that this is true."

- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, judge, prophet, testimony, true)

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 31:27-29
- Micah 06:3-5
- Matthew 26:59-61
- Mark 01:43-44
- John 01:6-8
- John 03:31-33
- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 07:44-46
- Acts 13:30-31
- Romans 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 1 Timothy 05:19-20
- 2 Timothy 01:8-11
- 2 Peter 01:16-18
- 1 John 05:6-8
- 3 John 01:11-12
- Revelation 12:11-12

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, ”We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?”
- **42:08** ”It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things.”
- **43:07** ”We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

**Uses:**

- Numbers 5:13-14
- Numbers 35:29-30
- Numbers 35:29-30

## the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea

### Facts:

In the Bible, the “Great Sea” or “western sea” refers to what is now called the “Mediterranean Sea,” which was the largest body of water known to the people of Bible times.

- The Mediterranean Sea is bordered by : Israel (east), Europe (north and west), and Africa (south).
- This sea was very important in ancient times for trade and travel since it bordered so many countries. Cities and people groups located on the coast of this sea were very prosperous because of how easy it was to access goods from other countries by boat.
- Since the Great Sea was located to the west of Israel, it was sometimes referred to as the “western sea.”

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, people group, prosper)

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 47:15-17
- Ezekiel 47:18-20
- Joshua 15:3-4
- Numbers 13:27-29

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H314, H1419, H3220

### Uses:

- Numbers 13:27-29
- Numbers 34:4-5
- Numbers 34:6

## thorn, thornbush, thornbushes, thorns, thistle, thistles

**Facts:**

Thorn bushes and thistles are plants that have prickly branches or flowers. These plants do not produce fruit or anything else that is useful.

- A “thorn” is a hard, sharp growth on the branch or stem of a plant. A “thornbush” is a type of small tree or shrub that has many thorns on its branches.
- A “thistle” is a plant with prickly stems and leaves. Often the flowers are purple.
- Thorn and thistle plants multiply quickly and can cause nearby plants or crops to not be able to grow. This is a picture of how sin keeps a person from producing good spiritual fruit.
- A crown made of twisted thorn branches was placed on Jesus’ head before he was crucified.
- If possible, these terms should be translated by the names of two different plants or bushes that are known in the language area.

(See also: crown, fruit, spirit)

**Bible References:**

- Hebrews 06:7-8
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Matthew 13:22-23
- Numbers 33:55-56

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H329, H1863, H2312, H2336, H4534, H5285, H5518, H5544, H6791, H6796, H6975, H7063, H7898, G173, G174, G4647, G5146

**Uses:**

- Numbers 33:55-56

## thresh, threshes, threshed, threshing

**Definition:**

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating wheat grain from the rest of the wheat plant.

- Threshing the wheat plant loosens the grain from the straw and the chaff. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the grain from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: chaff, grain, winnow)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- 2 Kings 13:6-7
- 2 Samuel 24:15-16
- Daniel 02:34-35
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Ruth 03:1-2

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, G248

**Uses:**

- Numbers 15:20-21
- Numbers 18:25-27

## Tirzah

### Facts:

Tirzah was an important Canaanite city that was conquered by the Israelites. It was also the name of a daughter of Gilead, a descendant of Manasseh.

- The city Tirzah was located in the region occupied by the tribe of Manasseh. It is thought that the city was about 10 miles north of the city of Shechem.
- Years later, Tirzah became a temporary capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel, during the reigns of four kings of Israel.
- Tirzah was also the name of one of Manasseh's granddaughters. They asked to be given a portion of the land since their father had died and he had no sons to inherit it as would normally be the custom.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, inherit, kingdom of Israel, Manasseh, Shechem)

### Bible References:

- Numbers 27:1
- Numbers 36:10-12
- Song of Solomon 06:4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8656

### Uses:

- Numbers 27:1
- Numbers 36:10-12

## transgress, transgresses, transgression

### Definition:

The term “transgression” refers to the breaking of a command, rule, or moral code. To “transgress” is to commit a “transgression.”

- Figuratively, to “transgress” can also be described as to “cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.
- The terms “transgression,” “sin,” “iniquity,” and “trespass” all include the meaning of acting against God’s will and disobeying his commands.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “trangress” could be translated as to “sin” or to “disobey” or to “rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: parallelism)

(See also: sin, trespass, iniquity)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Galatians 03:19-20
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 032:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G458, G459, G3845, G3847, G3848, G3928

### Uses:

- Numbers 14:17-19

## tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen

### Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, nation, people group, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:13-16
- Genesis 49:16-18
- Luke 02:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

### Uses:

- Numbers 1:4-5
- Numbers 1:16
- Numbers 1:22
- Numbers 1:28
- Numbers 1:34
- Numbers 1:40
- Numbers 1:47-49
- Numbers 2:7
- Numbers 2:20
- Numbers 2:27
- Numbers 3:5-6
- Numbers 4:17-18
- Numbers 7:1-3
- Numbers 7:12-14
- Numbers 10:14-16
- Numbers 13:1-2

- Numbers 13:9-12
- Numbers 17:1-2
- Numbers 17:8-9
- Numbers 18:1-2
- Numbers 24:2-3
- Numbers 25:14-15
- Numbers 26:54
- Numbers 30:1-2
- Numbers 31:3-5
- Numbers 32:28-30
- Numbers 33:53-54
- Numbers 34:13-15
- Numbers 34:27-29
- Numbers 35:8
- Numbers 36:3-4

## trouble, troubles, troubled, troubling, troublemaker, troublesome

### Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress.To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or ” when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: afflict, persecute)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:18-19
- Luke 24:38-40
- Matthew 24:6-8
- Matthew 26:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H205, H598, H926, H927, H928, H1204, H1205, H1607, H1644, H1804, H1993, H2000, H2113, H2189, H2560, H2960, H4103, H5590, H5753, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7481, H7489, H7515, H7561, H8513,

G387, G1298, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2553, G2873, G3636, G3926, G3930, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5016, G5182

**Uses:**

- Numbers 11:1-3
- Numbers 23:21-22

## true, truth, truths

**Definition:**

The term “truth” refers to one or more concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said. Such concepts are said to be “true.”

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- To say that a prophecy “came true” or “will come true” mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- God’s word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: believe, faithful, fulfill, obey, prophet, understand)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:7-8
- 3 John 01:5-8
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 01:4-6
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 01:17-18
- James 03:13-14
- James 05:19-20

- Jeremiah 04:1-3
- John 01:9
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:49-51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:8-10
- Matthew 12:15-17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20
- Revelation 15:3-4

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

***02:04** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die." ***14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!" ***16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God. ***31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God." ***39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H199, H389, H403, H529, H530, H543, H544, H551, H571, H935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G1103, G3303, G3483, G3689, G4103, G4137

**Uses:**

- Numbers 11:21-23
- Numbers 14:20-22

## trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters

### Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel’s public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: angel, assembly, earth, horn, Israel, wrath)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 09:11-13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:18-21
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Matthew 24:30-31

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G4536, G4537, G4538

### Uses:

- Numbers 10:1-2
- Numbers 10:9
- Numbers 29:1
- Numbers 31:6-8

## trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

### Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: believe, confidence, faith, faithful, true)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 1 Timothy 04:9-10
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:12-14
- Psalm 031:5-7
- Titus 03:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:02** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:06** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

**Uses:**

- Numbers 14:11-12
- Numbers 20:12-13
- Numbers 21 General Notes

## turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back

**Definition:**

To "turn" means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term "turn" can also mean "turn around" to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To "turn back" or "turn away" means to "go back" or "go away" or "cause to go away."
- To "turn away from" can mean to "stop" doing something or to reject someone.
- To "turn toward" someone means to look directly at that person.
- To "turn and leave" or "turn his back to leave" means to "go away."
- To "turn back to" means to "start doing something again."
- To "turn away from" means to "stop doing something."

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "turn" can be translated as "change direction" or "go" or "move."
- In some contexts, "turn" could be translated as "cause" (someone) to do something. To "turn (someone) away from" could be translated as "cause (someone) to go away" or "cause (someone) to stop."
- The phrase "turn away from God" could be translated as "stop worshiping God."
- The phrase "turn back to God" could be translated as "start worshiping God again."
- When enemies "turn back," it means they "retreat." To "turn back the enemy" means to "cause the enemy to retreat."
- Used figuratively, when Israel "turned to" false gods, they "started to worship" them. When they "turned away" from idols, they "stopped worshiping" them.
- When God "turned away from" his rebellious people, he "stopped protecting" or "stopped helping" them.
- The phrase "turn the hearts of the fathers to their children" could be translated as "cause fathers to care for their children again."
- The expression "turn my honor into shame" could be translated as "cause my honor to become shame" or "dishonor me so that I am shamed" or "shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me."
- "I will turn your cities into ruin" could be translated as "I will cause your cities to be destroyed" or "I will cause enemies to destroy your cities."
- The phrase "turn into" could be translated as "become." When Moses' rod "turned into" a snake, it "became" a snake." It could also be translated as "changed into."

(See also: false god, leprosy, worship)

*translationWordsturn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turn*

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 11:1-2
- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 11:19-21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 01:16-17
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Revelation 11:6-7

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H541, H1750, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3399, H3943, H4142, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H5844, H6437, H6801, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G344, G387, G402, G576, G654, G665, G868, G1294, G1578, G1612, G1624, G1994, G2827, G3179, G3313, G3329, G3344, G3346, G4762, G5077, G5157, G5290, G6060

**Uses:**

- Numbers 5:11-12
- Numbers 14:23-25
- Numbers 14:41-43
- Numbers 20:17
- Numbers 21:21-23
- Numbers 22:31-33
- Numbers 25:4-5
- Numbers 25:10-11

## twelve tribes of Israel, twelve tribes of the children of Israel, twelve tribes

**Definition:**

The term “twelve tribes of Israel” refers to the twelve sons of Jacob and their descendants.

- Jacob was Abraham’s grandson. God later changed Jacob’s name to Israel.
- These are the names of the tribes: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Issachar, Zebulun, Joseph and Benjamin.
- The descendants of Levi did not inherit any land in Canaan because they were a tribe of priests who were set apart to serve God and his people.
- Joseph received a double inheritance of land, which was passed on to his two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh.
- There are several places in the Bible where the list of the twelve tribes is slightly different. Sometimes Levi, Joseph, or Dan is left out of the list and sometimes Joseph’s two sons Ephraim and Manasseh are included in the list.

(See also: inherit, Israel, Jacob, priest, tribe)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 26:6-8
- Genesis 49:28-30
- Luke 22:28-30
- Matthew 19:28

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H3478, H7626, H8147, G1427, G2474, G5443

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:44-46

## unleavened bread

### Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: bread, Egypt, feast, Passover, servant, sin, yeast)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- Acts 12:3-4
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Ezra 06:21-22
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 06:21
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Luke 22:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4682, G106

### Uses:

- Numbers 6:16-17

## vine, vines

### Definition:

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: Metaphor)

(See also: grape, vineyard)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 40:9-11
- Genesis 49:11-12
- John 15:1-2
- Luke 22:17-18
- Mark 12:1-3
- Matthew 21:35-37

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5139, H1612, H8321, G288, G290, G1009, G1092

### Uses:

- Numbers 20:4-5

## vineyard, vineyards

### Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: Metaphor)
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: grape, Israel, vine)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 09:20-21
- Luke 13:6-7
- Luke 20:15-16
- Matthew 20:1-2
- Matthew 21:40-41

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H64, H1612, H3657, H3661, H3754, H3755, H8284, G289, G290

### Uses:

- Numbers 16:12-14
- Numbers 20:17
- Numbers 21:21-23
- Numbers 22:24-25

## vision, visions, envision

### Facts:

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However, sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

### Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: dream)

### Bible References:

- Acts 09:10-12
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 10:9-12
- Acts 12:9-10
- Luke 01:21-23
- Luke 24:22-24
- Matthew 17:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2376, H2377, H2378, H2380, H2384, H4236, H4758, H4759, H7203, H7723, H8602, G3701, G3705, G3706

### Uses:

- Numbers 12:6-8
- Numbers 24:4-5
- Numbers 24:15-16

## voice, voices

### Definition:

The term “voice” is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

- God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn’t have a voice in the same way a human being does.
- This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as “A person is heard calling out in the desert….” (See: synecdoche)
- To “hear someone’s voice” could also be translated as “hear someone speaking.”
- Sometimes the word “voice” may be used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the “voice” of the heavens proclaims God’s mighty works. This could also be translated as “their splendor shows clearly how great God is.”

(See also: call, proclaim, splendor)

### Bible References:

- John 05:36-38
- Luke 01:42-45
- Luke 09:34-36
- Matthew 03:16-17
- Matthew 12:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456, G5586

### Uses:

- Numbers 7:89
- Numbers 14:20-22
- Numbers 20:14-16
- Numbers 21:1-3

## vow, vows, vowed

**Definition:**

A vow is a promise that a person makes to God. The person promises to do a certain thing in order to specially honor God or to show devotion to him.

- After a person makes a vow, he is obligated to fulfill that vow.
- The Bible teaches that a person may be judged by God if he doesn't keep his vow.
- Sometimes a person may ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow.
- But God is not required to fulfill a request that a person asks for in his vow.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "vow" could be translated as "solemn promise" or "promise made to God."
- A vow is a special kind of oath that is made to God.

(See also: promise, oath)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 07:27-28
- Acts 21:22-24
- Genesis 28:20-22
- Genesis 31:12-13
- Jonah 01:14-16
- Jonah 02:9-10
- Proverbs 07:13-15

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5087, H5088, G2171

**Uses:**

- Numbers 06 General Notes
- Numbers 6:5
- Numbers 6:21
- Numbers 15:1-3
- Numbers 15:8-10
- Numbers 21:1-3

- Numbers 29:39-40
- Numbers 30 General Notes
- Numbers 30:1-2
- Numbers 30:6-7
- Numbers 30:13-14

## waste, wastes, wasted, wasting, wasteland, wastelands

**Definition:**

To waste something means to carelessly throw it away or to use it unwisely. Something that is a "wasteland" or a "waste" refers to land or a city that has been destroyed so that nothing lives in it anymore.

- The term "waste away" is an expression that means to become more and more sick or ruined. A person who is wasting away usually becomes very thin due to illness or lack of food.
- To "lay waste" to a city or land means to destroy it.
- Another word for a "wasteland" could be "desert" or "wilderness." But a wasteland also implies that people used to live there and the land used to have trees and plants that produced food.

**Bible References:**

- Ezekiel 06:6-7
- Leviticus 26:37-39
- Matthew 26:6-9
- Revelation 18:15-17
- Zechariah 07:13-14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H535, H1086, H1104, H1110, H1197, H1326, H2100, H2490, H2522, H2717, H2720, H2721, H2723, H3615, H3765, H3856, H4127, H4198, H4592, H4743, H4875, H5307, H5327, H7334, H7582, H7703, H7722, H7736, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, H8437, G684, G1287, G2049, G2673, G4199

**Uses:**

- Numbers 5:20-21

## water, waters, watered, watering

**Definition:**

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: life, spirit, Holy Spirit, power)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 08:36-38
- Exodus 14:21-22
- John 04:9-10
- John 04:13-14
- John 04:15-16
- Matthew 14:28-30

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2222, H4325, H4529, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, G504, G4215, G4222, G5202, G5204

**Uses:**

- Numbers 20:12-13
- Numbers 20:22-24
- Numbers 24:6

## will of God

### Definition:

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to “will” means to “determine” or to “desire.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

### Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- Colossians 04:12-14
- Ephesians 01:1-2
- John 05:30-32
- Mark 03:33-35
- Matthew 06:8-10
- Psalms 103:20-22

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6310, H6634, H7522, G1012, G1013, G2307, G2308, G2309, G2596

### Uses:

- Numbers 27:20-21

## wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term "wine" refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in "wineskins," which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term "new wine" referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term "wine" also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as "fermented grape juice" or "fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes" or "fermented fruit juice." (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- Ways to translate "wineskin" could include "bag for wine" or "animal skin wine bag" or "animal skin container for wine."

(See also: grape, vine, vineyard, winepress)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 05:23-25
- Genesis 09:20-21
- Genesis 49:11-12
- John 02:3-5
- John 02:9-10
- Matthew 09:17
- Matthew 11:18-19

smashed

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

**Uses:**

- Numbers 6:1-4
- Numbers 6:19-20
- Numbers 15:4-5
- Numbers 18:12-13
- Numbers 28:14-15

## winepress

### Definition:

During Bible times, a “winepress” was a large container or open place where the juice of grapes was extracted in order to make wine.

- In Israel, winepresses were usually large, wide basins that were dug out of solid rock. Clusters of grapes were put on the flat bottom of the hole and people trampled the grapes with their feet to get the grape juice to flow out.
- Usually a winepress had two levels, with the grapes being trampled in the top level so that the juice would run down into the lower level where it could be collected.
- The term “winepress” is also used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of God’s wrath being poured out on wicked people. (See: Metaphor)

(See also: grape, wrath)

### Bible References:

- Isaiah 63:1-2
- Mark 12:1-3
- Matthew 21:33-34
- Revelation 14:19-20

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1660, H3342, H6333, G3025, G5276

### Uses:

- Numbers 18:25-27

## wise, wisdom

### Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- In the Bible, the term “worldly wisdom” is a figurative way of referring to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: obey, fruit)

### Bible References:

- Acts 06:2-4
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Genesis 03:4-6
- Isaiah 19:11-12
- Jeremiah 18:18-20
- Matthew 07:24-25

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:05** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:01** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:09** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429, G5430

## woe

### Definition:

The term “woe” refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

- The expression “woe to” is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
- In several places in the Bible, the word “woe” is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
- A person who says “woe is me” or “woe to me” is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “woe” could also be translated as “great sorrow” or “sadness” or “calamity” or “disaster.”
- Other ways to translate the expression “Woe to (name of city)” could include, “How terrible it will be for (name of city)” or “The people in (that city) will be severely punished” or “Those people will suffer greatly.”
- The expression, “Woe is me!” or “Woe to me!” could be translated as “How sad I am!” or “I am so sad!” or “How terrible this is for me!”
- The expression “Woe to you” could also be translated as “You will suffer terribly” or “You will experience terrible troubles.”

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- Habakkuk 02:12-14
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Jeremiah 45:1-3
- Jude 01:9-11
- Luke 06:24-25
- Luke 17:1-2
- Matthew 23:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H188, H190, H337, H480, H1929, H1945, H1958, G3759

### Uses:

- Numbers 21:29-30

- Numbers 24:23-24

## womb, wombs

### Definition:

The term “womb” refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

- This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct. (See: euphemism)
- A more modern term for womb is “uterus.”
- Some languages use a word like “belly” to refer to a woman’s womb or uterus.
- Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.

### Bible References:

- Genesis 25:23
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 38:27-28
- Genesis 49:25
- Luke 02:21
- Luke 11:27-28
- Luke 23:29-31
- Matthew 19:10-12

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H990, H4578, H7356, H7358, G1064, G2836, G3388

### Uses:

- Numbers 8:16-17
- Numbers 12:11-12
- Numbers 18:14-16

## word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term "word of God" refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called "the Word of God."

- The term "scriptures" means "writings." It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God's message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms "word of Yahweh" and "word of the Lord" often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply "the word" or "my word" or "your word" (when talking about God's word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called "the Word" and "the Word of God." These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term "word of truth" is another way of referring to "God's word," which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God's word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "the message of Yahweh" or "God's message" or "the teachings from God."
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say "God's words" or "the words of Yahweh."
- The expression "the word of Yahweh came" is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words."
- The term "scripture" or "scriptures" could be translated as "the writings" or "the written message from God." This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term "word."
- When "word" occurs alone and it refers to God's word, it could be translated as "the message" or "God's word" or "the teachings." Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as "the Word," this term could be translated as "the Message" or "the Truth."
- "Word of truth" could be translated as "God's true message" or "God's word, which is true."
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: prophet, true, word, Yahweh)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 15:1-3
- 1 Kings 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 08:11-13
- John 05:39-40
- Acts 06:2-4
- Acts 12:24-25
- Romans 01:1-3
- 2 Corinthians 06:4-7
- Ephesians 01:13-14
- 2 Timothy 03:16-17
- James 01:17-18
- James 02:8-9

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **25:07** In **God's word** he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.'"
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the **word of God**.
- **42:03** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:07** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

**Uses:**

- Numbers 3:14-16
- Numbers 3:49-51
- Numbers 11:21-23
- Numbers 22:18-20
- Numbers 24:4-5
- Numbers 24:12-14

## word, words

### Definition:

A “word” refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, “You did not believe my words,” which means, “You did not believe what I said.”
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Sometimes “word” refers to speech in general, such as “powerful in word and deed” which means “powerful in speech and behavior.”
- Often in the Bible “the word” refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in “the word of God” or “the word of truth.”
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called “the Word.” For these last two meanings, see word of God

### Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways of translating “word” or “words” include “teaching” or “message” or “news” or “a saying” or “what was said.”

(See also: word of God)

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Colossians 04:2-4
- James 01:17-18
- Jeremiah 27:1-4
- John 01:1-3
- John 01:14-15
- Luke 08:14-15
- Matthew 02:7-8
- Matthew 07:26-27

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H561, H562, H565, H1697, H1703, H3983, H4405, H4406, H6310, H6600, G518, G1024, G3050, G3054, G3055, G3056, G4086, G4487, G4935, G5023, G5542

**Uses:**

- Numbers 12:6-8
- Numbers 14:39-40
- Numbers 15:30-31
- Numbers 16:31-32
- Numbers 20:22-24
- Numbers 22:7-8
- Numbers 22:38-40
- Numbers 30:1-2
- Numbers 36:5-6

## works, deeds, work, acts

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the terms “works,” “deeds,” and “acts” are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term “work” refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God’s “works” and the “work of his hands” are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms “deeds” and “acts” are also used to refer to God’s miracles in expressions such as “mighty acts” or “marvelous deeds.”
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called “good fruit.”
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person’s “work” can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as “working.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate “works” or “deeds” could be “actions” or “things that are done.”
- When referring to God’s “works” or “deeds” and the “work of his hands,” these expressions could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “amazing things he does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “the amazing things that God does” or “everything God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- The term “work” can also have the broader meaning of “service” or “ministry.” For example, the expression “your work in the Lord” could also be translated as, “what you do for the Lord.”
- The expression “examine your own work” could also be translated as “make sure what you are doing is God’s will” or “make sure that what you are doing pleases God.”
- The expression “the work of the Holy Spirit” could be translated as “the empowering of the Holy Spirit” or “the ministry of the Holy Spirit” or “the things that the Holy Spirit does.”

(See also: fruit, Holy Spirit, miracle)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 03:11-12
- Acts 02:8-11
- Daniel 04:36-37
- Exodus 34:10-11

- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:14-17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:6-8
- Romans 03:27-28
- Titus 03:4-5

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G2041

**Uses:**

- Numbers 7:4-5
- Numbers 16:28-30
- Numbers 18:3-5

## worship

### Definition:

To “worship” means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- Some people worshiped false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: sacrifice, praise, honor)

### Bible References:

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:5-7
- Matthew 02:1-3
- Matthew 02:7-8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

***13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, ”I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.” ***14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things. ***17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices. ***18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols. ***25:07** Jesus replied, ”Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ’**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’” ***26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**. ***47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God. ***49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

**Uses:**

- Numbers 25:1-3

## wrong, wrongs, wronged, wrongly, wrongfully, wrongdoer, wrongdoing, mistreat, mistreated, hurt, hurts, hurting, hurtful

**Definition:**

To "wrong" someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term "mistreat" means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term "hurt" is more general and means to "cause someone harm in some way." It often has the meaning of "physically injure."
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as "do wrong to" or, "treat unjustly" or "cause harm to" or treat in a harmful way" or "injure."

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:26-28
- Exodus 22:20-21
- Genesis 16:5-6
- Luke 06:27-28
- Matthew 20:13-14
- Psalms 071:12-13

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H816, H2248, H2250, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7667, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, G91, G92, G93, G95, G264, G824, G983, G984, G1536, G1626, G1651, G1727, G1908, G2556, G2558, G2559, G2607, G3076, G3077, G3762, G4122, G5195, G5196

**Uses:**

- Numbers 5:5-7

## Yahweh

### Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name that he revealed when he spoke to Moses at the burning bush.

- The name “Yahweh” comes from the word that means, to “be” or to “exist.”
- Possible meanings of “Yahweh” include, “he is” or “I am” or “the one who causes to be.”
- This name reveals that God has always lived and will continue to live forever. It also means that he is always present.
- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULB and UDB texts always translates this term as, “Yahweh,” as it literally occurs in the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” does not ever occur in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even in quotes from the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.
- By adding the pronoun “I” or “me,” the ULB indicates to the reader that God is the speaker.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, lord, Lord, Moses, reveal)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 21:19-20
- 1 Samuel 16:6-7
- Daniel 09:3-4
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 02:4-6
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 28:12-13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:3-4
- Isaiah 38:7-8
- Job 12:9-10
- Joshua 01:8-9
- Lamentations 01:4-5
- Leviticus 25:35-38
- Malachi 03:4-5
- Micah 02:3-5
- Micah 06:3-5
- Numbers 08:9-11
- Psalm 124:1-3
- Ruth 01:19-21
- Zechariah 14:5

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **09:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:05** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:1-3

- Numbers 1:17-19
- Numbers 1:47-49
- Numbers 1:53-54
- Numbers 2:1-2
- Numbers 2:32-33
- Numbers 3:1-2
- Numbers 3:11-13
- Numbers 3:38-39
- Numbers 3:44-45
- Numbers 4:1-4
- Numbers 4:17-18
- Numbers 4:37
- Numbers 5:1-4
- Numbers 5:11-12
- Numbers 5:16-17
- Numbers 5:24-26
- Numbers 6:1-4
- Numbers 6:12
- Numbers 6:19-20
- Numbers 6:25-27
- Numbers 7:1-3
- Numbers 7:10-11
- Numbers 7:89
- Numbers 8:1-2
- Numbers 8:9-11
- Numbers 8:20-21
- Numbers 9:1-3
- Numbers 9:9-10
- Numbers 9:18-19
- Numbers 10:1-2
- Numbers 10:9
- Numbers 10:29-30
- Numbers 10:35-36
- Numbers 11:1-3
- Numbers 11:9-10
- Numbers 11:16-17
- Numbers 11:24-25
- Numbers 11:31-32
- Numbers 12:1-3
- Numbers 12:9-10
- Numbers 13:1-2
- Numbers 14:1-3
- Numbers 14:9-10

- Numbers 14:11-12
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Numbers 14:26-27
- Numbers 14:34-35
- Numbers 14:41-43
- Numbers 15:1-3
- Numbers 15:11-13
- Numbers 15:27-29
- Numbers 15:35-36
- Numbers 16:1-3
- Numbers 16:8-11
- Numbers 16:18-19
- Numbers 16:28-30
- Numbers 16:36-38
- Numbers 16:44-46
- Numbers 17:1-2
- Numbers 17:8-9
- Numbers 18:1-2
- Numbers 18:14-16
- Numbers 18:25-27
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Numbers 19:11-13
- Numbers 19:20-22
- Numbers 20:2-3
- Numbers 20:7-9
- Numbers 20:14-16
- Numbers 20:22-24
- Numbers 21:1-3
- Numbers 21:8-9
- Numbers 21:14-15
- Numbers 21:33-35
- Numbers 22:7-8
- Numbers 22:21-23
- Numbers 22:24-25
- Numbers 22:31-33
- Numbers 23:1-3
- Numbers 23:4-6
- Numbers 23:13-15
- Numbers 23:16-18
- Numbers 23:25-27
- Numbers 24:1
- Numbers 24:10-11
- Numbers 24:12-14

- Numbers 25:1-3
- Numbers 25:10-11
- Numbers 26:1-2
- Numbers 26:8-9
- Numbers 26:52-53
- Numbers 26:60-62
- Numbers 27:2-3
- Numbers 27:12-14
- Numbers 27:22-23
- Numbers 28:1-2
- Numbers 28:11-13
- Numbers 28:16-18
- Numbers 28:26-28
- Numbers 29:1
- Numbers 29:6
- Numbers 29:7-8
- Numbers 29:35-36
- Numbers 29:39-40
- Numbers 30:1-2
- Numbers 30:8
- Numbers 30:15-16
- Numbers 31:1-2
- Numbers 31:16-17
- Numbers 31:36-38
- Numbers 31:50-51
- Numbers 32:4-5
- Numbers 32:20-22
- Numbers 32:31-32
- Numbers 33:1-2
- Numbers 33:38-39
- Numbers 33:50-52
- Numbers 34:1-3
- Numbers 34:13-15
- Numbers 34:27-29
- Numbers 35:1-2
- Numbers 35:9-11
- Numbers 35:33-34
- Numbers 36:1-2
- Numbers 36:10-12

## year, years

**Definition:**

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into 12 months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has 12 months. But an extra 13th month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is 11 days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: month)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 23:31-33
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 08:1-2
- Exodus 12:1-2

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G1763, G2094

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:1-3
- Numbers 7:15
- Numbers 7:27
- Numbers 7:39
- Numbers 7:51
- Numbers 7:63
- Numbers 7:75
- Numbers 7:87
- Numbers 9:1-3
- Numbers 10:11-13

- Numbers 13:21-22
- Numbers 15:27-29
- Numbers 26:1-2
- Numbers 28:3-5
- Numbers 28:9-10
- Numbers 28:11-13
- Numbers 28:26-28
- Numbers 29:2
- Numbers 29:7-8
- Numbers 29:12-13
- Numbers 29:17-19
- Numbers 29:20-22
- Numbers 29:23-25
- Numbers 29:26-28
- Numbers 29:29-31
- Numbers 29:32-34
- Numbers 29:35-36
- Numbers 32:13-15
- Numbers 33:38-39

## yeast, leaven, leavens, leavened, unleavened

### Definition:

"Leaven" is a general term for a substance that causes bread dough to expand and rise. "Yeast" is a specific kind of leaven.

- In some English translations, the word for leaven is translated as "yeast," which is a modern leavening agent that fills the bread dough with gas bubbles, making the dough expand before baking it. The yeast is kneaded into the dough so that it spreads throughout the entire lump of dough.
- In Old Testament times, the leavening or rising agent was produced by allowing the dough to sit for awhile. Small amounts of dough from a previous batch of dough were saved as leavening for the next batch.
- When the Israelites escaped from Egypt, they didn't have time to wait for bread dough to rise, so they made bread without leaven to take with them on their journey. As a reminder of this, every year the Jewish people celebrate Passover by eating bread that has no leaven in it.
- The term "leaven" or "yeast" is used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of how sin spreads through a person's life or how sin can influence other people.
- It can also refer to false teaching which often spreads to many people and influences them.
- The term "leaven" is also used in a positive way to explain how the influence of God's kingdom spreads from person to person.

### Translation Suggestions

- This could be translated as "leaven" or "substance that causes dough to rise" or "expanding agent." The word "rise" could be expressed as "expand" or "get bigger" or "puff up."
- If a local leavening agent is used for making bread dough rise, that term can be used. If the language has a well-known, general term that means, "leavening," this would be the best term to use.

(See also: Egypt, Passover, unleavened bread)

### Bible References:

- Exodus 12:5-8
- Galatians 05:9-10
- Luke 12:1
- Luke 13:20-21
- Matthew 13:33
- Matthew 16:5-8

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2556, H2557, H4682, H7603, G106, G2219, G2220

**Uses:**

- Numbers 6:13-15
- Numbers 6:19-20
- Numbers 9:11-12
- Numbers 28:16-18

## yoke, yokes, yoked

**Definition:**

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term “yoke” is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term “yokefellow” to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as “fellow worker” or “fellow servant” or “coworker.”
- The term “yoke” is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, “oppressive burden” or “heavy load” or “bond,” depending on the context.

(See also: bind, burden, oppress, persecute, servant)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 15:10-11
- Galatians 05:1-2
- Genesis 27:39-40
- Isaiah 09:4-5
- Jeremiah 27:1-4
- Matthew 11:28-30
- Philippians 04:1-3

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H3627, H4132, H4133, H5674, H5923, H6776, G2086, G2201, G2218, G4805

**Uses:**

- Numbers 19:1-2

## zeal, zealous

**Definition:**

The terms “zeal” and “zealous” refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The “zeal of the Lord” or the “zeal of Yahweh” refers to God’s strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- To “be zealous” could also be translated by, “be strongly diligent” or “make an intense effort.”
- The term “zeal” could also be translated as “energetic devotion” or “eager determination” or “righteous enthusiasm.”
- The phrase, “zeal for your house” could be translated, “strongly honoring your temple” or “fervent desire to take care of your house.”

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 12:30-31
- 1 Kings 19:9-10
- Acts 22:3-5
- Galatians 04:17-18
- Isaiah 63:15-16
- John 02:17-19
- Philippians 03:6-7
- Romans 10:1-3

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H7065, H7068, G2205, G2206, G2207, G6041

**Uses:**

- Numbers 25:10-11
- Numbers 25:12-13

## Zebulun

### Facts:

Zebulun was the last son born to Jacob and Leah and is the name of one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The Israelite tribe of Zebulun was given the land directly west of the Salt Sea.
- Sometimes the name “Zebulun” is also used to refer to the land where this Israelite tribe lived.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Leah, Salt Sea, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 30:19-21
- Isaiah 09:1-2
- Judges 04:10
- Matthew 04:12-13
- Matthew 04:14-16

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2074, H2075, G2194

### Uses:

- Numbers 1:7
- Numbers 1:30
- Numbers 2:7
- Numbers 7:24
- Numbers 10:14-16
- Numbers 13:9-12
- Numbers 26:26
- Numbers 34:24-26

# translationAcademy

**Uses:**

- Numbers 28:16-18

## Abstract Nouns

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its weight?" could be expressed as "How much does it weigh?" or "How heavy is it?"

### Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Using abstract nouns allows people to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if they did not have those nouns. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people can talk about them as though they were things. It is like a short-cut in language. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if the language did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then they would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. They would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

### Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun.

### Examples from the Bible

> ...*from childhood you have known the sacred writings* ... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

> But godliness with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

> Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

> He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

### Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun..

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.
    - **... from childhood you have known the sacred writings ...** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
        - Ever since you were a child you have known the sacred writings.
    - **But godliness with contentment is great gain.** (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
        - But being godly and content is very beneficial.
        - But we benefit greatly when we are godly and content.
        - But we benefit greatly when we honor and obey God and when we are happy with what we have.
    - **Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.** (Luke 19:9 ULB)
        - Today the people in this house have been saved...
        - Today God has saved the people in this house...
    - **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be.** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)
        - The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider moving slowly to be.

- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart.** (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
    - He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

**Uses:**

- Numbers 3:38-39
- Numbers 3:46-47
- Numbers 3:49-51
- Numbers 4:12-14
- Numbers 4:12-14
- Numbers 4:15-16
- Numbers 4:27-28
- Numbers 4:33
- Numbers 6:5
- Numbers 6:9
- Numbers 6:13-15
- Numbers 6:18
- Numbers 6:19-20
- Numbers 6:21
- Numbers 7:1-3
- Numbers 8:22
- Numbers 9:18-19
- Numbers 9:22-23
- Numbers 10:10
- Numbers 10:10
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Numbers 14:26-27
- Numbers 17:3-5
- Numbers 17:10-11
- Numbers 22:7-8
- Numbers 24:15-16
- Numbers 24:23-24
- Numbers 25:16-18
- Numbers 28:19-22
- Numbers 28:29-31
- Numbers 29:3-5
- Numbers 29:9-11
- Numbers 30:6-7

## Active or Passive

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- ACTIVE: My father built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

### Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE**: My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: The house was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

### Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that have it.

### Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

### Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.

- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

#### Examples from the Bible

> And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants were killed, and your servant Uriah the Hittite was killed too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

> In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal was broken down ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

> It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULB)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

#### Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

#### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

    - **A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)

    - The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

    - **It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea.** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
        - It would be better for him if they were to put a millstone around his neck and throw him into the sea.
        - It would be better for him if someone were to put a heavy stone around his neck and throw him into the sea.

3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.

    - **A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
        - He received a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:16
- Numbers 1:17-19
- Numbers 1:20
- Numbers 1:22
- Numbers 1:24
- Numbers 1:26
- Numbers 1:28
- Numbers 1:30
- Numbers 1:32
- Numbers 1:34
- Numbers 1:36
- Numbers 1:38
- Numbers 1:40
- Numbers 1:42
- Numbers 1:44-46
- Numbers 1:47-49
- Numbers 1:47-49
- Numbers 1:51-52
- Numbers 1:51-52
- Numbers 2:32-33
- Numbers 3:3-4
- Numbers 3:9-10
- Numbers 3:9-10
- Numbers 3:21-23

- Numbers 3:27-29
- Numbers 3:30-32
- Numbers 3:33-35
- Numbers 3:38-39
- Numbers 3:49-51
- Numbers 4:1-4
- Numbers 4:17-18
- Numbers 4:24-26
- Numbers 4:38-40
- Numbers 4:38-40
- Numbers 4:42-44
- Numbers 4:42-44
- Numbers 4:49
- Numbers 5:8-10
- Numbers 5:8-10
- Numbers 5:13-14
- Numbers 5:20-21
- Numbers 5:20-21
- Numbers 5:23
- Numbers 5:27-28
- Numbers 5:27-28
- Numbers 5:27-28
- Numbers 5:29-30
- Numbers 6:1-4
- Numbers 6:1-4
- Numbers 6:1-4
- Numbers 6:5
- Numbers 6:5
- Numbers 6:5
- Numbers 6:6-8
- Numbers 6:6-8
- Numbers 6:12
- Numbers 6:12
- Numbers 6:13-15
- Numbers 6:13-15
- Numbers 6:13-15
- Numbers 6:13-15
- Numbers 6:19-20
- Numbers 6:19-20
- Numbers 6:19-20
- Numbers 6:21
- Numbers 7:12-14
- Numbers 7:18

- Numbers 7:24
- Numbers 7:30
- Numbers 7:36
- Numbers 7:42
- Numbers 7:48
- Numbers 7:54
- Numbers 7:60
- Numbers 7:66
- Numbers 7:72
- Numbers 7:78
- Numbers 7:87
- Numbers 8:3-4
- Numbers 8:7-8
- Numbers 9:13-14
- Numbers 9:15-17
- Numbers 9:15-17
- Numbers 9:22-23
- Numbers 9:22-23
- Numbers 10:11-13
- Numbers 10:11-13
- Numbers 11:1-3
- Numbers 11:26-27
- Numbers 11:33-35
- Numbers 12:13-15
- Numbers 13:21-22
- Numbers 13:23-24
- Numbers 14:6-8
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Numbers 14:13-14
- Numbers 14:20-22
- Numbers 14:28-30
- Numbers 14:41-43
- Numbers 15:8-10
- Numbers 15:11-13
- Numbers 15:11-13
- Numbers 15:11-13
- Numbers 15:14-16
- Numbers 15:17-19
- Numbers 15:22-24
- Numbers 15:22-24
- Numbers 15:25-26
- Numbers 15:25-26
- Numbers 15:25-26

- Numbers 15:27-29
- Numbers 15:30-31
- Numbers 15:32-34
- Numbers 15:35-36
- Numbers 16:4-5
- Numbers 16:6-7
- Numbers 16:25-27
- Numbers 16:36-38
- Numbers 16:39
- Numbers 16:47-48
- Numbers 17:6-7
- Numbers 18:1-2
- Numbers 18:1-2
- Numbers 18:6-7
- Numbers 18:6-7
- Numbers 18:8-9
- Numbers 18:8-9
- Numbers 18:14-16
- Numbers 18:17-18
- Numbers 18:17-18
- Numbers 18:25-27
- Numbers 18:28-29
- Numbers 19:9-10
- Numbers 19:11-13
- Numbers 19:11-13
- Numbers 19:14-16
- Numbers 19:20-22
- Numbers 19:20-22
- Numbers 20:1
- Numbers 20:12-13
- Numbers 21:1-3
- Numbers 21:8-9
- Numbers 21:27-28
- Numbers 21:29-30
- Numbers 21:33-35
- Numbers 22:5-6
- Numbers 22:12-14
- Numbers 22:21-23
- Numbers 22:26-27
- Numbers 23:19-20
- Numbers 23:23
- Numbers 24:2-3
- Numbers 24:6

- Numbers 24:7
- Numbers 24:9
- Numbers 24:10-11
- Numbers 24:18-19
- Numbers 24:18-19
- Numbers 24:21-22
- Numbers 25:1-3
- Numbers 25:14-15
- Numbers 25:16-18
- Numbers 26:35
- Numbers 26:52-53
- Numbers 26:54
- Numbers 26:54
- Numbers 26:54
- Numbers 26:54
- Numbers 26:57-59
- Numbers 26:60-62
- Numbers 26:60-62
- Numbers 26:60-62
- Numbers 26:63-64
- Numbers 26:63-64
- Numbers 26:63-64
- Numbers 27:9-11
- Numbers 28:1-2
- Numbers 28:3-5
- Numbers 28:3-5
- Numbers 28:6-8
- Numbers 28:6-8
- Numbers 28:6-8
- Numbers 28:9-10
- Numbers 28:11-13
- Numbers 28:11-13
- Numbers 28:14-15
- Numbers 28:16-18
- Numbers 28:16-18
- Numbers 28:19-22
- Numbers 28:19-22
- Numbers 28:23-25
- Numbers 28:23-25
- Numbers 28:23-25
- Numbers 28:23-25
- Numbers 28:26-28
- Numbers 28:29-31

- Numbers 29:3-5
- Numbers 29:6
- Numbers 29:6
- Numbers 29:9-11
- Numbers 29:12-13
- Numbers 29:14-16
- Numbers 29:17-19
- Numbers 29:20-22
- Numbers 29:23-25
- Numbers 29:26-28
- Numbers 29:29-31
- Numbers 29:32-34
- Numbers 29:35-36
- Numbers 29:37-38
- Numbers 30:9-11
- Numbers 30:13-14
- Numbers 31:3-5
- Numbers 31:18-20
- Numbers 31:25-27
- Numbers 31:28-29
- Numbers 31:28-29
- Numbers 31:36-38
- Numbers 31:39-41
- Numbers 32:4-5
- Numbers 32:10-11
- Numbers 32:13-15
- Numbers 32:13-15
- Numbers 32:20-22
- Numbers 32:28-30
- Numbers 32:37-39
- Numbers 33:1-2
- Numbers 33:11-14
- Numbers 35:12-13
- Numbers 35:16
- Numbers 35:19-21
- Numbers 35:24-25
- Numbers 35:29-30
- Numbers 35:29-30
- Numbers 35:29-30
- Numbers 35:31-32
- Numbers 35:33-34
- Numbers 36:1-2
- Numbers 36:3-4

- Numbers 36:3-4
- Numbers 36:3-4
- Numbers 36:3-4
- Numbers 36:3-4
- Numbers 36:5-6
- Numbers 36:5-6

## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker gives the audience information in two ways:
- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information.**

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, you can include this information in the text or in a footnote.

### Examples from the Bible

> Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

> Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

### Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

    - **Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:20 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.
        - Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes to live in, and the birds of the sky have nests to live in, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."
    - **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.
        - ... it will be more tolerable for those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked, at the day of judgment than for you
            - Or:
        - ... it will be more tolerable for those wicked cities Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you
    - **Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat.** (Matthew 15:2 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.
        - Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness when they eat.

2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

    - **Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULB) - Implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.
        - Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live."
    - **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULB) - Implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.
        - At the day of judgment, God will punish Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked, less severely than he will punish you

    - At the day of judgment, God will punish you more severely than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.### Uses:

- Numbers 1:1-3
- Numbers 1:50
- Numbers 1:53-54
- Numbers 2:9
- Numbers 2:9
- Numbers 2:16
- Numbers 2:16
- Numbers 2:24
- Numbers 2:24
- Numbers 2:25
- Numbers 2:31
- Numbers 2:34
- Numbers 3:9-10
- Numbers 3:14-16
- Numbers 3:38-39
- Numbers 3:40-41
- Numbers 3:46-47
- Numbers 4:5-6
- Numbers 4:7-8
- Numbers 4:7-8
- Numbers 4:7-8
- Numbers 4:9-11
- Numbers 4:12-14
- Numbers 4:17-18
- Numbers 4:21-23
- Numbers 4:24-26
- Numbers 4:29-30
- Numbers 4:34-36
- Numbers 4:34-36
- Numbers 4:38-40
- Numbers 4:38-40
- Numbers 4:42-44
- Numbers 4:46-48
- Numbers 5:1-4
- Numbers 5:5-7
- Numbers 5:8-10

- Numbers 5:11-12
- Numbers 5:13-14
- Numbers 5:16-17
- Numbers 5:27-28
- Numbers 5:27-28
- Numbers 6:12
- Numbers 6:13-15
- Numbers 6:13-15
- Numbers 6:19-20
- Numbers 6:21
- Numbers 7:1-3
- Numbers 7:9
- Numbers 8:14-15
- Numbers 9:1-3
- Numbers 9:1-3
- Numbers 9:6-8
- Numbers 9:6-8
- Numbers 9:9-10
- Numbers 9:15-17
- Numbers 9:20-21
- Numbers 9:20-21
- Numbers 10:33-34
- Numbers 10:35-36
- Numbers 11:28-30
- Numbers 13:9-12
- Numbers 14:23-25
- Numbers 14:34-35
- Numbers 14:36-38
- Numbers 15:14-16
- Numbers 15:37-39
- Numbers 16:39
- Numbers 18:6-7
- Numbers 18:14-16
- Numbers 18:17-18
- Numbers 20:12-13
- Numbers 21:8-9
- Numbers 21:17-18
- Numbers 22:21-23
- Numbers 22:31-33
- Numbers 23:4-6
- Numbers 23:10
- Numbers 23:28-30
- Numbers 24:18-19

- Numbers 25:4-5
- Numbers 25:6-7
- Numbers 26:1-2
- Numbers 26:35
- Numbers 26:54
- Numbers 26:60-62
- Numbers 27:2-3
- Numbers 27:4-5
- Numbers 27:6-8
- Numbers 27:12-14
- Numbers 28:6-8
- Numbers 28:9-10
- Numbers 30:6-7
- Numbers 30:8
- Numbers 30:9-11
- Numbers 30:12
- Numbers 30:15-16
- Numbers 31:3-5
- Numbers 31:42
- Numbers 32:4-5
- Numbers 32:8-9
- Numbers 32:20-22
- Numbers 32:26-27
- Numbers 32:31-32
- Numbers 33:3-4
- Numbers 35:24-25
- Numbers 35:31-32
- Numbers 36:3-4

## Background Information

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

### Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called **background information.** The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

**Example** - The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because their village was going to have a a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day! They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope they had brought with them, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a feast the next day" and "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," "that they had brought with them," and "Peter had mistakenly killed his cousins's pig.

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were", rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "Peter was the best hunter in the village" and "it was his own pig."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

### A writer may use background information

- To help their listeners be interested in the story
- To help their listeners understand something in the story
- To help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- To tell the setting of a story
- Setting includes:
    - where the story takes place
    - when the story takes place
    - who is present when the story begins
    - what is happening when the story begins

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- Translators need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- Translators will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that their own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

### Examples from the Bible

> Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

> Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULB)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

> Now it happened on a Sabbath that Jesus was going through the grain fields and his disciples were picking the heads of grain, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said... (Luke 6:1-2a ULB)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence, "But some of the Pharisees said."

### Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kind of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
2. Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULB English translations.

- **Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli.** (Luke 3:23 ULB) English uses the word "now" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.
- **With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.** (Luke 3:18-20 ULB) The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

- **Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.** (Genesis 16:16 ULB)
    - "When Abram was eighty-six years old, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."
- **John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.** (Luke 3:18-20) - The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.
    - "Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

### Uses:

- Numbers 12:1-3
- Numbers 22:2-4
- Numbers 25:14-15
- Numbers 32:1-3

## Biblical Distance

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

### Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **"long" cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as "furlong", which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

| Original Measure | Metric Measure | | ——— | ——— | | handbreadth | 8 centimeters | | span | 23 centimeters | | cubit | 46 centimeters | | "long" cubit | 54 centimeters | | stadia | 185 meters |

### Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as ".46 meters" or even as "46 centimeters," readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say "half a meter," "45 centimeters," or "50 centimeters."
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word "about" to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was sixty stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as "about ten kilometers" from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use "about" in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

### Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

#### Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

- **They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half.** (Exodus 25:10 ULB)
- Use the measurements given in the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
    - ”They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half kubits; its width will be one kubit and a half; and its height will be one kubit and a half.”
- Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
    - ”They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter; its width will be two thirds of a meter; and its height will be two thirds of a meter.”
- Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard foot length, you could translate it as below.
    - ”They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be 3 3/4 feet; its width will be 2 1/4 feet; and its height will be 2 1/4 feet.”
- Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.
    - ”They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits (one meter); its width will be one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter); and its height will be one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter).”

- Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULB measurements in notes.
    - ”They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter[1]; its width will be two thirds of a meter [2]; and its height will be two thirds of a meter.” The footnotes would look like:
        - [1] two and a half cubits
        - [2] one cubit and a half

**Uses:**

- Numbers 11:31-32
- Numbers 35:3-4
- Numbers 35:5

## Biblical Money

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

### Description:

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold and would give a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

| Unit in OT | Metal | Weight | | ——— | ——— | ——— | | daric | gold coin | 8.4 grams | | shekel | various metals | 11 grams | | talent | various metals | 33 kilograms|

| Unit in NT | Metal | Day's Wage | | ——— | ——— | ——— | | denarius/denarii | silver coin | 1 day | | drachma | silver coin | 1 day | | mite | copper coin| 1/64 day | | shekel | silver coin | 4 days | | talent | silver | 6,000 days |

### Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

### Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see Biblical Weight. The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

### Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

- **The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.** (Luke 7:41 ULB)
- Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
    - ”The one owed five hundred denali, and the other owed fifty denali.” (Luke 7:41 ULB)
- Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.
    - ”The one owed five hundred silver coins, and the other owed fifty silver coins.” (Luke 7:41 ULB)
- Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
    - ”The one owed five hundred days’ wages, and the other owed fifty days’ wages.”
- Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.
    - ”The one owed five hundred denarii[1], and the other owed fifty denarii.[2]” (Luke 7:41 ULB) The footnotes would look like:
        - [1] five hundred days’s wages
        - [2] fifty day’s wages
- Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.
    - ”The one owed five hundred denarii[1], and the other owed fifty denarii.” (Luke 7:41 ULB)
        - [1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

**Uses:**

- Numbers 3:46-47
- Numbers 3:49-51
- Numbers 31:52-54

## Biblical Volume

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*

### Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

| Type | Original Measure | Liters | | ——— | ——— | ——— | | Dry | omer | 2 liters | | Dry | ephah | 22 liters | | Dry | homer | 220 liters | | Dry | cor | 220 liters | | Dry | seah | 7.7 liters | | Dry | lethek | 114.8 liters | | Liquid | metrete | 40 liters | | Liquid | bath | 22 liters | | Liquid | hin | 3.7 liters | | Liquid | kab | 1.23 liters | | Liquid | log | 0.31 liters |

### Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters,” readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters.”
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

### When the unit of measure is stated

### Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

#### Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

- **For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah.** (Isaiah 5:10 ULB)
- Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
    - ”For four hektares of vineyard will yield only one bat, and one homer of seed will yield only an efa.”
- Use the measurements given in the UDB. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
    - ”For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters, and ten baskets of seed will yield only one basket.”
        - ”For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters and 220 liters of seed will yield only twenty-two liters.”
- Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
    - ”For four hectares of vineyard will yield only six gallons, and six and a half bushels of seed will yield only twenty quarts.”
- Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.
    - ”For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath (six gallons), and one homer (six and a half bushels) of seed will yield only an ephah (twenty quarts).”
- Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULB measurements in footnotes.
    - ”For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters[1], and 220 liters[2] of seed will yield only twenty-two liters[3].” The footnotes would look like:
        - [1]one bath

- [2]one homer
- [3]one ephah

#### When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULB and UDB, add the word "measure."

- **whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty measures of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty.** (Haggai 2:16 ULB)

#### Translation Strategies

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
2. Use a generic word like "measure" or "quantity" or "amount."
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as "basket" for grain or "jar" for wine.
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

#### Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

- **whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty measures of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty.** (Haggai 2:16 ULB)
- Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
    - whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty of wine, there were only twenty.
- Use a generic word like "measure" or "quantity" or "amount."
    - whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty amounts of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty amounts of wine, there were only twenty.
- Use the name of an appropriate container, such as "basket" for grain or "jar" for wine.
    - whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty baskets of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty jars of wine, there were only twenty.
- Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.
    - whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty liters of grain, there were only ten liters, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty liters of wine, there were only twenty liters.

**Uses:**

- Numbers 5:15
- Numbers 11:31-32
- Numbers 15:4-5
- Numbers 15:4-5
- Numbers 15:6-7
- Numbers 15:6-7
- Numbers 15:8-10
- Numbers 15:8-10
- Numbers 28:3-5
- Numbers 28:3-5
- Numbers 28:6-8
- Numbers 28:9-10
- Numbers 28:11-13
- Numbers 28:11-13
- Numbers 28:11-13
- Numbers 28:14-15
- Numbers 28:14-15
- Numbers 28:14-15
- Numbers 28:19-22
- Numbers 28:19-22
- Numbers 28:19-22
- Numbers 28:26-28
- Numbers 28:26-28
- Numbers 28:26-28
- Numbers 28:29-31
- Numbers 29:3-5
- Numbers 29:3-5
- Numbers 29:3-5
- Numbers 29:9-11
- Numbers 29:9-11
- Numbers 29:9-11
- Numbers 29:14-16
- Numbers 29:14-16
- Numbers 29:14-16

## Biblical Weight

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?*

### Description

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight,” and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

| Original Measure | Shekels | Grams | Kilograms | |————————|———-|———|————| |shekel | 1 shekel |11 grams | - | | bekah | 1/2 shekel | 5.7 grams | - | | pim | 2/3 shekel | 7.6 grams | - | | gerah | 1/20 shekel | 0.57 grams | - | | mina | 50 shekels | 550 grams | 1/2 kilogram | | talent | 3,000 shekels | - | 34 kilograms |

### Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram.”
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath’s spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as “3300 grams” or “3.3 kilograms,” it can be translated as “about three and one half kilograms.”
6. When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

### Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

### Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

- **The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents and 2,400 shekels.** (Exodus 38:29 ULB)
- Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
    - ”The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talentes and 2,400 sekeles.”
- Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
    - ”The bronze from the offering weighed 2,400 kilograms.”
- Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
    - ”The bronze from the offering weighed 5,300 pounds.”
- Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.
    - ”The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents (2,380 kilograms) and 2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms).”
- Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULB measurements in notes.
    - ”The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents and 2,400 shekels.[1]”
        - The footnote would look like:

    [1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.### Uses:

- Numbers 3:46-47
- Numbers 3:46-47
- Numbers 7:12-14
- Numbers 7:12-14

- Numbers 7:12-14
- Numbers 7:12-14
- Numbers 7:18
- Numbers 7:18
- Numbers 7:18
- Numbers 7:20
- Numbers 7:24
- Numbers 7:24
- Numbers 7:24
- Numbers 7:24
- Numbers 7:30
- Numbers 7:30
- Numbers 7:30
- Numbers 7:30
- Numbers 7:36
- Numbers 7:36
- Numbers 7:36
- Numbers 7:36
- Numbers 7:42
- Numbers 7:42
- Numbers 7:42
- Numbers 7:42
- Numbers 7:48
- Numbers 7:48
- Numbers 7:48
- Numbers 7:48
- Numbers 7:54
- Numbers 7:54
- Numbers 7:54
- Numbers 7:54
- Numbers 7:60
- Numbers 7:60
- Numbers 7:60
- Numbers 7:60
- Numbers 7:66
- Numbers 7:66
- Numbers 7:66
- Numbers 7:66
- Numbers 7:72
- Numbers 7:72
- Numbers 7:72
- Numbers 7:72
- Numbers 7:78

- Numbers 7:78
- Numbers 7:78
- Numbers 7:78
- Numbers 7:84
- Numbers 7:84
- Numbers 7:84
- Numbers 7:84
- Numbers 18:14-16
- Numbers 18:14-16

## Copy or Borrow Words

This page answers the question: *What does it mean to borrow words from another language and how can I do it?*

### Description

Sometimes the Bible includes things that are not part of your culture and that your language may not have a word for. It also includes people and places that you may not have names for.

When that happens you can "borrow" the word from the Bible into your own language. This means that you basically copy it from the other language. This page tells how to "borrow" words. (There are also other ways to translate words for things that are not in your language. See Translate Unknowns.)

### Examples from the Bible

> He saw a fig tree on the roadside (Matthew 21:19 ULB)

If there are no fig trees where your language is spoken, there might not be a name for this kind of tree in your language.

> Above him were the seraphim; each one had six wings; with two each covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew. (Isaiah 6:2 ULB)

Your language might not have a name for this kind of creature.

> The declaration of the word of Yahweh to Israel by the hand of Malachi. (Malachi 1:1 ULB)

Malachi might not be a name that people who speak your language use.

### Translation Strategies

There are several things to be aware of when borrowing words from another language.

- Different languages use different scripts, such as the Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Cyrillic, Devanagari, and Korean scripts. These scripts use different shapes to represent the letters in their alphabets.
- Languages that use the same script might pronounce the letters in that script differently. For example, when speaking German, people pronounce the letter "j" the same way that people pronounce the letter "y" when speaking English.
- Languages do not all have the same sounds or combinations of sounds. For example, many languages do not have the soft "th" sound in the English word "think," and some languages cannot start a word with a combination of sounds like "st" as in "stop."

There are several ways to borrow a word.

1. If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
2. You can spell the word as the other language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
3. You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the other language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
    - □□□□□□□□□□ - A man's name in Hebrew letters.
        - "Zephaniah" - The same name in Roman letters
2. You can spell the word as the other language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
    - **Zephaniah** - This is a man's name.
        - "Zephaniah" - The name as it is spelled in English, but you can pronounce it according to the rules of your language.
3. You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the other language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.
    - **Zephaniah** - If your language does not have the "z", you could use "s". If your writing system does not use "ph" you could use "f". Depending on how you pronounce the "i" you could spell it with "i" or "ai" or "ay".
        - "Sefania"
        - "Sefanaia"
        - "Sefanaya"

### Uses:

- Numbers 13:21-22
- Numbers 20:1

## Direct and Indirect Quotations

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

### Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotation and indirect quotation.

A **direct quotation** occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks:"".

- John said, "I do not know at what time I will arrive."

An **indirect quotation** occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead of from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually features changes in pronouns, and it often features changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would," to replace the future tense indicated by "will."

- John said that he did not know at what time he would arrive.

### Why this is a translation issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one rather than the other, or there is a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or an indirect quotation.

### Examples from the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have underlined the quotations.

> He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULB)

- Indirect quote: He instructed him to tell no one,
- Direct quote: but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest…"

> Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULB)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come,
- Direct quote: Jesus answered them and said, ”The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, ‘Look here!’ or, ‘Look there!’ because the kingdom of God is among you.”
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, ’Look here¡ or, ’Look there!’

### Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

    - **He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, ”Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”** (Luke 5:14 ULB)
        - He instructed him to tell no one, but to go on his way, and to show himself to the priest and to offer a sacrifice for his cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

    - **He instructed him, to tell no one, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”** (Luke 5:14 ULB)
        - He instructed him, ”Tell no one. Just go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_quotations.## Uses:

- Numbers 21:16
- Numbers 25:12-13

## Double Negatives

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of "not." Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

### Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning "not." Examples are "no," "not," "none," "no one," "nothing," "nowhere," "never," "nor," "neither," and "without." Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean "not" such as the underlined parts of these words: "unhappy," "impossible," and "useless."

A double negative occurs when a sentence has two words that each express the meaning of "not."

> It is not that we do not have authority... (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULB)
>
> And this better confidence did not happen without the taking of an oath, ... (Hebrews 7:20 ULB.)
>
> Be sure of this—wicked people will not go unpunished (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)

### Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally, "I did not see no one." It has both the word 'no' next to the verb and 'nadie,' which means "no one." The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, "I did not see anyone."
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, "He is not unintelligent" means "He is intelligent."
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, "He is not unintelligent" means, "He is somewhat intelligent."
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, "He is not unintelligent" can mean "He is intelligent" or "He is very intelligent."

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know both what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

### Examples from the Bible

> … so that they may not be unfruitful. (Titus 3:14 ULB)

This means “so that they will be fruitful.”

> All things were made through him and without him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

### Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely.”

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

    - **For we do not have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses.** (Hebrews 4:15 ULB)
        - “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”
    - **… so that they may not be unfruitful.** (Titus 3:14 ULB)
        - “… so that they may be fruitful.”

2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely.”

    - **Be sure of this—wicked people will not go unpunished …** (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)
        - ”Be sure of this—wicked people will certainly be punished …”
    - **All things were made through him and without him there was not one thing made that has been made.** (John 1:3 ULB)
        - ”All things were made through him. He made absolutely everything that has been made.”

**Uses:**

- Numbers 11:31-32
- Numbers 19:11-13
- Numbers 19:14-16
- Numbers 26:65

## Doublet

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

### Description

We are using the word "doublet" to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing or very close to the same thing and that are used together. Often they are joined with the word "and." Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

### Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. In either case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

### Examples from the Bible

> King David was old and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was "very old."

> … he attacked two men more righteous and better than himself … (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were "much more righteous" than he was.

> You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared "many false things to say."

> … as of a lamb without blemish and without spot. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish–not even one.

### Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

### Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.
    - **You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)
        - ”You have decided to prepare false things to say.”
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
    - **King David was old and advanced in years.** (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)
        - ”King David was very old.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.
    - **... a lamb without blemish and without spot...** (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”
        - ” ... a lamb without any blemish at all ...”

### Uses:

- Numbers 11:21-23
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Numbers 20:22-24
- Numbers 21:27-28
- Numbers 30:3-4
- Numbers 30:5

## Ellipsis

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis?*

### Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

> ... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is if they do not use ellipsis in their language.

### Examples from the Bible

> ... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, ”Lord, that I might receive my sight.” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him.

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox. (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

### Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.
    - **... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.** (Psalm 1:5)
        - ... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and sinners will not stand in the assembly of the righteous
    - **... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, that I might receive my sight."** (Luke 18:40-41)
        - ... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight."
    - **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
        - He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox.

### Uses:

- Numbers 2:7
- Numbers 2:10
- Numbers 2:12
- Numbers 2:14
- Numbers 2:18
- Numbers 2:20
- Numbers 2:22
- Numbers 2:25
- Numbers 2:27
- Numbers 2:29
- Numbers 4:38-40
- Numbers 6:1-4
- Numbers 6:16-17
- Numbers 8:7-8
- Numbers 8:18-19
- Numbers 27:12-14
- Numbers 27:22-23
- Numbers 28:11-13
- Numbers 28:19-22
- Numbers 28:26-28
- Numbers 29:3-5
- Numbers 29:9-11
- Numbers 29:14-16
- Numbers 30:13-14
- Numbers 32:33

## Euphemism

This page answers the question: *What is a Euphemism?*

### Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

### Definition

> ... they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons "were dead". It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

### Examples from the Bible

> ... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself ... (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

> Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?" (Luke 1:34 ULB)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

### Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself.** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
    - "...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole"
    - "...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone"
- **Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?"** (Luke 1:34 ULB)
    - Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since I do not know a man?" - (This is the euphemism used in the original Greek)

2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa.** (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)
    - "they found Saul and his sons dead on Mount Gilboa."

### Uses:

- Numbers 5:20-21
- Numbers 5:27-28
- Numbers 8:16-17
- Numbers 15 General Notes
- Numbers 20:22-24
- Numbers 20:25-26
- Numbers 27:12-14
- Numbers 31:1-2
- Numbers 31:16-17
- Numbers 31:18-20
- Numbers 31:32

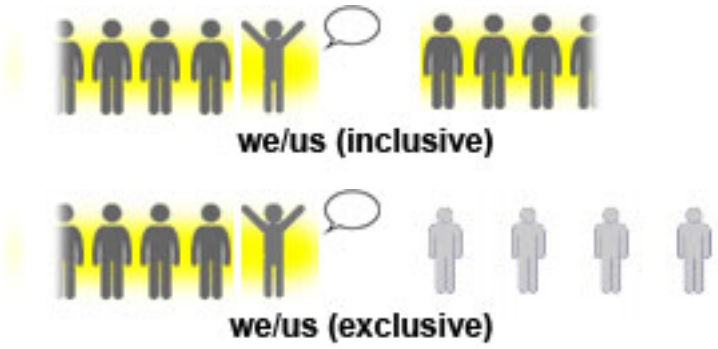
## Exclusive and Inclusive "We"

This page answers the question: *What is exclusive and inclusive "we"?*

### Description

Some languages have more than one form of "we:" an **inclusive** form that means "I and you" and an **exclusive** form that means "I and someone else but not you." The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.




### Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we" will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form of "we" to use.

### Examples from the Bible

> They said, "We have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless we went and bought food for all this crowd of people." (Luke 9:13 ULB)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this "we" could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that "we" would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

> we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULB)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

> … the shepherds said one to each other, ”Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us,” they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

> Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, ”Let us go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

**Uses:**

- Numbers 20:10-11
- Numbers 21:6-7

## First, Second, or Third Person

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

Normally a speaker refers to himself as "I" and the person he is speaking to as "you." Sometimes in the Bible a speaker referred to himself or to the person he was speaking to with a phrase other than "I" or "you."

### Description

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns "I" and "we." (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun "you." (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns "he," "she," "it" and "they." (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like "the man" or "the woman" are also third person.

### Reason this is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker used the third person to refer to himself or to the people he was speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant "I" or "you."

### Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of "I" or "me" to refer to themselves.

> But David said to Saul, "Your servant used to keep his father's sheep." (1 Samuel 17:34 ULB)

David referred to himself in the third person as "your servant" and "his." He was calling himself Saul's servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
> "... Do you have an arm like God's? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words "God's" and "him." He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of "you" or "your" to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

> Abraham answered and said, "Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULB)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

> So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULB)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

### Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
    - **But David said to Saul, ”Your servant used to keep his father’s sheep.”** (1 Samuel 17:34)
        - But David said to Saul, ”I, your servant, used to keep my father’s sheep.”
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.
    - **Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, ”... Do you have an arm like God’s? Can you thunder with a voice like him?** (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)
        - Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, ”... Do you have an arm like mine? Can you thunder with a voice like me?”
    - **So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive his brother from your heart.** (Matthew 18:35 ULB)
        - So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive your brother from your heart.

### Uses:

- Numbers 11:11-12
- Numbers 24:4-5
- Numbers 24:20

## Forms of You

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

### Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for "you" based on how many people the word "you" refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of "you" even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

### Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of "you" based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of "you" when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of "You" - Formal or Informal

### Uses:

- Numbers 5:1-4
- Numbers 6:22-24
- Numbers 6:22-24
- Numbers 6:25-27
- Numbers 9:13-14
- Numbers 10:3-5
- Numbers 10:6-8
- Numbers 10:6-8
- Numbers 10:10
- Numbers 14:11-12
- Numbers 18:3-5
- Numbers 18:3-5
- Numbers 18:6-7

- Numbers 20:18-19
- Numbers 34:16-18

## Fractions

This page answers the question: *What are fractions and how can I translate them?*

### Description

Fractions are a kind of number that refer to equal parts of a thing or to equal groups within a larger group of people or things. An item or a group of items is divided into two or more parts or groups, and a fraction refers to one or more of those parts or groups.

> For the drink offering, you must offer a third of a hin of wine. (Numbers 15:7 ULB)

A hin is a container used for measuring wine and other liquids. They were to think about dividing a hin container into three equal parts and fill up only one of those parts, and offer that amount.

> a third of the ships were destroyed. (Revelation 8:9 ULB)

There were many ships. If all those ships were divided into three equal groups of ships, one group of ships was destroyed.

Most fractions in English simply have "-th" added to the end of the number.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | ——— | ——— | | four | fourth | | ten | tenth | | one hundred | one hundredth | | one thousand | one thousandth |

Some fractions in English do not follow that pattern.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | ——— | ——— | | two | half | | three | third | | five | fifth |

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Some languages do not use fractions. They may simply talk about parts or groups, but they do not use fractions to tell how big a part is or how many are included in a group.

### Examples From the Bible

> Now to one half of the tribe of Manasseh, Moses had given an inheritance in Bashan, but to the other half, Joshua gave an inheritance beside their brothers in the land west of the Jordan. (Joshua 22:7 ULB)

The tribe of Manasseh divided into two groups. The phrase "one half of the tribe of Manasseh" refers one of those groups. The phrase "the other half" refers to the other group.

> The four angels who had been prepared for that very hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released to kill a third of humanity. (Revelation 9:15 ULB)

If all the people were to be divided into three equal groups, then the number of people in one group would be killed.

> You must also prepare a fourth of a hin of wine as the drink offering. (Numbers 15:5 ULB)

They were to imagine dividing a hin of wine into four equal parts and prepare the amount equal to one of them.

### Translation Strategies

If a fraction in your language would give the right meaning, consider using it. If not, you could consider these strategies.

1. Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
2. For measurements such as for weight and length, use a unit that your people might know or the unit in the UDB.
3. For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

### Examples of These Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
    - **A third of the ocean became red like blood** (Revelation 8:8 ULB)
        - It was like they divided the ocean into three parts, and one part of the ocean became blood.
    - **then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil.** (Numbers 15:9 ULB)
        - ... then you must divide an ephah of fine flour into ten parts and divide a hin of oil into two parts. Then mix three of those parts of the flour with one of the parts of oil. Then you must offer that grain offering along with the bull.
2. For measurements, use the measurements that are given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
    - **two thirds of a shekel** (1 Samuel 13:21 ULB)
        - eight grams of silver (1 Samuel 13:21 UDB)
    - **three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil.** (Numbers 15:9 ULB)
        - six and one-half liters of finely ground flour mixed with two liters of olive oil. (Numbers 15:9 UDB)
3. For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
    - **three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil.** (Numbers 15:9, ULB)
        - six quarts of fine flour mixed with two quarts of oil.

**Uses:**

- Numbers 5:5-7
- Numbers 5:15
- Numbers 28:3-5
- Numbers 28:3-5
- Numbers 28:6-8
- Numbers 28:9-10
- Numbers 28:11-13
- Numbers 28:11-13
- Numbers 28:11-13
- Numbers 28:14-15
- Numbers 28:14-15
- Numbers 28:14-15
- Numbers 28:19-22
- Numbers 28:19-22
- Numbers 28:19-22
- Numbers 28:26-28
- Numbers 28:26-28
- Numbers 28:26-28
- Numbers 28:29-31
- Numbers 29:3-5
- Numbers 29:3-5
- Numbers 29:3-5
- Numbers 29:9-11
- Numbers 29:9-11
- Numbers 29:9-11
- Numbers 29:14-16
- Numbers 29:14-16
- Numbers 29:14-16

## Go and Come

This page answers the question: *What do I do if the word "go" or "come" is confusing in a certain sentence?*

### Description

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words "go" or "come" and whether to use the words "take" or "bring" when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say "I'm coming," while Spanish speakers say "I'm going." You will need to translate the words "go" and "come" (and also "take" and "bring") in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words "go" and "come" or "take" and "bring" differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

### Examples from the Bible

> Yahweh said to Noah, "Come, you and all your household, into the ark (Genesis 7:1 ULB)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

> But you will be free from my oath if you come to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULB)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham's relatives lived far away, from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to go to them, not come toward Abraham.

> When you have come to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULB)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, "When you have gone into the land..."

> Joseph and Mary brought him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 1:22 ULB)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Joseph and Mary took or carried Jesus to the temple.

> Behold, there came a man named Jairus, and he was one of the leaders of the synagogue. Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet and implored him to come to his house, (Luke 8:41 ULB)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to go with him to his house.

> Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UDB)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Elizabeth did not come out in public.

#### Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULB would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

1. Use the word "go," "come," "take," or "bring" that would be natural in your language.
2. Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

#### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the word "go," "come," "take," or "bring" that would be natural in your language.
    - **But you will be free from my oath if you come to my relatives and they will not give her to you.** (Genesis 24:41 ULB)
        - But you will be free from my oath if you go to my relatives and they will not give her to you.
    - **Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go out in public for five months.** (Luke 1:24 UDB)
        - Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not come out in public for five months.
2. Use another word that expresses the right meaning.
    - **When you have come to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ...** (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULB)
        - "When you have arrived in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ..."
    - **Yahweh said to Noah, "Come, you and all your household, into the ark ...** (Genesis 7:1 ULB)
        - "Yahweh said to Noah, "Enter, you and all your household, into the ark ..."
    - **Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go out in public for five months.** (Luke 1:24 UDB)
        - Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not appear in public for five months.

**Uses:**

- Numbers 22:7-8
- Numbers 22:15-17

## Hebrew Months

This page answers the question: *What are the Hebrew months?*

### Description

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Abib, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
- Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
- Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
- The scripture may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

### List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

**Abib** - (This month is called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Abib 10, the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

**Ziv** - This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on western calendars.

**Sivan** - This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

**Tammuz** - This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on western calendars.

**Ab** - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on western calendars.

**Elul** - This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on western calendars.

**Ethanim** - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

**Bul** - This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on western calendars.

**Kislev** - This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on western calendars.

**Tebeth** - This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on western calendars.

**Shebat** - This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rain fall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on western calendars.

**Adar** - This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

### Examples from the Bible

> You are going out of Egypt on this day, in the month of Abib. (Exodus 13:4 ULB)
>
> You must eat unleavened bread from twilight of the fourteenth day in the first month of the year, until twilight of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULB)

### Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (see Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

1. Tell the the number of the Hebrew month.
2. Use the months that people know.
3. State clearly what season the month occurred in.
4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

- **At that time, you will appear before me in the month of Abib, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.** (Exodus 23:15 ULB)
- **It will always be a statute for you that in the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month, you must humble yourselves and do no work.** (Leviticus 16:29 ULB)
- Tell the number of the Hebrew month.
    - At that time, you will appear before me in the first month of the year, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.
- Use the months that people know.
    - At that time, you will appear before me in the month of March, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.
    - It will always be a statute for you that on the day I choose in late September you must humble yourselves and do no work."
- State clearly what season the month occurred in.
    - It will always be a statute for you that in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month, you must humble yourselves and do no work.
- Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.
    - It will always be a statute for you that in the day I choose in early autumn[1] you must humble yourselves and do no work.
        - The footnote would look like:
    - [1]The Hebrew says, "the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month."

### Uses:

- Numbers 1:1-3
- Numbers 1:17-19
- Numbers 9:1-3
- Numbers 9:4-5
- Numbers 9:11-12
- Numbers 10:10
- Numbers 10:11-13
- Numbers 20:1
- Numbers 28:16-18
- Numbers 29:1
- Numbers 29:6
- Numbers 29:7-8
- Numbers 29:12-13

- Numbers 33:3-4
- Numbers 33:38-39

## How to Translate Names

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

### Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

### Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

> It was this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

> His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

### Examples from the Bible

> You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that "Jordan" is the name of a river, "Jericho" is the name of a city, and "Amorites" is the name of a group of people.

> she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that "Beerlahairoi" means "Well of the Living One who sees me."

> She named him Moses and said, "Because I drew him from the water." (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words "pull out."

> Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

> It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

### Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
  - You went over the Jordan River and came to the city of Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the tribe of the Amorites
- **Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you."** (Luke 13:31 ULB)
  - Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because King Herod wants to kill you.

2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

   - **She named him Moses and said, "Because I drew him from the water."** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
     - She named him Moses, which sounds like 'drawn out,' and said, "Because I drew him from the water."

3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

   - **... she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
     - ... she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Well of the Living One who sees me;

4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

   - **... a young man named Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
     - ... a young man named Paul[1] The footnote would look like:
       - [1]Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.
   - **But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9)
     - But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

   - **a young man named Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
     - a young man named Saul The footnote would look like:

        - [1]This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.
    - **But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9)
        - But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;
    - **It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue** (Acts 14:1 ULB)
        - It came about in Iconium that Paul[1] and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue The footnote would look like:
            - [1]This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:4-5
- Numbers 1:7
- Numbers 1:10
- Numbers 1:12
- Numbers 2:18
- Numbers 2:20
- Numbers 2:24
- Numbers 2:25
- Numbers 2:29
- Numbers 2:31
- Numbers 3:1-2
- Numbers 3:17-20
- Numbers 3:21-23
- Numbers 3:24-26
- Numbers 3:27-29
- Numbers 3:30-32
- Numbers 3:33-35
- Numbers 7:39
- Numbers 7:75
- Numbers 10:29-30
- Numbers 11:33-35
- Numbers 11:33-35
- Numbers 13:3-4
- Numbers 13:5-8
- Numbers 13:9-12
- Numbers 13:13-16
- Numbers 13:21-22
- Numbers 13:21-22
- Numbers 13:21-22
- Numbers 13:23-24
- Numbers 13:32-33

- Numbers 14:6-8
- Numbers 21:14-15
- Numbers 21:19-20
- Numbers 21:19-20
- Numbers 21:21-23
- Numbers 21:29-30
- Numbers 22:2-4
- Numbers 22:2-4
- Numbers 22:5-6
- Numbers 22:5-6
- Numbers 22:38-40
- Numbers 23:13-15
- Numbers 23:13-15
- Numbers 24:7
- Numbers 24:21-22
- Numbers 24:23-24
- Numbers 25:1-3
- Numbers 25:14-15
- Numbers 25:14-15
- Numbers 26:5
- Numbers 26:8-9
- Numbers 26:12
- Numbers 26:15
- Numbers 26:19
- Numbers 26:23
- Numbers 26:26
- Numbers 26:28
- Numbers 26:30
- Numbers 26:33
- Numbers 26:35
- Numbers 26:38
- Numbers 26:42
- Numbers 26:44
- Numbers 26:48
- Numbers 26:57-59
- Numbers 27:12-14
- Numbers 31:6-8
- Numbers 32:1-3
- Numbers 32:8-9
- Numbers 32:10-11
- Numbers 32:10-11
- Numbers 32:33
- Numbers 32:34-36

- Numbers 32:37-39
- Numbers 32:40-42
- Numbers 32:40-42
- Numbers 33:3-4
- Numbers 33:5-7
- Numbers 33:8-10
- Numbers 33:11-14
- Numbers 33:15-18
- Numbers 33:19-22
- Numbers 33:23-26
- Numbers 33:27-30
- Numbers 33:31-34
- Numbers 33:35-37
- Numbers 33:40
- Numbers 33:41-43
- Numbers 33:44-46
- Numbers 33:47-49
- Numbers 34:4-5
- Numbers 34:7-9
- Numbers 34:10-12
- Numbers 34:19-20
- Numbers 34:21-23
- Numbers 34:24-26
- Numbers 34:27-29
- Numbers 36:1-2
- Numbers 36:1-2
- Numbers 36:10-12

## Hyperbole and Generalization

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations?*

### Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something he means as completely true, as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement.

- It rains here every night.
- The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
- The speaker means this as a generalization if he means that it rains here most nights.
- The speaker means this as a hyperbole if he wants to say it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy.

**Hyperbole**: This is a figure of speech that uses **exaggeration**. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

> They will not leave one stone upon another (Luke 19:44 ULB)

- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

**Generalization:** This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

> The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame, but honor will come to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction.

> And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)

- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles may have done this.

Even though a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” it does not necessarliy mean **exactly** “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never.” It simply means “most, ”most of the time,” “hardly any” or “rarely.”

> Moses was educated in all the learning of the Egyptians (Acts 7:22 ULB)

- This generalization means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

### Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is completely true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not completely true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

### Examples from the Bible

### Examples of Exaggeration

> If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

### Examples of Generalization

> They found him, and they said to him, "Everyone is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him.

> But as his anointing teaches you about all things and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God's Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know, not about everything that is possible to know.

### Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

> ... they saw Jesus walking on the sea and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”

> Yahweh is righteous in all his ways and gracious in all he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULB)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

### Translation Strategies

If the exaggeration or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a generalization, add a word like “most” or “almost” to show that the generalization is not exact.
4. For a generalization that has a word like “all,” always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
    - **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore.** (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
        - The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and a great number of troops.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
    - **The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame ...** (Proverbs 13:18 ULB)
        - In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame
    - **And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)
        - ”And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles generally do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”
3. For a generalization, add a word like “most” or “almost” to show that the generalization is not exact.
    - **The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.** (Mark 1:5 ULB)

    - Almost all the country of Judea and almost all the people of Jerusalem went out to him."
    - Most of the country of Judea and most of the people of Jerusalem went out to him."

4. For a generalization that has a word like "all," always," "none," or "never," consider deleting that word.

    - **The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.** (Mark 1:5 ULB)
        - The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

**Uses:**

- Numbers 11:21-23
- Numbers 16:12-14
- Numbers 20 General Notes
- Numbers 22:5-6

## Hypothetical Situations

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

"If the sun stopped shining…", "What if the sun stopped shining…", "Suppose the sun stopped shining…", "If only the sun had not stopped shining." We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. We need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they will understand why the event was imagined.

### Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with "if.")

- If he had known about the party, he would have come to it. (But he did not come.)
- If he knew about the party, he would be here. (But he is not here.)
- If he knew about the party, he would come to it. (But he probably will not come.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible.
- Translators need to know their own language's ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

**Examples from the Bible**

1. Hypothetical situations in the past

   > "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes." (Matthew 11:21 ULB)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that if the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles yet did not repent.

> Martha then said to Jesus, "Lord, if you had been here, my brother would not have died." (John 11:21 ULB)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus had come sooner. But Jesus did not come sooner, and her brother did die.

1. Hypothetical situations in the present

   > Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed. (Luke 5:37 ULB)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

> Jesus said to them, "What man would there be among you, who, if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out? (Matthew 12:11 ULB)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

1. Hypothetical situation in the future

   > Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved; but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULB)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about how bad those days will be - so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

1. Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

Regrets and wishes are very similar.

> The Israelites said to them, "If only we had died by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full. For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger." (Exodus 16:3 ULB)

Here the Israelites were afraid they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

> I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. I wish that you were either cold or hot! (Revelation 3:15 ULB)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

### Translation Strategies

Know how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_hypo.

### Uses:

- Numbers 5:11-12
- Numbers 5:13-14
- Numbers 12:13-15
- Numbers 22:18-20
- Numbers 22:31-33
- Numbers 24:12-14

## Idiom

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, "You are telling me a lie")
- Do not push the envelope (This means, "Do not take a matter to its extreme")
- This house is under water (This means, "The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value")
- We are painting the town red (This means, "We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely")

### Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

> he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words "set his face" is an idiom that means "decided."

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

> I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The phrase "enter under my roof" is an idiom that means "enter my house."

> Let these words go deeply into your ears. (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means "Listen carefully and remember what I say."

**Purpose**: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

### Examples from the Bible

> Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, ”Look, we are your flesh and bone.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

> the children of Israel went out with a high hand. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, “The Israelites went out defiantly.”

> the one who lifts up my head (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

### Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
    - **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, ”Look, we are your flesh and bone.”** ( 1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
        - ...Look, we all belong to the same nation.
    - **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
        - He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.
    - **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
        - I am not worthy that you should enter my house.
2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.
    - **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
        - Be all ears when I say these words to you.
    - **”My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7 ULB)
        - I am crying my eyes out

### Uses:

- Numbers 1:17-19
- Numbers 1:50

- Numbers 3:3-4
- Numbers 3:7-8
- Numbers 4:5-6
- Numbers 5:11-12
- Numbers 5:13-14
- Numbers 5:18-19
- Numbers 5:18-19
- Numbers 5:20-21
- Numbers 5:20-21
- Numbers 5:29-30
- Numbers 5:29-30
- Numbers 6:1-4
- Numbers 6:1-4
- Numbers 6:5
- Numbers 6:5
- Numbers 6:6-8
- Numbers 6:13-15
- Numbers 6:18
- Numbers 6:19-20
- Numbers 6:21
- Numbers 6:22-24
- Numbers 6:25-27
- Numbers 6:25-27
- Numbers 7:84
- Numbers 8:16-17
- Numbers 9:1-3
- Numbers 9:1-3
- Numbers 9:4-5
- Numbers 9:6-8
- Numbers 9:9-10
- Numbers 9:11-12
- Numbers 9:13-14
- Numbers 9:20-21
- Numbers 10:9
- Numbers 10:31-32
- Numbers 11:13-15
- Numbers 12 General Notes
- Numbers 14:20-22
- Numbers 15:20-21
- Numbers 15:40-41
- Numbers 16:1-3
- Numbers 16:6-7
- Numbers 16:6-7

- Numbers 18:8-9
- Numbers 18:14-16
- Numbers 20:18-19
- Numbers 21:10-11
- Numbers 21:19-20
- Numbers 22:5-6
- Numbers 22:21-23
- Numbers 22:26-27
- Numbers 24:2-3
- Numbers 24:2-3
- Numbers 24:4-5
- Numbers 24:10-11
- Numbers 24:15-16
- Numbers 25:1-3
- Numbers 25:6-7
- Numbers 27:15-17
- Numbers 27:15-17
- Numbers 29:12-13
- Numbers 30:3-4
- Numbers 30:5
- Numbers 30:6-7
- Numbers 30:6-7
- Numbers 30:9-11
- Numbers 30:9-11
- Numbers 30:12
- Numbers 31:16-17
- Numbers 32:4-5
- Numbers 32:13-15
- Numbers 32:20-22
- Numbers 32:31-32
- Numbers 35:16
- Numbers 35:19-21
- Numbers 35:31-32

## Litotes

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

### Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are “no,” “not,” “none,” and “never.” The opposite of “good” is “bad.” Someone could say that something is “not bad” to mean that it is extremely good.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

### Examples from the Bible

> For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was very useful.

> Now when it became day, there was no small excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULB)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a lot of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

> And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
> are not the least among the leaders of Judah,
> for from you will come a ruler
> who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULB)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a very important city.

### Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the positive meaning in a strong way.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the positive meaning in a strong way.

    - **For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless.** (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)
        - ”For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you did much good.”
    - **Now when it became day, there was no small excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.** (Acts 12:18 ULB)
        - ”Now when it became day, there was great excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.”
        - ”Now when it became day, the soldiers were very concerned because of what had happened to Peter.”

### Uses:

- Numbers 23:9
- Numbers 31:48-49

## Merism

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

### Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

> "I am the Alpha and the Omega," says the Lord God, "the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty." (Revelation 1:8, ULB)
>
> I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULB)

Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

> I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth ..., (Matthew 11:25 ULB)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

### Examples from the Bible

> From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULB)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means "everywhere."

> He will bless those who honor him, both young and old. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means "everyone."

### Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
    - **I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth ...** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
        - I praise you, Father, Lord of everything ...
    - **From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised.** (Psalm 113:3 ULB)
        - In all places, people should praise Yahweh's name.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.
    - **I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth.** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
        - I praise you, Father, Lord of everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.
    - **He will bless those who honor him, both young and old.** (Psalm 115:13 ULB)
        - He will bless all those who honor him, regardless of whether they are young or old.

### Uses:

- Numbers 6:1-4
- Numbers 21:29-30
- Numbers 27:20-21

## Metaphor

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?*

### Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which one concept (the "image") stands for another concept (the "topic"). That is, the topic is spoken of as if it were the image. For example, someone might say,

- The girl I love is a red rose.

Here the topic is "the girl I love," and the image is "a red rose." The girl is spoken of as if she were a red rose.

Anything in a language can serve as a metaphor. For example, verb forms can be used in unusual ways, as in,

- The Apostle Paul tells us that Christians will rise to life again.

In this case, the English present tense form "tells" is a metaphor for the past tense form "told," because the Apostle Paul lived long ago.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique.

Speakers most often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

### Kinds of Metaphors

There are several kinds of metaphors: "live" metaphors, "dead" metaphors, and patterned metaphors.

#### Live Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept. People also easily recognize them as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

> For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings. (Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun's rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

Here is another example: Jesus said, 'Go and tell that fox...,'" where "that fox" refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was referring to Herod either as a very evil, cunning person or as a king who was only pretending to be great.

**Dead Metaphors**

A dead metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Examples in English are "table leg," "family tree," "leaf" meaning a page in a book, and "crane" meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads. English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples in Biblical Hebrew are probably "heal" meaning "repair," and "sick" meaning "spiritually powerless because of sin."

**Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors**

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP often stands for the concept of MORE. Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as "The price of gasoline is going *up*," "A *highly* intelligent man," and also the opposite kind of idea: "The heat is going *down*," and "The stock market *took a tumble*."

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world's languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that could be seen or held, as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- "Turn the heat *up*." MORE is spoken of as UP.
- "Let us *go ahead* with our debate." DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- "You *defend* your theory well." ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- "A *flow* of words" WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view them as unusual expressions, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patternsand the pages it will direct you to.

### Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. A metaphor has three parts.

1. **Topic** - The thing someone speaks of is called the topic.

2. **Image** - The thing he calls it is the image.
3. **Points of Comparison** - The ways in which the author claims that the topic and image are similar in some manner are their points of comparison.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a red rose. The woman (his "love") is the **topic**, and "red rose" is the **image**. Beauty and delicacy are the points of comparison that the speaker sees as similarities between both the topic and image. Note, however, that a rose's beauty is not identical to a woman's beauty. Neither are the two kinds of delicacy the same. So these points of comparison are not built upon identical characteristics, but rather upon characteristics that are seen by the writer as similar in some way.

- My love is a red, red rose.

Often, as in the metaphor above, the speaker explicitly states the **topic** and the **image**, but he does not state the points of comparison. The speaker leaves it to the hearer to think of those points of comparison. Because the hearers must do that, the speaker's message tends to be more powerful.

Also in the Bible, normally the **topic** and the **image** are stated clearly, but not the points of comparison. The writer hopes that the audience will understand the points of comparison that are implied.

> Jesus said to them. "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULB)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **topic** is "I," and the **image** is "bread." Bread is a food that people ate all the time. The point of comparison between bread and Jesus is that people needed break every day for nourishment. In a similar way, people need Jesus every day in order to live spiritually.

Note that this metaphor is really several metaphors. The first metaphor is that bread is used to represent Jesus. The second metaphor, which is inside the first one, is that physical life represents the spiritual life, which consists of living with God forever. The third metaphor is that eating bread represents benefitting from Jesus, who enables us to live with God forever.

**Purposes of Metaphor**

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel about the other.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.

- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker is thinking of and wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.

### Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

### Examples from the Bible

> Listen to this word, you cows of Bashan, (Amos 4:1 ULB)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria (the topic is "you") with as if they were cows (the image). Amos does not say what points of comparison between these women and the cows he has mind, but from the context it seems that he means that both the women and the cows are fat and interested only in eating.

Note, however, that Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows, for he speaks to them as human beings.

> And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two related metaphors. The topics are "we" and "you," and the images are "clay and "potter." The intended point of comparison between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish: the potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people Israel. The point of comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that both the clay and the people of Israel are made into something different from what they were before.

> Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees." The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we took no bread." (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the image in his metaphor, and the topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

### Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers probably understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression of a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language. (See Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns for lists of some of these patterned pairs of concepts.)
2. If the metaphor seems to be a "live" metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See Simile.
4. If the target audience would not know the image, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that image for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the topic is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience will not know the intended points of comparison between the image and topic, then state them clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is a common expression of a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

    - **Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet.** (Mark 5:22 ULB)
        - Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, immediately bowed down in front of him.

2. If the metaphor seems to be a "live" metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

    - **It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,** (Mark 10:5 ULB)
        - It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,

There is no change to this one - but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

1. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

   - **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
     - And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are like clay. You are like a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

2. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

   - **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
     - Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick.

3. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

   - **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
     - "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the wood. You are our carver; and we all are the work of your hand."
     - "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the string. You are the weaver; and we all are the work of your hand."

4. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

   - **Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
     - Yahweh lives; He is my rock. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

5. If the target audience will not know the intended points of comparison between the image and the topic, then state them clearly.

   - **Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
     - Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock under which I can hide from my enemies. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
   - **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
     - Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick.

6. If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

- **I will make you become fishers of men.** (Mark 1:17 ULB)
  - I will make you become people who gather men.
  - Now you gather fish. I will make you gather people.

*To learn more about specific metaphors read:*

- Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:53-54
- Numbers 3:17-20
- Numbers 3:21-23
- Numbers 5:1-4
- Numbers 5:20-21
- Numbers 5:27-28
- Numbers 6:6-8
- Numbers 6:25-27
- Numbers 8:18-19
- Numbers 9:6-8
- Numbers 9:9-10
- Numbers 9:13-14
- Numbers 9:13-14
- Numbers 9:13-14
- Numbers 10:35-36
- Numbers 10:35-36
- Numbers 11:9-10
- Numbers 11:11-12
- Numbers 11:11-12
- Numbers 11:13-15
- Numbers 11:16-17
- Numbers 11:16-17
- Numbers 11:18-20
- Numbers 11:24-25
- Numbers 11:24-25
- Numbers 11:26-27
- Numbers 11:28-30
- Numbers 12:4-5
- Numbers 12:9-10
- Numbers 12:11-12
- Numbers 12:13-15
- Numbers 13:27-29
- Numbers 13:32-33
- Numbers 13:32-33

- Numbers 14:6-8
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Numbers 14:13-14
- Numbers 14:15-16
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Numbers 14:41-43
- Numbers 14:41-43
- Numbers 14:41-43
- Numbers 15:1-3
- Numbers 15:6-7
- Numbers 15:8-10
- Numbers 15:11-13
- Numbers 15:14-16
- Numbers 15:22-24
- Numbers 15:30-31
- Numbers 15:30-31
- Numbers 15:37-39
- Numbers 15:37-39
- Numbers 16:1-3
- Numbers 16:1-3
- Numbers 16:8-11
- Numbers 16:12-14
- Numbers 16:12-14
- Numbers 16:12-14
- Numbers 16:12-14
- Numbers 16:20-22
- Numbers 16:25-27
- Numbers 16:25-27
- Numbers 16:31-32
- Numbers 16:33-35
- Numbers 16:33-35
- Numbers 16:44-46
- Numbers 18:6-7
- Numbers 18:12-13
- Numbers 18:17-18
- Numbers 18:19-20
- Numbers 18:19-20
- Numbers 18:21-22
- Numbers 18:23-24
- Numbers 18:23-24
- Numbers 18:25-27
- Numbers 19:7-8

- Numbers 19:9-10
- Numbers 19:9-10
- Numbers 19:9-10
- Numbers 19:11-13
- Numbers 19:11-13
- Numbers 19:11-13
- Numbers 19:14-16
- Numbers 19:17-19
- Numbers 19:17-19
- Numbers 19:20-22
- Numbers 19:20-22
- Numbers 19:20-22
- Numbers 21:27-28
- Numbers 21:27-28
- Numbers 22:7-8
- Numbers 22:38-40
- Numbers 23:4-6
- Numbers 23:10
- Numbers 23:11-12
- Numbers 23:16-18
- Numbers 23:24
- Numbers 24:8
- Numbers 24:21-22
- Numbers 25:10-11
- Numbers 25:10-11
- Numbers 27:12-14
- Numbers 27:20-21
- Numbers 30:1-2
- Numbers 30:1-2
- Numbers 30:3-4
- Numbers 30:3-4
- Numbers 30:5
- Numbers 30:6-7
- Numbers 30:8
- Numbers 30:8
- Numbers 30:9-11
- Numbers 30:12
- Numbers 30:13-14
- Numbers 30:13-14
- Numbers 32:4-5
- Numbers 32:4-5
- Numbers 32:10-11
- Numbers 32:10-11

- Numbers 32:13-15
- Numbers 32:13-15
- Numbers 32:13-15
- Numbers 32:18-19
- Numbers 32:20-22
- Numbers 32:31-32
- Numbers 33:3-4
- Numbers 33:53-54
- Numbers 35:22-23
- Numbers 35:33-34
- Numbers 36:8-9
- Numbers 36:8-9
- Numbers 36:10-12

## Metonymy

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

### Description

**Metonymy** is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

> and the blood of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

> He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

### Metonymy can be used

- to a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

### Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

### Examples from the Bible

> The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or "reign." This means that God would make him become the king that would follow King David.

> Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

> ... who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

### Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
    - **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
        - "He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "The wine in this cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.
    - **The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
        - "The Lord God will give him the kingly authority of his father, David."
        - "The Lord God will make him king like his ancestor, King David."
    - **who warned you to flee from the wrath to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
        - "who warned you to flee from God's coming punishment?"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies.

### Uses:

- Numbers 3:3-4
- Numbers 3:3-4
- Numbers 3:5-6
- Numbers 3:7-8
- Numbers 3:46-47
- Numbers 3:49-51
- Numbers 4:5-6
- Numbers 4:15-16
- Numbers 4:15-16
- Numbers 5:5-7
- Numbers 5:8-10
- Numbers 5:13-14
- Numbers 5:13-14
- Numbers 5:20-21
- Numbers 5:29-30
- Numbers 6:9

- Numbers 7:1-3
- Numbers 10:1-2
- Numbers 10:1-2
- Numbers 10:3-5
- Numbers 10:6-8
- Numbers 10:9
- Numbers 10:10
- Numbers 11:16-17
- Numbers 11:21-23
- Numbers 11:24-25
- Numbers 12:6-8
- Numbers 12:11-12
- Numbers 13:25-26
- Numbers 13:27-29
- Numbers 13:27-29
- Numbers 13:27-29
- Numbers 14:1-3
- Numbers 14:20-22
- Numbers 14:23-25
- Numbers 14:28-30
- Numbers 14:31-33
- Numbers 14:31-33
- Numbers 14:41-43
- Numbers 15:20-21
- Numbers 15:30-31
- Numbers 15:30-31
- Numbers 15:37-39
- Numbers 16:12-14
- Numbers 16:20-22
- Numbers 16:36-38
- Numbers 16:44-46
- Numbers 16:47-48
- Numbers 18:3-5
- Numbers 18:6-7
- Numbers 18:6-7
- Numbers 19:11-13
- Numbers 20:2-3
- Numbers 20:7-9
- Numbers 20:14-16
- Numbers 20:17
- Numbers 20:18-19
- Numbers 20:20-21
- Numbers 21:1-3

- Numbers 21:1-3
- Numbers 21:1-3
- Numbers 21:1-3
- Numbers 21:17-18
- Numbers 21:21-23
- Numbers 21:24-26
- Numbers 21:24-26
- Numbers 22:2-4
- Numbers 22:28-30
- Numbers 22:31-33
- Numbers 23:9
- Numbers 23:10
- Numbers 23:23
- Numbers 24:7
- Numbers 24:7
- Numbers 24:7
- Numbers 24:17
- Numbers 24:17
- Numbers 24:18-19
- Numbers 24:18-19
- Numbers 24:20
- Numbers 26:60-62
- Numbers 30:1-2
- Numbers 30:1-2
- Numbers 30:6-7
- Numbers 30:12
- Numbers 32:4-5
- Numbers 32:20-22
- Numbers 35:19-21
- Numbers 35:24-25
- Numbers 35:26-28
- Numbers 36:7

## Numbers

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

### Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words, such as “five” or as numerals, such as “5.” Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000.) Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

> Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

> That day about three thousand men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULB)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

**Reason this is a translation issue**: Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

### Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

### Examples from the Bible

> When Jared had lived 162 years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived 962 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULB)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

> Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands (Genesis 24:60 ULB)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

### Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

> Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULB)

1. Write numbers using numerals.
    - I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
    - I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
    - I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand (100,000) talents of gold, one million (1,000,000) talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
    - I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, a thousand thousand talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.
    - I have prepared for Yahweh's house a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents), and bronze and iron in large quantities.

### Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

### Consistency in the ULB and UDB

The *Unlocked Literal Bible* (ULB) and the *Unlocked Dynamic Bible* (UDB) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals "130" instead of "one hundred thirty").

> When Adam had lived 130 years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived 930 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULB)### Uses:

- Numbers 1:1-3
- Numbers 1:20
- Numbers 1:22
- Numbers 1:24
- Numbers 1:26
- Numbers 1:28
- Numbers 1:30
- Numbers 1:32
- Numbers 1:34
- Numbers 1:36
- Numbers 1:38
- Numbers 1:40
- Numbers 1:42
- Numbers 1:44-46
- Numbers 2:3
- Numbers 2:5
- Numbers 2:5
- Numbers 2:7
- Numbers 2:7
- Numbers 2:9
- Numbers 2:10
- Numbers 2:10
- Numbers 2:12
- Numbers 2:12

- Numbers 2:14
- Numbers 2:14
- Numbers 2:16
- Numbers 2:18
- Numbers 2:18
- Numbers 2:20
- Numbers 2:20
- Numbers 2:22
- Numbers 2:22
- Numbers 2:24
- Numbers 2:24
- Numbers 2:25
- Numbers 2:25
- Numbers 2:27
- Numbers 2:27
- Numbers 2:29
- Numbers 2:29
- Numbers 2:31
- Numbers 2:31
- Numbers 2:32-33
- Numbers 3:21-23
- Numbers 3:27-29
- Numbers 3:33-35
- Numbers 3:38-39
- Numbers 3:42-43
- Numbers 3:46-47
- Numbers 3:46-47
- Numbers 3:49-51
- Numbers 4:1-4
- Numbers 4:21-23
- Numbers 4:29-30
- Numbers 4:34-36
- Numbers 4:34-36
- Numbers 4:38-40
- Numbers 4:38-40
- Numbers 4:42-44
- Numbers 4:42-44
- Numbers 4:46-48
- Numbers 4:46-48
- Numbers 7:1-3
- Numbers 7:12-14
- Numbers 7:12-14
- Numbers 7:18

- Numbers 7:18
- Numbers 7:24
- Numbers 7:24
- Numbers 7:30
- Numbers 7:30
- Numbers 7:36
- Numbers 7:36
- Numbers 7:42
- Numbers 7:42
- Numbers 7:48
- Numbers 7:48
- Numbers 7:54
- Numbers 7:54
- Numbers 7:60
- Numbers 7:60
- Numbers 7:66
- Numbers 7:66
- Numbers 7:72
- Numbers 7:72
- Numbers 7:78
- Numbers 7:78
- Numbers 7:84
- Numbers 7:84
- Numbers 7:84
- Numbers 7:84
- Numbers 7:84
- Numbers 7:87
- Numbers 8:23-24
- Numbers 8:25-26
- Numbers 11:21-23
- Numbers 11:31-32
- Numbers 13:21-22
- Numbers 13:25-26
- Numbers 16:1-3
- Numbers 16:33-35
- Numbers 16:49-50
- Numbers 17:1-2
- Numbers 20:27-29
- Numbers 26:1-2
- Numbers 26:3-4
- Numbers 26:5
- Numbers 26:5
- Numbers 26:10-11

- Numbers 26:12
- Numbers 26:12
- Numbers 26:15
- Numbers 26:15
- Numbers 26:19
- Numbers 26:19
- Numbers 26:23
- Numbers 26:23
- Numbers 26:26
- Numbers 26:26
- Numbers 26:33
- Numbers 26:33
- Numbers 26:35
- Numbers 26:35
- Numbers 26:38
- Numbers 26:38
- Numbers 26:42
- Numbers 26:42
- Numbers 26:44
- Numbers 26:44
- Numbers 26:48
- Numbers 26:48
- Numbers 26:51
- Numbers 26:60-62
- Numbers 29:12-13
- Numbers 29:14-16
- Numbers 29:17-19
- Numbers 29:20-22
- Numbers 29:23-25
- Numbers 29:26-28
- Numbers 29:29-31
- Numbers 29:32-34
- Numbers 31:3-5
- Numbers 31:13-15
- Numbers 31:28-29
- Numbers 31:30-31
- Numbers 31:32
- Numbers 31:32
- Numbers 31:36-38
- Numbers 31:36-38
- Numbers 31:36-38
- Numbers 31:36-38
- Numbers 31:36-38

- Numbers 31:39-41
- Numbers 31:39-41
- Numbers 31:39-41
- Numbers 31:39-41
- Numbers 31:39-41
- Numbers 31:42
- Numbers 31:42
- Numbers 31:42
- Numbers 31:42
- Numbers 31:47
- Numbers 31:48-49
- Numbers 31:52-54
- Numbers 31:52-54
- Numbers 32:10-11
- Numbers 32:13-15
- Numbers 33:8-10
- Numbers 33:38-39
- Numbers 35:3-4
- Numbers 35:5
- Numbers 35:6-7

## Ordinal Numbers

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

### Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

> He gave to the church first apostles, second prophets, third teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

### Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have "-th" added to the end.

| Numeral | Number | Ordinal Number | | ——— | ——— | ——— | | 4 | four | fourth | | 10 | ten | tenth | | 100 | one hundred | one hundredth | | 1,000| one thousand | one thousandth |

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

| Numeral | Number | Ordinal Number | | ——— | ——— | ——— | | 1 | one | first | | 2 | two | second | | 3 | three | third | | 5 | five | fifth | | 12 | twelve | twelfth |

### Reason this is a translation issue:

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

### Examples from the Bible

> The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

People tossed lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

> You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The first row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The second row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The third row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The fourth row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULB)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

### Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
    - **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)
        - There were twenty-four lots. One lot went to Jehoiarib, another to Jedaiah, another to Harim, ... another to Delaiah, and the last went to Maaziah.
        - There were twenty-four lots. One lot went to Jehoiarib, the next to Jedaiah, the next to Harim, ... the next to Delaiah, and the last went to Maaziah.
    - **A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four rivers. The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The fourth river is the Euphrates.** (Genesis 2:10-14 ULB)
        - A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four rivers. The name of one is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the next river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the next river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The last river is the Euphrates.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.
    - **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)
        - They cast twenty-four lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim, ... Delaiah, and Maaziah.

### Uses:

- Numbers 1:1-3

- Numbers 1:1-3
- Numbers 1:17-19
- Numbers 2:9
- Numbers 2:16
- Numbers 2:24
- Numbers 6:9
- Numbers 6:10-11
- Numbers 7:12-14
- Numbers 7:18
- Numbers 7:24
- Numbers 7:30
- Numbers 7:36
- Numbers 7:42
- Numbers 7:48
- Numbers 7:54
- Numbers 7:60
- Numbers 7:66
- Numbers 7:72
- Numbers 7:78
- Numbers 9:1-3
- Numbers 9:1-3
- Numbers 9:1-3
- Numbers 9:4-5
- Numbers 9:11-12
- Numbers 10:6-8
- Numbers 10:11-13
- Numbers 10:11-13
- Numbers 10:14-16
- Numbers 28:16-18
- Numbers 28:16-18
- Numbers 29:1
- Numbers 29:6
- Numbers 29:7-8
- Numbers 29:12-13
- Numbers 29:17-19
- Numbers 29:20-22
- Numbers 29:23-25
- Numbers 29:26-28
- Numbers 29:29-31
- Numbers 29:32-34
- Numbers 29:35-36
- Numbers 33:3-4
- Numbers 33:38-39

- Numbers 33:38-39

## Parallelism

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

### Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term Doublet for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

### Examples from the Bible

**The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.**

> Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULB)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live.

> You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
> you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

**The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.**

> The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
> keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

**The second completes what is said in the first.**

> I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
> and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

**The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.**

> For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
> but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

> A gentle answer turns away wrath,
> but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

### Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

    - **Until now you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13, ULB) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.
        - “Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

- **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB) - The phrase "all the paths he takes" is a metaphor for "all he does."
  - "Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does."
- **For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel.** (Micah 6:2 ULB) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:
  - "For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel."

2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."

   - **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB)
     - "Yahweh truly sees everything a person does."

3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like "very," "completely" or "all."

   - **you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13 ULB)
     - "All you have done is lie to me."
   - **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB)
     - "Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does."

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:17-19
- Numbers 3:14-16
- Numbers 3:49-51
- Numbers 4:17-18
- Numbers 5:8-10
- Numbers 6:21
- Numbers 7:1-3
- Numbers 7:89
- Numbers 8:16-17
- Numbers 8:20-21
- Numbers 9:1-3
- Numbers 9:13-14
- Numbers 10:3-5
- Numbers 11:33-35
- Numbers 12:6-8
- Numbers 17:12-13
- Numbers 18:14-16
- Numbers 18:19-20

- Numbers 19:11-13
- Numbers 20:25-26
- Numbers 21:17-18
- Numbers 21:27-28
- Numbers 21:27-28
- Numbers 21:29-30
- Numbers 22:2-4
- Numbers 23:7-8
- Numbers 23:7-8
- Numbers 23:9
- Numbers 23:16-18
- Numbers 23:19-20
- Numbers 23:21-22
- Numbers 23:23
- Numbers 24:4-5
- Numbers 24:7
- Numbers 24:17
- Numbers 24:17
- Numbers 27:20-21
- Numbers 30:1-2
- Numbers 30:1-2
- Numbers 30:3-4
- Numbers 30:8
- Numbers 30:9-11
- Numbers 31:1-2

## Personification

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

### Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

> Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

Or sin:

> sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were like relationships between people.

> You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

### Examples from the Bible

> You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

> Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

### Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
    - **... sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.
        - ... sin is at your door, waiting to attack you
2. Use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
    - **... sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”
        - ... sin is crouching at the door, just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.
    - **... even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea as if they are able to hear” and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
        - He even controls the winds and the sea.

**Note**: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics.)### Uses:

- Numbers 5:13-14
- Numbers 5:18-19
- Numbers 10:33-34
- Numbers 10:35-36
- Numbers 10:35-36
- Numbers 21:17-18
- Numbers 21:19-20
- Numbers 26:10-11
- Numbers 26:10-11
- Numbers 32:23-25

## Possession

This page answers the question: *What is possession and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

### Description

In common English, “possession” refers to having something, or to something that a person has. In English that grammatical relationship is shown with of, or an apostrophe and the letter s, or a possessive pronoun.

- the house of my grandfather
- my grandfather’s house
- his house

Possession is used in Hebrew, Greek, and English for a variety of situations. Here are a few common situations that it is used for.

- Ownership - Someone owns something.
    - My clothes - The clothes that I own
- Social relationship - Someone has some kind of social relationship with another.
    - my mother - the woman who gave birth to me, or the woman who cared for me
    - my teacher - the person who teaches me
- Contents - Something has something in it.
    - a bag of potatoes - a bag that has potatoes in it, or a bag that is full of potatoes
- Part and whole: One thing is part of another.
    - my head - the head that is part of my body
    - the roof of a house - the roof that is part of a house

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Translators need to understand the relationship between two ideas represented by the two nouns when one possesses the other.
- Some languages do not use possession for all of the situations that your source text Bible might use it for.

### Examples from the Bible

**Ownership** - In the example below, the son owned the money.

> … the younger son … wasted his money with wildly extravagant living. (Luke 15:13)

**Social Relationship** - In the example below, the disciples were people who learned from John.

> Then the disciples of John came to him ..., (Matthew 9:14 ULB)

**Material** - In the example below, the material used for making the crowns was gold.

> On their heads were something like crowns of gold (Revelation 9:7)

**Contents** - In the example below, the cup has water in it.

> Whoever gives you a cup of water to drink ... will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULB)

**Part of a whole** - In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

> But Uriah slept at the door of the king's palace (2 Samuel 11:9 ULB)

**Part of a group** - In the example below, "us" refers to the whole group and "each one" refers to the individual members.

> To each one of us has been given a gift (Ephesians 4:7 ULB)

#### Events and Possession

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in **bold** print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

**Subject** - Sometimes the word after "of" tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, John baptized people.

> The **baptism** of John, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me." (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, Christ loves us.

> Who will separate us from the **love** of Christ? (Romans 3:35)

**Object** - Sometimes the word after "of" tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, people love money.

> For the **love** of money is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10 ULB)

**Instrument** - Sometimes the word after "of" tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords.

> then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings the **punishment** of the sword (Job 19:29 ULB)

**Representation** - In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their baptism represented their repentance.

> As John came, he was baptizing in the wilderness and was preaching a **baptism** of repentance for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULB)

#### Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns

1. Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.
2. Read the verse in the UDB. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.
3. See what the notes say about it.

#### Translation Strategies

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

1. Use an adjective to show that one describes the other.
2. Use a verb to show how the two are related.
3. If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

#### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use an adjective to show that one describes the other. The adjective below is in **bold** print.

    - **On their heads were something like crowns of gold** (Revelation 9:7)
        - ”On their heads were **gold** crowns”

2. Use a verb to show how the two are related. In the example below, the added verb is in bold.

    - **... Whoever gives you a cup of water to drink ... will not lose his reward.** (Mark 9:41 ULB)
        - ... Whoever gives you a cup that **has** water in it to drink ... will not lose his reward.
    - **Wealth is worthless on the day of wrath** (Proverbs 11:4 ULB)
        - Wealth is worthless on the day when God **shows** his wrath.
        - Wealth is worthless on the day when God **punishes** people because of his wrath.

3. If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. In the example below, that verb is in bold.

    - **Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen the punishment of Yahweh your God,** (Deuteronomy 11:2 ULB)
        - Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen how Yahweh your God **punished** the people of Egypt.
    - **You will only observe and see the punishment of the wicked.** (Psalms 91:8 ULB)
        - You will only observe and see how Yahweh **punishes** the wicked.
    - **... you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit.** (Acts 2:38 ULB)
        - ... you will receive the Holy Spirit, whom God will **give** to you.

**Uses:**

- Numbers 28:29-31
- Numbers 29:3-5
- Numbers 29:6
- Numbers 29:9-11
- Numbers 29:17-19
- Numbers 29:20-22
- Numbers 29:23-25
- Numbers 29:26-28
- Numbers 29:29-31
- Numbers 29:32-34
- Numbers 29:37-38
- Numbers 29:37-38

## Predictive Past

This page answers the question: *What is the predictive past?*

### Description

The predictive past is a figure of speech that uses the past tense to refer to things that will happen in the future. This is sometimes done in prophecy to show that the event will certainly happen. It is also called the prophetic perfect.

> Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding;
> their leaders go hungry, and their masses have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULB)

In the example above, the people of Israel had not yet gone into captivity, but God spoke of their going into captivity as if it had already happened because he had decided that they certainly would go into captivity.

### Reason this is a translation issue:

Readers who are not aware of the past tense being used in prophecy to refer to future events may find it confusing.

### Examples from the Bible

> Now all the entrances to Jericho were closed because of the army of Israel. No one went out and no one came in. Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I have handed over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.” (Joshua 6:1-2 ULB)

> For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given;
> and the rule will be on his shoulder; (Isaiah 9:6 ULB)

In the examples above, God spoke of things that would happen in the future as if they had already happened.

> And about these people also Enoch, the seventh in line from Adam, foretold, saying,
> ”Look, the Lord came with tens of thousands of his holy ones, (Jude 1:14 ULB)

Enoch was speaking of something that would happen in the future, but he used the past tense when he said “the Lord came.”

### Translation Strategies

If the past tense would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the future tense to refer to future events.
2. If it refers to something in the immediate future, use a form that would show that.
3. Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.

- **For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given;** (Isaiah 9:6a ULB)
    - ”For to us a child will be born, to us a son will be given;

2) If it refers to something that would happen very soon, use a form that shows that.

- **Yahweh said to Joshua, ”See, I have handed over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.”** (Joshua 6:2 ULB)
    - Yahweh said to Joshua, ”See, I am about to hand over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.”

3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

- **Yahweh said to Joshua, ”See, I have handed over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.”** (Joshua 6:2 ULB)
    - Yahweh said to Joshua, ”See, I am handing over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.”

### Uses:

- Numbers 13:1-2

## Pronouns

This page answers the question: *What are pronouns and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?*

### Description

Pronouns are words that people use in place of a noun to refer to someone or something. Some examples are I, you, he, it, this, that, himself, someone. The most common type of pronoun is personal.

### Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show if the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may give. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

### Person

- First Person - The speaker and possibly others (I, we)
    - Exclusive and Inclusive “We”
- Second Person - The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
    - Forms of You
- Third Person - Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

### Number

- Singular - one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural - more than one (we, you, they)
    - Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups
- Dual - two (Some languages have pronouns for specifically two people or two things.)

### Gender

- Masculine - he
- Feminine - she
- Neuter - it

### Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

### Other Types of pronouns

**Reflexive Pronouns** refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- **John saw himself in the mirror.** - The word "himself" refers to John.

**Interrogative Pronouns** are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: who, whom, whose, what, where, when, why, how

- **Who built the house?**

**Relative Pronouns** mark a relative clause. They tell more about a noun in the main part of the sentence: that, which, who, whom, where, when

- **I saw the house that John built.** The clause "that John built" tells which house I saw.
- **I saw the man who built the house.** The clause "who built the house" tells which man I saw.

**Demonstrative Pronouns** are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else: this, these, that, those.

- **Have you seen this here?**
- **Who is that over there?**

**Indefinite pronouns** are used when no particular noun is being referred to: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- **He does not want to talk to anyone.**
- **Someone fixed it, but I do not know who.**
- **They say that you should not wake a sleeping dog.**

In the last example, "they" and "you" just refer to people in general.

### Uses:

- Numbers 18:3-5

## Quotes Within Quotes

This page answers the question: *What is a quote within a quote, and how can I help the readers understand who is saying what?*

### Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we can talk about it having layers of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

1. When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example if a quote that is inside a quote has the word "I," the listener needs to know whether "I" refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.
2. Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes. They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others.
3. Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

### Examples from the Bible

#### A quotation with only one layer

> But Paul said, "I was born a Roman citizen." (Acts 22:28 ULB)

#### Quotations with two layers

> Jesus answered and said to them, "Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, 'I am the Christ,' and will lead many astray." Matthew 24:4-5 ULB

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

> Jesus answered, "You say that I am a king." (John 18:37 ULB)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

### A quotation with three layers

> Abraham said, "... I said to her, 'You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, "He is my brother." ' " (Genesis 20:10-13 ULB)

The outermost layer is what Abraham said to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have underlined the third layer.)

### A quotation with four layers

> They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.' " ' " (2 Kings 1:6 ULB)

The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have underlined the fourth layer.)

### Translation Strategies

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

1. Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.
2. Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (see Direct and Indirect Quotations)

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have underlined the indirect quotes in the ULB and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.

    - **Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner. ...I was puzzled about how to investigate this matter, and I asked him if he would go to Jerusalem to be judged there about these things. But when Paul called to be kept under guard for the Emperor's decision, I ordered him to be kept until I send him to Caesar."** (Acts 25:14-21 ULB)
        - Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner. ...I was puzzled about how to investigate this matter, and I asked him, 'Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there about these things?' But when Paul said, 'I want to be kept under guard for the Emperor's decision,' I told the guard, 'Keep him under guard until I send him to Caesar.'"

2. Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word “that” can come before indirect quotes. It is underlined in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also underlined.

    - **Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, “I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them, ‘At twilight you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be filled with bread. Then you will know that I am Yahweh your God.’ ”** (Exodus 16:11-12 ULB)
        - Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, ”I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them that at twilight they will eat meat, and in the morning they will be filled with bread. Then they will know that I am Yahweh their God.”
    - **They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, “Yahweh says this: ‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’ ” ’ ”** (2 Kings 1:6 ULB)
        - They told him that a man had come to meet them who said to them, ”Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him that Yahweh says this: ‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’ ”

**Uses:**

- Numbers 25:12-13

## Rhetorical Question

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

### Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all, but if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

> Those who stood by said, "Is this how you insult God's high priest?" (Acts 23:4 ULB)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used theis question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to express attitudes or feelings, to rebuke people, to teach something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, and to introduce something they want to talk about.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are more limited or different than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

### Examples from the Bible

> Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

> Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

> Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

> And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

> Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

> Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

> What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

#### Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, is the one who asked it bothered that he did not get an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your langauge what the orignal speaker communicated in his.

#### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.
    - **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
        - Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!
    - **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
        - Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
    - **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
        - This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed...”
    - **Is this how you insult God’s high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
        - You should not insult God’s high priest!
    - **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
        - I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!
    - **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
        - How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
    - **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
        - You still rule the kingdom of Israel, do you not?
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your langauge what the orignal speaker communicated in his.

- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
  - If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, would you give him a stone?
- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
  - What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my poeple have forgotten me for days without number

**Uses:**

- Numbers 9:6-8
- Numbers 11:4-6
- Numbers 11:11-12
- Numbers 11:11-12
- Numbers 11:11-12
- Numbers 11:11-12
- Numbers 11:11-12
- Numbers 11:13-15
- Numbers 11:18-20
- Numbers 11:18-20
- Numbers 11:21-23
- Numbers 11:21-23
- Numbers 11:28-30
- Numbers 12:1-3
- Numbers 12:6-8
- Numbers 13:17-20
- Numbers 14 General Notes
- Numbers 14:1-3
- Numbers 14:1-3
- Numbers 14:11-12
- Numbers 14:26-27
- Numbers 14:41-43
- Numbers 16:1-3
- Numbers 16:8-11
- Numbers 16:8-11
- Numbers 16:12-14
- Numbers 16:12-14
- Numbers 16:20-22
- Numbers 20:4-5
- Numbers 20:4-5
- Numbers 20:10-11
- Numbers 21:4-5

- Numbers 22:9-11
- Numbers 22:28-30
- Numbers 22:28-30
- Numbers 22:31-33
- Numbers 22:36-37
- Numbers 22:36-37
- Numbers 22:36-37
- Numbers 22:38-40
- Numbers 23:7-8
- Numbers 23:10
- Numbers 23:11-12
- Numbers 23:11-12
- Numbers 23:19-20
- Numbers 23:25-27
- Numbers 24:9
- Numbers 24:12-14
- Numbers 24:23-24
- Numbers 27:4-5
- Numbers 31:13-15
- Numbers 32:6-7
- Numbers 32:6-7

## Simile

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be "like" the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words "like," "as" or "than."

### Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words "like," "as" or "than."

> When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

> See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves, so be as wise as serpents and harmless as doves. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

> For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

### Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

### Examples from the Bible

> Suffer hardship with me, as a good soldier of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

> for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

### Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
    - **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
        - See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves.
    - **For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword.** (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
        - For the word of God is living and active and more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
    - **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

    - See, I send you out as chickens in the midst of wild dogs,
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
    - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
- **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard,** (Matthew 17:20)
    - If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed,

3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

- **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
    - See, I send you out and people will want to harm you.
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
    - How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!

**Uses:**

- Numbers 8:3-4
- Numbers 8:9-11
- Numbers 8:12-13
- Numbers 8:14-15
- Numbers 9:15-17
- Numbers 9:15-17
- Numbers 12:9-10
- Numbers 12:11-12
- Numbers 13:32-33
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Numbers 16:28-30
- Numbers 22:2-4
- Numbers 23:21-22
- Numbers 24:6
- Numbers 24:6
- Numbers 24:6
- Numbers 24:6
- Numbers 24:8
- Numbers 24:9
- Numbers 27:15-17
- Numbers 33:55-56

## Symbolic Action

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

### Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean "Yes" or turn their head from side to side to mean "No." Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

### Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

### Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means "I am surprised" or "What did you say?" In others cultures it means "Yes."

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

Translators need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in their own culture, they need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

### Examples from the Bible

> Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

> Look, I stand at the door and knock. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

### Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
    - **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB)
        - Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.
    - **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB)
        - Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
    - **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41)
        - Jairus showed Jesus great respect.
    - **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20)
        - Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.
    - **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB) - Since Jairus actually did this, we would not substitute an action from our own culture.
    - **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.
        - Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

### Uses:

- Numbers 8:7-8
- Numbers 8:9-11
- Numbers 8:12-13
- Numbers 12:13-15
- Numbers 14:4-5
- Numbers 14:6-8

- Numbers 16:4-5
- Numbers 16:20-22
- Numbers 16:44-46
- Numbers 18:19-20
- Numbers 20:6
- Numbers 22:31-33
- Numbers 24:4-5
- Numbers 24:10-11
- Numbers 24:15-16
- Numbers 25:1-3
- Numbers 27:18-19
- Numbers 27:22-23

## Symbolic Language

This page answers the question: *What is symbolic language and how do I translate it?*

### Description

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things and events. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future. Though people may not immediately know the meaning of a symbol, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.

> Eat this scroll, then go speak to the house of Israel." (Ezekiel 3:1 ULB)

This was in a dream. Eating the scroll is a symbol of reading and understanding well what was written on the scroll, and accepting these words from God into himself.

### Purposes of symbolism

- One purpose of symbolism is to help people understand the importance or severity of an event by putting it in other, very dramatic terms.
- Another purpose of symbolism is to tell some people about something while hiding the true meaning from others who do not understand the symbolism.

### Reason this is a translation issue

People who read the Bible today may find it hard to recognize that the language is symbolic, and they may not know what the symbol stands for.

### Translation Principles

- When symbolic language is used, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.
- It is also important not to explain the symbol more than the original speaker or writer did, since he may not have wanted everyone living then to be able to understand it easily.

### Examples from the Bible

> After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. (Daniel 7:7 ULB)

The meaning of the underlined symbols is explained in Daniel 7:23-24 as shown below. The animals represent kingdoms, iron teeth represent a powerful army, and the horns represent powerful leaders.

> This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be a fourth kingdom on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom ten kings will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings. (Daniel 7:23-24 ULB)
>
> I turned around to see whose voice was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw seven golden lampstands. In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a Son of Man, ... He had in his right hand seven stars, and coming out of his mouth was a sharp two-edged sword.... As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars you saw in my right hand, and the seven golden lampstands: the seven stars are the angels of the seven churches, and the seven lampstands are the seven churches. (Revelation 1:12, 16, 20 ULB)

This passage explains the meaning of the seven lampstands and the seven stars. The two-edged sword represents God's word and judgment.

### Translation Strategies

1. Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
2. Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.

    - **After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns.** (Daniel 7:7 ULB) - People will be able to understand what the symbols mean when they read the explanation in Daniel 7:23-24.

2. Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

    - **After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns.** (Daniel 7:7 ULB)
        - After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal,[1] terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth;[2] it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns.[3]
        - The footnotes would look like:

- [1] The animal is a symbol for a kingdom.
- [2] The iron teeth is a symbol for the kingdom's powerful army.
- [3] The horns are a symbol of powerful kings.

**Uses:**

- Numbers 24:17

## Synecdoche

This page answers the question: *What does the word synecdoche mean?*

### Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

> My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said "my soul," which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

> the Pharisees said to him, "Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?" (Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

### Example from the Bible

> I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

"My hands" is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person's accomplishments.

### Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.
    - **"My soul exalts the Lord."** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
        - "I exalt the Lord."
    - **...the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)

    - ...a representative of the Pharisees said to him ...
- **... I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished ...** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
    - I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

**Uses:**

- Numbers 1:47-49
- Numbers 2:17
- Numbers 4:15-16
- Numbers 7:89
- Numbers 10:9
- Numbers 16:15-17
- Numbers 17:3-5
- Numbers 17:6-7
- Numbers 17:10-11
- Numbers 20:7-9
- Numbers 20:12-13
- Numbers 20:18-19
- Numbers 21:21-23
- Numbers 27:12-14
- Numbers 27:15-17
- Numbers 27:18-19
- Numbers 29:1
- Numbers 30:8
- Numbers 32:6-7
- Numbers 32:8-9

## Translate Unknowns

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

### Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

> We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

**Reason this is a translation issue**

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

### Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

### Examples from the Bible

> I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

> Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

> Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

> to him who made great lights (Psalm 136:7 ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

> your sins ... will be white like snow (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

### Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
    - Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly hungry and dangerous animals.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See Translating Metaphors.)

- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
    - We have here only five loaves of baked grain seeds and two fish

2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins ... will be white like snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

    - your sins ... will be white like milk
    - your sins ... will be white like the moon

3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”
    - Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with a medicine called myrrh. But he refused to drink it.
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
    - We have here only five loaves of baked crushed seed bread and two fish

4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
    - I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for wild dogs
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
    - We have here only five loaves of baked food and two fish

5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
    - to him who made the sun and the moon

**Uses:**

- Numbers 11:31-32
- Numbers 24:6
- Numbers 27:20-21